



# CITY OF CAMBRIDGE

## INSPECTIONAL SERVICES DEPARTMENT



Permit Number: BLDG-69464-2020

Date: August 4, 2020

# BUILDING PERMIT

Peter McAuliffe

has permission to: Interior Suite Renovation

79 JFK St

Cambridge, MA 02138

Cond. 79654 ✓

SMH-89391 ✓  
Med-102360 ✓  
SPR-101126 ✓

provided that the person accepting this permit adhere to regulations governing the Inspectional Services Department. Approved plans must be retained on the job site and this permit kept posted until the final inspection had been made. Buildings shall not be occupied until a final inspection has been made and a Certificate of Use and Occupancy has been issued. Work shall not proceed until inspectors approve various stages below. Code violations are subject to Violation Penalties, 780 CMR 11.4.4.

Dumpster Licence: 6566

Ranjit Singanayagam, Commissioner

*[Signature]*

Excavation
Depth
Soil Condition
Date
Inspector

Footings
Depth
Form Drain
Date
Inspector

Rough Frame
Date
Inspector

*SMH 12/12/20 (Singer)*

HVAC Duct Work
Date
Inspector

*SMH 6/20/21*

Plaster/Ceiling
Date
Inspector

*SMH 12/11/20*

Insulation
Date
Inspector

Final Inspection
Date
Inspector

*SMH 6/22/21*

Plumbing
Rough Date
Final Date

*SMH 9/21/20*

Gas
Rough Date
Final Date

*X*

HVAC Equipment
Rough Date
Final Date

*SMH 6/22/21*

Sprinkler
Rough Date
Final Date

*SMH 12/11/20*

Electrical
Rough Date
Final Date

*SMH 10/16/20*

Sanitary
Rough Date
Final Date

Fire Department
Rough Date
Final Date

*SMH 6/22/21*

*Handwritten note:* All plumbing work

*Handwritten note:* Permit is correct and signed by me. Final inspection is required for the permit to be issued. Construction can proceed after final inspection.





# CITY OF CAMBRIDGE

INSPECTIONAL SERVICES DEPARTMENT



Permit Number: BLDC-69464-2020

Date: August 4, 2020

SMH-99391  
mech-  
SPR-101126 ✓  
Covid-79654

## BUILDING PERMIT

Peter McAuliffe

has permission to: Interior Suite Renovation

79 Jfk St

Cambridge, MA 02138

provided that the person accepting this permit adhere to regulations governing the Inspectional Services Department. Approved plans must be retained on the job site and this permit kept posted until the final inspection had been made. Buildings shall not be occupied until a final inspection has been made and a Certificate of Use and Occupancy has been issued. Work shall not proceed until inspectors approve various stages below. Code violations are subject to Violation Penalties, 780 CMR 114.4.

Dumpster Licence: 6566

Ranjit Singanayagam, Commissioner

<b>Excavation</b> Depth Soil Condition Date Inspector	<b>Footings</b> Depth Fdn Drain Date Inspector	<b>Rough Frame</b> <i>BMV 11/7/2020</i> Date Inspector <i>(3 per footings)</i>	<b>HVAC Duct Work</b> <i>BMV 12/11/2020</i> Date Inspector	<b>Above Ceiling</b> <i>BMV 12/11/2020</i> Date Inspector <i>14/8/20</i>	<b>Insulation</b> Date Inspector	<b>Final Inspection</b> Date Inspector
<b>Plumbing</b> Rough Date <i>8/9/21/20</i> Final Date	<b>Gas</b> Rough Date Final Date <i>X</i>	<b>HVAC Equipment</b> Rough Date Final Date <i>all plumbing issued</i>	<b>Sprinkler</b> Rough Date <i>BMV 12/11/2020</i> Final Date <i>BMV 12/11/2020</i>	<b>Electrical</b> Rough Date <i>10/16/20</i> Final Date <i>12/18/20</i>	<b>Sanitary</b> Rough Date Final Date	<b>Fire Department</b> Final Date



**Close Out Portfolio**

**HU Kennedy School**

**15 Eliot Street 2<sup>nd</sup> Floor**

**Arlington, MA**

**PFI Job #200413**

**DPM Construction**

**105 Mass Avenue**

**Arlington, MA**

Pavilion Floors, Inc.  
90 Commerce Way  
Woburn, MA 01801

t 781 933 8500  
f 781 932 8844

[pavilionfloors.com](http://pavilionfloors.com)

the leader in floor covering strategies.



**Closeout Documents**

**Project Name:**

*HU Kennedy School  
15 Eliot St 2<sup>nd</sup> Flr  
Cambridge, MA*

**Submitted to:**

*DPM Construction  
105 Mass Avenue  
Arlington, MA*

***PFI Job #200413***

**Contents:**

***Directory***

***Patcraft***

***Molten***

- *Product Specification*
- *Maintenance*
- *Warranty*

***Patcraft***

***Shaw 4100***

- *Product Specification*
- *SDS*

***Patcraft***

***Surface Striation***

- *Product Specification*
- *Maintenance*
- *Warranty*

90 Commerce Way  
Woburn, MA 01801

t 781 933 8500  
f 781 932 8844

[pavilionfloors.com](http://pavilionfloors.com)

the leader in floor covering strategies.



***Patcraft***

***Shaw 5100***

- *Product Specification*
- *SDS*

***Bentley***

***Modern Block***

- *Product Specification*
- *Maintenance*
- *Warranty*

***Patcraft***

***Healtbond 2399***

- *Product Specification*
- *SDS*

***Johnsonite***

***Wall Base***

- *Product Specification*
- *Maintenance*
- *Warranty*

***Proma***

***Pro 9750***

- *Product Specification*
- *SDS*
- *Warranty*

***Schluter***

***Schiene***

- *Product Specification*
- *Maintenance*
- *Warranty*

90 Commerce Way  
Woburn, MA 01801

t 781 933 8500  
f 781 932 8844

[pavilionfloors.com](http://pavilionfloors.com)

the leader in floor covering strategies.



*Proma*

*Pro Fine*

- *Product Specification*
- *SDS*
- *Warranty*

*Pavilion Floors*

*One Year Warranty*

90 Commerce Way  
Woburn, MA 01801

t 781 933 8500  
f 781 932 8844

[pavilionfloors.com](http://pavilionfloors.com)

the leader in floor covering strategies.



**Pavilion Floors Inc Contact List**

**Jim Pergamo**  
Senior Account Manager  
O: 781-305-5414  
C: 617-680-0099

Email: [jim.pergamo@pavilionfloors.com](mailto:jim.pergamo@pavilionfloors.com)

**Mike Dares**  
Field Supervisor  
C: 781-760-1915

Email: [mike.dares@pavilionfloors.com](mailto:mike.dares@pavilionfloors.com)

**Joe Alden**  
Sales Coordinate  
O: 781-305-5439

Email: [joe.alden@pavilionfloors.com](mailto:joe.alden@pavilionfloors.com)

**Anne Howard**  
Sales Coordinate  
O: 781-305-5405

Email: [anne.howard@pavilionfloors.com](mailto:anne.howard@pavilionfloors.com)

**Milvia Ramos**  
Accounting Manager-SOV/Billing  
Office: 781-305-5464  
Fax: 781-932-8844

Email: [milvia.ramos@pavilionfloors.com](mailto:milvia.ramos@pavilionfloors.com)

Pavilion Floors, Inc.  
90 Commerce Way  
Woburn, MA 01801

t 781 933 8500  
f 781 932 8844

[pavilionfloors.com](http://pavilionfloors.com)

the leader in floor covering strategies.

**R** | Molten PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS



<b>COLLECTION</b>	Metal Collective
<b>STYLE NUMBER</b>	I478V
<b>CONSTRUCTION</b>	Commercial Luxury Vinyl Tile
<b>WEAR LAYER THICKNESS</b>	20 mil / 0.02 inches (0.508 mm)
<b>OVERALL THICKNESS</b>	0.197 inches (5 mm)
<b>REFERENCE SPECIFICATION</b>	ASTM F1700 Class III printed film vinyl tile Type B (embossed)
<b>FINISH</b>	ExoGuard™
<b>INSTALLATION TYPE</b>	Dry Back
<b>INSTALLATION</b>	Glue Down
<b>RECOMMENDED ADHESIVE</b>	Shaw 4100 or S150

## Packaging

**PLANK SIZE**

**PIECES /BOX**

**AREA /BOX**

**WEIGHT /BOX**

**US Units**

23.62 inches W x 23.62 inches L

6

23.25 sq ft

51.93 lbs

**Metric Units**

60 cm W x 60 cm L

2.2 sq m

23.6 kg

## Performance Testing

**STATIC LOAD / ASTM F970**

Passes (Modified), \*1000 PSI

**RESIDUAL INDENTATION / ASTM F1914**

Passes

**RESISTANCE TO CHEMICALS / ASTM F925**

Passes

**RADIANT PANEL / ASTM E648**

Passes, Class I

**SMOKE DENSITY / ASTM E662**

Passes

**SLIP RESISTANCE / ASTM D2047**

>0.6, meets the recommended static coefficient of friction for ADA walking surfaces and accessible routes

\*Results are based on a laboratory test and used for comparative purposes. Real life load limit may vary.



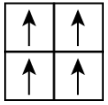
# R | Molten

## Warranty

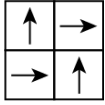
15 Year Commercial Limited.

Please visit [patcraft.com](https://patcraft.com) for the most current warranty information.

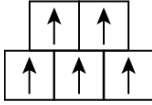
## Installation Methods



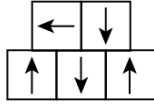
Monolithic



1/4 Turn



Brick



Random

## Environmental

**INDOOR AIR QUALITY**

FloorScore® Certification

## RESILIENT MAINTENANCE CHECKLIST

---

Proper care of your resilient floor will help maintain the appearance and performance of your resilient floor by following recommended preventative, routine and wet cleaning guidelines.

Maintenance instructions for Shaw Hard Surface Resilient and US Floor Resilient

### POST CONSTRUCTION CLEANING

- Dry mop floor using a micro fiber mop pad or appropriate floor vacuum to remove dust particulate from the floor.
- Spray neutral pH cleaner, such as Shaw Hard Surface Cleaner or Diversey Stride, onto the floor in manageable area (spray mist will dry quickly). Use a micro fiber wet mop pad to mop the floor with cleaner. If pad becomes dirty, be sure to replace the pad with a new micro fiber wet mop pad. Work floor in sections.
- Always rinse the floor with water only by mopping water to remove any remaining residue from the floor.

In the event where dry wall dust/construction dust is mopped with water only, a residue film will appear on the floor after drying. Use the process below to remove the film from the floor.

#### Process to remove construction residue or cloudy film from resilient flooring.

1. **Dry mop floor to remove any construction dust or exterior soil tracked onto the flooring. Use micro fiber dry mop pad. If micro fiber dry mop pad gets dirty, replace pad with a clean pad.**
2. **Spray neutral pH cleaner, such as Shaw Hard Surface Cleaner or Diversey's Stride, onto the floor in manageable area (spray mist will dry quickly). Work floor in sections. For smooth surface, use a low rpm (175 rpm) buffer with a 3M red pad on flooring with neutral pH cleaner applied to the floor to remove the residue film. (Never Dry Buff). For embossed or textured flooring, use a cylindrical brush scrubber with red brushes and a neutral pH cleaner applied to the floor to remove the residue film.**
3. **Using a wet micro fiber mop pad, rinse with water only to remove any remaining residue from the flooring. When wet mop pad becomes dirty, be sure to replace the pad with a new micro fiber wet mop pad.**
4. **Repeat steps #2 and #3, if necessary.**

When the resilient flooring is cleaned properly, the floor will have the same visual as right out of the box!

### PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE

#### 1. Care for newly installed floors.

- Avoid heavy traffic for 24 hours.
- **Do not use tape to secure floor protection during construction or renovation.** Use ram board or similar to protect the floor.
- Proper furniture protection is required to prevent scratching and scuffing of LVT flooring. It is recommended to use industrial strength felt protection. These can be purchased from the following websites: [www.1877floorguy.com](http://www.1877floorguy.com), [www.expandedtechnologies.com](http://www.expandedtechnologies.com), [www.flexifelt.com](http://www.flexifelt.com).
- Moving heavy objects requires protective barriers to distribute the weight such as ram board to prevent damage to the wear layer.
- Remove adhesive residue with a clean white cloth dampened with odorless mineral spirits or isopropyl alcohol.
- Only low moisture or damp mopping is recommended initially, if needed.
- Wait 4 days before normal wet cleaning and/or auto scrubbing the floor.
- Avoid direct sunlight on LVT flooring as it can cause fading and expansion of vinyl planks. Use window protection
- Surface temperature should not reach 140 degrees from sunlight or bed bug treatment as it would cause expansion of vinyl planks.



## 2. Identify and address all sources of soiling.

- Maintain a clean exterior (parking lots and walk ways) where dirt enters the building.
- Proper mats should have non-staining backing, use PVC backed matting. Use mats at entranceways, transition areas and special areas such as food service areas/restrooms to confine soil, oil, grease and high moisture areas.
- Entrance mats keep soil and moisture outside. Two matting categories are:
  - Soil Removal – used at exterior entrances to remove soil from shoes
  - Absorbent mats – used inside to minimize moisture
- Mats should cover at least 6 footsteps to capture soil transferring from shoes. Additional matting may be necessary during inclement weather. Include mats in the maintenance program and keep them clean.

## ROUTINE MAINTENANCE

### 1. Remove dry soil.

- Sweep, vacuum or dust-mop frequently to remove soil particles that can abrade the wear layer.
- Dust mop treatments are not recommended since these products can transfer and attract soil.
- Do not use vacuums with rotating beater bars on hard surfaces.

### 2. Promptly address spots and spills.

- All spills should be addressed as quickly as possible to avoid staining and slip/fall hazards.
- Absorb wet spills and if necessary use a neutral pH vinyl cleaner\* and rinse with water.
- Isopropyl alcohol or mineral spirits can be used for oil/grease (petroleum-based) and/or scuff marks.

### 3. Remove scuffs.

- Cleaning with an auto scrubber or spray buffing with a spray/buff solutions\* using a low (175 rpm) machine and red pad will remove scuff marks. Agitation is the key to remove these marks.
- A tennis ball placed on the end of a stick, such as a broom handle, can be used as a tool to remove scuff marks. This allows you to remove scuffs from a standing position on smaller areas.

## WET CLEANING

- Always pre-vacuum or dry dust mop before wet cleaning.
- Use neutral pH vinyl cleaner\* and follow the manufacturer's instructions for dilution and use.
- Common systems are: 1) Micro fiber wet mop or mop and two-bucket system, and 2) Automatic scrubbing with a red 3M pad/equivalent brushes.
- Rinse the floor with clean water. Repeat the rinse process if necessary to remove all haze
- Do not use brown or black pads/brushes. These pads are too aggressive and can damage the floor.
- Products containing bleach and steam mops are not recommended.

The above guidelines are recommended to maintain LVT, LVP and sheet resilient products. Application of finish is optional in certain applications. Always follow the finish manufacturer's instructions for mixing and method of application. It is also recommended that if finish is applied, additional cleaning products be from the same manufacturer due to compatibility issues. Specialty floors such as sports floors with cushion back, ESD/static-control and floating floors will have exceptions to the maintenance guidelines. Contact the Information Center or Technical Support at 877.502.7429.

\*There are many available cleaning and maintenance products for hard surfaces, especially resilient floors. These products should be evaluated since each location can have different requirements due to the type of soil, performance expectations and available maintenance equipment. Applying finishes will change the original product and the finish becomes the wear layer. The following are suggested products to assist the maintenance program:

- Neutral Cleaners: Diversey STRIDE® or PROMINENCE®, Shaw Hard Surface Cleaner, Hilway Direct Neutral Cleaner
- Spray and Buff: Diversey SNAPBACK®
- Matte Finish: Diversey Carefree Matte® Hilway Direct Plus Matte

- Gloss Finish: Diversey Carefree® Hilway Direct Plus Gloss
- Technical phone numbers:
  - Diversey: 1.800.558.2332
  - Shield Industries for Shaw Cleaner: 1.877.209.7309
  - [www.1877floorguy.com](http://www.1877floorguy.com) 1.877.356-6748

**SUGGESTED FREQUENCY CHART FOR RESILIENT FLOOR CARE**

Traffic Level	Vacuum or Dust Mop	Spot Removal	Wet Mop or Auto-Scrub
Light <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Private offices</li> <li>• Cubicles</li> </ul>	2+ times per week	As needed	Wet Mop Weekly Scrub Quarterly
Moderate <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Shared offices</li> <li>• Secondary hallways</li> <li>• Conference rooms</li> <li>• Classrooms</li> </ul>	1 time per day	As needed	Wet Mop Daily Scrub Monthly
Heavy <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Common entrances</li> <li>• Elevators</li> <li>• Main hallways</li> <li>• Break rooms</li> <li>• Work rooms</li> <li>• Mail rooms</li> <li>• Patient rooms</li> <li>• Waiting areas</li> </ul>	1+ times per day	As needed	Wet Mop Daily Scrub Weekly

This chart represents a general guideline; identify and schedule your facility for specific conditions and frequencies.

## **RESILIENT SHEET – 15 YEAR COMMERCIAL LIMITED WARRANTY**

Shaw Industries, Inc. (“the Company”) warrants its resilient sheet products under this Limited Commercial Warranty when used in the proper fit for use indoor commercial applications.

The warranty belongs to you, the original end-use purchaser, and begins when you purchase the resilient and extends for the limited warranty period stated above. The basis of any warranty related claim is the original “Company” invoice or authorized “Company” dealer.

The resilient must be installed in accordance with the Company’s installation guidelines and specifications. The product must be maintained in accordance with the Company’s maintenance (resilient care) recommendations and such maintenance (resilient care) continues throughout the duration of the original installation. Damage resulting from a failure to follow installation and cleaning/maintenance guidelines will not be covered under this warranty.

Installation guidelines, specifications, and resilient care recommendations can be obtained from your dealer. For additional information, please see the bottom of this page.

### **WHAT THE WARRANTY COVERS**

**Manufacturing Defects** – The Company warrants that the resilient product will be free from manufacturing defects during the period of this warranty. Manufacturing defects include delamination, core voids, thickness variation, and dimensional stability defects. Dimensional stability related defects are defined as dimensional changes in the width and/or length of the product greater than the tolerances as defined in ASTM F2199. Thickness variation is defined as thickness exceeding the thickness tolerance as defined in ASTM F386.

**Wear** – The Company warrants, during the period of the warranty, wear due to normal foot traffic will not wear through to the pattern layer of the product.

**Top Down Moisture** – The Company warrants that for the stated warranty period, the structural integrity of the product will not be significantly diminished by exposure to water. While moisture will not affect the floor’s integrity, it is probable that, when excessive moisture accumulates in buildings or on building materials, mold (and/or) mildew growth can occur (particularly if the moisture problem remains undiscovered or unaddressed). Damage caused by mold and/or mildew growth, excessive moisture, hydrostatic pressure, floods, and standing water from leaky pipes is excluded from this warranty. This warranty does not cover: damage to surrounding structure, walls, subfloor, fixtures, furniture, underlayment, moldings, trims, subfloor heating elements, or anything not on the floor plank or tile; damage resulting from mold and mildew growth due to prolonged exposure to moisture; or flooring installed outdoor.

### **WHAT CONDITIONS APPLY?**

For jobsite and floor preparation conditions, see product specific installation guidelines. Any moisture related testing (i.e. relative humidity, pH, and calcium chloride) is not the responsibility of the Company and all issues related to moisture, including any resilient related issues, are excluded from this warranty. Chair floor protectors are recommended to inhibit premature wear of the surface of the resilient. Replacement resilient will come from current running-line products comparable to the warranted product.

Your warranty does not cover the following: damage caused by improper installation and/or maintenance; differences in color between products and samples or photographs; problems arising from excessive moisture, alkali or water pressure from the subfloor; indentation from improper loading including heavy static loads, high heels, spiked shoes, rolling loads, chairs or other furniture not using floor protectors; discoloration, including but not limited to U.V. light and heat sources; surface scratches, changes in shading, texture and/or gloss during use; damage caused by chemically reactive material, dye, mold, stains, spillage, burns, gouges, scratches, indentations, floods, accidents, abuse or any harsh scouring pads while buffing; and/or damage due to thermal heat sources.

### **WHAT IF YOU NEED WARRANTY SERVICE**

You, the original purchaser, will contact your authorized Company Dealer and/or Sales Representative for warranty or claim service.

Please provide a valid proof of purchase and a detailed description of the issue, along with photographs showing the concern. Samples should be submitted for testing when available.

Dealers/Shaw Sales Representatives will file a claim via [www.shawnow.com](http://www.shawnow.com) and submit the information you provided. A Shaw claims representative will thoroughly evaluate your claim.



Claims contact information: Shaw Industries Financial Services, PO Box 2128, Dalton, GA 30722 - 1-800-257-7429.

#### WHAT WILL SHAW DO

Should a defect covered under this warranty be found, the affected area will be repaired to conform to the warranty. If repair is not commercially practical, the Company may, at its sole option, replace the affected resilient or refund the proportional purchase price for the affected area. The Company will pay the reasonable costs for freight and labor. Any costs incurred for the moving of equipment, furnishings, partitions and the like, that were installed over the commercial product, will be at the consumer's expense.

**NOTE: The warranty is not transferable. It extends only to the original end use purchaser. Shaw Industries Inc. does not grant to any person or entity the authority to create for it any obligation or liability in connection with this product. Shaw Industries Inc. shall not be liable to the consumer or any other person or entity for any incidental, special or consequential damages, arising out of breach of this limited warranty or any implied limited warranty (excluding merchantability).**

**All implied warranties, including an implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose, are hereby limited to the duration of this limited warranty. Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of implied warranties or the limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitations or exclusions may not apply to the purchaser. This warranty gives the purchaser specific legal rights, such rights may vary from State to State.**

## Shaw 4100/Resilient Flooring Adhesive

For Installing Resilient Sheet, Plank & Tile Over Porous and Non-porous Floors

**Shaw 4100** is a premium high strength adhesive for installing resilient sheet, tiles and dimensionally stable resilient plank over porous and non-porous substrates. Shaw 4100 is a solvent free, water-based acrylic adhesive suggested for use in occupied buildings, as it is low in odor, and contains "zero" (calculated) VOC's.

The installation site must be acclimated with HVAC in operation. The floor and room temperature, as well as flooring materials and adhesive, must be maintained at 65°-85° F, and the humidity at or below 60% for 48 hours prior to, during, and after the testing and installation. Follow ASTM F710 guidelines for subfloor testing and preparation.

### Limitations for Use:

Concrete substrates must comply with limitations of moisture and alkalinity. In-situ Relative Humidity test must be performed per ASTM F2170. Results cannot exceed 95% RH and substrate pH readings should be between 7.0 and 10.0.

### Advantages:

- Low odor - contains no solvents or alcohols
- Zero (calculated) VOCs
- Very quick, strong bond development
- Water clean up when wet, use solvent when dry
- When used with Patcraft resilient products, installation carries an exclusive 10 year under bed warranty

**Substrates:** Sound and properly prepared concrete (above, on and below grade), APA approved wood subflooring, and existing clean resilient flooring. Substrates must be clean and dry, free of dust, dirt, paint, wax, existing adhesives or other contaminants that may interfere with the adhesive bond. Do not use on chemically cleaned substrates.

**Packaging:** 4 gallon EkoBox

**Suggested Trowel:** 1/16" Wide x 1/32" Deep x 1/32" Apart U-notched trowel

**Spread Rate:** 175–225 square feet/gallon or 700-900 square feet/ package

**Shelf Life:** 1 year from manufacturing date, in an unopened container.

This product is not photochemically reactive as defined by California Rules 102 and 443.

**IEQ:** VOC content is below that established by California SCAQMD Rule 1168.

### Application:

- **Porous substrates:** Resilient sheet flooring may be placed into adhesive after 10-20 minutes open time (flash-off) over a porous substrate.
- **Non-porous substrates:** Install sheet, tiles and plank flooring into adhesive as it becomes dry to the touch with little or no transfer to finger when touched. This will normally require 30 to 60 minutes of drying time at suggested installation temperature and humidity. Do not install flooring over adhesive that is too wet. Roll with a 100 lb. roller immediately after flooring is placed, ensuring complete contact with adhesive.

transforming performance.



# MATERIAL SAFETY DATA SHEET

SHAW 4100

Page 1 of 6

according to EC directive 2004/37/EC  
98/24/EC 92/85/EEC

## 1. Material / preparation and company designation

Company: Shaw Industries, Inc.  
P.O. Drawer 2128 Dalton, GA 30722  
Tel: 8004417429 Emergency Telephone No: 8005355053  
Manufacturing location: RESACA, GA 30735

**Emergency phone (CHEMTREC):** (800) 424-9300

Date printed: 03/30/2011 Date Revised: 03/30/11 Supersedes: 02/16/11

## 2. List / data of components

Information on hazardous ingredients: No toxic chemical(s) subject to the reporting requirements of section 313 of Title III and/or 40 CFR 372 are present.

Chemical name: Acrylic Water Emulsion Adhesive  
Product code: 4100 %w/w:  
CAS-no.: mixture Hazard Symbol: N/A  
EC-no.: N/A R-phases: N/A  
Formula: No information available. HMIS codes: 1-0-0-B  
See section 16 for the full text of the Hazard symbols and R-phrases.

## 3. Possible hazards

May cause slight irritation of the skin and eyes. May be an ingestion hazard. This product is not for human consumption.

## 4. First aid measures

**Inhalation:** Remove to fresh air immediately and consult medical attention from a licensed healthcare professional.

**Skin contact:** Wash affected area immediately in flowing water (warm if readily available) for at least 15 minutes (carefully remove contaminated or protective clothing while washing) and consult medical attention from a licensed healthcare professional.

**Eye contact:** Flush eyes immediately with plenty of water for 15 minutes including under upper and lower eyelids. Washing eyes within one minute is essential to achieve maximum effectiveness. Remove contact lenses after the first 5 minutes. Obtain medical attention from a licensed healthcare professional as soon as possible.

**Ingestion:** Never give anything by mouth if victim is unconscious or having convulsions; seek medical attention from a licensed healthcare professional. Do not induce vomiting unless directed to do so by medical personnel.



# MATERIAL SAFETY DATA SHEET

according to EC directive 2004/37/EC  
98/24/EC 92/85/EEC

SHAW 4100

Page 2 of 6

## 5. Measures in case of fire

**Suitable extinguishing media:** Chemical Foam, CO<sub>2</sub>, Water Fog.

**Hazardous decomposition/combustion products:** Thermal decomposition should produce only normal Hydrocarbon combustion products. Products of thermal decomposition may be harmful.

**Special protective equipment for fire fighters:** None; this product is non-flammable in aqueous form (as supplied).

**Other information:** None known; non-combustible and non-explosive as supplied. If ignited by excessive heat or open flame, this product will burn. Burning material may emit toxic fumes. Firefighters should wear NIOSH-approved self-contained breathing apparatus with full face piece, operated in positive pressure mode. Wear full firefighting protective clothing. Use water fog to cool containers exposed to extreme heat.

## 6. Accidental release procedures

**personal precautions:** Use protective equipment when in confined area. Self-contained breathing apparatus must be available in case of emergency. Use caution to avoid falls.

**environmental precautions:** Ventilate area and evacuate non-essential personnel. Dike and contain spill for possible recovery and to prevent from entering waterways. Eliminate sources of ignition from the spill area.

**methods for cleaning up / taking up:** Recover as much as possible; wash floors afterwards with water. Smaller spills may be wiped from surfaces or absorbed onto inert material and handled as solid waste. Place discarded material in closed, labelled containers for disposal. Do not allow material into sewers, on the ground or into any body of water. Measurement of certain physical properties and analysis for regulated components may be necessary to make a determination for product meeting the criteria of a hazardous waste. Must be disposed of in accordance with all local, state, federal and international regulations.

## 7. Handling and storage

Adhere to work practice rules established by government regulations (e.g. OSHA).

**Advice on protection against fire and explosion:** None known.

**Storage requirements:** Use reasonable care to avoid skin and eye contact. Do not eat, drink or smoke in working area. Food, beverages, and tobacco products should not be carried, stored, or consumed where this material is in use. Keep containers closed when not in use. Protect containers against physical damage. Store in a cool (4 °C – 43 °C / 40 °F – 110 °F), dry, well-ventilated area inside. Do not allow product to freeze. If needed, stir before using. 'Empty' containers retain product residue (liquid and/or vapor) and should be handled with caution. Any use of this product in a process should be evaluated to establish and maintain safe operating procedures.

# MATERIAL SAFETY DATA SHEET

SHAW 4100

Page 3 of 6

according to EC directive 2004/37/EC  
98/24/EC 92/85/EEC

## 8. Engineering controls

**Exposure limits:** No information available. Consult local authorities for acceptable exposure limits.

**Personal protection:** None necessary under normal conditions (adequate ventilation). If necessary, use NIOSH-approved respiratory protection. Recommended Local exhaust. Exhaust systems should be designed to move the air away from the source of vapor/aerosol generation and people working at this point. Ventilation must be adequate to maintain contaminant concentration below permissible exposure limits. Ventilation should be in accordance with OSHA regulations. Properly maintain and have readily available an eyewash/safety shower facility in the work area.

**Hand protection:** Use gloves impervious to this material. The breakthrough time of the selected glove(s) must be greater than the intended use period. NOTICE: The selection of a specific glove for a particular application and duration of use in a workplace should also take into account all relevant workplace factors such as, but not limited to: Other chemicals which may be handled, physical requirements (cut/puncture protection, dexterity, thermal protection), potential body reactions to glove materials, as well as the instructions/specifications provide by the glove supplier. Before eating, drinking, smoking or using the toilet, wash face and hands thoroughly with soap and water.

**Eye protection:** Recommend the use of safety eyewear including splashguards or side shields. If splashing is likely, wear a face shield.

**Skin and body:** Gloves, Apron or protective coveralls may be needed to help prevent soiling of skin and clothing. Wear proper safety boots. Contaminated clothing and shoes should be cleaned before reuse or disposed of as necessary.

## 9. Physical and chemical data

**Form:** Paste

**Color:** White

**Odor:** Mild, characteristic

**Boiling point/range:** 100 °C/212 °F

**Melting point/range:** No information available.

**Flash point:** >100 °C/212 °F

**Flammability:** No flashing

**Autoignition temperatures:** No information available.

**Explosion limits:** No information available.

**Vapor pressure:** No information available.

**Density:** 1090 – 1190 kg/m<sup>3</sup>

**Solubility in water:** Insoluble

**Solubility in other solvents:** No information available.

**pH:** 8.0 – 9.0

**Percent Volatile by Volume :** 30 - 35% (as water)

**VOC Content:** less than 0.5 g/L

**Partition coefficient :** No information available.

**n-octanol/water:** No information available.



# MATERIAL SAFETY DATA SHEET

SHAW 4100

Page 4 of 6

according to EC directive 2004/37/EC  
98/24/EC 92/85/EEC

## 10. Stability and reactivity data

**Conditions to avoid:** Stable. Avoid freezing, heat, sparks, open flames or sources of ignition. Hazardous polymerization will not occur.

**Materials to avoid:** None known.

**Hazardous decomposition products:** Thermal decomposition should produce only normal hydrocarbon combustion products. Products of thermal decomposition may be harmful.

## 11. Toxicological properties Acute toxicity data:

Oral LD50: No information available. Dermal LD50: No information available. Inhalation LC50: No information available.

### Irritation

Skin: Slight Irritant Eye: Slight irritant Sensitization: No information available. Genotoxicity: No information available.

**Other toxicological information:** No information available.

## 12. Ecological properties

### Ecotoxic effects:

Fish: No information available. Daphnia: No information available. Algae: 96h-EC50 (Cell count):

No information available.

## 13. Disposal conditions

**product:** Do not allow material into sewers, on the ground or into any body of water. Measurement of certain physical properties and analysis for regulated components may be necessary to make a determination for product meeting the criteria of a hazardous waste. Empty' containers retain product residue (liquid and/or vapor) and should be handled with caution. Must be disposed of in accordance with all local, state, federal and international regulations.

**Contaminated packaging:** No information available.

**Waste code number:** Please refer to your specific industry in the EUROPEAN WASTE CATALOGUE.







# MATERIAL SAFETY DATA SHEET

SHAW 4100

Page 6 of 6

according to EC directive 2004/37/EC  
98/24/EC 92/85/EEC

## 16. Other information:

### Legend:

S61 – avoid release to the environment

Do not handle until the Manufacturer's Safety Precautions have been read and understood. This data is up to the current level of our knowledge and experience. The safety data sheet is only intended to give a description of products with regard to safety requirements. However, it is not to be taken as a warranty or representation for which the supplier assumes legal responsibility. Any use of this information and data must be determined by the user to be in accordance with applicable federal, state and local laws and regulations.

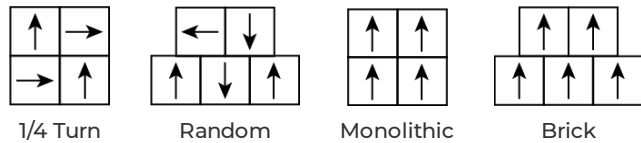
# M | Surface Striation

## PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

<b>COLLECTION</b>	Gemscape
<b>STYLE NUMBER</b>	I0552
<b>PRODUCT TYPE</b>	Modular
<b>CONSTRUCTION</b>	Multi-Level Pattern Loop
<b>FIBER TYPE</b>	Solution Q® Nylon
<b>DYE METHOD</b>	100% Solution Dyed
<b>PRIMARY BACKING</b>	Non-Woven Synthetic
<b>SECONDARY BACKING</b>	Strataworx

	<b>US Units</b>	<b>Metric Units</b>
<b>PRODUCT SIZE</b>	24 inches x 24 inches	60.96 cm x 60.96 cm
<b>GAUGE</b>	1/10 inches	39.37 per 10 cm
<b>STITCHES</b>	10 per inches	40 per 10 cm
<b>FINISHED PILE THICKNESS</b>	0.118 inches	3 mm
<b>AVERAGE DENSITY</b>	4881 oz/yd <sup>3</sup>	
<b>TOTAL THICKNESS</b>	0.245 inches	6.22 mm
<b>TUFTED YARN WEIGHT</b>	16 oz/yd <sup>2</sup>	542.5 g/m <sup>2</sup>

## Installation Methods



## Performance Testing

<b>PILL TEST</b>	Pass
<b>RADIANT PANEL</b>	Class I
<b>NBS SMOKE</b>	Less than 450
<b>ELECTROSTATIC PROPENSITY</b>	Less than 3.5 kv
<b>CRI GREENLABEL PLUS</b>	GLP2671
<b>ADA COMPLIANCE</b>	>0.6, meets the recommended static coefficient of friction for ADA walking surfaces and accessible routes

# M | Surface Striation

## Environmental Specifications

**RECYCLABILITY** 100% recyclable

## Materials

### Ingredients

**DOES NOT CONTAIN** does not contain PVC, phthalates or PBD/PBDE

### Recycled Content

**TOTAL RECYCLED CONTENT (BY WEIGHT)** 27%

**PRE-CONSUMER** 25%

**POST-CONSUMER** 2%

**BIO-BASED/RAPIDLY RENEWABLE CONTENT (BY WEIGHT)** 0%

**PACKAGING** 100% recyclable

**COUNTRY OF ORIGIN (MANUFACTURER)** USA

Meets or exceeds all local and national regulations in country of manufacture. Manufactured in an ISO9001 & ISO14001 certified facility or equivalent. Recycled content is calculated using system allocation, mass balance, and direct insertion. The actual recycled content in this product will likely vary. For more information email [info@patcraft.com](mailto:info@patcraft.com).

## Third Party Certifications

**MBDC CRADLE TO CRADLE** Silver Certified

**NSF 140** gold certified

**CRI GREEN LABEL PLUS** Certified GLP2671

**USGBC LEED** contributes

Specifications are subject to nominal manufacturing variances. Material supply and/or manufacturing processes may necessitate specification changes without notice. This carpet is an exclusive design and may not be duplicated in any manner. Use of this design in the creation of another carpet design is also strictly prohibited. Visit [patcraft.com/testing](http://patcraft.com/testing) for more information.

## Maintenance of Shaw Contract Group Carpets

Shaw Contract Group tile and broadloom carpets are quality engineered to provide a long useful life and enhance the indoor environment. Carpet offers many advantages over other flooring systems, such as reduced fatigue, sound absorption, and lower life cycle costs.

From the start, the carpet maintenance program should be considered part of the carpet buying decision. If proper maintenance is neglected, the carpet's appearance will suffer, shortening the carpet's useful life and raising long term costs.

A comprehensive carpet care program consists of four elements:

- Reduction of soil entering the building
- Removal of dry soil
- Removal of spots and spills
- Cleaning by high performance hot water extraction

**NOTE:** The information in this booklet pertains to most carpets made of synthetic or man-made fibers in commercial installations. Some procedures may not be suitable for wool or wool-blend carpets or printed carpets. For these type carpets, please see the special appropriate maintenance brochure from the Shaw Industries Technical Services Department.

**NOTE:** This document contains specific procedures for maintenance of printed carpets.

### THE IMPORTANCE OF PLANNING

A successful maintenance program starts with the selection of carpet that meets specific performance requirements. Attributes include construction, backing, yarn, dye type, and color. Color and pattern are major factors in the perception of a successful maintenance program. The visual degree of soiling is measured as color contrast. The best soil hiding colors are usually medium to dark shades. These are best specified for known areas having severe traffic and soil.

Carpet maintenance must be established as a scheduled program, rather than being a random series of reactions to soiling conditions and infrequent cleaning. Virtually every complaint of poor appearance, rapid soiling, and many times poor performance has been shown to be related to a lack of planning and control of the maintenance program.

The most important consideration when planning a maintenance program is the budget. Like other expensive furnishings or equipment, carpet represents a substantial investment for any facility and deserves adequate care to prolong its effective life. If the carpet maintenance budget is set unrealistically low, the carpet will need to be replaced prematurely.

Tailor the design of the program to the amount of traffic and type of soiling which vary by area. Due to higher traffic levels, entrance lobbies, elevators, and hallways will need more care than offices. Food service areas and entrances will require more effort due to the more difficult soiling conditions. Consult the chart for suggested frequencies by traffic levels.

Traffic Level	Vacuum	Spot Clean	Hot Water Extraction
Light	2-3 times/week	As needed	Annually
Medium	Daily	As needed	Twice/year
Heavy	1+ times/day	As needed	Quarterly
Extra Heavy	1+ times/day	As needed	Minimum Monthly/as needed

- **Light traffic:** private offices & cubicles
- **Medium traffic:** shared offices, interior hallways & conference rooms
- **Heavy traffic:** entrances, elevators, main hallways, break rooms, work/copy rooms & mailrooms
- **Extra Heavy traffic:** airports & entries to hospitals, malls & theaters (requires frequent attention)



## WHAT YOU CAN EXPECT FROM YOUR CARPET IN THE REAL WORLD

Although Shaw Industries products are designed for specific applications and are tested to withstand the tremendous beating that carpet receives in some uses, there are some conditions where appearance change must be expected. Carpet and other flooring materials where the oily material from asphalt sealers is tracked into the building may become yellowed over time. This material stains not only carpet but other flooring materials as well. It is virtually impossible to remove all of this material once it has penetrated the fiber of any carpet. Walk off mats and periodic cleaning can reduce this phenomenon. When sealing asphalt parking lots specify a high quality sealer and ask the vendor for a warranty that this will not occur.

Areas where large amounts of sandy soil enter the building may become dull in appearance over time. This is due to abrasion of the fiber surface, reducing the reflection of light. This is minimized by frequent vacuuming.

## REDUCTION OF SOILING

One of the most critical aspects of maintenance is the use of walk-off mats at building entrances. Mats are also one of the least understood and neglected parts of the maintenance program. Walk-off mats greatly reduce the amount of soil carried into a building by foot traffic. Other areas where mats are beneficial are service entrances with direct contact to the outside, from the hard surface area in a kitchen to the carpeted dining area in a restaurant, or at entrances from plant facilities into the offices. Various studies have shown that the cost of removing a pound of soil from a building ranges up to \$500 or more! Clearly, it is far cheaper to stop the dirt at the door.

The choice of mats is important because the cheaper mats do a poor job of trapping soil and have a short life span. Walk-off mats fall into two categories; those designed to remove and trap gritty soil and those intended to absorb water during wet weather. They should be used in combination.

Good soil removal mats have a coarse texture, are able to brush soil from shoes, and can hold large amounts of soil in their pile. The water absorbent mat is used inside to prevent tracked in moisture from getting to the carpet. A wet carpet acts like a giant shoe cleaner and soils rapidly. When both types of mats are used in combination, they should always be placed so that incoming traffic passes over the soil removal mat first, because the absorbent types have very little soil holding ability.

For mats to continue to trap soil, they should be cleaned on a regular basis, more frequently than the carpet. If accumulated soil is not removed, the mat will become overloaded and cannot prevent soil from entering the building - the mat may even become a source of soil itself. When a building is new or still under construction, soil may be tracked in from unfinished grounds so the mats need to be cleaned more often.

## REMOVAL OF DRY SOIL

Vacuuming is the most significant element in the maintenance of carpet and the overall appearance of the facility. Research has shown that 85% of the soil tracked into a building is dry, and the other 15% is oily. Vacuums are designed to remove the dry soil. Walking on soiled carpet permits the soil particles to work their way down into the pile where they are more difficult to remove. Frequent vacuuming removes soil particles from the surface before this happens. Heavily trafficked areas, such as entrances and major corridors, should be vacuumed at least once a day. Areas with less traffic such as offices should be vacuumed every other day depending upon conditions.

Vacuum Cleaner Recommendations:

- We only recommend use of vacuums certified in The Carpet and Rug Institute ([www.carpet-rug.org](http://www.carpet-rug.org)) Vacuum Cleaning Indoor Air Quality Program. Vacuums specifically designed for commercial installations offer characteristics that help meet the demands of a good maintenance program.
- For carpet tile and carpets that are glued directly to the floor without cushion, a vacuum with a rotating cylindrical brush, rather than a beater bar, should be used to agitate the pile and loosen the soil. Beater bars can damage the pile of direct-glued carpet if the machine height adjustment is set too low. This can also damage the vacuum.

- Vacuums with either a beater bar or rotating brush can be used for carpet installed over pad, or with attached cushion backings. These vacuums are also recommended for double stick installations where the carpet is glued to the pad.
- Bags that fill from the top are preferred over those that fill from the bottom. Replaceable paper bags or paper liners for cloth bags are better filters than cloth bags alone because they can trap more of the small particles that cloth bags allow to pass back into the air. Many vacuums can also be used with micro filtration or high efficiency bags, which capture even smaller particles that tend to be related to allergy complaints and may also reduce the need for dusting. Check bags frequently and replace when 1/2 to 2/3 full to avoid a decrease in efficiency. When changing bags, also check the belt and replace if loose or worn.
- A good vacuum is vital to prolonging the life of your carpet. A cheap vacuum can remove surface dirt but may not effectively remove the hidden particles embedded in the pile. This can lead to rapid appearance loss and complaints of poor product performance. A hundred dollars saved on the price of a vacuum can easily cost thousands of dollars in reduced useful life of the carpet.

## PILE LIFTING

Between cleanings, regular use of a pile lifter can remove deeply embedded dry sand and soil, help stand up the pile and renew the appearance of the carpet in high traffic areas such as traffic funnel zones, elevators, and lobbies. A pile lifter is an upright two motor vacuum with a large, adjustable motor driven brush, a high suction vacuum motor, and a sand trap. Using a pile lifter in traffic lanes just prior to cleaning removes the deeply embedded soil and opens up the pile so the hot water extraction can be more effective. Follow the pile lifting with a thorough vacuuming.

## SPOT AND SOIL REMOVAL

All maintenance procedures mentioned thus far have been planned; spot and stain removal is the reaction to an unplanned incident. Therefore, it is desirable to have the needed materials handy by planning ahead of time. The professional cleaning companies have spot removal kits in convenient carrying cases that contain all the necessary materials. For assistance with specific stain removal procedures, contact Shaw Industries Technical Services Department at 1.877.502.7429.

General Instructions:

Spot removal products that have been tested and certified in the Carpet and Rug Institute (CRI) Seal of Approval Program for cleaning products are recommended for specific spots. (Reference [www.carpet-rug.org](http://www.carpet-rug.org)) Additional spot removal procedures are listed below if professional and CRI certified products are not available:

- Scoop up any solids gently with a spoon or dull knife. Absorb wet spills as quickly as possible by blotting with white paper or cloth towels.
- Always blot, never scrub or rub abrasively, because it may create a fuzzy area. When blotting, work from the outer edge in toward the center of the spot to avoid spreading the spill and enlarging the problem.
- Thorough removal of both the stain material and the detergent residue is critical to prevent re-soiling. Water extraction is the best way to accomplish this. Many cleaning equipment manufacturers offer small extraction machines specially designed for spot cleaning. These are small, lightweight and highly portable. They do an excellent job of rinsing after spot cleaning. They are also an excellent way to deal with body fluids on the carpet. For additional information on these machines call the Shaw Technical Services Department.
- Place several layers of white towels on the spot to draw out any remaining moisture. Weight them down with a heavy object that will not transfer color, such as a plastic jug of water.

## REMOVAL PROCEDURES

Adhesive	Clean with solvent designed for grease removal. Follow with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Alcoholic Beverages	Clean with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Betadine	Clean with solvent designed for grease removal. Follow with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Blood	Clean with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner. If blood is dry, an ammonia solution may be used.
Butter	Clean with solvent designed for grease removal. Follow with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Chewing Gum	Freeze, then shatter and vacuum. Clean with a solvent designed for grease removal. Follow with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Chocolate	Clean with ammonia solution. Follow with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Coffee	Clean with a white vinegar solution or acidic spot cleaner. Follow with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Cola	Clean with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Cosmetics	Clean with solvent designed for grease removal. Follow with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Crayon	Clean with solvent designed for grease removal. Follow with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Deicer, Salt	Vacuum and blot. Then clean with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Excrement	Blot and clean with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Food	Clean with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Furniture Polish	Clean with solvent designed for grease removal. Follow with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Grease	Clean with solvent designed for grease removal. Follow with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Ink	Clean with solvent designed for grease removal. Follow with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.

Lipstick	Clean with solvent designed for grease removal. Follow with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Milk	Clean with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Mustard	Clean with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Nail Polish	Clean with polish remove. Then clean with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Paint	Clean with solvent designed for grease removal. Follow with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Rust	Contact a professional.
Tea	Clean with a white vinegar solution or acidic spot cleaner. Follow with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner. Then clean R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Toner	Vacuum, then clean with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Unknown	Clean with solvent designed for grease removal. Follow with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Urine or Vomit	Clean with a white vinegar solution or acidic spot cleaner. Follow with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner. Then clean with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Wax	Freeze, then shatter and vacuum. Clean with a solvent designed for grease removal. Follow with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.
Wine	Clean with solvent designed for grease removal. Follow with R2Xtra or another general purpose cleaner.

## CLEANING

Even with thorough vacuuming, cleaning is necessary to remove the 15% of soil, which is the oily type material, as well as that which the vacuum cannot remove. In order to maintain acceptable appearance, the carpet must be cleaned on a periodic basis to prevent the carpet from becoming so dirty that it can no longer be cleaned satisfactorily. The frequency of cleaning must be adjusted to the rate at which soil accumulates; therefore, heavily trafficked areas typically require more frequent cleaning, as do areas with less traffic but more soil.

When the color of the carpet begins to look dull, it is time to clean the carpet. The traffic lanes will show this first. If the carpet is cleaned before it becomes excessively soiled, the cleaning will be more successful and a much easier task. This is especially important in places where oily soil is prevalent, such as the areas near streets or asphalt parking lots, and those around cooking or dining facilities. Oil tends to oxidize slowly, forming a sticky material similar to varnish, which becomes nearly impossible to remove as it ages.

Another stubborn problem is the salt or deicer from snow melt which accumulates in the carpet over winter. Salt pulls moisture from the air and prevents the carpet from drying as quickly as it normally would. Remember that damp carpet acts like a wet sponge to clean shoes and collect soil faster. The resulting black discoloration in the traffic lanes requires pretreatment with a traffic lane cleaner to break down the soiling and the use of hot, not warm, water to dissolve and remove the salt and soil. Residue from snow melt can cause possible damage, including discoloration. Salt is also an abrasive substance, which can cause damage to the fibers.

## THE CLEANING SYSTEM

A number of cleaning systems are available; their effectiveness varies widely. When choosing the cleaning system, the important considerations are:

- It must clean effectively
- It must not damage the texture of the carpet
- It must not leave excessive residues of cleaning materials.

Shaw Industries recommendations are based on significant laboratory work and many years of experience in the field. Shaw recommends only the high performance hot water extraction system, which research indicates provides the best capability for cleaning. This system is commonly referred to as "steam cleaning" although no steam is actually generated. The process consists of applying a cleaning agent onto the pile, and using water in the extractor to recover the used solution and soil. This can be done from a truck-mounted unit outside the facility with only the hose and wand brought inside, or where a truck-mounted unit cannot reach, by a portable system brought into the facility.

A list of cleaning products that have been tested and certified in the Carpet and Rug Institute (CRI) Seal of Approval Program may be found at [www.carpet-rug.org](http://www.carpet-rug.org). For additional assistance contact Inforum at 1.800.471.7429.

The Hot Water Extraction method using high performance equipment should be the primary scheduled method to clean carpets. Shaw Industries recommends the use of Hot water extraction equipment, which has obtained a Gold Rating in the Carpet and Rug Institute (CRI) Seal of Approval Program. A list of equipment that has obtained the Gold Rating may be found at [www.carpet-rug.org](http://www.carpet-rug.org).

Self-contained, walk-behind machines are another type of hot water extraction equipment commonly used. They apply the cleaning solution at a rate, which is balanced with the recovery capability of the machine. This type machine is often employed when cleaning is done by in-house maintenance staffs. Since these machines cannot equal the performance of high performance extractors, their use should be scheduled as an interim frequency supplemented by periodic high performance cleaning.

When necessary interim cleaning systems are successful when used to supplement the extraction program. These interim cleaning processes help enhance the carpet's appearance between deep cleanings.



Low moisture encapsulation systems are also interim cleaning processes that enable the carpet's appearance to be improved and returned to service in a short amount of time. The cleaning agent is agitated into the carpet's pile with a mechanical brush, allowed to dry and vacuumed to remove the encapsulated soil from the carpet. In conjunction with scheduled Hot Water Extraction cleanings, the low moisture systems can help maintain a satisfactory appearance.

## SHAW DOES NOT RECOMMEND

- “Bonnet” systems:
  - The name for these systems is derived from the rotating bonnet of terry cloth or other absorbent material used to agitate the pile and pick up soil. A detergent solution is sprayed onto the pile, and is then worked with the bonnet attached to a rotary floor polisher. It is at best a temporary appearance enhancement because it only absorbs at the surface and does no real extraction of deep soil. SHAW DOES NOT ADVOCATE THIS SYSTEM. It is not a substitute for hot water extraction.
  - It has very limited capability for soil removal and often leaves most of the detergent in the pile. The spinning bonnet may distort the pile of cut pile carpets and leave distinct swirl marks.
  - Shaw's experience has been that more customer soiling complaints result from this system than all other causes combined!
  - The bonnet system may damage the edges of some carpet tiles.
- Water recycling machines
  - Shaw Industries does not recommend any cleaning machine, which continuously recycles the cleaning solution. A growing body of experience is showing that although the large particles are filtered out, the soluble materials, including detergents and soluble contaminants are distributed over the whole area. With repeated cleanings these materials become more concentrated and begin to cause rapid resoiling.

## CHOOSING A PROFESSIONAL CLEANER

One way to locate a nearby professional carpet cleaner who uses a hot water extraction system is to contact the Institute of Inspection, Cleaning & Restoration Certification (IICRC) at 1.800.835.4624 or [www.iicrc.org](http://www.iicrc.org).

This organization maintains a national directory of independent professional cleaners who are trained and certified in a variety of cleaning specialties. You must specifically request a professional cleaner using hot water extraction. IICRC certified firms with the “Master Cleaner” certification are preferred.

## BASIC GUIDELINES FOR IN-HOUSE MAINTENANCE

If you choose to maintain your carpet using in-house personnel, here are some guidelines to follow. For a good reference describing carpet cleaning and the hot water extraction method specifically, read the Carpet Cleaning Standard, (S100) by the IICRC, available at the number listed above.

- Thoroughly vacuum the area to be cleaned before the hot water extraction to remove as much dry soil as possible. Use a pile lifter if necessary in high traffic areas.
- Remove spots and stains using the procedures above or a commercially available spot removal kit. Pre-treat the heavily soiled areas and traffic lanes with traffic lane cleaner certified in the Carpet and Rug Institute (CRI) Seal of Approval Program ([www.carpet-rug.org](http://www.carpet-rug.org)). Agitate the carpet using carpet rake or agitation equipment. This allows the cleaning agent to penetrate. A minimum of ten minutes of dwell time is recommended to allow the cleaning agent time to loosen contaminants. Although it is advisable to minimize the use of solvents, many traffic lane cleaners do contain some solvents to help remove the stubborn oily dirt often found in traffic areas. Treat a small area and extract the liquid before the traffic lane cleaner dries.
- On most commercial carpets, use a detergent with a pH less than 10, preferably near 9, and with a minimum of non-sticky residue. For printed carpets, use a detergent solution that has a pH between 6 and 8.

- Cleaning products that have been tested and certified in the Carpet and Rug Institute (CRI) Seal of Approval Program for Cleaning Products are recommended. For additional assistance contact Inforum at 1.800.471.7429.
- Your detergent selection is important. It is even more important to remove all the detergent you put into the carpet. A detergents' ability to bind to particles of soil and oil is what makes cleaning happen. However, the detergent residue continues to attract and hold soil even after drying. Increasing the amount of detergent beyond the recommended level does not increase cleaning performance, but makes the complete removal of detergent more difficult. Excessive detergent residue is the most common cause of accelerated resoiling complaints. Shaw does not recommend the use of cleaning agents with optical brighteners.
- Avoid over-wetting the carpet. Prolonged dampness may cause discoloration, promote growth of mildew and bacteria in the carpet, or cause separation of the backing. This can be controlled by a combination of proper equipment and operator training.
- Do not use any silicone-based anti-soil treatments on carpet produced by Shaw.
- Reduce drying time by using several fans or air movers to move air across the carpet in combination with a dehumidifier or air conditioner to pull moisture out of the air. Carpet should be completely dry within 12 hours or less.

11/2013

## **Lifetime Commercial Limited Wear Warranty for – Eco Solution Q® nylon**

Our Eco Solution Q nylon is Shaw Industries premium branded nylon.

The following is the Lifetime Commercial Limited Warranty issued by Shaw Industries, Inc (“Shaw”) for our Eco Solution Q nylon.

This warranty begins when the carpeting is purchased. The carpet must be installed in accordance with Shaw’s installation guidelines and specifications. The carpet must be maintained in accordance with Shaw’s maintenance (carpet care) recommendations and such maintenance (carpet care) continues throughout the duration of the original installation.

The Lifetime Commercial Warranty is further limited to the period of time the carpet is owned and maintained by the original end-use purchaser. The basis of any warranty related claim is the original Shaw invoice or authorized Shaw dealer invoice.

Installation guidelines and specifications along with carpet care recommendations can be obtained from your dealer or from Shaw Contract Group at 1-877-502-7429 or on-line at the Shaw Contract Group web site at [www.shawcontractgroup.com](http://www.shawcontractgroup.com).

### **What the lifetime commercial limited warranty covers:**

**Fiber - Abrasive Wear** – Shaw warrants that, under normal use, carpet using Eco Solution Q nylon will lose no more than 10% of the pile face fiber, by weight, during the warranty period. This warranty does not cover appearance retention, matting and crushing and normal appearance changes in high traffic areas.

**Fiber - Static Protection** - Shaw warrants that, under normal use, carpet using Eco Solution Q nylon will not generate static build-up in excess of 3.5 kv, during the warranty period as tested by AATCC Test Method 134.

### **What you should do if any of the above problems occur and you need warranty service:**

You (the original purchaser) should notify the authorized Shaw Dealer and/or your sales representative and submit in writing, the following:

- A valid proof of purchase in the form of a sales receipt or other documents which establish proof of purchase.
- A detailed description of the problem and/or a photograph/sample that clearly shows the warranty problem.

To: [www.shawonline.com](http://www.shawonline.com) or Shaw Industries – Financial Services, P.O. Box 40, Dalton, GA 30722.

Shaw will designate a representative to inspect the Carpet containing Eco Solution Q nylon and evaluate the warranty claim.

### **What Shaw will do should you need warranty service:**

Should a defect covered under this warranty be found, the affected area will be repaired to conform to the warranty. If repair is not commercially practical, Shaw may, at its sole option, replace the affected carpet or refund the proportional purchase price for the affected area.

Shaw will pay the reasonable costs for freight and labor. Any costs incurred for the moving of equipment, furnishings, partitions and the like, that were installed over the Shaw's Commercial product will be at the consumer's expense.

**What conditions apply to Shaw Industries lifetime commercial limited warranty:**

1. This warranty specifically excludes general soiling, discoloration, appearance change due to pile distortion, and exposure to substances or contaminants which degrade or destroy nylon yarn or the color of the carpet.
2. This warranty specifically excludes carpet which has been surface treated with materials not recommended by Shaw or which have been subjected to abnormal use or to cleaning agents or maintenance methods not recommended or approved by Shaw.

**Please note - The warranty is not transferable. It extends only to the original retail purchaser. Shaw does not grant to any person or entity the authority to create for it any obligation or liability in connection with this product. Shaw shall not be liable to the consumer or any other person or entity for any incidental, special or consequential damages, arising out of breach of this limited warranty or any implied limited warranty (excluding merchantability). All implied warranties, including an implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose, are hereby limited to the duration of this limited warranty. Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of implied warranties or the limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitations or exclusions may not apply to the purchaser. This warranty gives the purchaser specific legal rights, such rights may vary from State to State.**

<b>Shaw 5100</b>	<b>Carpet Tile Adhesive</b>
------------------	-----------------------------

**DESCRIPTION**

Shaw 5100 is a premium, acrylic based pressure sensitive adhesive for the installation of Shaw Carpet tile or non-vinyl backed carpet tile.

**APPROVED SUBSTRATES**

- For interior use only.
- Wood Association approved wood underlayment and subflooring. See [Wood Substrate Information](#)
- Sound and properly prepared concrete (on, above or below grade), metal, wood, fiberglass and terrazzo.
- Existing products should be over 1 year old, secure and fully adhered with a full spread of adhesive. Remove all waxes and polishes from the existing floor before installation.

**SUBSTRATE TESTING**

- RH-95% (ASTM F-2170), provided the site is absent of hydrostatic pressure.
  - CaCl / MVER 10 lbs (ASTM F-1869)
  - pH-5-11 (ASTM F-710)
- Shaw recognizes the RH test as the qualifying standard.
- For older slabs or slabs with a prior history of moisture related issues, Shaw Technical Support recommends moisture mitigation in the form of a 2-part epoxy system, such as MoistureTEK.
- For newer slabs with an intact moisture retarder, initial moisture levels should recede over time. For recorded levels above 95%, higher moisture resistant adhesives are recommended

**SUBSTRATE PREPARATION**

- Substrate must be structurally sound, clean, level and dry.
- Substrate must be free of dust, dirt, oil, grease, paint, curing agents, concrete sealers, adhesives, loosely bonded toppings, loose particles and any other substance or condition that may prevent or reduce adhesion.
- Do not use over substrates containing asbestos or active cutback.
- Fill depressions or cracks with a cementitious patching / leveling compound that meet or exceed Shaw Industries maximum moisture level and pH requirements. Use of gypsum-based patching and/or leveling compounds which contain Portland or high alumina cement and meet or exceed the compressive strength of 3,000 psi are acceptable.
- Installation site must be acclimated with HVAC in operation or the temperature must be controlled between 65-95°F (18-35°C) and the ambient relative humidity controlled between 30-65% before, during and permanently after the installation.
- Do not use over chemically abated substrates.

**APPLICATION INSTRUCTIONS**

Read and follow the product specific installation guidelines for layout, design and any special instructions for installation.

- Spread adhesive using the recommended trowel or roller.
- Spread adhesive evenly over substrate, keeping the trowel at a 45° angle to the substrate.

	Porous	Non-Porous	
Flash Time	15 minutes	30 minutes	The waiting time required before installing floor covering.
Working Time	8-hours	8-hours	The window of time for the adhesive to accept floor covering.
Note:	Coverage rate, flash time and working time may vary based on temperature, humidity, substrate porosity, jobsite conditions and application practices. <b>Areas with lower than normal relative humidity will result in a reduced working time.</b>		

After installation, roll floor covering with a 75 – 100 lb. roller.  
**Areas with lower than normal relative humidity will result in a reduced working time.**  
 For releasable installations, allow the adhesive to become clear and tacky with no transfer.  
 For permanent bond installations, install carpet tile into semi-wet adhesive.



**RECOMMENDED TOOLS AND SPREAD RATES**

1/16" x 1/32" x 5/64" U-notch trowel (1.6 x 0.8 x 2 mm)	28 – 33 yd <sup>2</sup> /gallon 250 – 300 ft <sup>2</sup> /gallon
3/8" foam or medium nap roller	35 – 40 yd <sup>2</sup> /gallon 300 – 350 ft <sup>2</sup> /gallon
spray - applied	Ensure that spray patterns overlap by 1/3 (400 ft <sup>2</sup> /gallon)

**Note:** Coverages are estimates only. Actual jobsite coverages may vary according to substrate conditions, type of trowel used and setting practices. Trowel dimensions are depth/width/space.

**PRODUCT CHARACTERISTICS**

Weight	39 lbs / 4 gallon
Pallet Quantity	48
Pallet Weight	2083 lbs
Polymer Type	Acrylic
Percent Solids	40 - 60%
VOC's (Rule #1168 of California SCAQMD)	19 g/L
Color	Off-White
Tracer	None
Shelf Life	1 year from manufacturing date, in an unopened container.
Storage Conditions	65°F to 95°F (18°C to 35°C) Protect from freezing.
Flash point (ASTM D56)	>212°F / 100°C
Cleaning Instructions	Use warm soapy water while adhesive is still wet. For dried adhesive-removal contact Shaw Technical Support 1.800.471.7429.
Traffic	Light Traffic – 24 hours Heavy / Rolling Load Traffic – 72 hours

**ENVIRONMENTAL**

- California South Coast Air Quality Management District Rule 1168
- California Department of Public Health Section 01350
- CRI Green Label Plus Certified #15400
- C2C Silver Certified

**LEED IEQ Credit Information (2009 and V4)**

Credit Requirement	Status	Comment
Meets General Emissions Evaluation Criteria	Complies	CRI Green Label Plus (GLP) #15400
Meet SCAQMD Rule 1168 VOC Limits	Complies	VOC Content < 50 g/L

**WARRANTY**

This product is covered by a 10 year limited warranty. For more detailed information on this limited warranty, please see contact information at the bottom of this page.



## Safety Data Sheet SHAW 5100

Safety Data Sheet dated: 4/29/2015 - version 1

Date of first edition: 4/29/2015

### 1. IDENTIFICATION

#### Product identifier

Mixture identification:

Trade name: SHAW 5100

#### Recommended use of the chemical and restrictions on use

Recommended use: Flooring Adhesive

Restrictions on use: N.A.

#### Name, address, and telephone number of the chemical manufacturer, importer, or other responsible party

Company: Shaw Industries

616 East Walnut Avenue - 30722-2128 - Dalton - GA - USA

#### Emergency 24 hour numbers:

(USA) CHEMTREC 1-800-424-9300

(Canada) CANUTEC 1-613-996-6666

### 2. HAZARD(S) IDENTIFICATION

#### Classification of the chemical

Classification of the chemical

0 The product is not classified as dangerous according to OSHA Hazard Communication Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200).

#### Label elements

The product is not classified as dangerous according to OSHA Hazard Communication Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200).

#### Ingredient(s) with unknown acute toxicity:

None

#### Hazards not otherwise classified identified during the classification process:

None

### 3. COMPOSITION/INFORMATION ON INGREDIENTS

#### Substances

N.A.

#### Mixtures

Hazardous components within the meaning of 29 CFR 1910.1200 and related classification:

None

### 4. FIRST AID MEASURES

#### Description of first aid measures

In case of skin contact:

Wash with plenty of water and soap.

In case of eyes contact:

Wash immediately with water.

In case of Ingestion:

Do not induce vomiting, get medical attention showing the SDS and the hazard label.

In case of Inhalation:

Remove casualty to fresh air and keep warm and at rest.

#### Most important symptoms/effects, acute and delayed

N.A.

#### Indication of any immediate medical attention and special treatment needed

### 5. FIRE-FIGHTING MEASURES

#### Extinguishing media

Suitable extinguishing media:

Water.

Carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>).

**Unsuitable extinguishing media:**

None in particular.

**Specific hazards arising from the chemical**

Do not inhale explosion and combustion gases.

Burning produces heavy smoke.

Hazardous combustion products: N.A.

Explosive properties: N.A.

Oxidizing properties: N.A.

**Special protective equipment and precautions for fire-fighters**

Use suitable breathing apparatus.

Collect contaminated fire extinguishing water separately. This must not be discharged into drains.

Move undamaged containers from immediate hazard area if it can be done safely.

---

**6. ACCIDENTAL RELEASE MEASURES****Personal precautions, protective equipment and emergency procedures**

Wear personal protection equipment.

Remove persons to safety.

See protective measures under point 7 and 8.

**Methods and material for containment and cleaning up**

Suitable material for taking up: absorbing material, organic, sand

Wash with plenty of water.

---

**7. HANDLING AND STORAGE****Precautions for safe handling**

Avoid contact with skin and eyes, inhalation of vapours and mists.

Do not eat or drink while working.

See also section 8 for recommended protective equipment.

**Conditions for safe storage, including any incompatibilities**

Storage temperature: N.A.

Incompatible materials:

None in particular.

Instructions as regards storage premises:

Adequately ventilated premises.

---

**8. EXPOSURE CONTROLS/PERSONAL PROTECTION****Control parameters**

No Data Available

Appropriate engineering controls: N.A.

**Individual protection measures**

Eye protection:

Not needed for normal use. Anyway, operate according good working practices.

Protection for skin:

No special precaution must be adopted for normal use.

Protection for hands:

Not needed for normal use.

Respiratory protection:

N.A.

---

**9. PHYSICAL AND CHEMICAL PROPERTIES****Information on basic physical and chemical properties**

Physical state: Liquid

Appearance and colour: Paste beige

Odour: like: Acrylate

Odour threshold: N.A.

pH: 9.25

Melting point / freezing point: N.A.

Initial boiling point and boiling range: N.A.

Flash point: >93 °C (200 °F)

Evaporation rate: N.A.

Upper/lower flammability or explosive limits: N.A.

Vapour density: N.A.

---

Vapour pressure: N.A.  
Relative density: N.A.  
Solubility in water: N.A.  
Solubility in oil: N.A.  
Partition coefficient (n-octanol/water): N.A.  
Auto-ignition temperature: N.A.  
Decomposition temperature: N.A.  
Viscosity: N.A.  
Explosive properties: N.A.  
Oxidizing properties: N.A.  
Solid/gas flammability: N.A.

**Other information**

Substance Groups relevant properties N.A.  
Miscibility: N.A.  
Fat Solubility: N.A.  
Conductivity: N.A.

---

**10. STABILITY AND REACTIVITY**

**Reactivity**

Stable under normal conditions

**Chemical stability**

Data not Available.

**Possibility of hazardous reactions**

None.

**Conditions to avoid**

Stable under normal conditions.

**Incompatible materials**

None in particular.

**Hazardous decomposition products**

None.

---

**11. TOXICOLOGICAL INFORMATION**

**Information on toxicological effects**

Toxicological information of the product:

No Data Available

**Substance(s) listed on the IARC Monographs:**

None

**Substance(s) listed as OSHA Carcinogen(s):**

None

**Substance(s) listed as NIOSH Carcinogen(s):**

None

**Substance(s) listed on the NTP report on Carcinogens:**

None

---

**12. ECOLOGICAL INFORMATION**

**Toxicity**

Adopt good working practices, so that the product is not released into the environment.

Eco-Toxicological Information:

**List of Eco-Toxicological properties of the product**

No Data Available

**Persistence and degradability**

N.A.

**Bioaccumulative potential**

N.A.

**Mobility in soil**

N.A.

**Other adverse effects**

N.A.

---

### 13. DISPOSAL CONSIDERATIONS

#### Waste treatment methods

Waste must be handled in accordance with all federal, state, provincial, and local regulations. Consult authorities before disposal.

---

### 14. TRANSPORT INFORMATION

#### UN number

ADR-UN number: N/A

DOT-UN Number: N/A

IATA-Un number: N/A

IMDG-Un number: N/A

#### UN proper shipping name

ADR-Shipping Name: N/A

DOT Proper Shipping Name: N/A

IATA-Technical name: N/A

IMDG-Technical name: N/A

#### Transport hazard class(es)

ADR-Class: N/A

DOT Hazard Class: N/A

IATA-Class: N/A

IMDG-Class: N/A

#### Packing group

ADR-Packing Group: N/A

DOT-Packing group: N/A

IATA-Packing group: N/A

IMDG-Packing group: N/A

#### Environmental hazards

Marine pollutant: No

Environmental Pollutant: N.A.

#### Transport in bulk according to Annex II of MARPOL73/78 and the IBC Code

N.A.

#### Special precautions

Department of Transportation (DOT):

DOT-Special Provision(s): N/A

DOT Label(s): N/A

DOT Symbol: N/A

DOT Cargo Aircraft: N/A

DOT Passenger Aircraft: N/A

DOT Bulk: N/A

DOT Non-Bulk: N/A

Road and Rail (ADR-RID):

ADR-Label: N/A

ADR - Hazard identification number: N/A

ADR Tunnel Restriction Code: N/A

Air (IATA):

IATA-Passenger Aircraft: N/A

IATA-Cargo Aircraft: N/A

IATA-Label: N/A

IATA-Subrisk: N/A

IATA-Erg: N/A

IATA-Special Provisions: N/A

Sea (IMDG):

IMDG-Stowage Code: N/A

IMDG-Stowage Note: N/A

IMDG-Subrisk: N/A

IMDG-Special Provisions: N/A

IMDG-Page: N/A

IMDG-Label: N/A

IMDG-EMS: N/A

IMDG-MFAG: N/A

---

### 15. REGULATORY INFORMATION

**USA - Federal regulations**

**TSCA - Toxic Substances Control Act**

**TSCA inventory:**

All the components are listed on the TSCA inventory

**TSCA listed substances:**

no substances listed

**SARA - Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act**

**Section 302 - Extremely Hazardous Substances:**

no substances listed

**Section 304 - Hazardous substances:**

no substances listed

**Section 313 - Toxic chemical list:**

no substances listed

**CERCLA - Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act**

**Substance(s) listed under CERCLA:**

no substances listed

**CAA - Clean Air Act**

**CAA listed substances:**

no substances listed

**CWA - Clean Water Act**

**CWA listed substances:**

no substances listed

**USA - State specific regulations**

**California Proposition 65**

**Substance(s) listed under California Proposition 65:**

no substances listed

**Massachusetts Right to know**

**Substance(s) listed under Massachusetts Right to know:**

no substances listed

**Pennsylvania Right to know**

**Substance(s) listed under Pennsylvania Right to know:**

no substances listed

**New Jersey Right to know**

**Substance(s) listed under New Jersey Right to know:**

no substances listed

---

**16. OTHER INFORMATION**

Safety Data Sheet dated: 4/29/2015 - version 1

Product code: 2992

**Additional classification information**



HMIS Health: 0 = MINIMAL

HMIS Health - Is health hazard chronic?: No

HMIS Flammability: 1 = Combustible if heated

HMIS Reactivity: 0 = MINIMAL



HMIS P.P.E.: Safety glasses, gloves

NFPA Health: 0 = MINIMAL

NFPA Flammability: 1 = Combustible if heated

NFPA Reactivity: 0 = MINIMAL

NFPA Special Risk: N.A.

Reasonable care has been taken in the preparation of this information, but the manufacturer makes no warranty of merchantability or any other warranty, expressed or implied, with respect to this information. The manufacturer makes no representations and assumes no liability for any direct, incidental or consequential damages resulting from its use. The information herein is presented in good faith and believed to be accurate as of the effective date given. It is the buyer's responsibility to ensure that its activities comply with Federal, State or provincial, and local laws.

This document was prepared by a competent person who has received appropriate training.

It is the duty of the user to ensure that this information is appropriate and complete with respect to the specific use intended.

This SDS cancels and replaces any preceding release.

**Legend to abbreviations and acronyms used in the safety data sheet:**

ADR: European Agreement concerning the International Carriage of Dangerous Goods by Road.

RID: Regulation Concerning the International Transport of Dangerous Goods by Rail.

IMDG: International Maritime Code for Dangerous Goods.

IATA: International Air Transport Association.

IATA-DGR: Dangerous Goods Regulation by the "International Air Transport Association" (IATA).

ICAO: International Civil Aviation Organization.

ICAO-TI: Technical Instructions by the "International Civil Aviation Organization" (ICAO).

GHS: Globally Harmonized System of Classification and Labeling of Chemicals.

CLP: Classification, Labeling, Packaging.

EINECS: European Inventory of Existing Commercial Chemical Substances.

INCI: International Nomenclature of Cosmetic Ingredients.

CAS: Chemical Abstracts Service (division of the American Chemical Society).

GefStoffVO: Ordinance on Hazardous Substances, Germany.

LC50: Lethal concentration, for 50 percent of test population.

LD50: Lethal dose, for 50 percent of test population.

DNEL: Derived No Effect Level.

PNEC: Predicted No Effect Concentration.

TLV: Threshold Limiting Value.

TWATLV: Threshold Limit Value for the Time Weighted Average 8 hour day. (ACGIH Standard).

STEL: Short Term Exposure limit.

STOT: Specific Target Organ Toxicity.

WGK: German Water Hazard Class.

KSt: Explosion coefficient.



## Modern Block (8MK28)

Product Code	8MK280221K	
Product Construction	Tufted Tip-Sheared	
Fiber	Antron® Lumena DNA™ Nylon Type 6,6	
Dye Method	Solution Dyed	
Backing & Size	AFIRMA II™ Hardback-Tile-24 in x 24 in (60.96 cm x 60.96 cm)	
Yarn Weight	28 oz/yd <sup>2</sup>	949.4 g/m <sup>2</sup>
Machine Gauge	5/64 in	50.4 ends/10 cm
Pile Height		
High	0.212 in	5.4 mm
Medium	0.182 in	4.6 mm
Low	0.144 in	3.7 mm
Stitches	11.3 /in	44.5 ends/10 cm
Pile Density	7,020 oz/yd <sup>3</sup>	
Total Weight	81 oz/yd <sup>2</sup>	2,746.4 g/m <sup>2</sup>
Total Thickness	0.290 in	7.4 mm
Size	24 in x 24 in	60.96 cm x 60.96 cm
Radiant Panel	Passes Class 1, $\geq 0.45$ W/cm <sup>2</sup> (ASTM-E648)	
Smoke Density	< 450 Dm corr (ASTM-E662), Flaming	
Static	$\leq 3.5$ kV (AATCC-134), Step	
Flammability	Passes Methenamine Pill Test (CPSC-FF1-70)	

Bentley's carpet products are manufactured in our California mill, a LEED Existing Buildings: Operations and Maintenance Gold certified facility. Certificates for carpet products, including Cradle to Cradle™, NSF/ANSI Standard 140 - Sustainable Carpet Assessment (NSF 140), and CRI Green Label Plus are available in Certifications under the Sustainability section of our website. Information regarding our Environmental Product Declarations, Health Product Declarations, and Declare Labels can be found in Transparency under the Sustainability section of our website. For more information, including product warranties, please visit [www.bentleymills.com](http://www.bentleymills.com).

Patterned carpet may require special attention by the installer to assure a suitable match, and must be addressed in the original labor quotation. Repositioning of carpet tiles may be necessary to ensure light or dark lines do not align at the seams. Products that go through the shearing process may result in a small loss of yarn weight. Slight variations in color among different production lots are normal and should be considered in the overall installation plan. Carpet specifications and components are subject to normal manufacturing tolerances and may change without notice. Product warranted in accordance with the terms and conditions of Bentley's standard printed warranty in effect at time product is sold. All other warranties, including without limitation any implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose, are hereby disclaimed. Made in USA. Warning: unauthorized reproduction of this carpet design constitutes copyright infringement. ©2019 Bentley Mills, Inc.

# WARRANTY - AFIRMA™ HARDBACK TILE

## PRODUCT WARRANTY FOR CARPET WITH AFIRMA HARDBACK TILE

Bentley Mills, Inc. carpet products made with AFIRMA Hard-Back Tile are warranted by the manufacturer in accordance with the following terms and conditions:

### 15 YEARS – SURFACE WEAR, EDGE RAVEL, DELAMINATION, TUFT BIND, AND MOISTURE RESISTANCE

The manufacturer warrants for a period of 15 years from the date of invoice that the carpet products will resist moisture penetration through the backing material and will not suffer excessive surface wear, edge ravel, delamination from primary backing, or tuft pull problems under ordinary indoor commercial use. Excessive surface wear means loss of more than 10 percent by weight of face fiber as a result of abrasion.

### MATERIALS AND WORKMANSHIP

The manufacturer warrants for a period of two years from the date of invoice that the performance of the carpet products will not be adversely affected by defects in the materials or workmanship used in manufacture.

### STATIC DISCHARGE

The manufacturer warrants for a period of 15 years from the date of invoice that the carpet products will not generate static discharges exceeding 3.5 kV at 70 degrees Fahrenheit and 20 percent relative humidity, using test method AATCC 134, Electrostatic Propensity of Carpets, step.

### RADIANT PANEL

The manufacturer warrants that the carpet products as sold have a Critical Radiant Flux of 0.45 W/cm<sup>2</sup> (Class I) or better using test method ASTM E 648, Critical Radiant Flux of Floor Covering.

### SMOKE DENSITY

The manufacturer warrants that the carpet products as sold have a measure of 450 or less using test method ASTM E 662, Specific Optical Density of Smoke, flaming.

### REMEDY, LIMITATIONS, AND EXCLUSIONS

If a carpet product fails to meet this warranty, the manufacturer will correct the affected areas either by repair or (at its option) replacement with comparable product(s) at no charge. If the manufacturer determines that repair or replacement is not reasonably feasible, the manufacturer will refund that portion of the product purchase price allocable to the affected areas; provided that any refund on a claim made more than two years after the date of invoice will be prorated to reflect beneficial use prior to the claim. This is the exclusive remedy for claims related to the carpet products. The manufacturer's liability is limited to repair, replacement, or refund as stated herein and, for example, does not include costs associated with moving furniture, partitions, fixtures, or equipment as necessary to allow repair or replacement.

# WARRANTY - AFIRMA™ HARDBACK TILE

This warranty does not cover tears, burns, cuts, pulls or other damage, deterioration, problems or loss caused by abuse, misuse, neglect, improper maintenance, improper installation (including without limitation failure to use Bentley-recommended adhesive), flood/excessive moisture, or use of footwear with cleats, spikes, skates, blades or similar projections. Failure to comply strictly with Bentley's installation and maintenance instructions and recommendations shall void warranty coverage for all affected carpet products. Pooling, shading, watermarking, pile reversal, pile crush, dye lot differences, and soiling are not manufacturing defects and are not covered by this warranty. Problems arising from use of non-approved adhesives will void warranty coverage. Coverage under this warranty is conditioned upon buyer promptly notifying Bentley of the warranty claim in writing within the applicable warranty period at the following address: Bentley Quality Claims Department, 14641 E. Don Julian Road, City of Industry, CA 91746.

**THE WARRANTY, REMEDY, AND LIMITS OF LIABILITY CONTAINED HEREIN ARE EXPRESSLY IN LIEU OF AND EXCLUDE ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, REMEDIES, AND LIABILITIES, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. THE MANUFACTURER MAKES NO OTHER REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, AND HEREBY DISCLAIMS ANY AND ALL OTHER WARRANTIES THAT MAY ARISE BY OPERATION OF LAW, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS OF ITS PRODUCTS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSES. THE MANUFACTURER WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES IN ANY CASE.**

## **MORE INFORMATION**

Bentley Mills, Inc.  
14641 E. Don Julian Road  
City of Industry, CA 91746  
800.423.4709 | [bentleymills.com](http://bentleymills.com)

# MAINTENANCE GUIDE

## EXCLUSIVE TO ALL BENTLEY PRODUCTS

Important note: This Maintenance Guide is written to include carpet made from both nylon and wool fiber. However, it is important to note that wool carpet is discussed in a separate section included within this guide. Please understand wool will be specifically included in instructions intended for wool. Otherwise, the instructions are for nylon carpet only. Some of the more aggressive techniques recommended as beneficial and necessary for nylon fiber, such as vacuuming with a beater bar and brush or pile lifting, can be damaging to wool.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

The Ramifications of Specifications.....	2
A Comprehensive Maintenance Plan.....	3
Identifying Specific Maintenance Needs.....	4
Maintenance Techniques.....	5
Preventative Maintenance.....	5
Vacuum Essentials.....	6
The Right Equipment.....	6
Pile Lifting.....	6
Spot Cleaning and Spot Removal Guide.....	7
Treating Water-Based and Oil-Based Spots.....	7
Interim Cleaning.....	8
Dry Extraction.....	8
Low-Moisture Cleaning.....	10
Encapsulation and Filmer Applications.....	10
Bonnet Cleaning.....	10
Hot Water Extraction.....	11
The Right Cleaning Solutions.....	12
Maintenance Equipment.....	13
Caring for Wool Carpet.....	14
Maintenance Frequency Chart.....	16

# MAINTENANCE GUIDE

## THE RAMIFICATION OF SPECIFICATIONS

The best maintenance program cannot overcome inappropriate choices in colors, patterns, carpet density, backing system, yarn style (cut pile or loop), staple, or BCF fibers and yarn type will all have a significant impact on the performance of the carpet.

The carpet choice should not be made purely on aesthetics but rather on a wide range of criteria like foot traffic, wheel traffic, density of occupancy, type of soil exposure, traffic frequency, and the overall intended use of the area. One of the most important considerations is how you intend to maintain the carpet once it is installed.

For instance, light-to-medium blue carpet will show soiling more than other colors. Solid-color carpet will show traffic lanes and spots more than pattern carpets. Cut-pile carpet in traffic lanes will crush and matte faster than loop carpets. Bulk continuous filament yarn will out perform staple yarn.

Planning should include providing appropriate protection of the new carpet immediately following installation, especially when carpet installation is part of a larger construction or renovation project where other construction trades may be working on top of the new carpet.

**The most critical decision of the carpet maintenance program will be WHO will maintain the carpet.** 99% of the life of the carpet comes after it is installed. Choosing an in-house person or a company with certified commercial carpet cleaning technicians is crucial. The best products and best installation will not perform as intended if maintained inappropriately.

The goals for any good floor-maintenance program should include the following.

1. Keep the floors looking as close to new as possible.
2. Design a cleaning program that is safe and the least disruptive to the occupancy.
3. Increase indoor air quality.
4. Extend the useful life of the carpet.
5. Be as "GREEN" as possible in the overall maintenance program (energy, water, noise and if possible chemical)

## WHY IS REGULAR, PLANNED CARPET MAINTENANCE IMPORTANT?

People spend about 90% of their time indoors. According to the EPA, the air inside facilities are two to five times more polluted than the air outside the buildings. Companies want to provide a healthy and pleasant work environment for their employees. Healthful work environments have been shown to improve employee attitudes and a reduction in sick days, which increase productivity by approximately 10%.

Carpet acts like a filter and can actually reduce air born pollutants including volatile organic compounds compared to hard-surface floors, provided that they are maintained properly. On the other hand, poorly maintained carpet can harbor bacteria and mold, which can cause an increase in indoor air pollution, allergies, breathing issues, foul odors, and productivity reduction.



# MAINTENANCE GUIDE

## A COMPREHENSIVE MAINTENANCE PLAN

A regular routine of carpet maintenance helps prevent soil buildup that can damage carpet fiber, which, in turn, can cause color loss and loss of resiliency. A well-planned maintenance routine can maximize a carpet installation's useful life and forestall the need for replacement because of premature wear or because the carpet "uglies out."

Routine maintenance involves a planned approach of methodical daily care such as vacuuming and spot cleaning, in addition to periodic interim and restorative cleaning performed as soiling becomes apparent.

Excessive soiling, stubborn spots or spills may require different methods or combination of methods. Please keep in mind that when maintenance is neglected or performed at irregular intervals, carpet can deteriorate to a level that will be difficult or impossible to restore to its original luster and beauty—no matter what cleaning methods are used.

Persistent, thorough maintenance and daily-care routines will keep carpet looking its best, as well as enable carpet fiber to perform as intended. This planned approach to maintenance needs to begin immediately following installation.

For instance, when installation is performed in conjunction with other construction projects, the carpet must be protected with a covering such as re-enforced craft paper that allows the carpet to breathe as adhesives continue to cure. Plastic sheeting should be avoided as a means of carpet protection. Trapping adhesive off-gassing underneath plastic sheeting can cause permanent discoloration of new carpeting.

Properly trained technicians armed with the proper tools are essential to correctly performing the five key elements of any successful maintenance program.

Those five elements involve:

### OUTSIDE YOUR FACILITY

#### • Preventative Maintenance:

Capturing or containing the soil before it reaches the building by regularly sweeping the parking lot, parking garage, and sidewalks and at the building entryways by using an adequate system of barrier mats at entrances. An adequate barrier system includes mats installed both inside and outside the building, as well as strategically placing mats at funnel areas where traffic loads become more concentrated or at specific highly trafficked interior areas.

**A system of appropriate "scrape, scrub, and wipe" mats will remove up to 10 times more soil than carpet mats alone.**

With an appropriate walk-off system the first five feet will remove approximately 37% of the soil, 10 feet 52%, 15 feet 71%, 20 feet 86% and 30 feet almost 100% of the exterior soil.

Another consideration:

Areas of the country where ice melts are used. There are different types of ice melts some are more difficult to remove than others, and the volume and frequency of use will have a big impact.

# MAINTENANCE GUIDE

Asphalts parking lots and driveways coated with inexpensive sealers may “walk off” and discolor all flooring including the carpet. Once the damage is done, it is permanent.

# MAINTENANCE GUIDE

## INSIDE YOUR FACILITY

### • **Vacuuming/Pile Lifting:**

Regular vacuuming is the single most important part of a maintenance program. It can cost between \$500.00 and \$700.00 a pound to remove soil from carpet, once inside the facility. If the soil is removed before it becomes attached to the carpet fiber through proper vacuuming, then the cost to remove it per pound is greatly reduced. A proper vacuuming program can remove about 80% of this soil making it the most cost-effective soil removal process.

Vacuuming is designed to remove dry soil before it becomes attached to the fiber. Pile lifting will enhance routine vacuuming as well as cleaning effectiveness. It should be added as part of the overall maintenance program. The more aggressive pile lifter will help remove more stubborn, embedded soil, as well as working more effectively to lift and separate fiber so that routine vacuuming is more effective.

### • **Spot and Spill Removal:**

Promptly addressing spills is the key to prevent the spill from getting into the carpet backing and causing stubborn spots that are far more difficult to clean. Quickly addressing spills helps minimize the chance of that spill becoming a stubborn stain.

### • **Interim Cleaning:**

Several different methods can be utilized. If used regularly, interim cleaning can prolong the need for restorative cleaning.

### • **Restorative Cleaning:**

Deep cleaning is designed to remove trapped soils. Hot water extraction is the most effective method and the only restorative method recommended by Bentley.

## IDENTIFYING SPECIFIC MAINTENANCE NEEDS

Just as various areas of an office or building are subject to different uses, each type of area demands a different level of maintenance and care. Heavy-traffic areas and areas where traffic is more concentrated, such as entrances and corridors, require more frequent vacuuming and cleaning. Areas around vending machines or kitchen areas and desks need daily attention to spills and stains. Some areas may require different types of equipment for effective maintenance or cleaning.

A comprehensive maintenance program should have a color-coded diagram of the building's floor space and furniture layout plan indicating appropriate cleaning frequency rates for vacuuming, spot cleaning, pile lifting, and interim and restorative cleaning, based on the nature and concentration of traffic flow.

# MAINTENANCE GUIDE

## MAINTENANCE TECHNIQUES

The ideal maintenance program is designed to help prevent soil from reaching the carpet and to remove soil before it causes damage. Once soil becomes compacted, vacuuming becomes less effective and more aggressive pile lifting becomes necessary.

When soiling is allowed to build-up and become compacted deep within the fiber, the abrasive combination of heavy foot traffic and compacted soil can scratch and damage the best, most durable fiber, causing color and fiber loss. Deeply compacted soil will affect cut-pile fiber twist levels and cause fiber ends to splay outward, losing resiliency and causing matting.

Once neglect results in color or fiber twist loss, full restoration becomes impossible.

To keep carpet clean and looking as nearly new as possible, this ideal maintenance program should use a combination of methods and frequencies tailored to a facility's specific needs. Those needs should be evaluated by a trained maintenance professional and based on the specific nature of soiling, traffic load, and traffic concentrations.

For instance, the first floor of a building will have maintenance needs that vary significantly from those on the fifth floor. A restaurant or a busy retail outlet will have an even greater variation of maintenance needs.

Remember, poor maintenance can cut short carpet life and adversely affect its long term performance. Failing to adhere to these guidelines in a regular routine that includes interim maintenance as well as restorative cleaning can cause irreparable damage that falls outside warranty coverage.

## PREVENTATIVE MAINTENANCE

Maintaining carpet appearance means more than choosing the right cleaning method. Selecting a suitable carpet color, style and construction for the application with careful consideration of traffic load and performance expectations is the best possible start for an effective maintenance program that emphasizes prevention.

Concrete sidewalks, parking lots, and hard-surface floors do very little to remove soil from the bottoms of shoes or from the wheels of rolling traffic.

Barrier mats are essential in keeping as much soil and moisture as possible from ever entering the building.

Outside mats are designed to scrape dirt and debris off shoes while interior mats are designed to remove smaller soil particles as well as help absorb moisture.

Interior barrier mats should extend a minimum of six feet inside the entrance. A planned system of barrier mats, which also requires regular maintenance, is an essential part of any sound maintenance program.

Mats can also be effective in other interior areas including elevators, food station areas, and at stair thresholds. Barrier matting should be maintained the same way as interior carpet with severe traffic as illustrated by the frequency chart in this document. Rubber-backed mats should never be placed on carpet or other rubber floors.

# MAINTENANCE GUIDE

## VACUUM ESSENTIALS

There is no substitute for slow, methodical vacuuming performed at the appropriate frequency with an approved vacuum cleaner, at the appropriate speed of 1.8 feet per second, four passes total for high traffic areas, two north and south, and two east and west. For moderate traffic, two passes at the same speed. This step is not a race to see how fast the area can be vacuumed. When writing a vacuum spec it's not enough to give frequencies of certain areas you must specify the type of vacuum cleaner to use and the rate of production.

Effective daily vacuuming can help reduce the need for more rigorous methods to keep the carpet's clean appearance. Vacuuming removes soil while lifting carpet fiber. In addition to removing soil, the vacuum's lifting action enhances resiliency and helps the vacuum work more effectively on subsequent vacuuming.

## THE RIGHT EQUIPMENT

Vacuums with horizontal cylindrical brushes should be used and set so that brushes are always in full contact with the carpet surface. Twin-motor vacuums with independent motors for dedicated to suction and brushing are preferred.

Vacuums with top-loading soil bags and HEPA filters to further contain dust are highly recommended.

Canister and backpack vacuums without motorized rotating brushes should be avoided, as well as riding sweepers with rotary brushes.

The Carpet and Rug Institute's Seal of Approval program grades a variety of maintenance equipment, including vacuum cleaners.

For a list of certified vacuums units, please visit:

<http://www.carpet-rug.org/commercial-customers/cleaning-and-maintenance/seal-of-approval-products/index.cfm>

Vacuum frequency should be determined by visual inspection and performed at least once daily.

Heavy-traffic areas such as lobbies, entryways, funnel areas, barrier mats, and areas in the direct path of weather influences may require more frequent vacuuming. Furthermore, such high use areas may require vacuuming more frequently than once a day. Keen attention to weather vulnerable areas will help prevent wet soil from being tracked throughout the building.

The proper technique for thorough vacuuming depends upon using slow, overlapping strokes and making sure that the entire carpet surface is covered. Strokes should be no longer than two to three feet in length to avoid unnecessary back strain for the operator.

## PILE LIFTING

Pile lifting is an effective method for lifting crushed pile and loosening dry soil. Heavily trafficked cut-pile products need more frequent pile lifting than looped products. Pile lifting should always be used to precondition carpets for general cleaning. Pile lifting improves cleaning effectiveness. For best results, apply the pile-lifter machine against the lay of the pile.

# MAINTENANCE GUIDE

## SPOT CLEANING

Daily removal of spots and spills helps maintain the carpet's appearance between scheduled cleaning. Immediate action against spots and spills also reduce the probability of a permanent stain. Spotting solutions should be selected as appropriate for the specific type of spot or spill.

Different chemistry should be selected for water-based and oil-based spills or spots. A different chemical will be necessary for solids, including gum. Always use spotting solutions sparingly. If the spill is wet, remove as much moisture as possible with dry, white towel or a hand-held extractor before applying any spotter. Try to remove the spot with water on a white towel or by using a hand-held extractor before using a spotting agent.

## TREATING WATER-BASED SPOTS

Liquid spills should be blotted with a clean, white cloth to remove as much of the liquid as possible. If the spill is semi-solid or has hardened, gently scrape away with a spoon or spatula and then blot the spot with a damp white cloth. Always work from the edge of the spot towards the center. Never rub across a wet spill in a manner that causes the stain or contamination to be spread outward from the original area. If the spot remains, try **Grab Carpet Spotter** or go to the Carpet and Rug Institutes "Spot Solver" (<http://www.carpet-rug.org/commercial-customers/cleaning-and-maintenance/spot-solver.cfm>) for an excellent reference that should have an approach to help safely remove the spot.

Apply a minimal amount of the recommended solution. Use a soft-bristle brush and gently agitate the solution by hand. Rinse the affected area with water and allow the area to dry for about one hour and then vacuum. Prevent traffic on the freshly cleaned area until the carpet is completely dry.

Please remember to blot the spot. Do not brush the spot aggressively.

## TREATING OIL-BASED SPOTS

When removing oily stains such as grease, tar, or asphalt, try **Grab Grease and Oil Remover**, always check for color fastness by testing in an inconspicuous area of the carpet. Apply **Grab Grease and Oil Remover** directly onto the spot. Again, do not rub across the spill, but wipe gently from the outer edge toward the center of the spot. Repeat the procedure until the spot has been removed. Rinse with water and allow the area to dry about one hour and then vacuum. Protect the freshly cleaned area until the carpet is completely dry.

Please note: A small, portable hand-held extractor can simplify the task of flushing residual solution from spots and spills.

## SPOT REMOVAL GUIDE

Please refer to the Carpet and Rug Institutes "Spot Solver" to remedy a wide range of the most typical causes of carpet spotting. The Spot Solver can be found at <http://www.carpet-rug.org/residential-customers/cleaning-and-maintenance/spot-solver.cfm>.

If you have further questions, please call Bentley at 800.423.4709.

# MAINTENANCE GUIDE

## INTERIM CLEANING

### DRY EXTRACTION

Dry compound extraction, such as **Grab Dry** from **XL North**, is a safe, easy, and effective method for performing maintenance on a regular basis. The procedure uses a moist, powder-like compound that does not leave the carpet excessively wet, thus allowing immediate access and traffic once the procedure is complete. This cleaning method typically has the lowest production rate and is the most expensive method of carpet cleaning. Dry compound cleaning eliminates wicking and does well with oily spots and soils. It is considered the safest cleaning method.

The technique for dry compound extraction is as follows:

1. Thoroughly vacuum the carpet two passes at 1.8 feet per second at 2 to 3 feet in length.
2. If carpet is not heavily soiled proceed to step 4.
3. If needed, use a pre-spray like **Grab Carpet Spotter** and allow 10 minutes dwell time, spray evenly and heavy enough to stay damp for 20 minutes using a pump-up or electric sprayer. Do not over spray onto other surfaces, walls, or furniture.
4. Agitate carpet with counter rotating brush machine with the appropriate brush stiffness at 1.5 feet per-second in a V or W pattern. The soil load will determine the number of passes. Continue this step until you can visually see the soil separation from the fiber.
5. Spread the dry compound evenly on carpet making sure not to clump the product use one pound of product for every 150 square feet. Apply in a small area not to exceed 30' x 30' the dry compound must stay moist until it can be agitated into the carpet
6. Agitate the compound into the carpet at 1.5 feet per-second at 2 to 3 feet in length in a V or W pattern.
7. Allow compound to completely dry approximately 30 minutes to one hour.
8. Vacuum up the dry compound with two to three very slow passes, 1 foot per second make sure all visible compound is removed

Please note: This process can be even more effective when the carpet is first pile lifted and vacuumed prior to spreading low-moisture cleaning compound.

# MAINTENANCE GUIDE

## LOW-MOISTURE CLEANING

### ENCAPSULATION APPLICATION

The Encapsulation (or crystallizing) method of maintenance uses a liquid (like **Liquid Grab Green**) that breaks down and encapsulates sticky soils, then then dries to a crystal-like powder that is easily vacuumed away. Encapsulation cleaners should be applied and used as follows:

1. Thoroughly vacuum the carpet two passes at 1.8 feet per-second at 2 to 3 feet in length.
2. Spray evenly and heavy enough to stay wet for roughly 20 minutes using a pump-up or electric sprayer. Carpet must stay wet until the agitation process can be completed. Do not over-spray onto other surfaces, walls or furniture.
3. Agitate carpet with counter rotating brush machine with the appropriate brush stiffness at 1.5 feet per-second in a V or W pattern. The soil load will determine the number of passes. Continue this step until you can visually see the soil separation from the fiber.
4. Thoroughly vacuum the carpet two passes at 1.8 feet per-second at 2 to 3 feet in length.

### FILMER APPLICATION

Filming encapsulates, like **ResisTech 5**, are technically cleaners but should be viewed also as a fiber treatment. Filmers do encapsulate soils but are not designed to completely release during the vacuuming process. Filmers release or “shed” over time from foot traffic and multiple vacuuming. The soils attach to the treatment on the fiber not the fiber itself, so when the coating separates through vacuuming or foot traffic it only removes a small amount of the treatment, leaving behind more material to which soil can cling, thus repeating the process. For the best results, this method should only be applied to clean carpet preferably after a hot water extraction method was used.

This method will keep the carpet the cleaner than any other cleaning method over a set period of time. And when used in conjunction with Hot water extraction and low moisture encapsulation cleaning, this method will be the most cost effective of all maintenance cleaning programs.

The application process is the same as encapsulation application.

Please note: Both applications can be performed using sprayers or can be applied as a foam.

## BONNET CLEANING

Avoid bonnet cleaning. Using a bonnet or any other type machine that rotates in a motion parallel to the flooring surface to clean or dry carpet is not recommended and may void warranty coverage. Low-speed rotary cleaning methods must be approved by Bentley.



# MAINTENANCE GUIDE

## HOT WATER EXTRACTION TRUCK-MOUNT/BOX EXTRACTORS

This method of cleaning has the ability to remove the most amount of soil (up to 95%), depending on the type of equipment and process used. This method can be slow and labor intensive, with more challenges compared to other methods.

1. Before starting this method of cleaning make sure the HVAC system stays on until the carpet is totally dry.
2. Check for any occupancies that may have a chemical sensitivity before using any carpet pre-spray.
3. Always vacuum and pile lift thoroughly before beginning any carpet cleaning method. This is especially important with hot water extraction in order to remove as much dry, loose soil as possible prior to adding water to the carpet.
4. Place wet floor signs at all transition points, from carpet to hard surface.
5. Pre-spray with a traffic lane cleaner such as **Grab Nylon Pre-Spray** or **ResisTech HWE** (a pH between 9.9 and 4.5). Spray heavy enough to keep carpet wet until the carpet can be extracted. Use a pump-up type or electric sprayer with no more than 60 psi (so pre-spray will not aerosolize). Do not over spray on any furniture, walls, or other floor surfaces.
6. Allow to penetrate for 10 minutes.
7. Agitate using a counter-rotating brush machine with the appropriate brushes at a 1.5 feet per second rate, use 2 to 3 foot long strokes in a V or W pattern continue this process until you can visually see the soil separate from the fiber.

All portable extractors should be plugged into a ground fault circuit interrupter. Extract using a carpet wand with straight forward and backward passes (NO V or W pattern) at a rate of 1.8 feet per second, overlap each stroke by 1 inch (use **Grab Crystallizing Acid Rinse** in fresh water tank when using high (9.0-9.9) pH cleaners). On restorative cleaning use multiple passes and finish with 1 dry pass. Continue to pull the wand toward you another 3 inches after releasing the spray trigger to insure all water removal.

Use air movers to help dry the carpet especially at transition points.

Self-contained water extraction equipment (walk behind, pull back, ride on)

This water extraction cleaning method has average-to-good soil removal somewhere between low moisture and hot water truck mount/box extractors. However, it has a much higher production rate compared to truck-mount or box extractors and about the same as low moisture encapsulate cleaning.

Steps for self-contained extraction equipment:

1. Before starting this method of cleaning, make sure the HVAC system stays on until the carpet is totally dry.
2. Check for any occupancies that may have a chemical sensitivity before using any carpet pre-spray

# MAINTENANCE GUIDE

3. Always vacuum and pile lift thoroughly before beginning any carpet-cleaning method. This is especially important with water extraction in order to remove as much dry, loose soil as possible prior to adding water to the carpet.
4. Place wet floor signs at all transition points from carpet to hard surface.
5. Pre-spray with a traffic lane cleaner Such as **Grab Nylon Pre-Spray** or **ResisTech HWE** with a pH between 9.9 and 4.5 (Spray heavy enough to keep carpet wet until the carpet can be extracted). Do not over spray on any furniture, walls or other floor surfaces.
6. Allow to penetrate for 10 minutes.

## Extract

All portable extractors should be plugged into a ground fault circuit interrupter. Overlap each pass at least 3 to ½ inches depending on how soiled the carpet is.

Use a **Grab Crystallizing Acid Rinse** in fresh water tank when using high (9.0-9.9) pH pre-sprays. For best results do not add cleaning solution to fresh water tank.

Use air movers to help dry carpets especially at transition points from carpet to hard surfaces.

## THE RIGHT CLEANING SOLUTIONS

Bentley recommends the **Grab** carpet-care system by **XL North** and also the **Resistech** Carpet Maintenance Treatment by **Antron**.

However, if you choose to use others here are some things to consider:

Some commercial carpet cleaning solutions are very harsh and can damage carpet fiber. Only use cleaning chemicals that meet the basic standards outlined here.

It's also important to evaluate each product prior to widespread use by applying in a small inconspicuous area prior to widespread to prevent the possibility of damage. Bentley carpet can be maintained using a number of widely recognized carpet cleaning agents that are readily available. However, cleaning solutions that have earned the Carpet & Rug Institute's Seal of Approval are preferred.

The Carpet and Rug Institute uses an independent testing laboratory to evaluate cleaning chemistry based on the following criteria:

- Overall cleaning effectiveness; this ensures that the product removes soil and spots better than plain water.
- Rate of re-soiling; this ensures that the product does not attract dirt to the cleaned areas faster than the rest of the carpet.
- Chemical pH; a more neutral pH ensures that carpet dyes and fibers are not adversely affected.
- Surface texture change; the product must leave the carpet pile minimally changed after repeated cleanings.
- Optical brighteners; none are allowed, as they can leave some patches of carpet lighter than the rest.
- Colorfastness; products must not be so aggressive that they cause a color change in the carpet.

# MAINTENANCE GUIDE

For a list of these certified cleaning solutions see the Carpet & Rug Institute's website at: [http://www.carpet-rug.org/commercial-customers/cleaning-and-maintenance/seal-of-approval-products/cleaning-solutions-list.cfm?product\\_type=0&manuf\\_id=0](http://www.carpet-rug.org/commercial-customers/cleaning-and-maintenance/seal-of-approval-products/cleaning-solutions-list.cfm?product_type=0&manuf_id=0)

Avoid products with pH levels over 9.9 for nylon and a maximum of 8.5 for wool. Also, make sure that cleaning solutions for either nylon or wool are free of toxic or flammable solvents. Detergents designed for use in hot water extraction equipment should not contain an oil-based de-foamer and caution should be used with the amount of detergent added. Oil-based de-foamers have the potential to leave oily residues and adding too much detergent could leave excess detergent on the carpet. Both scenarios will lead to rapid re-soiling and create a need for more frequent cleanings. In addition, cleaning solutions containing optical brighteners should not be used. Optical brighteners can adversely affect the coloration of carpet and lead to premature aging or yellowing of the carpet. Cleaning solutions used for interim and/or restorative cleaning should be tested for sticky residues that may cause re-soiling. To test a solution, pour a small amount in a clean glass dish. Allow the solution to air dry completely (24 hours minimum). Break up any hard residue on the surface of the glass dish and examine it. If the residue can be characterized as dry powder, dry flakes, or dry crystals, the solution is acceptable. If the residue appears oily, greasy, sticky, or in waxy flakes, the solution is not acceptable since it would likely contribute to rapid re-soiling. Spotting solutions should be used as needed and should be flushed out with clean water once the spot has been treated.

## MAINTENANCE EQUIPMENT

Using the right equipment is as important as using the right cleaning solution and the best techniques. These guidelines are intended to provide a proper framework for minimum basic maintenance designed to maximize a carpet investment. Equipment should be selected from those units tested and certified by the Carpet and Rug Institute's Seal of Approval program.

- **Vacuums:** Select a dual-motor, commercial-grade vacuum cleaner bearing the Carpet and Rug Institute's Seal of Approval/Green Label Certification program. Top-loading dust bag machines with HEPA filters are strongly recommended. Battery-powered vacuum cleaners are not recommended.
- **Low-moisture applicator:** Use only those units with counter-rotating brushes bearing the Carpet and Rug Institute's Seal of Approval.
- **Hot water extractor:** Truck-mounted extraction units generally provide optimal performance, but self-contained units are more mobile and can be highly effective in most commercial applications. Use only those units bearing the Carpet and Rug Institute's Seal of Approval.

# MAINTENANCE GUIDE

## CARING FOR WOOL CARPET

Wool is a natural protein fiber obtained from sheep. It is sensitive to color change, yellowing, and degradation when exposed to direct sunlight and it has a narrow pH range for cleaning. Wool cleans best between a pH of 5 and 8.5. The cleaning chemistry must not contain bleaching agents or optical brighteners. Temperature in cleaning wool should never exceed 140 to 150 degrees and excessive agitation when used with high temperatures should be avoided. Wool can absorb up to 33% of its weight in moisture, so it is important not to over wet the carpet and to allow ample time for drying. Below are some guidelines that should be followed.

1. Use a cleaning solution with low alkalinity (pH of 8.5 or less). Alkaline cleaning solutions pH above 8.5 may contribute to browning of fibers.
2. Select a solution that leaves no sticky residue following drying.
3. Do not use cleaning products with added bleaches or dyes. Full-strength application of bleach or cleaners containing bleach will dissolve wool fibers. Weakened solution of bleach or cleaners containing bleach can release fiber dyes and discolor the wool carpet completely.
4. Regular vacuuming is crucial to prevent soil from penetrating to the base of the fibers. Wool has an inherent property that suspends soil near the top of the pile on the surface of the carpet face. Regular vacuuming will remove this surface soil and dirt, preventing it from working into the face and abrading/wearing the fibers.
5. Care should be used when vacuuming shag carpeting. A vacuum without a beater bar or rotary brush should be used for this style of carpet. This will prevent damage to carpet or vacuum. High-end vacuums have separately controlled brushes or beater bars. These should be off when vacuuming. Check vacuum bag frequently as loose fibers are long and tend to clog the vacuum when approaching full.
6. For spot cleaning, act quickly and blot it up with a clean cloth or paper towels. Then use a towel dampened with lukewarm water to remove the substance completely. You can replace water with a solution of three parts of water and one part white vinegar. This solution will not cause any damage to your carpet, but helps to dilute the stain. Blot the area continuously with a dry cloth and never leave any wet spots. Avoid rubbing or scrapping the carpet for stain removal. This can cause breaking down of the fibers.
7. Wool offers excellent encapsulation release properties, which makes it an ideal fiber for dry and low moisture cleaning. These encapsulation products, like **Grab Crystallizing Encap, (ADD) Grab Carpet Spotter, and Liquid Grab Green** from **XL North** can be used (see "Interim Cleaning, Encapsulation Method for details on process)sprayed onto the carpet surface, agitated, and then vacuumed to remove the cleaning product and the attached soil. Use caution with overly aggressive agitation. Damage to wool carpet is generally attributed to over wetting, too much agitation, and improper chemical selection.

# MAINTENANCE GUIDE

## NEED MORE?

For more information about carpet maintenance, visit our website at [www.bentleymills.com](http://www.bentleymills.com) or [www.xlnorth.com](http://www.xlnorth.com), or call 888.530.2259.

Bentley is also a Starnet Worldwide Commercial Flooring Partnership partner. We recommend the Starnet Maintenance Guidelines for further reference or assistance with a specific project. Visit [www.starnetflooring.com](http://www.starnetflooring.com) for details.

Additional sites for reference:

1. Carpet and Rug Institute: [www.carpet-rug.org](http://www.carpet-rug.org)
2. The Institute of Inspection, Cleaning, and Restoration Certification: [www.iicrc.org](http://www.iicrc.org)

# MAINTENANCE GUIDE

Traffic, Soil Rating	Carpet Owner Site Maintenance		Professional Cleaning Restoration Service	
	Vacuuming	Spot Cleaning	Interim Maintenance	Restoration Maintenance
<b>Light</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Private offices</li> <li>▪ Cubicles</li> <li>▪ 500 traffics or less daily</li> </ul>	Twice or more each week	Perform when vacuuming as spots, spills occur	Once per year	Once per year; should include pile lifting
<b>Moderate</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Secondary hallways</li> <li>▪ Share offices</li> <li>▪ Conference rooms</li> <li>▪ Classrooms</li> <li>▪ 500-1000 traffics daily</li> </ul>	Once daily	Perform when vacuuming as spots, spills occur	Twice per year; should include pile lifting at least twice or more	Twice per year; should include pile lifting at least twice or more
<b>Heavy</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Common entrances</li> <li>▪ Elevators</li> <li>▪ Elevators lobbies</li> <li>▪ Main hallways</li> <li>▪ Break rooms</li> <li>▪ Mail rooms</li> <li>▪ Patient rooms</li> <li>▪ Waiting areas</li> <li>▪ 100-2,500 traffics daily</li> </ul>	At least once daily; some areas will require more.	Perform when vacuuming as spots, spills occur	Monthly; should include pile lifting	Four times annually; should include pile lifting
<b>Severe</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Common entrances when snow and rain are factors</li> <li>▪ Cafeterias and any food-service areas</li> <li>▪ Heavy-traffic load funneled into concentrated areas</li> <li>▪ 2,500 or more traffics daily</li> </ul>	At least once daily; some areas will require more.	Perform when vacuuming as spots, spills occur	Weekly  Should include weekly pile lifting. More frequent pile lifting may be needed to contain tracked soiling	Monthly  Should include pile lifting
<p>This grid is intended as a guideline that should apply as a general minimum in most commercial applications. There will be exceptions where frequencies will need to be adjusted by site needs.</p>				

# HEALTHBOND PRESSURE SENSITIVE ADHESIVE 2399

Bentley Healthbond™ 2399 Ultra Green Plus is a high strength pressure sensitive flooring adhesive specifically designed for interior releasable installation of Bentley modular carpet tiles, Bentley LVP, and Modulyss Tile. The dried adhesive will remain on the floor, allowing individual tiles to be lifted out and replaced without substantial loss of adhesive properties. This product is an aggressive pressure sensitive formulation that permanently retains its tack for the bonding of carpet tiles and other substrates. The dried film is alkali and water resistant, and resistant to plasticizer migration from vinyl carpet tile backing. The product is made with broad spectrum antimicrobial additives to protect the adhesive from bacterial and fungal growth. This adhesive can be applied using common tools and techniques over a variety of porous and non-porous surfaces. Healthbond 2399 is nonflammable, has a low odor and very low VOC's, which makes it ideal for use in schools, health care facilities, public buildings, and anywhere odor is a concern. Healthbond 2399 is excellent for specification work as it is approved by the CRI for the Green Label Plus program. This adhesive also meets or exceeds California requirements as specified in Rules 102 and 443 as well as California SCAQMD Rule 1168.

## Application Instructions:

The installation site, flooring materials and adhesive must be maintained at 60° - 90°F (15°C - 32°C), and the humidity between 30%-60% for 72 hours prior to, during, and after testing and installation

## Use Over

**Wood:** APA Approved Flooring grade plywood, or hardwood installed to manufacturer's specification.

**Concrete:** Substrate must be structurally sound, clean, flat, and dry. Remove all foreign substances that would interfere with a good bond. Fill all holes and cracks with a cement based patching compound and sand high spots. Moisture emissions according to ASTM F-1869 Anhydrous Calcium Chloride test method should not exceed 12 lb/1000 sq ft/24 hrs and ASTM F- 2170 test method should not exceed 99%RH. If both tests are performed the RH test is the qualifying standard, pH must be 12 or less and corrective action must be taken if above 12.

**Metal:** Surface must be cleaned of oil, grease, dirt, rust or other contaminants. Terrazzo, Ceramic, Marble Slate: patch and fill cracks and irregularities with Portland cement-based latex patching compound.

**Resilient Floor Coverings:** Not recommended for direct use over existing sheet vinyl, laminated solid vinyl tile, or rubber flooring. Use of this adhesive over vinyl asbestos tile or vinyl composition tile is acceptable when all finishes, including waxes and sealers have been removed. Site conditions, floor preparations, and moisture and alkalinity must comply with those specified by the Carpet & Rug Institute (CRI 104 or 105).

*Not recommended for application over old cut-back or bituminous or petrochemical based adhesives. Cannot be used over chemically cleaned subfloors.*

For Carpet Tile installation apply Healthbond 2399 with either a ¾" nap paint roller (for RH levels 95% or less) or 1/16" x 1/32" x 1/32" U Notch trowel (for RH levels above 95% and up to 99%) to the approved substrates. If using a ¾" nap paint roller, roll adhesive onto prepped and approved substrate and wait until adhesive becomes "dry / tacky". If using a 1/16" x 1/32" x 1/32" U notch trowel, apply adhesive onto prepped and approved substrate allow to become "dry/tacky".

For Bentley LVP Installation apply Healthbond 2399 with a 1/16" x 1/32" x 1/32" U Notch trowel and the RH levels must be below 95%.

For Modulyss Tile Installation apply Healthbond 2399 with a ¼" nap paint roller and the RH level must 95% or below for on or below grade and 99% for above grade installation.

Drying times may vary depending on installation site. "Dry/Tacky" refers to the adhesive not transferring onto finger tips when touched. Adhesive will remain tacky up to 24 hours in a clean, dust free environment. Flooring may be removed as needed to change the pattern or to replace worn tiles

# HEALTHBOND PRESSURE SENSITIVE ADHESIVE 2399

Note: It is the sole responsibility of the contractor/installer to determine the proper porosity of the subfloor, apply the proper amount of adhesive, and ensure that all instructions, procedures, and practices are strictly adhered to. Gypsum or dusty substrates will require an approved primer.

Note: Must follow Bentley Mills and CRI 104 Installation Guidelines for commercial carpet.

To install:

Bentley Carpet Tile (Nexstep and Afirma) - Up To 99% RH

Use:

Appropriate spread rates as follows:

¾" Nap Paint Roller (19.049mm nap paint roller)

Coverage: Between 250 – 300 sq. ft./gal. (8.6 sq. m./l.)

1/16" x 1/32" x 1/32" U Notch trowel (1.6mm x 0.8mm x 0.8mm)

Coverage: Between 225-275 sq. ft./gal. (6.1 sq. m./l.)

Bentley LVT - Up To 95% RH

Use:

1/16" x 1/32" x 1/32" U Notch trowel (1.6mm x 0.8mm x 0.8mm)

Coverage: Between 225-275 sq. ft./gal. (6.1 sq. m./l.)

Modulyyss Tile

99% RH Above Grade,

95% RH on grade or below grade and Vapor Barrier must be present

Use:

¼" nap paint roller (6.35mm nap paint roller)

Coverage: Between 450 – 500 sq. ft./gal

## **Clean up and Storage:**

Clean up: When wet use warm soapy water. When dry, use the Bentley approved adhesive remover/stripper.

Store in a cool dry area. Do not allow the adhesive to freeze.

Disclaimer: The information and statements herein are believed to be reliable, but are not to be construed as a warranty or representation for which the manufacturer assumes legal responsibility. Users should undertake sufficient verification and testing to determine the suitability for their own particular purpose of any information or product referred to herein. No warranty of fitness for a particular purpose is made.

Rev: 06/22/2018



# Safety Data Sheet

## Bentley Healthbond 2399 Transitional Pressure Sensitive Adhesive

Revision date: March 26, 2018

Version: 4

### 1. Identification

**Bentley Healthbond 2399** Versatile Transitional Pressure Sensitive Adhesive

Recommended use of the chemical and restriction on use: interior installation of flooring material over approved subfloors – carpet tiles, LVP/LVT, fiberglass and vinyl sheet.

#### Details of the supplier of the safety data sheet

Company: W.F.Taylor LLC  
800 College Drive  
Dalton, GA 30720 USA

Telephone number: (800) 868-4583

**Emergency Telephone Number:** 1-800-535-5053

#### Other Means of Identification

Chemical Family: Amide-Ester-Acrylate blend

---

## 2. Hazards identification

According to regulation 2012 OSHA Hazard Communication Standard : 29 CFR Part 1910.1200

### **Classification of the Product:**

No need for classification according to GHS criteria for this product.

### **Label Elements**

This product does not require a hazard warning label in accordance with GHS criteria.

### **Hazards not otherwise classified**

None known if used according to instructions. Irritation may occur when in contact with eyes and skin.

### **Emergency Overview**

Caution:

May cause skin irritation if not removed after skin contact.

Use with Use with local exhaust ventilation.

Use protective equipment for eyes, skin protection.

---

## 3. Composition / Information on Ingredients

According to Regulation 1994 OSHA Hazard Communication Standard : 29 CFR Part 1910.1200

This product does not contain any components classified as hazardous under the referenced regulation.

According to Regulation 1994 OSHA Hazard Communication Standard : 29 CFR Part 1910.1200

<u>CAS number</u>	<u>Content</u>	<u>Chemical Name</u>
Trade Secret	1-10	Hydrocarbon resin
Trade Secret	1-10	Tall Oil Rosin
Trade Secret	40-60	Acrylic latex
7732-18-5	20-30	Water

---

#### 4. First Aid Measures

##### Description of First Aid measures

###### General Advice:

Upon contact, remove material from skin, eyes, and clothing. If irritation persists, seek medical attention.

###### If inhaled:

Remove individual to fresh air if needed.

###### If on Skin:

Wash with mild soap and water.

###### If in eyes:

Open eyelids and flush with running water for at least 15 minutes.

###### If Swallowed:

Do not induce vomiting. Seek medical help immediately.

##### Most Important symptoms and effects, both acute and delayed

Not expected due to non- classification of the product.

##### Indication of any immediate medical attention and special treatment needed

###### Note to physician

Treatment: Symptomatic treatment

---

#### 5. Fire-Fighting Measures

##### Extinguishing Media

None needed in wet state. Product is water based.

Dry material will burn. Use Water spray, foam, dry powder when needed.

##### Special hazards arising from the substance or mixture

Material is a mixture of organic compounds. Compounds of carbon may arise during burning.  
Advice for fire-fighters

Wear self-contained breathing apparatus and turn out gear.

**Further Information:**

Dispose debris and contaminated clothing in accordance with regulations.

---

**6. Accidental release measures**

Further accidental release measures:

Slip hazard when spilled.

**Personal precautions, protective equipment and emergency procedures**

Use personal protective clothing. Avoid contact with skin and eyes.

**Environmental Precautions**

Do not release spilled material into natural waters.

**Methods and material for containment and cleaning up**

Remove material using absorbents. Scrape off excess and place in closed DOT approved containers for disposal.

---

**7. Handling and Storage**

**Precautions for Safe Handling**

Do not puncture. Keep out of the reach of children.

**Conditions for safe storage, including any incompatibilities**

Keep from freezing. Avoid extreme temperatures.

---

**8. Exposure Control/ Personal Protection**

**Advice on system design:** Maintain proper ventilation.

---

**Personal protective equipment:**

**Respiratory protection:** NIOSH respirator if needed. Use local exhaust ventilation. Do not use closed air-circulating system.

**Skin protection:** chemical resistant gloves, apron, coveralls, and boots to prevent unnecessary contact.

**Eye protection:** safety glasses, goggles, or face shield

### **General safety and hygiene safety measures:**

Wash hands and face after use. Launder contaminated clothing before re-use. Always use protective equipment to avoid direct contact.

---

## **9. Physical and Chemical Properties**

**Form:** medium viscosity liquid

**Odor:** mild

**Odor threshold:** no data

**Color:** Blue

**pH value:** 8.5 – 9.5

**Melting point:** not applicable

**Boiling point:** similar to water

**Flash point:** not applicable

**Flammability:** none flammable

**Lower Explosion Limit:** low

**Upper Explosion Limit:** low

**Vapor Pressure:** low

**Density:** 8.16 – 8.66 lbs. per gallon

**Relative density:** 0.98 – 1.04 grams / cm<sup>3</sup>

**Vapor density:** low

**Partition Coefficient n-octanol /water (log Pow):** no data

**Self- ignition temperature:** not applicable

**Solubility in water:** limited

**Miscibility in water:** miscible

**Evaporation rate:** same as water

**Other information:**

**V.O.C., g/l less water, less exempt solvents:**  $\leq 36$

---

## **10. Stability and Reactivity**

**Reactivity:** Stable

**Chemical stability:** Stable

**Possibility of hazardous reactions:** None, product is stable.

**Conditions to avoid:** Extreme temperatures.

**Incompatible materials:** None known

**Hazardous decomposition products:** None known.

---

## 11. Toxicological Information

No data available

**Primary routes of exposure:** respiratory, eyes, skin. Ingestion is not likely but might cause gastric disturbances.

### Acute Toxicity / Effects

Acute toxicity: May cause irritation upon contact.

### Chronic Toxicity Effects

Repeated dose toxicity: no data available  
Genetic toxicity: no data available  
Carcinogenicity: not carcinogenic  
Reproductive toxicity: no data available  
Teratogenicity: no data available  
Experiences in humans

Other Information

---

## 12. Ecological Information

No data available

---

## 13. Disposal Considerations

Abide by all State, federal and local regulations

---

## 14. Transport Information

Proper Shipping name: Not applicable  
Proper Hazard Class: Not hazardous  
Hazard Code: None hazardous  
Bill of Lading Description: **Adhesives, NOI**

---

## 15. Regulatory Information:

## **Federal Regulations**

### **Registration status:**

TSCA: Chemicals contained in the product are either listed or exempt in the U.S. EPA TSCA inventory list.

SARA Title III, Section 312 Hazard Class: None

EPA SARA Title III Section 312: None

### **NFPA Hazard Codes:**

**Health: 1      Fire: 0      Reactivity: 0      Special:**

### **HMIS rating:**

**Health: 1      Flammability: 0      Physical hazard: 0**

---

## **16. Other Information**

**SDS prepared by:** WFTaylor LLC SDS Group

**SDS Revised on:** March 26, 2018

W.F. Taylor LLC believes the data set forth herein are accurate as of the date hereof. Taylor makes no warranty with respect thereto and expressly disclaims all liability for reliance thereon. Such data are offered solely for your consideration, investigation and verification.



# JOHNSONITE RESILIENT WALL BASE

## BaseWorks™ Thermoset Rubber Wall Base

## Product Specification

### 1. PROPRIETARY PRODUCT/MANUFACTURER

1.1. **Proprietary Product:** Thermoset Rubber Wall Base

1.2. **Manufacturer:**

Tarkett	Phone: (800) 899-8916
30000 Aurora Rd.	(440) 543-8916
Solon, Ohio 44139	Tech: Ext 9297
Web: <a href="http://www.tarkettna.com">www.tarkettna.com</a>	Samples: Ext 9299
E-mail: <a href="mailto:info@johnsonite.com">info@johnsonite.com</a>	

1.3. **Proprietary Product Description:**

1.3.1. **Construction:** Johnsonite BaseWorks™ Thermoset Rubber Wall Base is manufactured from a proprietary rubber formulation designed specifically to meet the performance and dimensional requirements of ASTM F-1861, Type TS, Group 1 (solid), Style A and B, Standard Specification for Resilient Wall Base.

1.3.2. **Styles & Physical Characteristics:**

**TSB-XX** with toe (Coved) or **TSBT-XX** toeless (Straight), 0.125" (3.17 mm) thickness, available in 2-1/2" (6.35 cm), 4" (10.16 cm), and 6" (15.24 cm) heights

Available in 4' (1.22 m) straight lengths and 120' (36.6 m) coiled lengths, 6" profile available in 100' (30.5 m) coiled lengths or 4' (1.22 m) straight lengths

**Inside and Outside Corners** available with 4" (10.16 cm) returns packaged 25 per carton, add LIC (Inside corners) or LOC (Outside corners)

### 2. PRODUCT PERFORMANCE AND TECHNICAL DATA

2.1. Meets or exceeds the performance requirements for resistance to heat/light aging, chemicals, and dimensional stability when tested to the methods, as described, in ASTM F-1861.

2.2. **Flexibility:** ASTM F 137 - Will not crack, break, or show any signs of fatigue when bent around a 1/4" (6.4 mm) diameter cylinder.

2.3. **Resistance to Light:** ASTM F 1515 – Passes  $\Delta E \leq 8.0$

2.4. **Fire Resistance** (ASTM E 648/NFPA 253) Critical Radiant Flux: Class 1 (Minimum 0.45 W/cm<sup>2</sup>)

2.5. **Flame Spread / Smoke Development** (ASTM E 84/NFPA 255): Class B, < 450

2.6. **Chemical Resistance (ASTM F 925):** Passed - 5% Acetic acid, 70% Isopropyl alcohol, Sodium hydroxide solution (5% NaOH), Hydrochloric acid solution (5% HCl), Sulfuric acid solution (5% H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), Household ammonia solution (5% NH<sub>4</sub>OH), Household bleach (5.25% NaOCl), Disinfectant cleaner (5% active phenol)

### 3. INSTALLATION

3.1. See Johnsonite BaseWorks wall base installation instructions for complete details.

3.2. **Adhesives:**

• **Tarkett 960 Cove Base Adhesive** (Porous surfaces):

Application: 1/8" x 1/8" x 1/8" square notched trowel

Approximate coverage:

2 1/2" high – 300 to 350 linear feet/gallon

4" high – 200 to 250 linear feet/gallon

6" high – 100 to 150 linear feet/gallon

• **Tarkett 946 Premium Contact Adhesive** (Non-porous surfaces)

Application: Brush or roller

Approximate coverage:

1 kg Unit (0.95 Qt) – 24 to 36 sq. ft.

6 kg Unit (1.44 Gal.) – 144 to 215 sq. ft.

### 4. AVAILABILITY AND COST

Available through authorized Tarkett distributors nationwide.

### 5. WARRANTY

Limited 2 year warranty. For complete details, contact Tarkett or an authorized Tarkett distributor.

### 6. MAINTENANCE

72 hours after installation is completed, initial maintenance procedures must be implemented in accordance with manufacturer's requirements. Refer to Johnsonite BaseWorks Wall Base Installation & Maintenance Instructions for complete maintenance details.

### 7. TECHNICAL SERVICES

**Samples:** Submittal samples for verification and approval available upon request from Tarkett. Samples shall be submitted in compliance with the requirements of the contract documents. Accepted and approved samples shall constitute the standard materials which represent materials installed on the project.

For current Installation and Maintenance Instructions, Product Specifications, and other technical data, visit us on the web at [www.tarkettna.com](http://www.tarkettna.com) or contact Tarkett at 1-800-899-8916.



#### Technical Services Department

30000 Aurora Road, Solon, Ohio 44139

(800) 899-8916 ext 9297

Fax (440) 632-5643

email: [info@johnsonite.com](mailto:info@johnsonite.com)

[www.tarkettna.com](http://www.tarkettna.com)



# Johnsonite®

## Rubber & Vinyl Wall Base

### Maintenance Instructions

#### **Routine Cleaning**

---

Johnsonite Rubber and Vinyl Wall Base are maintained with regular wiping with a soft, wet cloth. A mild soap may be added to the water. Coarse scrubbing media or harsh cleaning chemicals may damage the surface of the wall base.

For further questions please contact Johnsonite Customer Service or Technical Services Department at 1-800-899-8916.

# Johnsonite®

Technical Services Department  
16910 Munn Road, Chagrin Falls, Ohio 44023  
(800) 899-8916 ext 297 Fax (440) 543-8920

www. Johnsonite.com  
E-mail: info @ Johnsonite.com

© 2006 Johnsonite, Inc. A Tarkett Company.

# Limited Warranty

## JOHNSONITE WARRANTY OVERVIEW

Johnsonite is pleased to offer the world's most-integrated, high-performance flooring system, bringing together design, function and life-safety, leading to enhanced productivity in high-performance environments. All Johnsonite products are warranted against manufacturers' defects to ensure high standards of quality, performance and aesthetics.

## LIMITED WARRANTY INFORMATION

### Section 1: Rubber Sheet Flooring

Limited 5-Year Commercial Warranty for Manufacturing Defects: Johnsonite warrants from the date of purchase for a period of five (5) years of Commercial use that rubber sheet flooring products conform to written specifications and are free of manufacturing defects, subject to the terms and conditions specified herein.

The customer must notify Johnsonite of any obvious visual defects prior to installation; otherwise this warranty will not apply. If the defect is found and Johnsonite is notified in writing prior to installation, Johnsonite will replace any defective product, at no charge. If the customer believes the product to be defective after installation, the customer must promptly notify Johnsonite and permit an inspection of the product. If, upon inspection, Johnsonite determines that the product is defective, Johnsonite will replace or repair the defective product at its own cost, subject to the limitations in this warranty, and prorated as follows: Material and 100% Reasonable Labor Costs (Year 1); Material and 50% Reasonable Labor Costs (Year 2); and Material Only (Years 3-5).

Johnsonite warrants that the products will not wear through for the warranty period of five (5) years of Commercial use. For claims based on wear-through, the customer must notify Johnsonite and permit an inspection of the flooring. If Johnsonite determines that the original flooring is worn through, Johnsonite will replace or repair the worn flooring at its own cost; however, labor costs will be the customer's responsibility except as provided on the prorated basis described in the prior paragraph.

### Section 2: Compression Molded Rubber Tile

Limited 5-Year Commercial Warranty for Manufacturing Defects: Johnsonite warrants from the date of purchase for a period of five (5) years of Commercial use that molded rubber tile flooring products conform to written specifications and are free of manufacturing defects, subject to the terms and conditions specified herein.

The customer must notify Johnsonite of any obvious visual defects prior to installation; otherwise this warranty will not apply. If the defect is found and Johnsonite is notified in writing prior to installation, Johnsonite will replace any defective product, at no charge. If the customer believes the product to be defective after installation, the customer must promptly notify Johnsonite and permit an inspection of the product. If, upon inspection, Johnsonite determines that the product is defective, Johnsonite will replace or repair the defective product at its own cost, subject to the limitations in this warranty, and prorated as follows: Material and 100% Reasonable Labor Costs (Year 1); Material and 50% Reasonable Labor Costs (Year 2); and Material Only (Years 3-5).

Johnsonite warrants that the products will not wear through for the warranty period of five (5) years of Commercial use. For claims based on wear-through, the customer must notify Johnsonite and permit an inspection of the flooring. If Johnsonite determines that the original flooring is worn through, Johnsonite will replace or repair the worn flooring at its own cost; however, labor costs will be the customer's responsibility except as provided on the prorated basis described in the prior paragraph.

SECTION	PRODUCT TYPE	PRODUCT LINES
1	Rubber Sheet Flooring	Arcade; Replay® Rolls
2	Compression Molded Rubber Tile	MicroTone™; Circularity™; Mesto™; Mesto Configurations™; Metallurgy™; Eco-Shell™ with Cork; CorkTones™; Folio™; Prima® Olio™ and Marbleized; Triumph and Inertia™; Replay™ Tiles; SlideLock™; Defiant™ Oil- and Grease-Resistant; Terra-Turf™
3	Rubber or Vinyl Stair Treads	Rubber or Vinyl Stair Treads, Tactile Warning Surface
4	Finishing Borders (Wall Base)	Millwork™; Masquerade™; Wall Art™; Ecolibrium™; BaseWorks™; Traditional; Perceptions™; TightLock™; rePLACE™; Finishing Accessories; Rubber or Vinyl Risers; Rubber or Vinyl Stringers; Vinyl Nosings
5	Vinyl Sheet Flooring	iQ™ Optima® (All Collections); iQ™ Granit™ (All Collections); iQ™ Natural; Melodia 2.0™; Aria 2.0™; Contract Plus; Acczent® (All Collections); Marbled Safe-T; Ruby; Training®; iQ™ Granit™ SD, iQ™ Toro SC
6	Vinyl Tile Flooring	Cortina Grande™ Solid Vinyl Tile; GemStone™ Solid Vinyl Tile, Color Essence™ Vinyl Enhanced Tile, Azterra™ Vinyl Enhanced Tile
7	Linoleum Sheet Flooring	Harmonium x <sup>2</sup> (All Collections)
8	Luxury Tile and Plank	I.D. Inspiration™, I.D. Freedom™, Space™ Modular Tile
9	Luxury Tile and Plank (Light Commercial)	I.D. Patriot™
10	Vinyl Composition Tile and Plank	Azrock® VCT; Azrock® Textile™ VCT

### Section 3: Rubber or Vinyl Stair Treads

Limited 5-Year Commercial Warranty for Manufacturing Defects: Johnsonite warrants from the date of purchase for a period of five (5) years of Commercial use that rubber or vinyl stair tread products conform to written specifications and are free of manufacturing defects, subject to the terms and conditions specified herein.

The customer must notify Johnsonite of any obvious visual defects prior to installation; otherwise this warranty will not apply. If the defect is found and Johnsonite is notified in writing prior to installation, Johnsonite will replace any defective product, at no charge. If the customer believes the product to be defective after installation, the customer must promptly notify Johnsonite and permit an inspection of the product. If, upon inspection, Johnsonite determines that the product is defective, Johnsonite will replace or repair the defective product at its own cost, subject to the limitations in this warranty, and prorated as follows: Material and 100% Reasonable Labor Costs (Year 1); Material and 50% Reasonable Labor Costs (Year 2); and Material Only (Years 3-5).

### Section 4: Finishing Borders (Wall Base)

Limited 2-Year Commercial Warranty for Manufacturing Defects: Johnsonite warrants from the date of purchase for a period of two (2) years of Commercial use that rubber or vinyl wall base products conform to written specifications and are free of manufacturing defects, subject to the terms and conditions specified herein.

The customer must notify Johnsonite of any obvious visual defects prior to installation; otherwise this warranty will not apply. If the defect is found and Johnsonite is notified in writing prior to installation, Johnsonite will replace any defective product, at no charge. If the customer believes the product to be defective after installation, the customer must promptly notify Johnsonite and permit an inspection of the product. If, upon inspection, Johnsonite determines that the product is defective, Johnsonite will replace or repair the defective product at its own cost, subject to the limitations in this warranty, and prorated as follows: Material and 100% Reasonable Labor Costs (Year 1); Material and 50% Reasonable Labor Costs (Year 2).

### Section 5: Vinyl Sheet Flooring

Limited 5-Year Commercial Warranty for Manufacturing Defects: Johnsonite warrants from the date of purchase for a period of five (5) years of Commercial use that vinyl sheet flooring products

conform to written specifications and are free of manufacturing defects, subject to the terms and conditions specified herein.

The customer must notify Johnsonite of any obvious visual defects prior to installation; otherwise this warranty will not apply. If the defect is found and Johnsonite is notified in writing prior to installation, Johnsonite will replace any defective product, at no charge. If the customer believes the product to be defective after installation, the customer must promptly notify Johnsonite and permit an inspection of the product. If, upon inspection, Johnsonite determines that the product is defective, Johnsonite will replace or repair the defective product at its own cost, subject to the limitations in this warranty, and prorated as follows: Material and 100% Reasonable Labor Costs (Year 1); Material and 50% Reasonable Labor Costs (Year 2); and Material Only (Years 3-5).

Johnsonite warrants that the products will not wear through for the warranty period of five (5) years of Commercial use. For claims based on wear-through, the customer must notify Johnsonite and permit an inspection of the flooring. If Johnsonite determines that the original flooring is worn through, Johnsonite will replace or repair the worn flooring at its own cost; however, labor costs will be the customer's responsibility except as provided on the prorated basis described in the prior paragraph.

### Section 6: Vinyl Tile Flooring

Limited 10-Year Commercial Warranty for Manufacturing Defects: Johnsonite warrants from the date of purchase for a period of ten (10) years of Commercial use that vinyl tile flooring products conform to written specifications and are free of manufacturing defects, subject to the terms and conditions specified herein.

The customer must notify Johnsonite of any obvious visual defects prior to installation; otherwise this warranty will not apply. If the defect is found and Johnsonite is notified in writing prior to installation, Johnsonite will replace any defective product, at no charge. If the customer believes the product to be defective after installation, the customer must promptly notify Johnsonite and permit an inspection of the product. If, upon inspection, Johnsonite determines that the product is defective, Johnsonite will replace or repair the defective product at its own cost, subject to the limitations in this warranty, and prorated as follows: Material and 100% Reasonable Labor Costs (Year 1); Material and 50% Reasonable Labor Costs (Year 2); and Material Only (Years 3-10).

Johnsonite warrants that the products will not wear through for the warranty period of ten (10) years of Commercial use. For claims based on wear-through, the customer must notify Johnsonite and permit an inspection of the flooring. If Johnsonite determines that the original flooring is worn through, Johnsonite will replace or repair the worn flooring at its own cost; however, labor costs will be the customer's responsibility except as provided on the prorated basis described in the prior paragraph.

### Section 7: Linoleum Sheet Flooring

Limited 5-Year Commercial Warranty for Manufacturing Defects: Johnsonite warrants from the date of purchase for a period of five (5) years of Commercial use that linoleum sheet and tile flooring products conform to written specifications and are free of manufacturing defects, subject to the terms and conditions specified herein.

The customer must notify Johnsonite of any obvious visual defects prior to installation; otherwise this warranty will not apply. If the defect is found and Johnsonite is notified in writing prior to installation, Johnsonite will replace any defective product, at no charge. If the customer believes the product to be defective after installation, the customer must promptly notify Johnsonite and permit an inspection of the product. If, upon inspection, Johnsonite determines that the product is defective, Johnsonite will replace or repair the defective product at its own cost, subject to the limitations in this warranty, and prorated as follows: Material and 100% Reasonable Labor Costs (Year 1); Material and 50% Reasonable Labor Costs (Year 2); and Material Only (Years 3-5).

Johnsonite warrants that the products will not wear through for the warranty period of five (5) years of Commercial use. For claims based on wear-through, the customer must notify Johnsonite and permit an inspection of the flooring. If Johnsonite determines that the original flooring is worn through, Johnsonite will replace or repair the worn flooring at its own cost; however, labor costs will be the customer's responsibility except as provided on the prorated basis described in the prior paragraph.

### Section 8: Luxury Tile and Plank

Limited 10-Year Commercial Warranty for Manufacturing Defects: Johnsonite warrants from the date of purchase for a period of ten (10) years of Commercial use that luxury tile and plank flooring products conform to written specifications and are free of manufacturing defects, subject to the terms and conditions specified herein.

The customer must notify Johnsonite of any obvious visual defects prior to installation; otherwise this warranty will not apply. If the defect is found and Johnsonite is notified in writing prior to installation, Johnsonite will replace any defective product, at no charge. If the customer believes the product to be defective after installation, the customer must promptly notify Johnsonite and permit an inspection of the product. If, upon inspection, Johnsonite determines that the product is defective, Johnsonite will replace or repair the defective product at its own cost, subject to the limitations in this warranty, and prorated as follows: Material and 100% Reasonable Labor Costs (Year 1); Material and 50% Reasonable Labor Costs (Year 2); and Material Only (Years 3-10).

Johnsonite warrants that the products will not wear through for the warranty period of five (5) years of Commercial use. For claims based on wear-through, the customer must notify Johnsonite and permit an inspection of the flooring. If Johnsonite determines that the original flooring is worn through, Johnsonite will replace or repair the worn flooring at its own cost; however, labor costs will be the customer's responsibility except as provided on the prorated basis described in the prior paragraph.

### Section 9: Luxury Tile and Plank (Light Commercial)

Limited 10-Year Light Commercial Warranty for Manufacturing Defects: Johnsonite warrants from the date of purchase for a period of ten (10) years of Light Commercial use that luxury tile and plank flooring products conform to written specifications

and are free of manufacturing defects, subject to the terms and conditions specified herein. Light Commercial applications are defined as foot-traffic-only (no rolling loads).

The customer must notify Johnsonite of any obvious visual defects prior to installation; otherwise this warranty will not apply. If the defect is found and Johnsonite is notified in writing prior to installation, Johnsonite will replace any defective product, at no charge. If the customer believes the product to be defective after installation, the customer must promptly notify Johnsonite and permit an inspection of the product. If, upon inspection, Johnsonite determines that the product is defective, Johnsonite will replace or repair the defective product at its own cost, subject to the limitations in this warranty, and prorated as follows: Material and 100% Reasonable Labor Costs (Year 1); Material and 50% Reasonable Labor Costs (Year 2); and Material Only (Years 3-10).

Johnsonite warrants that the products will not wear through for the warranty period of ten (10) years of Light Commercial use. For claims based on wear-through, the customer must notify Johnsonite and permit an inspection of the flooring. If Johnsonite determines that the original flooring is worn through, Johnsonite will replace or repair the worn flooring at its own cost; however, labor costs will be the customer's responsibility except as provided on the prorated basis described in the prior paragraph.

### Section 10: Vinyl Composition Tile and Plank

Limited 5-Year Commercial Warranty for Manufacturing Defects: Johnsonite warrants from the date of purchase for a period of five (5) years of Commercial use that vinyl composition tile and plank flooring products conform to written specifications and are free of manufacturing defects, subject to the terms and conditions specified herein.

The customer must notify Johnsonite of any obvious visual defects prior to installation; otherwise this warranty will not apply. If the defect is found and Johnsonite is notified in writing prior to installation, Johnsonite will replace any defective product, at no charge. If the customer believes the product to be defective after installation, the customer must promptly notify Johnsonite and permit an inspection of the product. If, upon inspection, Johnsonite determines that the product is defective, Johnsonite will replace or repair the defective product at its own cost, subject to the limitations in this warranty, and prorated as follows: Material and 100% Reasonable Labor Costs (Year 1); Material and 50% Reasonable Labor Costs (Year 2); and Material Only (Years 3-10).

Johnsonite warrants that the products will not wear through for the warranty period of five (5) years of Commercial use. For claims based on wear-through, the customer must notify Johnsonite and permit an inspection of the flooring. If Johnsonite determines that the original flooring is worn through, Johnsonite will replace or repair the worn flooring at its own cost; however, labor costs will be the customer's responsibility except as provided on the prorated basis described in the prior paragraph.

### All Johnsonite Commercial Products:

This Limited Warranty applies only for products installed, used and maintained according to the written recommendations and specifications provided by at the time of material purchase.

#### Warranty Claim Procedure

To be eligible for replacement under this warranty, the customer must file a claim by giving Johnsonite written notice of the defect. This notice must be filed immediately, but in no event more than 10 days following discovery of the defect. Notice shall be given to Johnsonite at its corporate address of 16910 Munn Road, Chagrin Falls, Ohio 44023. Phone: (800) 899-8916; Fax: (440) 543-5774.

If defective product has been discontinued or is otherwise unavailable, Johnsonite reserves the right to select and supply the customer with Johnsonite replacement flooring, similar in quality and quantity to the material claimed to be defective.

### Warranty Exclusions

The Johnsonite Limited Warranty does not apply to:

- The exact matching of shade, color or mottling
- Any promise made by any salesperson or representative, unless such promise is express and made in a written form
- Tears, burns, cuts or damage due to improper installation or use or improper cleaning agents and maintenance methods
- Labor costs outside of prorated schedule defined in the warranty
- Sales of non-first quality materials, i.e., "seconds," "off goods" or other irregular flooring. Such non-first quality materials are sold "as is."
- Issues associated with the use of adhesives other than those recommended by Johnsonite
- Issues caused by moisture or alkali in the subfloor. Pre-installation moisture and alkali testing is required and must be made available to Johnsonite upon request.
- Subfloor contamination or markings that bleed through the flooring material causing discoloration or staining
- Problems caused by installation, uses and maintenance that are contrary to Johnsonite's specifications, recommendations or instructions
- Material installed with obvious defects not notified to Johnsonite prior to installation
- Exterior installations – Johnsonite products are designed for interior applications only
- Fading and/or discoloration resulting from heavy sunlight penetration and ultraviolet ray exposure from direct or glass-filtered sunlight
- Damage to flooring products caused by high or spiked heels, improper protectors/casters or furniture rests. Some rolling-type casters on furniture or appliances may damage resilient flooring. Warranty as to the suitability of the factory-installed casters rests with the furniture or appliance manufacturers. Casters must be suitable for use on resilient flooring to avoid warranty exclusions.
- Damage to flooring products from pallet jack and tow-motor traffic
- Premature wear or deterioration from spikes and skate blade exposure
- Variations in color or embossing between products, photography or printed color illustrations
- Installation of Johnsonite flooring in work or commercial areas exposed to oil and grease, such as commercial kitchens or butcher shops. Defiant Oil and Grease-Resistant Rubber tiles are recommended in such situations.
- Additional expense associated with overtime, replacing or moving appliances or furniture, business interruptions, loss of use or other related costs associated with the replacement of the flooring

### Warranty Disclaimer

JOHNSONITE MAKES NO WARRANTIES WHATSOEVER, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WITH RESPECT THERETO, INCLUDING WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

These warranties are in lieu of any other warranty expressed or implied. Johnsonite shall not be liable for any incidental or consequential damages which may result from a defect or whether based on breach of express or implied warranty, negligence, strict liability or any other legal theory, except where the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages is prohibited by state law. These warranties provide specific legal rights; these and other rights may vary from state to state. To learn the legal rights in a specific state, consult the local or state Consumer Affairs Office or the State Attorney General.

All of the above is for reference only – for the latest product-specific information regarding warranties, installation and maintenance, please visit [tarkettna.com](http://tarkettna.com).

# Pro 9750™

## Premium wall base adhesive

Pro 9750 is a premium, solvent-free, stain-free wall base adhesive, with strong wet grab, specially designed for vinyl, rubber and carpet wall base. Pro 9750 is easy to use, easy to clean, resistant to breakdown from plasticizer migration and is formulated with antimicrobial protection to prevent the growth of mold, mildew and bacteria. Pro 9750 is freeze/thaw stable to -12°C.

### Uses

- ◆ For the installation of vinyl, rubber and carpet wall base
- ◆ Use for stair thread installation
- ◆ Solvent free formula for improved indoor air quality
- ◆ Light-colored formula will not stain
- ◆ Strong wet grab and bond strength prevents slip during installation and holds corners tight
- ◆ Antimicrobial protection resists the growth of mold, mildew and bacteria
- ◆ Prevents breakdown of adhesive due to plasticizer migration from vinyl wall base
- ◆ Easy to apply and clean
- ◆ Freeze/thaw stable formula
- ◆ Contributes to LEED® objectives and requirements

### Suitable Substrates

- ◆ Drywall
- ◆ Plaster
- ◆ Masonry, concrete and brick walls
- ◆ Water-based paint residue over porous substrates
- ◆ Wood, such as APA grade plywood

### Packaging

850 mL (28.7 oz) cartridge, 4 L (1.05 US gal) pail, 10 L (2.6 US gal) pail, 15.1 L (4 US gal) pail

### Limitations

- ◆ For interior installations only.
- ◆ Do not use at temperature below 10°C (50°F) or above 35°C (95°F)
- ◆ Do not install over non-porous surfaces, such as vinyl wall coverings, wallpaper, ceramic tiles, metal, non-porous paint or other.
- ◆ Do not use where high moisture and hydrostatic condition and/or recurring moisture problems exist.
- ◆ Do not install over dusty or dirty substrate that could reduce adhesion.
- ◆ Do not store at extreme temperature (hot or cold) and protect from freezing under -12°C (10°F).

### Surface Preparation

Inspect the area to make sure that all surfaces are sound and clean. 24 hours prior to installation, condition the adhesive and lay the wall base flat at normal room temperature.



### Mixing

No mixing is required. This product is ready to use as is.



### Application

1. Prepare the wall base according to the manufacturer's instructions to fit the internal and external corners. You may require a marker, a knife and a hand groover for this step.
2. Apply the adhesive directly on the wall base with a 1/8" v-notched trowel or an appropriate 2, 3 or 5 holes nozzle applicator by making zigzag (the nozzle method may require a trowel pass to spread evenly and prevent normal drying marks from appearing by telegraphy once the adhesive is dried).
3. There is no need to let it flash so it can be installed right away.
4. Press the base firmly in place and roll the entire surface with a hand roller toward your starting point to prevent stretching and joint opening of the base. Also, the rolling should be done from the top down to push any excess adhesive toward the bottom of the base to prevent any overflow of adhesive at the top.

### Clean-up

Wet adhesive can easily be removed with a clean rag and warm soapy water. Dried adhesive can be removed using mineral spirits; however caution should be taken in order to avoid discoloration or other harmful effect on the base material.



# Pro 9750™ continued

**Technical Data** for Pro 9750 (@ 23°C [73°F] and 50% RH)

**Open time:** ..... Up to 20 minutes  
**Drying time:** ..... 24-48 hours  
**Specific gravity:** ..... 10.8 - 11.6 lbs/gal (1.30- 1.40 kg/L)  
**pH:** ..... 8-10  
**Consistency:** ..... Smooth and easy to spread  
**VOC content (per Rule # 1168 of California's SCAQMD):** ..... 41 g/L  
**Odor:** ..... Very low  
**Freeze thaw stability:** ..... Pass 5 cycles at -12°C (10°F)  
**Solid content:** ..... 50-65%

**Approximate coverage**

	Coverage per linear ft (linear m)		
	2.5" (6.4 cm) wall base	4" (10.2 cm) wall base	6" (15.2 cm) wall base
1/8" x 1/8" x 1/8" (3 x 3 x 3 mm) V-notched trowel			
2.8.7 oz (849 mL)	70-95 (21-29)	40-60 (12-18)	30-40 (9-12)
1 U.S. gal (3.79 L)	310 -405 (94-123)	190-250 (58-76)	130 -170 (40-52)
2.6 U.S. gal (10 L)	790-985 (240-300)	490-610 (150-185)	330-410 (100-125)
4 U.S. gal (15.1 L)	1290-1515 (393-462)	800-940 (244-287)	540-635 (165-194)

**Shelf life**

12 months if kept in its original unopened packaging and stored in a dry location.  
 Protect from freezing under -12°C (5°F)

**Health and Safety**

Refer to the Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS) for complete details.



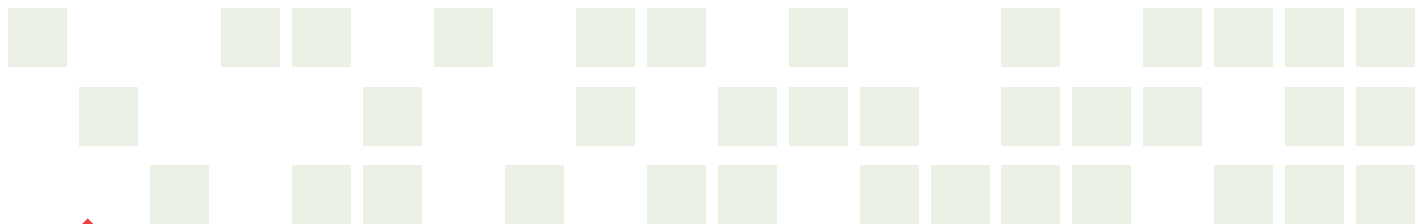
## Warranty

Prima warrants that this product is manufactured using quality raw materials and is of merchantable quality and suitable for the purpose for which it was intended. Prima's liability under this warranty shall be limited to the replacement of its product proven to be defective. Neither seller nor manufacturer shall be liable for any injury, loss or damage, direct or consequential, arising from the use of/or the inability to use this product.

## Contact Information

**PROMA Adhesives Inc.**

9801, Parkway, Anjou, Quebec Canada H1J 1P3  
 Tel.: 514.852.8585  
 Fax: 514.852.8225  
 Toll-free: 1 866.51.PROMA (77662)  
 Email: info@prima.ca



## SAFETY DATA SHEET

### Section 1. Product and Company Identification

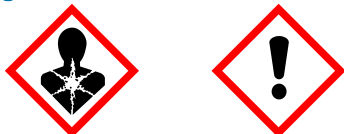
**Product Name:** PRO 9750  
**Recommended Use(s):** Premium wall cove base adhesive  
**Non-Recommended / Restricted Use(s):** Not specified  
**Manufacturer:** **Proma**  
9801 Boulevard parkway  
Anjou, QC,  
H1J 1P3  
Canada  
**Email:** info@proma.ca  
**Url:** www.proma.us/site/  
**Emergency Contact:** **Emergency Spills (CANUTEC):** (613)996-6666  
Emergency contact number in Canada  
**Emergency Spills (CHEMTREC):** (800)424-9300  
Emergency contact number in the US

### Section 2. Hazard Identification

**GHS Classification for mixture:**

Specific target organ toxicity - repeated exposure - Category 2  
Carcinogenicity - Category 1A  
Serious eye damage/eye irritation - Category 2  
Skin corrosion/irritation - Category 2

**Pictograms:**



**Signal Words:**

Danger

**Hazard Statements:**

Causes skin irritation.  
Causes serious eye irritation.  
May cause cancer. Route(s) of exposure: Breathing.  
May cause damage to organs through prolonged or repeated exposure. Route(s) of exposure: Breathing.  
Affected organ(s): Lung.

**Precautionary Statements:**

**Prevention**

Obtain special instructions before use.  
Do not handle until all safety precautions have been read and understood.  
Do not breathe dust, vapors.  
Wash hands thoroughly after handling.  
Wear protective gloves, eye protection.

**Response**

If exposed or concerned: Get medical advice.  
If eye irritation persists: Get medical attention.  
If skin irritation occurs: Get medical advice.



Get medical advice if you feel unwell.  
If eye irritation persists: Seek medical attention.  
IF IN EYES: Remove contact lenses, if present and easy to do. Continue rinsing.  
IF IN EYES: Rinse cautiously with water for several minutes.  
IF ON SKIN: Wash with plenty of water.  
Take off contaminated clothing. And wash it before reuse.

#### Storage

Store locked up.

#### Disposal

Dispose of container to in accordance with local regulations. Dispose of contents to in accordance with local regulations. Dispose of contents to in accordance with local regulations. Dispose of contents to in accordance with local regulations.

### Section 3. Composition / Information on Ingredients

Identifiers	Ingredients	Percentage	Classification
1317-65-3	Limestone	45%	
57-55-6	Propylene glycol	1.5%	
14808-60-7	Quartz (SiO <sub>2</sub> )	1%	

### Section 4. First-Aid Measures

#### First-Aid: Eyes

**IF IN EYES:** Wash eyes with plenty of water. Hold eyelids open to ensure adequate flushing. Remove the contact lenses immediately if worn and easy to do so. Continue rinsing. Seek medical attention if irritation or redness develops.

#### First-Aid: Skin

**IF ON SKIN:** Wash contaminated areas thoroughly with water. Take off all contaminated clothing and wash it before reuse. If redness or other symptoms occurs, seek medical advice/attention.

#### First-Aid: Ingestion

**IF INGESTED:** Rinse the mouth with water. If after ingestion you feel unwell, seek medical advice. In the case of ingestion of large quantities immediately take the person to hospital.

#### First-Aid: Inhalation

**IF INHALED:** Remove person to fresh air and keep at rest in a position comfortable for breathing. Seek medical attention if symptoms occur.

### Section 5. Fire-Fighting Measures

#### Suitable Extinguishing Media

**Flammability:** The product is not flammable or combustible.

**Extinguishing media:** Use extinguishing measures that are appropriate to local circumstances and the surrounding environment.

## Unsuitable Extinguishing Media

According to the local circumstances and the surrounding environment.

## Protective Measures for Fire-Fighting

Wear protective clothing to prevent contact with skin and eyes. Wear self-contained breathing apparatus for firefighting.

## Special Protective Actions for Fire-Fighters

Avoid direct contact with the substance. Avoid breathing gas, vapor or dust.

## Combustion Products

Oxides of carbon (CO<sub>x</sub>).

## Specific Hazards Arising from Combustion of Products

**Heat & Fire:** The product is not flammable or combustible. Fire and heat may decompose the product and generate hazardous gas, vapor or dust. Gas, vapors or dust are irritative to skin and eyes.

## Other Information for Fire Fighters

In the case of large fires, evacuate residents who are downwind of fire.

# Section 6. Accidental Release Measures

## Personal Precautions, Protective Equipment and Emergency Procedures

Avoid direct contact with the substance. Avoid breathing gas, vapor or dust. Isolate and restrict access to the area. Wear protective gloves, clothing and protective goggles to prevent contact with skin and eyes.

## Environmental Precautions

Prevent entry into sewers, water courses, basements or confined areas. Dispose the material in accordance with the government regulation. If the product has entered a water course or sewer or contaminated soil or vegetation, advise the local emergency services and environmental authorities.

## Clean-up Procedures

Collect and transfer to a closable container without splash or generating dust / mist. Dispose the material in accordance with the government regulations.

# Section 7. Handling and Storage

## Precautions for Safe Handling

Avoid direct contact with the substance. Avoid breathing mist, vapor, dust, fume, gas or spray. Keep container tightly closed. Do not eat or drink during handling. Wear protective gloves, clothing and protective goggles to prevent contact with skin and eyes. Ensure there is sufficient ventilation of the area. Wash any exposed area of body thoroughly after handling. Report immediately if physical damage, leakage or spillage occurs.

## Conditions for Safe Storage

Store locked up. Keep container tightly closed. Store in a well-ventilated area. Keep away from direct sunlight. Respect the laws of the safety standards and occupational health.

## Suitable Packaging

Original packaging.

## Incompatible Materials

Do not store in metallic containers.



## Section 8. Exposure Controls / Personal Protection

### Control Parameters / Limits for Product

No data available for the product.

### Control Parameters / Limits for Component

#### Quartz (SiO<sub>2</sub>)

NIOSH REL	TWA: 0.05 mg/m <sup>3</sup> (respirable).
OSHA PEL	PEL: 30 mg/m <sup>3</sup> ÷ (% Silica +2) (total dust). PEL: 10 mg/m <sup>3</sup> ÷ (% Silica +2) (respirable).

#### Kaolin

ACGIH TLV	TWA: 2 mg/m <sup>3</sup> (respirable).
NIOSH REL	TWA: 10 mg/m <sup>3</sup> (total dust). TWA: 5 mg/m <sup>3</sup> (respirable fraction).
OSHA PEL	PEL: 15 mg/m <sup>3</sup> (total dust). PEL: 5 mg/m <sup>3</sup> (respirable fraction).

#### Limestone

ACGIH TLV	TWA: 10 mg/m <sup>3</sup> .
NIOSH REL	TWA: 10 mg/m <sup>3</sup> (total dust). TWA: 5 mg/m <sup>3</sup> (respirable fraction).
OSHA PEL	PEL: 15 mg/m <sup>3</sup> (total dust). PEL: 5 mg/m <sup>3</sup> (respirable fraction).

### Engineering Measures

Provide adequate general and local exhaust ventilation.

### Respiratory Protection

In the case of mechanical work (such as grinding and sanding) which dust is generated, wear protective dust mask.

### Eye/Face Protection

Safety goggles.

### Skin and Body Protection

Wear protective clothing.

### Hand Protection

Wear impermeable gloves.

## Section 9. Physical and Chemical Properties

### Basic physical and chemical properties Information

Physical State	solid
Appearance	Thick white paste
Odor	Thick white paste
Odor threshold	Not available
pH	8 to 9.5
Melting point	Not applicable
Boiling point	100°C / 212°F / 373.15 K
Flash Point	Not applicable

Evaporation rate w/r/t ether	Not available
Evaporation rate w/r/t butyl acetate	Not available
Flammability	Not applicable
Flammability limit	Not applicable
Vapor pressure	Not available
Vapor density	Not applicable
Relative density w/r/t water	1.3 to 1.4
Relative density w/r/t air	Not applicable
Solubility	Soluble
Solubility in other solvents	Not available
Partition coefficient	Not available
Auto-ignition temperature	Not applicable
Decomposition temperature	Not available
Viscosity	Not available
Freezing point	Not applicable
Relative density w/r/t other substance	Not available
VOC content	39 g/l

## Section 10. Chemical Stability & Reactivity Information

### Stability/Reactivity

**Stability:** The product is stable under ambient condition.

### Possibility of Hazardous Reactions

**In ambient conditions:** Dangerous reactions are not expected, if the technical instructions storage of chemicals are met.

**In high temperatures:** The product decomposes in high temperatures and produces toxic gas or vapor.

### Conditions to Avoid

Fire. Heat. Direct sunlight.

### Materials to Avoid

Strong acids. Strong bases. Strong oxidizers.

### Hazardous Products of Decomposition

Oxides of carbon (CO<sub>x</sub>).

## Section 11. Toxicological Information

### Toxicological Information for Product

**Prolonged / Repeated Exposure:** Prolonged / Repeated exposure causes damage to lungs and kidneys.

**Ingestion:** The product is not classified for ingestion hazard.

**Contact with Skin:** Causes skin irritation.

**Toxicological Data:** No toxicological data exists for the product.

**Carcinogenicity:** This product is classified as carcinogen 1A because of the existence of crystalline silica above the thresholds of occupational health.

**Inhalation:** May cause respiratory irritation.

**Contact with eyes:** Causes serious eye irritation.

## Toxicological Information for Component

### Quartz (SiO<sub>2</sub>)

<b>Toxicity - Oral</b>	LD50 Rat > 22,500 mg/kg.
<b>Toxicity - Dermal</b>	LD50 Rabbit > 2000 mg/kg.
<b>Toxicity - Inhalation</b>	LC50 (4h) Rat > 20.00 mg/l.

### Limestone

<b>Toxicity - Oral</b>	LD50 Rat 6450 mg/kg.
<b>Toxicity - Dermal</b>	LD50 Rabbit > 2000 mg/kg.
<b>Toxicity - Inhalation</b>	LC50 (4h) Rat > 5.00 mg/l.

### Propylene glycol

<b>Toxicity - Oral</b>	LD50 Rat 28 g/kg.
------------------------	-------------------

## Section 12. Ecological Information

### Ecotoxicity Values for Product

**Ecotoxicity:** No ecotoxicity values for product specified.

### Ecotoxicity Values for Component

#### Propylene glycol

**Freshwater Fish:** LC50 (96h) 10 g/l.

#### Limestone

**Freshwater Fish:** LC50 Western mosquitofish 56,000 mg/l.

## Section 13. Disposal Considerations

### Waste Disposal Regulation(s) / Operation

Avoid release to the environment. Users need to pay attention to the possible existence of regional or national regulations regarding disposal.

## Section 14. Transportation Information

#### Other

**Regulation:** Not regulated for transportaion.

## Section 15. Regulatory Information

### Safety, Health and Environmental Regulations for Product

No regulation data for product.

### Safety, Health and Environmental Regulations for Component

#### Limestone

##### Canada:

WHMIS Classification: Class D Division 2 Subdivision A - Very toxic material causing other toxic effects.

DSL / NDSL: Listed on Non-Domestic Substances List (NDSL).

**States:** Hazardous Substance Right to Know List (RTK): Massachusetts. New Jersey. Pennsylvania.  
Toxic Substances Control Act (TSCA): listed on TSCA inventory.

## Quartz (SiO<sub>2</sub>)

**Canada:** WHMIS Classification: Class D Division 2 Subdivision A - Very toxic material causing other toxic effects.  
DSL / NDSL: Listed on the Canadian DSL (Domestic Substances List) inventory.  
Listed on the Canadian Ingredient Disclosure List.

**States:** Hazardous Substance Right to Know List (RTK): Massachusetts. New Jersey. Pennsylvania.  
California-Proposition 65 Carcinogens List: Crystalline silica is known to the State of California to cause cancer.

## Section 16. Other Information

### Other Information

**Disclaimer:** The above information is believed to be correct but does not purport to be all inclusive and shall be used only as a guide. This company shall not be held liable for any damage resulting from handling or from contact with the above product.

### Glossary

<b>ACGIH:</b>	American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists.
<b>ADR:</b>	European Road Transport.
<b>CAS:</b>	Chemical Abstracts Service.
<b>DOT:</b>	US Department of Transportation USA.
<b>DSL:</b>	Canadian Domestic Substances List.
<b>EPA:</b>	US Environmental Protection Agency.
<b>IATA:</b>	International Air Transport Association.
<b>IMDG:</b>	International Maritime Dangerous Goods Code.
<b>LC50:</b>	Lethal concentration that will kill 50 percent of the test animals within a specified time.
<b>LD50:</b>	The dose required to produce the death in 50 percent of the exposed species within a specified time.
<b>N/Ap:</b>	Not applicable.
<b>N/Av:</b>	Not available.
<b>N/D:</b>	Not determined.
<b>NDSL:</b>	Canadian Non-Domestic Substances List.
<b>NIOSH:</b>	National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health.
<b>OSHA:</b>	Occupational Safety and Health Administration, US Department of Labor.
<b>PEL:</b>	Permissible exposure limit. An exposure limit that is published and enforced by OSHA as a legal standard.
<b>REL:</b>	A recommended exposure limit (REL) is an occupational exposure limit that has been recommended by the United States National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health to the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) for adoption as a permissible exposure limit.

<b>RTECS:</b>	Registry of Toxic Effects of Chemical Substances.
<b>SARA:</b>	Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act.
<b>STEL:</b>	A short-term exposure limit (STEL) is the acceptable average exposure over a short period of time, usually 15 minutes as long as the time-weighted average is not exceeded.
<b>TDG:</b>	Transportation of Dangerous Goods Regulations.
<b>TLV:</b>	The threshold limit value of a chemical substance is a level to which it is believed a worker can be exposed day after day for a working lifetime without adverse health effects. Strictly speaking, TLV is a reserved term of the American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH). However, it is sometimes loosely used to refer to other similar concepts used in occupational health and toxicology. TLVs, along with biological exposure indices (BEIs), are published annually by the ACGIH.
<b>TSCA:</b>	Toxic Substances Control Act.
<b>TWA:</b>	A time-weighted average is used to calculate a workers daily exposure to a hazardous substance (such as chemicals, dusts, fumes, mists, gases, or vapors) or agent (such as occupational noise), averaged to an 8-hour workday, taking into account the average levels of the substance or agent and the time spent in the area. This is the guideline OSHA uses to determine permissible exposure limits (PELs) and is essential in assessing a worker's exposure and determining what protective measures should be taken.
<b>UN:</b>	United Nations.

# Proma Total Quality System Warranty

## Up to 25 Years!

We, at PROMA ADHESIVES INC., are proud to offer our customers the very best adhesives and surface preparation products the industry has to offer. Our quality raw materials are meticulously chosen for their high-performance characteristics and are then formulated and manufactured to produce products that will provide many years of trouble-free performance. Along with quality products, we are proud to offer a series of comprehensive extended warranty programs that guarantee the product system installed will be free of defects for periods of up to 25 years depending on the installation system, all of which must include the use of our surface preparation products (when required), adhesives and/or mortar systems and grouts. These products must be used jointly and exclusively with the full range of PROMA ADHESIVES INC. products as the complete and single source installation system.

Depending on products and systems, our extended quality warranty plan covers all interior and exterior residential and commercial installation systems, and guarantees that the tile or stone installation systems will be free of manufacturing defects and will not break down or deteriorate under normal usage for the time period specified, as long as all materials are mixed and used over clean, sound, properly prepared substrates in strict accordance with the generally recommended ANSI A108 standards procedures and with the respective PROMA ADHESIVES INC. product system specifications, setting instructions, shelf life limitations and technical data sheets requirements.

PROMA's extended quality warranty covers all reasonable labor and material costs for the repair and/or replacement, at its discretion, on a per square foot (square meter) basis [including the cost of tile or stone not exceeding the original purchase cost per m<sup>2</sup> (ft<sup>2</sup>)] of the sole portion of the installation proven to be defective during the warranty period due to a confirmed manufacturing defect of the PROMA ADHESIVES product system. It does not include costs, losses, and damages due to lateness, delays or other consequential damages.

This warranty does not cover industrial installations subject to chemical and mechanical abuse or improper selection of tile or stone. Warranty does not cover damages due to structural defects, substrate movements or deficiencies, hydrostatic and moisture conditions, tile, stone and grout cracking, lipping or shading or other damages due to deficient work procedures not in strict accordance with accepted trade standards and PROMA ADHESIVES' instructions. Efflorescence, color variation and shading are normal conditions of all Portland cement mortars and grouts and will NOT be considered defective conditions.

This warranty is subject to specific terms and limitations as detailed in our official warranty documentation and does not apply if PROMA ADHESIVES products are used, mixed or associated with products from other manufacturers. PROMA ADHESIVES INC. requires the right to inspect the site before work begins and periodically during the execution of the tile work, as a condition for qualifying for extended warranty. Jobs in excess of 460 m<sup>2</sup> (5,000 ft<sup>2</sup>) require preapproval.

PROMA ADHESIVES INC. representatives will gladly issue customized warranties to cover your specific jobs and/or requirements upon request.



These icons indicate that the selected products are part of the **Proma Total Quality System Warranty** plan and qualify for extended limited coverage up to 25 years, depending upon the product, specification and installation system requirements.

# FLOOR PROFILES



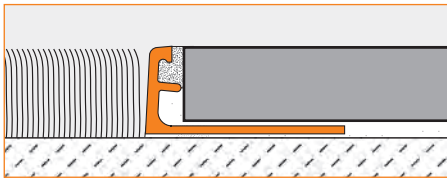
## INNOVATIVE SOLUTIONS FOR CERAMIC AND STONE TILE

### FINISHING, EDGE PROTECTION, AND TRANSITIONS

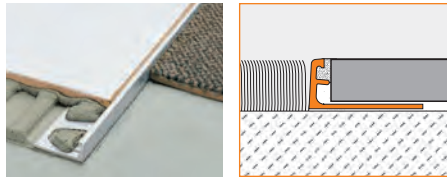
Because ceramic and stone tiles are inherently brittle, their exposed edges can chip and crack if left unprotected. Transitions between floor surfaces and at thresholds are particularly vulnerable to damage. Schluter®-Systems offers a variety of profiles to provide edge protection and transition at thresholds and between adjacent surfaces, resulting in durable, maintenance-free tiled coverings. The profiles can be grouped into two categories: transitions between same-height surfaces and transitions between different-height surfaces.

### Application and Function

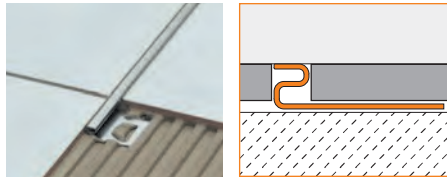
#### Same-height Transitions



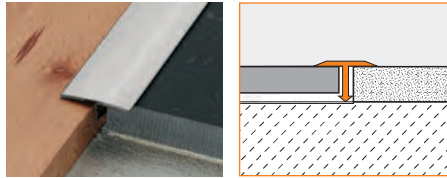
**1.1 Schluter®-SCHIENE** is designed to provide edging for tile coverings. Typical applications include edge protection where tile is bordered by carpet, at expansion joints, or as a decorative edging for stairs. Schluter®-SCHIENE is available in stainless steel, solid brass, aluminum, and anodized aluminum. The profile features a trapezoid-perforated anchoring leg, which is secured in the mortar bond coat beneath the tile, and an 87° sloped vertical wall section that transfers point loads to the substrate and surface covering while protecting tile edges from damage. Schluter®-SCHIENE, in solid brass, aluminum, and anodized aluminum, features a 5° sloped top flange and fillet at the anchoring leg/vertical section interface



**1.1 Schluter®-SCHIENE**

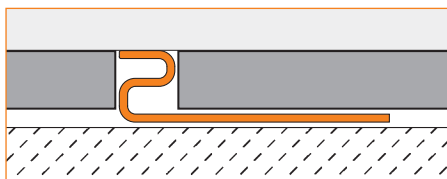


**1.6 Schluter®-DECO**

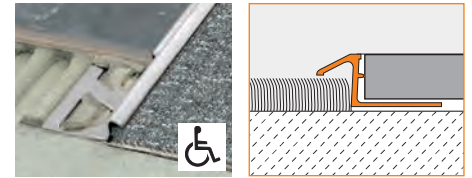


**1.3 Schluter®-RENO-T**

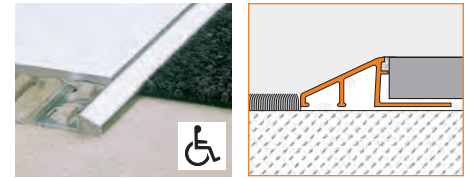
to enhance edge protection by reducing stresses on the tile, and, in sizes greater than 1/4" (6 mm), features an integrated joint spacer that establishes a defined joint cavity between the tile and the profile. The anchoring leg of Schluter®-SCHIENE, in all materials, is available with a special radius perforation "R" so that the profile can be used to form curves.



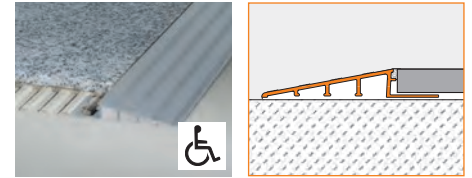
**1.6 Schluter®-DECO** is designed to provide decorative lines within tile coverings and edge protection at transitions from tile coverings to other same-height surface



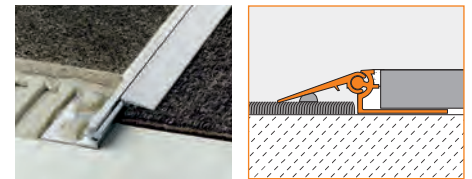
**1.4 Schluter®-RENO-TK**



**1.2 Schluter®-RENO-U**



**1.8 Schluter®-RENO-RAMP**

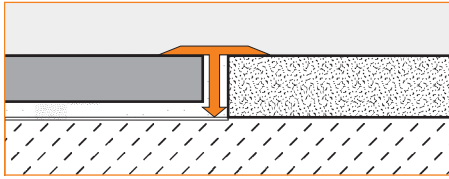


**1.7 Schluter®-RENO-V**

coverings, such as wood or carpet. The profile is available in stainless steel, solid brass, chrome-plated solid brass, and anodized aluminum. Schluter®-DECO features a trapezoid-perforated anchoring leg, which is secured in the mortar bond coat beneath the tile, and a 1/4" (6 mm)-wide visible surface that meets the high aesthetic requirements of showrooms, lobbies, galleries, exhibition booths, etc. The anchoring leg of Schluter®-DECO, in solid brass, chrome-plated solid brass,

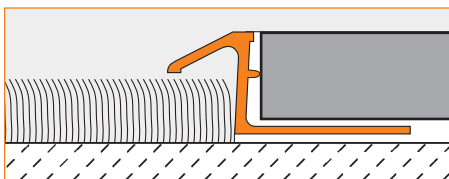


and anodized aluminum, is available with a special radius perforation "R" so that the profile can be used to form curves. DECO in chrome-plated brass requires a relatively large bending radius.



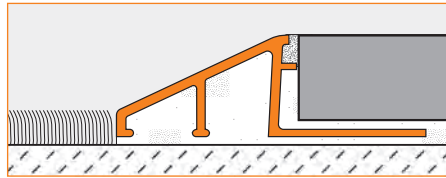
**1.3 Schluter®-RENO-T** is designed to provide transitions between existing same-height, hard-surface floor coverings (e.g., ceramic tile or natural stone, parquet flooring, concrete pavers, laminate, etc.), primarily in retrofit applications. The profile is available in stainless steel, solid brass, and anodized aluminum. Schluter®-RENO-T is installed within the existing joint cavity and overlaps adjoining surface materials, thus preventing edges from becoming damaged when subjected to mechanical stress. RENO-T, in brass and anodized aluminum size 9/14, is flexible in the lateral direction and can be used in curved applications.

**Different-height Transitions**

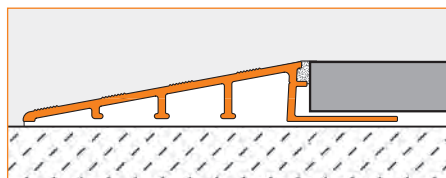


**1.4 Schluter®-RENO-TK** is designed to provide a smooth transition from tile coverings to floor coverings at lower elevations, typically carpet. The profile is available in stainless steel, solid brass, and anodized aluminum. Schluter®-RENO-TK features a trapezoid-perforated anchoring leg, which is secured in the mortar bond coat beneath the tile, and a sloped surface to eliminate trip hazards and protect tile edges. The 1/4" (6 mm) channel beneath the sloped flange of the profile hides and protects the cut edge of lower adjoining surface coverings. All sizes of the Schluter®-RENO-TK are compliant with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA). Schluter®-RENO-TK, in anodized aluminum, features an integrated joint spacer that establishes a defined joint cavity between

the tile and the profile. The anchoring leg of Schluter®-RENO-TK, in solid brass and anodized aluminum, sizes 60 to 100, is available with a special radius perforation "R" so that the profile can be used to form curves.

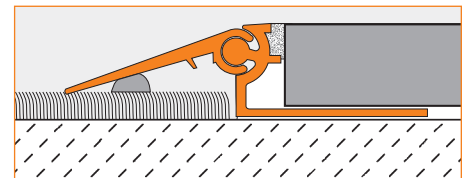


**1.2 Schluter®-RENO-U** is designed to provide a smooth transition between tile coverings and floor coverings at lower elevations or finished concrete. The profile is available in stainless steel, solid brass, anodized aluminum and Tuscan color-coated aluminum. Schluter®-RENO-U features a trapezoid-perforated anchoring leg, which is secured in the mortar bond coat beneath the tile, and a sloped surface (approximately 25°) that eliminates trip hazards and protects tile edges. The leading edge of the profile abuts the lower surface covering, typically VCT. Schluter®-RENO-U, in aluminum, features an integrated joint spacer that establishes a defined joint cavity between the tile and the profile. In installations where the leading edge abuts a lower surface covering, all sizes of Schluter®-RENO-U, except the 3/4" (20 mm) and 11/16" (17.5 mm), are compliant with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA). In installations where the leading edge rests on top of the lower floor covering (e.g., finished concrete), the 3/4" (20 mm), 11/16" (17.5 mm), and 9/16" (15 mm) sizes are not ADA-compliant.



**1.8 Schluter®-RENO-RAMP** is designed to provide a smooth transition between tile coverings and floor coverings at lower elevations or finished concrete, particularly in commercial applications where wheel carts are used (e.g., bakeries, hospitals, etc.). The profile is available in anodized aluminum. Schluter®-RENO-RAMP features a trapezoid-perforated anchoring leg, which is secured in the

mortar bond coat beneath the tile, and a 2-7/16" (61 mm) or 3-3/8" (86 mm) sloped transition surface that terminates at the height of the tile edge. The profile protects tile edges and provides a sloped surface to eliminate trip hazards and allow easy access for wheel carts. Schluter®-RENO-RAMP features an integrated joint spacer that establishes a defined joint cavity between the tile and the profile. All sizes of Schluter®-RENO-RAMP, except sizes 9/16" (15 mm) and 3/4" (20 mm), are compliant with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).



**1.7 Schluter®-RENO-V** is designed to provide a smooth transition between tile coverings and floor coverings at lower elevations. The profile is available in anodized aluminum. Schluter®-RENO-V features a trapezoid-perforated anchoring leg, which is secured in the mortar bond coat beneath the tile, and a movable transition arm that allows the profile to adjust to the height of the adjacent floor covering via a ball-and-socket joint. The profile protects tile edges and provides a sloped surface to eliminate trip hazards. Schluter®-RENO-V features an integrated joint spacer that establishes a defined joint cavity between the tile and the profile. Schluter®-RENO-V is also suitable for heavy-duty applications (e.g., entrances to garages or loading docks). In such cases, the adjustable arm is backfilled with mortar.

**Material Properties and Areas of Application**

Schluter® edge-protection and transition profiles are resistant to most chemicals encountered in tiled environments. In special cases, the suitability of a proposed type of profile must be verified based on the anticipated chemical, mechanical, and/or other stresses. Exceptions and special considerations are listed below:

**Stainless steel** profiles are roll-formed, resulting in a slightly different contour than those made of extruded brass or aluminum.





Stainless steel can sustain high mechanical stresses and is especially well suited for applications requiring resistance against chemicals and acids; for example, in the food industry, breweries, dairies, commercial kitchens, public swimming pools, and hospitals. Typically, the profiles are formed using 304 (1.4301 = V2A) stainless steel. Certain profiles, when indicated, are also formed using 316 L (1.4404 = V4A) stainless steel, which offers even higher corrosion resistance than the 304.

**Chrome-plated solid brass** is ideal for matching chrome fixtures. Surfaces must be protected against abrasion or scratching.

**Solid brass** can sustain high mechanical stresses, as well as most chemicals commonly encountered in tiled environments. Solid brass that is exposed to air will oxidize, resulting in a natural patina. If exposed to moisture or aggressive substances, heavy oxidation and spotting may occur.

**Aluminum** profiles must be tested to verify their suitability if chemical stresses are anticipated. Cementitious materials, in conjunction with moisture, become alkaline. Since aluminum is sensitive to alkaline substances, exposure to the alkali (depending on the concentration and duration of exposure) may result in corrosion (aluminum hydroxide formation). Therefore, it is important to remove mortar or grout residue from visible surfaces. In addition, ensure that the profile is solidly embedded in the setting material and that all cavities are filled to prevent the collection of alkaline water.

**Anodized aluminum** profiles feature an anodized layer that retains a uniform appearance during normal use. The surface, however, is susceptible to scratching and wear and may be damaged by grout or setting material. Therefore, these materials must be removed immediately. Otherwise, the description regarding aluminum applies.

**Tuscan color-coated aluminum** is aluminum that is color-coated with real metal powders and dyes in an acrylic resin. The surface coating features a silicone slip additive to reduce the potential for abrasion, but profiles should be protected against scratching. Otherwise, the description regarding aluminum applies.

## Installation

### SCHIENE, DECO, RENO-TK, RENO-U, RENO-RAMP, and RENO-V

1. Select the profile according to tile thickness.
- 1b) For RENO-U and RENO-RAMP, fill the cavity beneath the sloped section of the profile with thin-set mortar. Follow this step when RENO-V is used in heavy-duty applications, as well.
2. Using a notched trowel, apply thin-set mortar to the area where the profile is to be placed.
3. Press the perforated anchoring leg of the profile into the mortar and align.
4. Trowel additional thin-set mortar over the perforated anchoring leg to ensure full coverage and support of the tile edges.
5. Solidly embed the tiles so that the tiled surface is flush with the top of the profile; the profile should not be higher than the tiled surface, but rather up to approx. 1/32" (1 mm) lower.
6. Set the tile to the integrated joint spacer, which ensures a uniform joint of 1/16" - 1/8" (1.5 - 3 mm). With the stainless steel profiles, leave a space of approximately 1/16" - 1/8" (1.5 - 3 mm).
7. Fill the joint completely with grout or setting material.
8. Remove grout or mortar residue from the visible surface of the profile.

### RENO-T

1. Select the profile according to joint width, to ensure proper support of the lateral crosspiece.
2. The joint cavity must be at least 3/8" (9 mm) deep and free of debris. Substances that inhibit adhesion must be removed from the sides of the joint.
3. Fill the joint with elastomeric sealant such as Schluter®-KERDI-FIX or similar. Then insert the vertical leg of Schluter®-RENO-T in the joint so that the lateral crosspiece rests completely on the edges of the surface coverings.
4. Remove any excess sealant with a suitable cleaner.

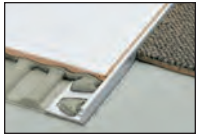
## Maintenance

Schluter® edge-protection and transition profiles require no special maintenance or care and are resistant to mold and fungi. Clean profiles using common household cleaning agents.

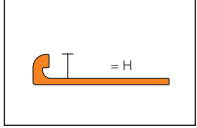
**Stainless steel** surfaces exposed to the environment or aggressive substances should be cleaned periodically using a mild household cleaner. Regular cleaning maintains the neat appearance of stainless steel and reduces the risk of corrosion. All cleaning agents must be free of hydrochloric and hydrofluoric acid. Stainless steel surfaces develop a sheen when treated with a chrome-polishing agent.

Oxidation films on exposed **solid brass** or **aluminum** can be removed by using a conventional polishing agent, but will form again.

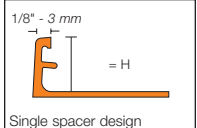
In the case of **anodized aluminum**, **color-coated aluminum**, **tuscan color-coated aluminum** and **chrome-plated solid brass**, do not use abrasive cleaning agents. Damage to the anodized layer can be repaired by applying varnish.



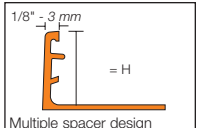
Aluminum, Brass  
3/32" - 3/16" (2 - 4.5 mm)



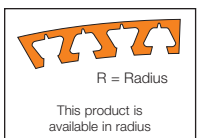
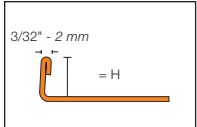
1/4" - 1/2" (6 - 12.5 mm)



17/32" - 1-3/16" (14 - 30 mm)



Stainless steel



R = Radius  
This product is available in radius

**1.1 Schluter®-SCHIENE**

H = mm - in.	Item No.					
	Stainless steel 316L (1.4404 = V4A) (EV4A)	Stainless steel 304 (1.4301 = V2A) (E)	Brushed stainless steel 304 (1.4301 = V2A) (EB)	Solid brass (M)	Aluminum (A)	Satin anodized aluminum (AE)
2 - 3/32	-	E 20	-	-	A 20	AE 20
3 - 1/8	-	E 30	-	M 30	A 30	AE 30
4.5 - 3/16	E 45/V4A	E 45	-	M 45	A 45	AE 45
6 - 1/4	E 60/V4A	E 60	E 60 EB	M 60	A 60	AE 60
7 - 9/32	-	E 70	-	-	A 70	AE 70
8 - 5/16	E 80/V4A	E 80	E 80 EB	M 80	A 80	AE 80
9 - 11/32	-	E 90	-	M 90	A 90	AE 90
10 - 3/8	E 100/V4A	E 100	E 100 EB	M 100	A 100	AE 100
11 - 7/16	-	E 110	-	M 110	A 110	AE 110
12.5 - 1/2	E 125/V4A	E 125	E 125 EB	M 125	A 125	AE 125
14 - 17/32	-	E 140	-	-	A 140	AE 140
15 - 9/16	E 150/V4A	E 150	-	M 150	A 150	AE 150
16 - 5/8	-	E 160	-	M 160	A 160	AE 160
17.5 - 11/16	E 175/V4A	E 175	-	M 175	A 175	AE 175
20 - 3/4	E 200/V4A	E 200	-	M 200	A 200	AE 200
21 - 13/16	-	-	-	-	A 210	AE 210
22.5 - 7/8	E 225/V4A	E 225	-	M 225	A 225	AE 225
25 - 1	E 250/V4A	E 250	-	M 250	A 250	AE 250
27.5 - 1-1/16	-	-	-	-	A 275	AE 275
30 - 1-3/16	E 300/V4A	E 300	-	M 300	A 300	AE 300

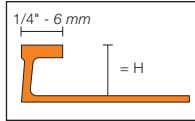
H = mm - in.	Item No.			
	Bright chrome anodized aluminum (ACB)	Bright nickel anodized aluminum (ATB)	Bright copper/bronze anodized aluminum (AKB)	Bright brass anodized aluminum (AMB)
6 - 1/4	A 60 ACB	A 60 ATB	A 60 AKB	A 60 AMB
8 - 5/16	A 80 ACB	A 80 ATB	A 80 AKB	A 80 AMB
10 - 3/8	A 100 ACB	A 100 ATB	A 100 AKB	A 100 AMB
12.5 - 1/2	A 125 ACB	A 125 ATB	A 125 AKB	A 125 AMB

Length supplied: 8' 2-1/2" — 2.5 m

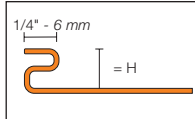
**Note:** Additional finishes are available for this product. The design configuration of Schluter®-SCHIENE is identical to that of Schluter®-JOLLY (see Wall and Countertop Profiles). However, their materials and finishes do vary. Schluter®-SCHIENE, in all materials and finishes, is suitable for floor applications, as well as wall and countertop applications. Schluter®-JOLLY is suited primarily for walls and countertops. However, JOLLY in AM, AMGB, AK, AKGB, AT, ATGB, ABGB and ACGB is also suitable for floors, and may be used in such applications to increase design options.



Aluminum, Brass



Stainless steel



Note: Only the brass and aluminum DECO are available in radius.

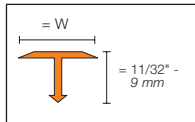
1.4 Schluter®-DECO

H = mm - in.	Item No.			
	Stainless steel 304 (1.4301 = V2A) (E)	Solid brass (M)	Chrome-plated Solid brass (MC)	Satin anodized aluminum (AE)
8 - 5/16	E 80 D	M 80 D	MC 80 D	EB 80 D
9 - 11/32	E 90 D	-	-	-
10 - 3/8	E 100 D	M 100 D	MC 100 D	EB 100 D
11 - 7/16	E 110 D	-	-	-
12.5 - 1/2	E 125 D	M 125 D	MC 125 D	EB 125 D
14 - 17/32	E 140 D	-	-	-
16 - 5/8	E 160 D	-	-	-
18.5 - 23/32	E 185 D	-	-	-
21 - 13/16	E 210 D	-	-	-
25 - 1	E 250 D	-	-	-
30 - 1-3/16	E 300 D	-	-	-

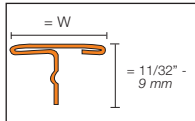
Length supplied: 8' 2-1/2" — 2.5 m



Aluminum, Brass



Stainless steel



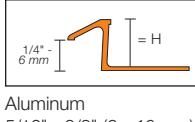
1.3 Schluter®-RENO-T

W = mm - in.	Item No.						
	Stainless steel 304 (1.4301 = V2A) (E)	Brushed stainless steel 304 (1.4301 = V2A) (EB)	Solid brass (M)	Satin anodized aluminum (AE)	Satin nickel anodized aluminum (AT)	Satin copper/bronze anodized aluminum (AK)	Satin brass anodized aluminum (AM)
14 - 9/16	T 9/14 E	T 9/14 EB	T 9/14 M	T 9/14 AE	T 9/14 AT	T 9/14 AK	T 9/14 AM
25 - 1	T 9/25 E	T 9/25 EB	T 9/25 M	T 9/25 AE	T 9/25 AT	T 9/25 AK	T 9/25 AM

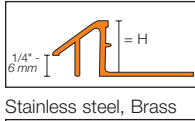
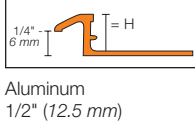
Length supplied: 8' 2-1/2" — 2.5 m



Aluminum (1/4" - 6 mm)



Aluminum 5/16" - 3/8" (8 - 10 mm)



Stainless steel, Brass

1.4 Schluter®-RENO-TK

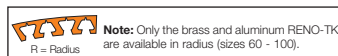
H = mm - in.	Item No.						
	Stainless steel 304 (1.4301 = V2A) (E)	Brushed stainless steel 304 (1.4301 = V2A) (EB)	Solid brass (M)	Satin anodized aluminum (AE)	Bright chrome anodized aluminum (ACB)	Satin nickel anodized aluminum (AT)	Brushed nickel anodized aluminum (ATGB)
6 - 1/4	-	-	-	AETK 60	ATK 60 ACB	ATK 80 AT	-
8 - 5/16	ETK 80	EBTK 80	MTK 80	AETK 80	ATK 80 ACB	ATK 80 AT	ATK 80 ATGB
10 - 3/8	ETK 100	EBTK 100	MTK 100	AETK 100	ATK 100 ACB	ATK 100 AT	ATK 100 ATGB
12.5 - 1/2	ETK 125	EBTK 125	MTK 125	AETK 125	ATK 125 ACB	ATK 125 AT	ATK 125 ATGB

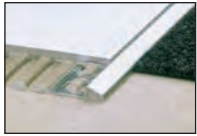
H = mm - in.	Item No.			
	Satin copper/bronze anodized aluminum (AK)	Brushed copper/bronze anodized aluminum (AKGB)	Brushed antique bronze anodized aluminum (ABGB)	Bright brass anodized aluminum (AMB)
6 - 1/4	ATK 60 AK	-	-	AU 60 AMB
8 - 5/16	ATK 80 AK	ATK 80 AKGB	ATK 80 ABGB	AU 80 AMB
10 - 3/8	ATK 100 AK	ATK 100 AKGB	ATK 100 ABGB	AU 100 AMB
12.5 - 1/2	ATK 100 AK	ATK 100 AKGB	ATK 125 ABGB	AU 125 AMB

Length supplied: 8' 2-1/2" — 2.5 m

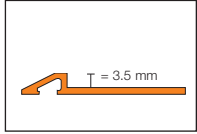
**Diagram Values**

H = mm - in.	L <sub>B</sub> = mm - in.	
	Aluminum	Stainless steel/ Brass
6 - 1/4	7 - 9/32	-
8 - 5/16	9 - 11/32	6 - 1/4
10 - 3/8	9 - 11/32	12 - 15/32
12.5 - 1/2	16 - 5/8	17 - 21/32

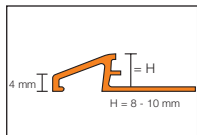




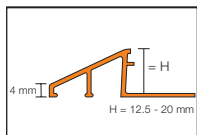
Aluminum  
1/8" (3.5 mm)



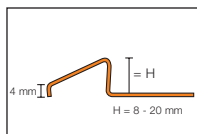
5/16" - 3/8" (8 - 10 mm)



1/2" - 3/4" (12.5 - 20 mm)



Stainless steel, Brass



### 1.2 Schluter®-RENO-U

H = mm - in.	Item No.							
	Stainless steel 304 (1.4301 = V2A) (E)	Brushed stainless steel 304 (1.4301 = V2A) (EB)	Solid brass (M)	Satin anodized aluminum (AE)	Bright chrome anodized aluminum (ACB)	Satin nickel anodized aluminum (AT)	Brushed nickel anodized aluminum (ATGB)	
3.5 - 1/8	-	-	-	AEU 35	-	-	-	
8 - 5/16	EU 80	EBU 80	MU 80	AEU 80	AU 80 ACB	AU 80 AT	AU 80 ATGB	
10 - 3/8	EU 100	EBU 100	MU 100	AEU 100	AU 100 ACB	AU 100 AT	AU 100 ATGB	
12.5 - 1/2	EU 125	EBU 125	MU 125	AEU 125	AU 125 ACB	AU 125 AT	AU 125 ATGB	
15 - 9/16	EU 150	EBU 150	MU 150	AEU 150	-	-	-	
17.5 - 11/16	EU 175	EBU 175	MU 175	AEU 175	-	-	-	
20 - 3/4	EU 200	EBU 200	MU 200	-	-	-	-	

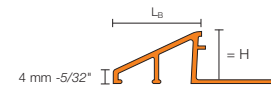
H = mm - in.	Item No.						
	Satin copper/bronze anodized aluminum (AK)	Brushed copper/bronze anodized aluminum (AKGB)	Brushed antique bronze anodized aluminum (ABGB)	Satin brass anodized aluminum (AM)	Bright brass anodized aluminum (AMB)	Tuscan bronze color-coated aluminum (TSOB)	
8 - 5/16	AU 80 AK	AU 80 AKGB	AU 80 ABGB	AU 80 AM	AU 80 AMB	AU 80 TSOB	
10 - 3/8	AU 100 AK	AU 100 AKGB	AU 100 ABGB	AU 100 AM	AU 100 AMB	AU 100 TSOB	
12.5 - 1/2	AU 125 AK	AU 125 AKGB	AU 125 ABGB	AU 125 AM	AU 125 AMB	AU 125 TSOB	

Length supplied: 8' 2-1/2" - 2.5 m

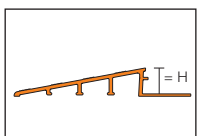
#### ADA-Compliant

**Note:** When leading edge abuts lower surface covering, sizes 3/4" (20 mm) and 11/16" (17.5 mm) are not ADA-compliant. When leading edge rests on top of lower surface covering, sizes 3/4" (20 mm), 9/16" (15 mm), and 11/16" (12.5 mm) are not ADA-compliant.

#### Diagram Values



H = mm - in.	L <sub>B</sub> = mm - in.	
	Aluminum	Stainless steel/Brass
3.5 - 1/8	9 - 11/32	-
8 - 5/16	12 - 15/32	13 - 17/32
10 - 3/8	17 - 21/32	17 - 11/16
12.5 - 1/2	22 - 7/8	23 - 29/32
15 - 9/16	27 - 1-1/16	29 - 1-1/8
17.5 - 11/16	27 - 1-1/16	34 - 1-11/32
20 - 3/4	31 - 1-1/4	40 - 1-9/16



### 1.8 Schluter®-RENO-RAMP

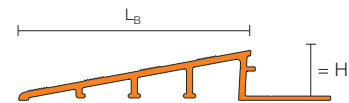
H = mm - in.	Item No.
	Satin anodized aluminum (AE)
<b>B = 2-1/2" - 64 mm</b>	
10 - 3/8	AERP 100 B65
12.5 - 1/2	AERP 125 B65
<b>B = 3-1/2" - 89 mm</b>	
12.5 - 1/2	AERP 125 B90
15 - 9/16	AERP 150 B90
20 - 3/4	AERP 200 B90

Length supplied: 8' 2-1/2" - 2.5 m

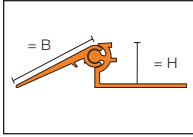
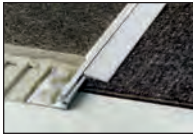
#### ADA-Compliant

**Note:** RENO-RAMP sizes 3/4" - 20 mm and 9/16" - 15 mm are not ADA-compliant.

#### Diagram Values



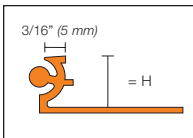
H = in. - mm	L <sub>B</sub> = in. - mm
3/8 - 10	2-1/2 - 64
1/2 - 12.5	2-1/2 - 64
1/2 - 12.5	3-1/2 - 89
9/16 - 15	3-1/2 - 89
3/4 - 20	3-1/2 - 89



**1.7 Schluter®-RENO-V**

H = mm - in.	Item No.	
	Satin anodized aluminum (AE)	Satin brass anodized aluminum (AM)
<b>B = 20 mm - 3/4"</b>		
8 - 5/16	AEVT 80 B20	AVT 80 B20
10 - 3/8	AEVT 100 B20	AVT 100 B20
12.5 - 1/2	AEVT 125 B20	AVT 125 B20
15 - 9/16	AEVT 150 B20	AVT 150 B20
17.5 - 11/16	AEVT 175 B20	AVT 175 B20
20 - 3/4	AEVT 200 B20	AVT 200 B20
<b>B = 30 mm - 1-3/16"</b>		
8 - 5/16	AEVT 80 B30	AVT 80 B30
10 - 3/8	AEVT 100 B30	AVT 100 B30
12.5 - 1/2	AEVT 125 B30	AVT 125 B30
15 - 9/16	AEVT 150 B30	AVT 150 B30
17.5 - 11/16	AEVT 175 B30	AVT 175 B30
20 - 3/4	AEVT 200 B30	AVT 200 B30
<b>B = 40 mm - 1-9/16"</b>		
8 - 5/16	AEVT 80 B40	AVT 80 B40
10 - 3/8	AEVT 100 B40	AVT 100 B40
12.5 - 1/2	AEVT 125 B40	AVT 125 B40
15 - 9/16	AEVT 150 B40	AVT 150 B40
17.5 - 11/16	AEVT 175 B40	AVT 175 B40
20 - 3/4	AEVT 200 B40	AVT 200 B40

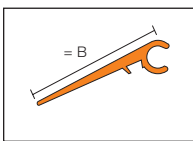
Length supplied: 8' 2-1/2" – 2.5 m



**1.7 Schluter®-RENO-VT**

H = mm - in.	Item No.	
	Satin anodized aluminum (AE)	Satin brass anodized aluminum (AM)
8 - 5/16	AEVT 80	AMVT 80
10 - 3/8	AEVT 100	AMVT 100
12.5 - 1/2	AEVT 125	AMVT 125
15 - 9/16	AEVT 150	AMVT 150
17.5 - 11/16	AEVT 175	AMVT 175
20 - 3/4	AEVT 200	AMVT 200

Length supplied: 8' 2-1/2" – 2.5 m



**1.7 Schluter®-RENO-VB**

B = mm - in.	Item No.	
	Satin anodized aluminum (AE)	Satin brass anodized aluminum (AM)
20 - 3/4	AEVB 20	AMVB 20
30 - 1-3/16	AEVB 30	AMVB 30
40 - 1-9/16	AEVB 40	AMVB 40

Length supplied: 8' 2-1/2" – 2.5 m



**1.1 Schluter®-SCHIENE**, in satin anodized aluminum, installed to protect tile edges and provide a clean transition to surrounding hardwood flooring at the same elevation.



**1.4 Schluter®-RENO-TK**, in solid brass, installed to provide a sloped transition between ceramic tile and carpet at a lower elevation. The profile produces a clean, attractive line and protects tile edges against damage.



**1.2 Schluter®-RENO-U**, in satin nickel anodized aluminum, installed to provide a sloped transition between ceramic tile coverings at different heights. The profile produces a clean, attractive line and protects tile edges against damage.



PROFILE OF INNOVATION

**Schluter Systems L.P.** • 194 Pleasant Ridge Road, Plattsburgh, NY 12901-5841  
 Tel.: 1-800-472-4588 • Fax: 1-800-477-9783 • e-mail: info@schluter.com

**Schluter Systems (Canada) Inc.** • 21100 ch. Ste-Marie, Ste-Anne-de-Bellevue, QC H9X 3Y8  
 Tel.: 1-800-667-8746 • Fax: 1-877-667-2410 • e-mail: info@schluter.com

[www.schluter.com](http://www.schluter.com)





PROFILE OF INNOVATION

## Schluter®-Systems Floor Profiles 5-Year Limited Warranty

**COVERAGE AND CONDITIONS:** Subject to the conditions and limitations as stated hereinafter, **Schluter®-Systems\*** warrants that **Schluter®-Systems Floor Profiles** (the "Products")\*\* will be free from manufacturing defects for a period of five (5) years from the date of purchase and only when the Products are used and installed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Schluter®-Systems Floor Profiles Technical Data Sheet and industry standard guidelines that are not in conflict with the Data Sheet in effect at the time of installation. It is the responsibility of the owner/builder/installer to ensure the suitability of all building materials and all associated building materials for the owner's intended use. Visual defects or nonconformities apparent prior to installation are not covered by this warranty. Further, this warranty does not cover normal wear and tear or other damage (e.g., scratches, discoloration, fading, etc.) caused by impacts or accidents. It is recommended that the owner consult an experienced and professional installer.

**RESOLUTION:** If the Products fail to meet this warranty, then the owner's exclusive remedy and the sole obligation of Schluter®-Systems, at its election, shall be to a) reinstall or replace the failed portion of the tile assembly or b) pay an amount not to exceed the original square foot cost of the installation of the tile assembly verified to be defective. Tile assembly is defined to include all Schluter®-Systems Floor Profiles, non-reusable tile surfaces, and the appropriate setting and grouting materials. Further, due to conditions beyond the control of Schluter®-Systems (e.g., color and shade availability, discontinuation, normal wear and tear), Schluter®-Systems cannot guarantee or warrant an exact match to the specific tile, stone, or other flooring materials used in the installation. In such events, substantially similar materials may be substituted.

**DISCLAIMER:** THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES BEYOND THIS EXPRESSED WARRANTY AS STATED ABOVE. ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, REPRESENTATIONS OR CONDITIONS, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, ARE DISCLAIMED AND EXCLUDED, INCLUDING WARRANTIES, REPRESENTATIONS OR CONDITIONS OF **MERCHANTABILITY** OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARISING BY STATUTE OR OTHERWISE BY LAW OR FROM A COURSE OF DEALING OR USAGE OF TRADE. SCHLUTER®-SYSTEMS EXCLUDES AND IN NO EVENT SHALL HAVE ANY LIABILITY FOR LOST PROFITS OR ANY OTHER INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, PUNITIVE, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, ARISING OUT OF OR OTHERWISE CONNECTED TO FAILURE OF THE PRODUCTS OR TILE ASSEMBLY OF WHICH THEY ARE PART, NOR MISUSE OF THE PRODUCTS OR TILE ASSEMBLY, REGARDLESS OF ANY STRICT LIABILITY, ACTIVE OR PASSIVE NEGLIGENCE OF SCHLUTER®-SYSTEMS, AND REGARDLESS OF THE LEGAL THEORY (CONTRACT OR TORT OR EXTRA-CONTRACTUAL OR OTHER), NOR FROM ACTS OF WAR, TERRORISM, FAULTY AND NEGLIGENT PENETRATION OF THE SYSTEM, FIRES, EXPLOSIONS, ACTS OF GOD, INTENTIONAL ACTS OF DESTRUCTION OR ANY LOSSES DUE TO STRUCTURAL FAILURE OR OTHER CAUSES UNRELATED TO THE PRODUCTS OR DELAYS, OR ANY OTHER INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES. THIS WARRANTY IS GIVEN IN LIEU OF ANY OTHER WARRANTY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED. THE REMEDIES CONTAINED HEREIN ARE THE ONLY REMEDIES AVAILABLE FOR BREACH OF THIS WARRANTY. THIS LIMITED WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS, SOME STATES AND PROVINCES DO NOT ALLOW DISCLAIMERS OR OTHER RESTRICTIONS OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES SO SOME OF THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

**TRANSFERABILITY:** This Limited Warranty extends ONLY to the original end user (defined as original intended owner and user of the property/unit in which the installation is incorporated - herein referred to as "Owner") and is not transferable or assignable, unless approved in writing by the Technical Director or an Officer of Schluter®-Systems or otherwise prohibited by specific state or provincial law.

**MODIFICATIONS TO WARRANTY:** No changes or modification of any terms or conditions of this warranty are allowed unless authorized by written agreement and signed by the Technical Director or an Officer of Schluter®-Systems.

**EFFECTIVE DATE:** This warranty shall supersede and replace any and all prior oral or written warranties, agreements, or other such representations made by or on behalf of Schluter®-Systems relative to the Products or the application of the Products and shall apply to any installation occurring on or after January 1, 2013.

**CLAIMS ON THIS LIMITED WARRANTY:** To make a claim under this Limited Warranty, the Owner must provide Schluter®-Systems with written notice within 30 days of any alleged defect in the Products covered by this Limited Warranty, together with date and proof of purchase of the Products, proof of the costs of the original installation and name and address of all installers, failing which this Limited Warranty shall be of no legal effect. Schluter®-Systems reserves the right at its election and as a condition of this Limited Warranty to inspect the alleged failed and defective condition.

All U.S. Claims shall be sent to:

Schluter Systems L.P.  
Attn: Warranty Claims Dept.  
194 Pleasant Ridge Road  
Plattsburgh, NY 12901-5841

All Canadian Claims shall be sent to:

Schluter Systems (Canada), Inc.  
Attn: Warranty Claims Dept.  
21100 chemin Ste-Marie  
Ste-Anne-de-Bellevue, QC H9X 3Y8

\*For the purpose of this warranty **Schluter Systems, L.P.** shall provide the warranty for all products for end users located in the United States, and **Schluter Systems (Canada) Inc.** shall provide the warranty for all products for end users located in Canada. This warranty is limited to sales of the Products made in and intended for use in the United States and Canada.

\*\***Schluter®-Systems Floor Profiles (the "Products"):** The Products are defined to include all Schluter®-Systems floor profiles referred to in the Schluter®-Systems Floor Profiles Data Sheet.



# PRO FINE PATCH™

## 2. MANUFACTURER

### PROMA ADHESIVES Inc.

9801, Parkway, Anjou, Quebec Canada H1J 1P3  
Tel: 514.852.8585  
Fax: 514.852.8225  
Toll-free: 1 866.51.PROMA (77662)  
Email: info@proma.ca  
Web: www.proma.ca

## 3. PRODUCT DESCRIPTION

PRO FINE PATCH™ is a universal, high-performance, fast-setting, fast-curing, ultra-smooth, ultra-fine, polymer-modified calcium aluminate cement-based skimcoating and patching compound that, when mixed with water, is designed to skim-coat surfaces and fill cracks, depressions, voids and holes in a substrate up to 12 mm (1/2") deep. PRO FINEPATCH can also be used as an embossing leveler over conventional and non-conventional substrates prior to the installation of a floor covering (see PROMA's Surface Preparation Guidelines for details).

### Features

- ◆ Skim-coat
- ◆ Patch from featheredge up to 12 mm (1/2") in a single application
- ◆ Up to 4 times the coverage of traditional patching compounds
- ◆ ULTRA-FAST SETTING: install flooring after only 15 – 20 minutes (as a skim-coat)
- ◆ Mix only with water
- ◆ For interior institutional, commercial and residential applications
- ◆ Compatible with all adhesives and floor coverings including wood parquet and rubber
- ◆ Use without an additive as an embossing leveler
- ◆ Blocks pH when installed greater than 5 mm (3/16") thick
- ◆ Will not promote mold, mildew or bacteria growth
- ◆ No VOC
- ◆ Product characteristics improves indoor air quality compared to Portland cement-based products
- ◆ Eco friendly for users of the material
- ◆ Contributes to LEED® objectives and requirements

### Packaging

4.54 kg (10 lb) box



### Suitable Substrates

- ◆ Dry, completely cured concrete (at least 28 days old)
- ◆ Concrete and masonry blocks
- ◆ Cement backer units (CBU)
- ◆ Gypsum and light-weight concrete surfaces†
- ◆ Gypsum wallboard (INTERIOR dry areas only)
- ◆ Existing ceramic and quarry tiles, porcelain, granite and marble\*
- ◆ Epoxy Terrazzo floors†
- ◆ Cementitious Terrazzo floors\*
- ◆ Exterior Grade Douglas Fir Plywood, certified CANPLY (SELECT) or (SEL-TF) CSA 121, for INTERIOR Residential Light-Duty Floors in dry areas only
- ◆ Metal such as steel, copper, stainless steel, aluminum or lead†
- ◆ Old cut-back adhesive **residue** and water-soluble adhesive **residues**\*
- ◆ Existing VCT tiles and non-cushioned vinyl sheet goods\*
- ◆ Cementitious screeds, rendering, leveling coats and mortar beds
- ◆ Homogeneous PVC flooring†
- ◆ Resin-based floor coverings (epoxy, urethane or polyurethane)†

† When primed with PRO SUPERPRIME™ (see respective data sheet for details)

\* With adequate prior preparation as indicated in PROMA's "Surface Preparation Guidelines" or respective data sheet



Concrete

Exterior-Grade Plywood

Cutback Adhesive Residue

Existing VCT and Non-Cushioned Vinyl Sheet Goods

Existing Tile







## Limitations

- ♦ For INTERIOR installations only.
- ♦ Do not use at temperatures below 10°C (50°F) or above 35°C (95°F).
- ♦ Do not use for applications exceeding 12 mm (1/2") in thickness. For installations exceeding 12 mm (1/2"), use PRO PLAN™, PRO BETOPLAN™, PRO FLOWLEVEL 40™ or PRO CEMIX™ (see respective technical data sheets for details).
- ♦ Do not apply directly over particleboard, chipboard, presswood, Lauan, masonite, OSB and other dimensionally unstable materials.
- ♦ Do not use over any type of cushioned flooring surface.
- ♦ Allow the patching product to dry properly prior to installing the floor covering.
- ♦ Do not leave without floor covering or exposed as a resurfacing material.
- ♦ Existing epoxy terrazzo floors, metal, epoxy-resin floors and Homogeneous PVC flooring must be well prepared and primed with PRO SUPERPRIME™ prior to installing the patching product (see respective technical data sheet).
- ♦ Existing Gypsum and light-weight concrete surfaces must be properly primed with PRO SUPERPRIME™ (see respective technical data sheet for details).
- ♦ Do not use where high moisture and hydrostatic conditions and/or recurring moisture problems exist.
- ♦ Do not use in places subject to immersion, to standing water or permanent humidity.
- ♦ Do not add water to the mix once it begins to thicken.
- ♦ Do not add sand, aggregate or a latex additive to the mix.
- ♦ Protect from any direct air ventilation or heat radiation source, such as direct sunlight, during and after the installation, for a minimum of 24 hours. These conditions could cause the patching product to cure too rapidly, resulting in micro-cracking.
- ♦ **Do not accelerate curing time by using ventilators or heating appliances.**

## 4. TECHNICAL DATA

### Applicable Standards

For Additional Information, please refer to the most recent TCNA handbook for ceramic tile installation or the TTMAC Specification Guide 09 30 00 Tile Installation Manual, or visit our website at [www.proma.ca](http://www.proma.ca).

WORKING PROPERTIES (@23° C [73° F] and 50% RH)	
Working time	10-25 minutes
Final set	90 minutes
Time before installing floor covering	15-20 minutes (as a skim coat) 60-90 minutes (as a patch)

PHYSICAL PROPERTIES (@23° C [73° F] and 50% RH)	
VOC content	0 g/L
Compressive strength (ASTM C-109) @ 28 days	> 31.0 MPa (4,500 psi)
Density	1.4 g/mL
Approximate coverage per 4.54 kg (10 lb) box	
Thickness	Coverage
Skim Coat	27.9 m² (300 ft²)
Shelf life	
6 months if kept in its original unopened packaging and stored in a dry location.	

## 5. INSTALLATION

### Surface Preparation

(Refer to PROMA Surface Preparation Guidelines for complete details)

**Note: PRO SUPERPRIME™ can be used to ready nearly any surface for PROMA patching compounds without the need for scarifying or shotblasting, saving valuable time and money (see respective technical data sheet for details).**

- ♦ All supporting surfaces must be structurally sound, solid and stable.
- ♦ Surfaces must be clean and free of dust, oil, grease, paint, tar, wax, curing agent, primer, sealer, form release agent or any deleterious substance and debris which may prevent or reduce adhesion.
- ♦ Acids, concentrated alkaline conditions and cleaning chemical residues must be neutralized or removed.
- ♦ All concrete substrates must be completely cured (at least 28 days old), solid, sound, slightly textured and have a direct tensile cohesive strength greater than 1.2 MPa (175 psi) when tested in accordance with ACI 503 R – (Appendix A) procedure.
- ♦ On grade or below grade concrete slabs must be installed over an effective vapor barrier.
- ♦ All concrete substrates must be dry and free of hydrostatic conditions and/or extreme moisture problems. Perform a calcium chloride moisture emission test (ASTM F-1869) on the concrete substrate before proceeding with the installation of the floor. For wood flooring and resilient floor covering installations, the moisture vapor emission of the concrete must not exceed 1.36 kg per 93 m² (3 lb per 1,000 sq. ft.) per 24 hours. Do not prime, repair, level or patch the substrate, or install any floor covering materials until moisture problems and conditions have been addressed to meet these requirements. **Please contact our Technical Service Department for appropriate recommendations.**
- ♦ Existing Gypsum and light-weight concrete surfaces must be properly primed with PRO SUPERPRIME™ (see respective technical data sheet for details).
- ♦ Smooth concrete substrate surfaces must be either PRIMED with PRO SUPERPRIME™ primer **OR** mechanically roughened in accordance with an engineer-approved procedure (shot-blasting, scarification, grinding, sand or water-blasting, etc) to provide sufficient surface texture and profile for the adequate bonding of the subsequent patching and finishing compound (please refer to the PRO SUPERPRIME™ data sheet for full details).
- ♦ Existing concrete slabs with old cutback adhesive or carpet adhesive residues must be properly scraped, roughened and cleaned prior to the application of the patching compound product (please refer to the Surface Preparation Guidelines for full details or contact our Technical Service Department for appropriate recommendations).
- ♦ Existing ceramic tile, VCT and non-cushioned vinyl sheet goods should be properly prepared and cleaned prior to the application of the patching compound product (please refer to the Surface Preparation Guidelines for full details or contact our Technical Service Department for appropriate recommendations).

**Note:** Scrape off as much as possible of the old cut-back adhesive.

Do not use sweeping compounds. This could leave an oily film on the concrete surface that will prevent a proper bond.

### Mixing

**Mixing ratio: 2 parts powder to 1 part water (by volume)**

1. Use clean mixing-tools and containers.
2. In a clean mixing container, measure and pour **2.36 L (2.5 quarts / 0.6 US gal)** of cool clean water and gradually add 4.54 kg (10 lb) of PRO FINE PATCH™ powder mix, while mixing slowly.
3. Using a low-speed mechanical mixer (150 - 300 rpm), mix until a homogeneous, smooth, lump-free, consistency is achieved.
4. The product is now ready for use.
5. Use the product within the shortest possible delay (within a few minutes).





**PRO FINE PATCH™**  
used as a skim coat  
over plywood

### Application

**Note: Protect from any direct air ventilation or heat radiation source, such as direct sunlight, during and after the installation.**

1. Spread PRO FINE PATCH™ immediately after mixing with the flat side of a trowel to the desired texture and finish.
2. Do not mix more material than can be used in a 10-25 minute period.
3. Do not add any water once the mixture has hardened.

**For more detailed information on ways to apply this product, please contact our technical department for proper recommendations and job field assistance.**

### Expansion and Control Joints

- ♦ Install control joints where tiles abut restraining surfaces, around the perimeter of the work and at the base of columns and curbs.
- ♦ Install and space expansion and control joints in all directions in accordance with TCNA HANDBOOK FOR CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION Detail #EJ-171 recommendations, or TTMAC Specification Guide 09 30 00 Detail #301-MJ recommendations. CAUTION: DO NOT cut EXPANSION JOINTS in after the tiles have been installed. Install tiles normally and stop when the control joint location is reached. Cut the tile if required and resume setting from the opposite side of the joint. Before proceeding further, rake the joint and leave the tile and joint space clean.
- ♦ DO NOT FILL EXPANSION JOINT SPACE UNTIL GROUTING IS COMPLETED on the remainder of the job.
- ♦ Install a suitable industry-approved compressible bead and flexible sealant to caulk expansion and control joints. Follow the sealant manufacturer's installation instructions.

### Curing and Protection

- ♦ 15-20 minutes (as a skim-coat); 60-90 minutes (as a patch); 2 hours at room temperature (foot traffic).
- ♦ Install resilient floor covering, carpet, engineered wood and wood parquet after 15-20 minutes (as a skim-coat); 60-90 minutes (as a patch).
- ♦ Material should be completely dry prior to applying the floor covering adhesive.

**Note:** Drying time may vary depending on the temperature and humidity level. **Do not attempt to accelerate drying and curing through forced ventilation, fans or heat-blowers.**

- ♦ Ensure that the moisture vapor emission of the concrete does not exceed 1.36 kg per 93 m<sup>2</sup> (3 lb per 1 000 sq. ft.) per 24 hours when tested in accordance with the calcium chloride moisture emission test (ASTM F-1869) prior to the installation of a resilient floor covering or other material sensitive to water.
- ♦ Protect from traffic and dust until floor covering is completely installed.

### Cleaning

Clean tools and hands with water while the product is still fresh.

### Health and Safety

Refer to the Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS) for complete details.

## PRO SUPERPRIME™

PROMA has engineered a revolutionary primer that can ready nearly any surface for patching compounds without the need for scarifying or shotblasting. Use PRO SUPERPRIME™ with PRO FINE PATCH™ as an unbeatable system for preparing a substrate for flooring installation. Surface must meet a minimum of 0.5 MPa (72 psi) tensile bond strength. In areas subject to heavy traffic, a minimum of 1.2 MPa (175 psi) tensile bond strength is required (see respective technical data sheet for details).



Cured concrete (28 days)	Metal such as steel, copper, stainless steel, aluminum or lead	Exterior-grade plywood	Existing ceramic and quarry tiles, porcelain, granite and marble	Existing VAT, VCT, non-cushioned vinyl sheet goods, homogeneous PVC flooring	Adhesive residue	Painted substrates





**6. AVAILABILITY AND COST**

PROMA products are widely available in Canada and the Northeast United States. To find a distributor of PROMA products, call **toll-free: 1.866.51.PROMA (77662)**.

**7. WARRANTY**

PROMA warrants that this product is manufactured using quality raw materials and is of merchantable quality and suitable for the purpose for which it was intended. PROMA's liability under this warranty shall be limited to the replacement of its product proven to be defective. Neither seller nor manufacturer shall be liable for any injury, loss or damage, direct or consequential, arising from the use of/or the inability to use this product.

**8. MAINTENANCE**

Product requires no special maintenance. Do not leave without floor covering or exposed as a resurfacing material.

**9. TECHNICAL SERVICE**

For more detailed information on this product, please contact our technical department for proper recommendations and job field assistance. **Toll-free: 1.866.51.PROMA (77662)**.

**10. FILING SYSTEM**

Additional information is available upon request, or by visiting [www.proma.ca](http://www.proma.ca).

---

**PROMA Adhesives Inc.**

9801, Parkway, Anjou, Quebec Canada H1J 1P3

Tel.: 514.852.8585

Fax: 514.852.8225

Toll-free: 1 866.51.PROMA (77662)

Email: [info@proma.ca](mailto:info@proma.ca)

© 2016 PROMA Adhesives, Inc.



## SAFETY DATA SHEET

Product: **PRO FINE PATCH**  
 Revision Date: **2016/01/11**

### Section 1. Product and Company Identification

Product Name: **PRO FINE PATCH**  
 Recommended Use(s): Cementitious Patching compound  
 Non-Recommended Use(s): Not specified  
 Manufacturer: **Proma Adhesives**, 9801 Boulevard parkway,  
 Anjou, QC, H1J 1P3, Canada  
 Email: info@proma.ca  
 Url: [www.proma.ca](http://www.proma.ca)  
 Emergency Contact: **Emergency Spills (CANUTEC): (613)996-6666** /Emergency contact number in Canada/U.S.A

### Section 2. Hazard Identification

#### GHS Classification for mixture:

Specific target organ toxicity - repeated exposure - Category 2  
 Specific target organ toxicity - single exposure - Category 3 (Respiratory)  
 Carcinogenicity - Category 1A  
 Serious eye damage/eye irritation - Category 1  
 Skin corrosion/irritation - Category 1  
 Skin sensitization - Category 1

#### Pictograms:



#### Signal Words:

Danger

#### Hazard Statements:

Causes severe skin burns and eye damage.  
 Causes serious eye damage.  
 May cause respiratory irritation.  
 May cause cancer. Route of exposure: respiration.  
 May cause damage to organs through prolonged or repeated exposure. Route of exposure: Respiration  
 Affected organ: Lungs

#### Precautionary Statements: General

##### Prevention

Obtain special instructions before use. Do not handle until all safety precautions have been read and understood. Do not breathe dust. Wash hands thoroughly after handling. Wear protective gloves, eye protection and a dust mask.

##### Response

If exposed or concerned: Get medical advice/attention. Get medical advice if you feel unwell. IF IN EYES: Remove contact lenses, if present and easy to do, rinse with water for several minutes. IF ON SKIN: Rinse with water for several minutes. IF INHALED, Move the person to fresh air. IF INGESTED, call a poison center.

##### Storage

Store locked up.

##### Disposal

Dispose of contents/container in accordance with local regulations.

### Section 3. Composition / Information on Ingredients

Identifiers	Ingredients	Percentage
14808-60-7	Crystalline silica	<1%
65997-15-1	Portland Cement	<30%
65997-16-2	Calcium Aluminate Cement	<30%
1317-65-3	Limestone	<40%



## SAFETY DATA SHEET

### Section 4. First-Aid Measures

#### First-Aid: Eyes

**IF IN EYES:** Wash eyes with plenty of water. Hold eyelids open to ensure adequate flushing. Remove contact lenses if present and easy to do so. Continue rinsing. Seek medical attention if irritation or redness develops.

#### First-Aid: Skin

**IF ON SKIN:** Rinse with water for several minutes. Take off all contaminated clothing and wash it before reuse. If redness or other symptoms occurs, seek medical advice/attention.

#### First-Aid: Ingestion

**IF INGESTED:** Call a poison center. Do not induce vomiting.

#### First-Aid: Inhalation

**IF INHALED:** Move the person to fresh air and keep at rest in a position comfortable for breathing. Seek medical attention if symptoms occur.

### Section 5. Fire-Fighting Measures

#### Flammability

The product is not flammable by WHMIS/OSHA criteria.

#### Suitable Extinguishing Media

Use dry chemical, water spray, carbon dioxide or alcohol-resistant foam.

#### Unsuitable Extinguishing Media

Not available

#### Specific Hazards Arising from Combustion of Products

**Combustion Products:** May include and are not limited to Oxides of carbon (COx).

**Heat & Fire:** The product is not flammable or combustible. Fire and heat may decompose the product and generate hazardous gas, vapor or dust.

#### Protective Measures for Fire-Fighting

Wear protective clothing to prevent contact with skin and eyes completely. Wear self-contained breathing apparatus for firefighting. Avoid direct contact with the substance. Avoid breathing gas, vapor or dust. In the case of large fires, evacuate residents who are downwind of fire.

#### Specific Hazards Arising from Combustion of Products

##### Explosion data:

Sensitivity to mechanical impact:	Not available
Sensitivity to Static discharge:	Not available

**SAFETY DATA SHEET****Section 6. Accidental Release Measures****Personal Precautions, Protective Equipment and Emergency Procedures**

Wear protective gloves, clothing and protective goggles to prevent contact with skin and eyes.  
Avoid direct contact.  
Avoid generating dust.  
See protective measures in section 7 & 8.

**Environmental Precautions**

Prevent entry into sewers, water courses, basements or confined areas. Dispose the material in accordance with the government regulation. If the product has entered a water course or sewer or contaminated soil or vegetation, advise the local emergency services and environmental authorities.

**Clean-up Procedures**

Collect and transfer to a closable container without splash or generating dust / mist. Dispose the material in accordance with the government regulations.

**Section 7. Handling and Storage****Precautions for Safe Handling**

**Handling:** Avoid direct contact with the substance. Avoid breathing dust. Keep container tightly closed. Wear protective gloves, clothing and protective goggles to prevent contact with skin and eyes. Ensure there is sufficient ventilation of the area. Do not eat or drink during handling. Report immediately if physical damage, leakage or spillage occurs.

**General hygiene advice:** Launder contaminated clothing before reuse. Wash any exposed area of body thoroughly after handling before eating, drinking or smoking.

**Conditions for Safe Storage**

Store locked up. Keep container tightly closed. Store in a well-ventilated area. Keep out of the reach of children. Respect the laws of the safety standards and occupational health.

**Section 8. Exposure Controls / Personal Protection****Control Parameters / Exposure Guideline**

Ingredients	Occupational Exposure Limits	
	OSHA-PEL	ACGIH-TLV
Crystalline silica	(10 mg/m <sup>3</sup> )/(%SiO <sub>2</sub> +2) (resp)	0,05 mg/m <sup>3</sup> (resp)
	(30 mg/m <sup>3</sup> )/(%SiO <sub>2</sub> +2) (total)	
Portland Cement	5 mg/m <sup>3</sup> (resp), 15 mg/m <sup>3</sup> (total)	1 mg/m <sup>3</sup>
Calcium Aluminate Cement	5 mg/m <sup>3</sup> (resp), 15 mg/m <sup>3</sup> (total)	5 mg/m <sup>3</sup> (resp), 10 mg/m <sup>3</sup> (total)
Limestone	5 mg/m <sup>3</sup> (resp), 15 mg/m <sup>3</sup> (total)	10 mg/m <sup>3</sup> (total)

**Control Parameters / Exposure Controls**

Engineering Controls: Use ventilation adequate to keep exposures below recommended exposure limits. (airborne levels of dust, fume, vapor etc.)

**Control Parameters / Individual Protective Measures**

**Eye/Face Protection:** Wear Safety goggles. Don't use eye lens.

**Skin and Body Protection:** Wear protective clothing. Wear a dust mask.

**Hand Protection:** Wear impermeable gloves.

**Respiratory Protection:** If ventilation is inadequate or in the case of mechanical work on cured material or when mixing use an adequate respiratory equipment.

**SAFETY DATA SHEET****Section 9. Physical and Chemical Properties****Basic physical and chemical properties Information**

<b>Physical state:</b>	Powder
<b>Color:</b>	Grey
<b>Odour:</b>	Odorless
<b>Odour threshold:</b>	Not available
<b>pH (in water):</b>	11 to 12
<b>Melting/freezing point:</b>	Not available
<b>Boiling point:</b>	Not available
<b>Flash point:</b>	Non flammable
<b>Evaporation rate:</b>	Not available
<b>Flammability:</b>	Non flammable
<b>Upper Explosive Limit:</b>	Not available
<b>Lower Explosive Limit:</b>	Not available
<b>Vapor pressure:</b>	Not available
<b>Vapor density:</b>	Not available
<b>Specific gravity (kg/L):</b>	0,9
<b>Solubility uncured:</b>	Slightly soluble
<b>Solubility cured:</b>	Not available
<b>Octanol/Water coefficient:</b>	Not available
<b>Auto-ignition temperature:</b>	Not available
<b>Decomposition temperature:</b>	Not available
<b>Viscosity (kcPs @ 21°C):</b>	Not available
<b>Oxidizing Properties:</b>	Not available
<b>Explosive Properties:</b>	Not available
<b>VOC content (g/l)</b>	0

**Section 10. Chemical Stability & Reactivity Information**

<b>Stability/Reactivity</b>	Stable under ambient condition.
<b>Possibility of Hazardous Reactions</b>	None
<b>Conditions to Avoid</b>	Incompatible materials.
<b>Materials to Avoid</b>	Strong organic acids.
<b>Hazardous Products of Decomposition</b>	May include and are not limited to Oxides of carbon.

**Section 11. Toxicological Information****Toxicological Information for Product**

**Prolonged / Repeated Exposure:** Prolonged / Repeated exposure cause damage to lungs and kidneys.

**Ingestion:** The product is not classified for ingestion hazard.

**Toxicological Data:** No toxicological data exists for the product.

**Carcinogenicity:** This product is classified as carcinogen 1A because of the existence of crystalline silice above the thresholds of occupational health.

**Inhalation:** May cause respiratory irritation.

**Toxicological Information for Component**

	<b>Limestone</b>	<b>Quartz (SiO<sub>2</sub>)</b>
<b>Toxicity - Oral</b>	LD50 Rat 6450 mg/kg	LD50 Rat 22,5 g/kg
<b>Toxicity - Dermal</b>	LD50 Rabbit > 2000 mg/kg	LD50 Rabbit > 2000 mg/kg
<b>Toxicity - Inhalation</b>	LC50 (4h) Rat > 5 mg/L	LC50 (4h) Rat > 20 mg/L

**SAFETY DATA SHEET****Section 12. Ecological Information**

<b>Ecotoxicity:</b>	No ecotoxicity values for this product. Avoid release into the environment.
<b>Persistence and Degradability:</b>	Not available
<b>Bioaccumulative Potential:</b>	Not available
<b>Mobility in Soil:</b>	Not available
<b>Other Adverse Effects:</b>	Not available

**Section 13. Disposal Considerations****Waste Disposal Regulation(s) / Operation**

Avoid release to the environment. Users need to pay attention to the possible existence of regional or national regulations regarding disposal.

**Section 14. Transportation Information [ADR-UN, DOT, ICAO, IMDG, TDGR]**

<b>UN Number:</b>	NOT CLASSIFIED AS DANGEROUS GOODS
<b>UN Proper Shipping Name:</b>	
<b>Hazard Class:</b>	
<b>Packing group:</b>	

**Section 15. Regulatory Information****Safety, Health and Environmental Regulations for Product**

No regulation data for product.

**Safety, Health and Environmental Regulations for Component****Limestone**

Canada: WHMIS Classification: Class D Division 2 Subdivision A - Very toxic material causing other toxic effects. DSL / NDSL: Listed on non-domestic substance list (NDSL).

States: Hazardous Substance Right to know list (RTK): Massachusetts. New Jersey. Pennsylvania.  
Toxic Substances Control Act (TSCA): listed on TSCA inventory

**Quartz (SiO<sub>2</sub>)**

Canada: WHMIS Classification: Class D Division 2 Subdivision A - Very toxic material causing other toxic effects. DSL / NDSL: Listed on the Canadian DSL (Domestic Substance List) inventory.  
Listed on the Canadian Ingredient Disclosure List.

States: Hazardous Substance Right to know list (RTK): Massachusetts. New Jersey. Pennsylvania.  
California-Proposition 65 Carcinogens List: Crystalline silica is known to the State of California to cause cancer.

**Section 16. Other Information**

<b>Date of preparation :</b>	January 11 2016
<b>Version :</b>	1.0
<b>Prepared by :</b>	PROMA ADHESIVES INC

**Other Information Disclaimer:**

The above information is believed to be correct but does not purport to be all inclusive and shall be used only as a guide. This company shall not be held liable for any damage resulting from handling or from contact with the above product.

**Glossary**

<b>ACGIH:</b>	American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists.
<b>ADR:</b>	European Road Transport.
<b>CAS:</b>	Chemical Abstracts Service.
<b>DOT:</b>	US Department of Transportation USA.
<b>DSL:</b>	Canadian Domestic Substances List.
<b>EPA:</b>	US Environmental Protection Agency.
<b>ICAO:</b>	International Civil Aviation Organization.
<b>IMDG:</b>	International Maritime Dangerous Goods Code.
<b>LC50:</b>	Lethal concentration that will kill 50 percent of the test animals within a specified time.
<b>LD50:</b>	The dose required to produce the death in 50 percent of the exposed species within a specified time.





Conforms to OSHA HazCom 2012 & CPR Standards

## SAFETY DATA SHEET

<b>N/Ap:</b>	Not applicable.
<b>N/Av:</b>	Not available.
<b>N/D:</b>	Not determined.
<b>NDSL:</b>	Canadian Non-Domestic Substances List.
<b>NIOSH:</b>	National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health.
<b>OSHA:</b>	Occupational Safety and Health Administration, US Department of Labor.
<b>REL:</b>	A recommended exposure limit (REL) is an occupational exposure limit that has been recommended by the United States National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health to the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) for adoption as a permissible exposure limit.
<b>RTECS:</b>	Registry of Toxic Effects of Chemical Substances.
<b>SARA:</b>	Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act.
<b>STEL:</b>	A short-term exposure limit (STEL) is the acceptable average exposure over a short period of time, usually 15 minutes as long as the time-weighted average is not exceeded.
<b>TDGR:</b>	Transportation of Dangerous Goods Regulations.
<b>TLV:</b>	The threshold limit value of a chemical substance is a level to which it is believed a worker can be exposed day after day for a working lifetime without adverse health effects. Strictly speaking, TLV is a reserved term of the American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH). However, it is sometimes loosely used to refer to other similar concepts used in occupational health and toxicology. TLVs, along with biological exposure indices (BEIs), are published annually by the ACGIH.
<b>TSCA:</b>	Toxic Substances Control Act.
<b>TWA:</b>	A time-weighted average is used to calculate a workers daily exposure to a hazardous substance (such as chemicals, dusts, fumes, mists, gases, or vapors) or agent (such as occupational noise), averaged to an 8-hour workday, taking into account the average levels of the substance or agent and the time spent in the area. This is the guideline OSHA uses to determine permissible exposure limits (PELs) and is essential in assessing a worker's exposure and determining what protective measures should be taken.
<b>UN:</b>	United Nations.

# Proma Total Quality System Warranty

## Up to 25 Years!

We, at PROMA ADHESIVES INC., are proud to offer our customers the very best adhesives and surface preparation products the industry has to offer. Our quality raw materials are meticulously chosen for their high-performance characteristics and are then formulated and manufactured to produce products that will provide many years of trouble-free performance. Along with quality products, we are proud to offer a series of comprehensive extended warranty programs that guarantee the product system installed will be free of defects for periods of up to 25 years depending on the installation system, all of which must include the use of our surface preparation products (when required), adhesives and/or mortar systems and grouts. These products must be used jointly and exclusively with the full range of PROMA ADHESIVES INC. products as the complete and single source installation system.

Depending on products and systems, our extended quality warranty plan covers all interior and exterior residential and commercial installation systems, and guarantees that the tile or stone installation systems will be free of manufacturing defects and will not break down or deteriorate under normal usage for the time period specified, as long as all materials are mixed and used over clean, sound, properly prepared substrates in strict accordance with the generally recommended ANSI A108 standards procedures and with the respective PROMA ADHESIVES INC. product system specifications, setting instructions, shelf life limitations and technical data sheets requirements.

PROMA's extended quality warranty covers all reasonable labor and material costs for the repair and/or replacement, at its discretion, on a per square foot (square meter) basis [including the cost of tile or stone not exceeding the original purchase cost per m<sup>2</sup> (ft<sup>2</sup>)] of the sole portion of the installation proven to be defective during the warranty period due to a confirmed manufacturing defect of the PROMA ADHESIVES product system. It does not include costs, losses, and damages due to lateness, delays or other consequential damages.

This warranty does not cover industrial installations subject to chemical and mechanical abuse or improper selection of tile or stone. Warranty does not cover damages due to structural defects, substrate movements or deficiencies, hydrostatic and moisture conditions, tile, stone and grout cracking, lipping or shading or other damages due to deficient work procedures not in strict accordance with accepted trade standards and PROMA ADHESIVES' instructions. Efflorescence, color variation and shading are normal conditions of all Portland cement mortars and grouts and will NOT be considered defective conditions.

This warranty is subject to specific terms and limitations as detailed in our official warranty documentation and does not apply if PROMA ADHESIVES products are used, mixed or associated with products from other manufacturers. PROMA ADHESIVES INC. requires the right to inspect the site before work begins and periodically during the execution of the tile work, as a condition for qualifying for extended warranty. Jobs in excess of 460 m<sup>2</sup> (5,000 ft<sup>2</sup>) require preapproval.

PROMA ADHESIVES INC. representatives will gladly issue customized warranties to cover your specific jobs and/or requirements upon request.



These icons indicate that the selected products are part of the **Proma Total Quality System Warranty** plan and qualify for extended limited coverage up to 25 years, depending upon the product, specification and installation system requirements.

# PAVILION FLOORS

## ONE YEAR WARRANTY

Pavilion Floors, Inc.  
90 Commerce Way  
Woburn, MA 01801

t 781 933 8500  
f 781 932 8844

[pavilionfloors.com](http://pavilionfloors.com)

the leader in floor covering strategies.

## PAVILION FLOORS, INC.'S ONE-YEAR WORKMANSHIP WARRANTY

Pavilion Floors, Inc. ("Pavilion") warrants each installation of flooring systems to be free from defects in workmanship from the date the installation of the flooring system is completed and accepted by the party with which Pavilion has contracted for the installation of the flooring system, for a period not to exceed one (1) year of normal use and approved applications. This workmanship warranty does not include any damages or defects in the flooring system itself, except to the extent solely caused by Pavilion's installation of the flooring system. This workmanship warranty also excludes any remedy for damage or defect caused by abuse, modifications not agreed-to by Pavilion, improper or insufficient maintenance, improper operation, or normal wear and tear and normal usage of the flooring system. This workmanship warranty is limited to the installation of the flooring system only and Pavilion makes no warranties with respect to the flooring system itself.

Any claim for any alleged breach of this warranty must be made in writing by certified mail to the President of Pavilion within thirty (30) days after the alleged defect is first noticed or should have been noticed. Should the required notice not be given, all warranties shall be deemed to have been waived by the party with which Pavilion has contracted and said party shall have no right of recovery against Pavilion.

In the event any defect in workmanship caused by Pavilion, its employees or agents is discovered within one (1) year after the completion and acceptance of the installation of the flooring system, Pavilion shall, at its own expense, forthwith remedy, repair, correct, replace or cause to be remedied, repaired or replaced such damage or such defect in workmanship upon receipt of proper notice as set forth above.

All warranties for materials supplied by Pavilion shall be those given by the manufacturers of such materials and flooring system, which shall be and are hereby passed through directly to the party with which Pavilion has contracted. Under such manufacturers' warranties, the party with which Pavilion has contracted may be required to register or mail in a warranty card, or provide other evidence of ownership and use of such equipment and materials in order to activate such warranties. The failure to mail in or to register such document which failure voids the manufacturer's warranty shall not create any responsibility or liability for Pavilion to warranty such equipment or materials.

90 Commerce Way  
Woburn, MA 01801

t 781 933 8500  
f 781 932 8844

[pavilionfloors.com](http://pavilionfloors.com)

the leader in floor covering strategies.

Pavilion's and/or its related entities, officers, shareholders, affiliates, agents, assigns and successors, liability under this warranty shall in no event exceed the cost of the particular installation. Further, under no circumstances shall Pavilion and/or its related entities, officers, shareholders, affiliates, agents, assigns and/or successors be liable for any special, indirect or consequential damages or changes arising from loss of use or any other losses including losses due to personal injuries and product liability owing due to the failure of the installation and no allowance will be made for repairs or alterations made by the party with which Pavilion has contracted without the express written consent of Pavilion.

In the case of service by Pavilion under the warranty herein, the choice or repair and/or replacement shall be at the sole and exclusive discretion of Pavilion. Pavilion neither assumes nor authorizes any person other than an officer of Pavilion to assume for it any other or additional liability in connection with the installation which is the basis of the workmanship warranty contained herein. The workmanship warranty contained herein is given in lieu of all other warranties, express or implied, and Pavilion hereby disclaims all warranties, both express or implied, for merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose, to the fullest extent permitted by law.

If any provision of this workmanship warranty shall be found to be illegal, invalid or unenforceable under the present or future laws, such provision shall be fully severable and the remaining provisions shall remain in full force and effect. Any provision of this workmanship warranty held illegal, invalid or unenforceable shall remain in full force and effect to the extent not so held. In lieu of the provision held illegal, invalid or unenforceable, there shall be automatically added as a part of this workmanship warranty a provision as similar in its terms to such invalid provision as may be possible and may be legal, valid and enforceable.

PROJECT:

HU KENNEDY SCHOOL  
15 ELIOT STREET, 2<sup>ND</sup> FLOOR  
CAMBRIDGE, MA

DATE OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION:

DECEMBER 10<sup>TH</sup>, 2020

90 Commerce Way  
Woburn, MA 01801

t 781 933 8500  
f 781 932 8844

[pavilionfloors.com](http://pavilionfloors.com)

the leader in floor covering strategies.

January 6, 2021

DPM Construction

Attn: Peter McAuliffe

RE: Harvard Kennedy School Center for Public Leadership Renovation

This Letter of Warranty certifies that Mouradian Plumbing & Heating, Inc. hereby Warranties that all labor and materials furnished, and work performed in accordance with the contract terms and documents, for the above referenced project, will be free from defects due to materials or workmanship for a period of One (1) Year from the date of substantial completion as of December 15, 2020.

This warranty is valid only if products are maintained in accordance with the manufactures recommended maintenance as specified in O&M manuals. Should any defect develop during the warranty period due to improper materials or workmanship the defect shall, upon written notice from the Contractor or the owner, be promptly repaired at no expense to the owner.

All parts and workmanship supplied under contract between Mouradian Plumbing & Heating, Inc. and DPM Construction are covered by warranty and fully guaranteed for this period of one year. The Warranty expires on December 14, 2021.

By:  \_\_\_\_\_

Eric Mouradian

Mouradian Plumbing & Heating, Inc

January 6, 2021

DPM Construction

Attn: Peter McAuliffe

RE: Harvard Kennedy School Center for Public Leadership Renovation

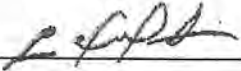
Item #3 Mouradian Plumbing & Heating, Inc. Certifies that all drainage waste and vents were tested for leaks and installation defects as required by 248 CMR Massachusetts Fuel Gas and Plumbing Code. Mouradian Plumbing and Heating, Inc. Certifies that all domestic water piping was tested for leaks and installation defects as required by 248 CMR Massachusetts Fuel Gas and Plumbing Code. Mouradian Plumbing & Heating, Inc. Certifies all Heating Water supply, Heating Water Return, Chilled Water Supply, Chilled Water Return, piping was pressure tested for leaks and installation defects. Air test of 125 PSI was conducted starting at 3pm on 12/3/20 and ending at 7am on 12/4/20. Hydrostatic test at 125 PSI was conducted starting at 12 pm on 12/9/20 and ending at 10 am on 12/10/20. Systems were determined to be leak and defect clear.

Item # 5: Mouradian Plumbing & Heating, Inc. Certifies there are no outstanding issues which Mouradian Plumbing and Heating, Inc. has been notified or informed of, remaining on the Code related punch list identified on the contractor punch list, or code related issues added to the punch list by the design team.

Item #10: Mouradian Plumbing & Heating, Inc. Certifies completion of any Chlorination testing and disinfection as required per 248 CMR Massachusetts Fuel Gas and Plumbing Code section 10.14 (13)

Item #11: Mouradian Plumbing & Heating, Inc. Certifies that at the time of final plumbing inspection, all domestic hot water temperatures were tested at outlet locations and conformed with the temperature requirements as required per 248 CMR Massachusetts Fuel Gas and Plumbing Code.

Item #13: Mouradian Plumbing & Heating, Inc. Certifies that to the knowledge of Mouradian Plumbing and Heating, Inc., all submittals required to be reviewed were submitted on November 18, 2020 to DPM Construction. Mouradian Plumbing & Heating, Inc. is not aware, nor was informed, of any objections or changes required to the submittals given on November 18, 2020. To the knowledge of Mouradian Plumbing and Heating, Inc. there are no outstanding submittals required for review.

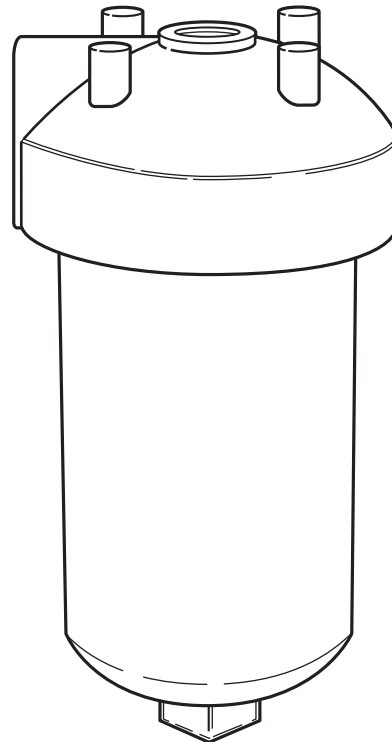
By:  \_\_\_\_\_

Eric Mouradian

Mouradian Plumbing & Heating, Inc

# *Aqua-Pure*<sup>®</sup>

## **Installation and Operating Instructions For AP200 Drinking Water Filtration System**



**Installer: Please leave manual with homeowner.  
Homeowner: Please retain for operation and  
future maintenance instructions.**

INSTR2134 0507

**3M**






# SAFETY INFORMATION

Read, understand, and follow all safety information contained in these instructions prior to installation and use of the AP200 Drinking Water Filtration System. Retain these instructions for future reference.

## Intended use:

The AP200 Drinking Water Filtration System is intended for use in filtering potable water in homes and has not been evaluated for other uses. The system is typically installed under a sink, and should be installed by qualified professional installers according to these installation instructions.

## EXPLANATION OF SIGNAL WORD CONSEQUENCES

 <b>WARNING</b>	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury and/or property damage.
<b>CAUTION</b>	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, may result in property damage.

## WARNING

**To reduce the risk associated with ingestion of contaminants due to use with water that is microbiologically unsafe or of unknown quality:**

- Do not use with water that is microbiologically unsafe or of unknown quality without adequate disinfection before or after the system.

**To reduce the risk associated with a hazardous voltage:**

- Do not install near electric wiring or piping which may be in the path of a drilling tool when selecting the position to mount the filter bracket.

## CAUTION

**To reduce the risk associated with property damage due to water leakage:**

- **Read and follow** Use Instructions before installation and use of this system.
- Installation and Use **MUST** comply with all state and local plumbing codes.
- **Protect from freezing.** Drain filter when temperatures drop below 40°F (4.4°C).
- **Do not** install if water pressure exceeds 125 psi (862 kPa). If your water pressure exceeds 125 psi, you **must** install a pressure limiting valve. Contact a plumbing professional if you are uncertain how to check your water pressure.
- **Do not** install where water hammer conditions may occur. If water hammer conditions exist you must install a water hammer arrester. Contact a plumbing professional if you are uncertain how to check for this condition.
- Install on **COLD** water lines only. (40-100°F (4.4-37.8°C))
- The disposable filter cartridge **must** be replaced every six months or at the specified service cycle.
- **Do not** use a torch or other high temperature sources near filter or plastic fittings.
- **Do not** install near water pipes which will be in path of a drilling tool when selecting the position to mount the bracket.
- Mount filter in such a position as to prevent it from being struck by other items used in the area of installation (waste baskets, etc).
- On plastic fittings, never use pipe sealant or pipe dope. Use thread sealing tape **only**.
- **Ensure** all tubing and fittings are secure and free of leaks.
- **Shut off fuel supply to water heater** after water is shut off.

## IMPORTANT NOTES

- Failure to follow instructions may void warranty.
- Allow a minimum of 7 1/2" (19.5 cm) clear space under filter to facilitate cartridge change.
- Install with the inlet and outlet ports as labeled. Make sure not to reverse connections.
- Do not crimp copper tubing.

## GETTING STARTED

Your new Aqua-Pure® AP200 Water Filter will reduce chlorine tastes and odors, and sediment from your drinking water. The filter installs under the sink on the cold water line. The installation procedure covered in this manual requires the removal of a section of the cold water tube. Soft copper tubing and compression fittings should be purchased locally to complete the installation.

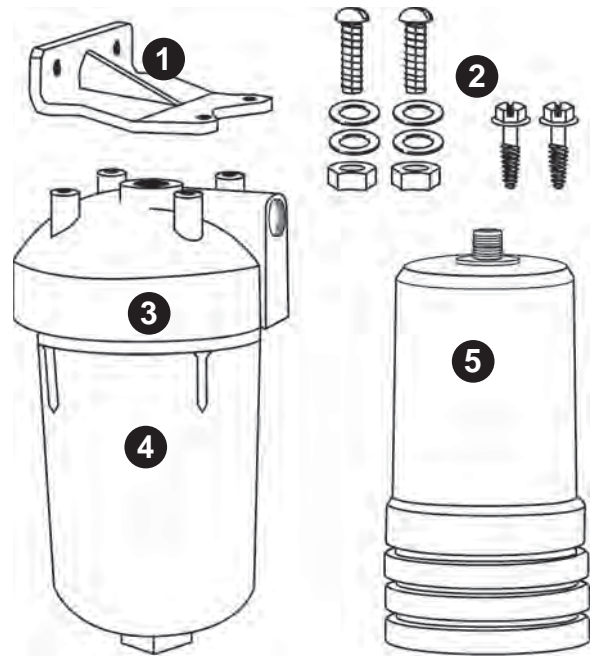
### Parts and Materials Included:

1. Mounting Bracket
2. Two Mounting Screws, Four Washers, Two Nuts, And Two Self-tapping Screws
3. System Head
4. Sump
5. AP217 Cartridge

### Tools and Parts Required (not included):

- Two 3/8" Pipe Thread Male Connectors
- Compression Fittings
- 3/8" Soft Copper Tubing
- Drill (Cordless Recommended)
- Adjustable Wrench
- Phillips Head Screwdriver
- Razor Knife Or Tube Cutter

Empty contents of package and identify all parts as shown in diagram. Read all instructions carefully before attempting to start installation. The existing shut-off valve remains in place and still acts as the cold water shut-off.



## IMPORTANT INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

1. Position the filter by holding it against the side of the cabinet wall underneath the sink. Allow at least 7 1/2" beneath the filter to install cartridge. Determine a desirable location for the filter installation and inlet connection. Attach the mounting bracket to appropriate mounting bosses on filter head with the self-tapping screws. (Figure 1)
2. Remove drawer from cabinet (if needed) and drill two 7/32" diameter holes through cabinet wall. Fasten filter to wall with nuts and bolts supplied. Use washers on both sides of the wall. Mounting to the cabinet side wall gives the filter good, rigid support. (Figure 2)

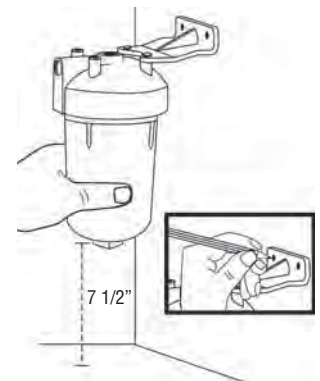


Figure 1

<b>⚠ WARNING</b>
<b>To reduce the risk associated with a hazardous voltage due to an installer drilling through existing electric wiring or water pipes in the area of installation:</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do not install near electric wiring or piping which may be in the path of a drilling tool when selecting the position to mount the filter bracket.</li> </ul>

<b>CAUTION</b>
<b>To reduce the risk of property damage due to water leakage:</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Install on <b>COLD</b> water lines only.</li> <li>• Mount filter in such a position as to prevent it from being struck by other items.</li> <li>• <b>Do not</b> install near water pipes which will be in path of a drilling tool when selecting the position to mount the bracket.</li> </ul>

<b>IMPORTANT NOTES</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow a minimum of 7 1/2" (19.5 cm) clear space under filter to facilitate cartridge change.</li> </ul>

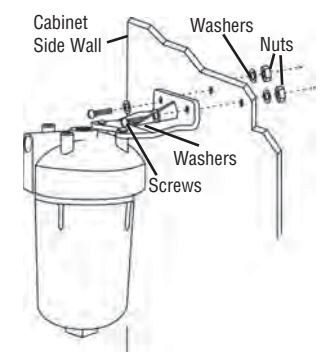


Figure 2

# IMPORTANT INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS (Continued)

3. Wrap a 3" (7.62 cm) long piece of PTFE tape to the right around the male threads of the fittings. Wrap tightly so that it conforms to the threads of the fitting and overlaps about 1/2". (Figure 3)

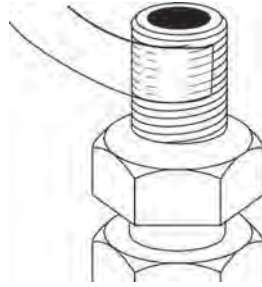


Figure 3

4. Screw one fitting into the filter outlet (top) and the other fitting into the filter inlet (side). Tighten both fittings with a wrench. Do not overtighten. (Figure 4)



Figure 4

5. Measure down from the centerline of the filter inlet about 3" and mark the tube. From this mark, measure up 8" and mark the tube. This is the section of the tube to be removed. If necessary, because of tight quarters, additional tube can be cut away. (Figure 5)

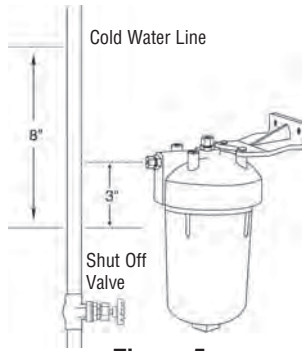


Figure 5

6. Cut the cold water tube. Place a pan under tube to catch any water that may be present. (Figure 6)

## CAUTION

- Install on **COLD** water lines only.

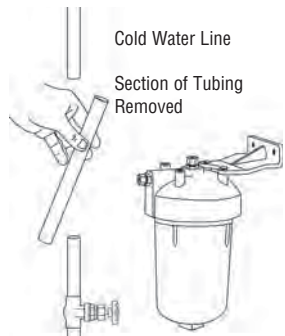


Figure 6

7. Two compression fittings are required for the tube ends. Check the tube size. Use 5/8" x 3/8", 3/8" x 3/8" or 1/2" x 3/8" compression fittings as required. Slip nut and ferrule on water tubing as shown and fasten fittings in place. (Figure 7)

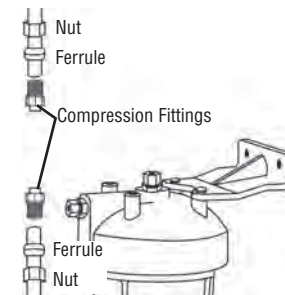


Figure 7

8. Cut two lengths of 3/8" soft copper tubing and bend to shape as shown. Bend tubing to form gentle curves rather than sharp bends. (Figure 8)

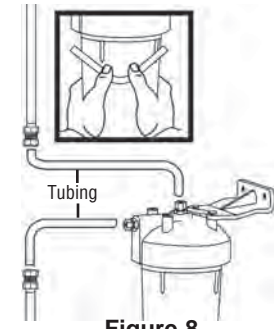


Figure 8

## IMPORTANT NOTE

Do not crimp copper tubing.

9. Connect both pieces of tubing to filter and water tube as shown with compression fittings. Do not overtighten nuts. (Figure 9)

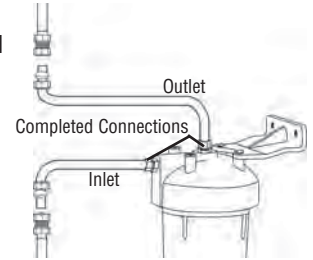


Figure 9

10. Remove housing by grasping with both hands and turning to the left. A wrench may be used on the square lug at the bottom of the housing if necessary. (Figure 10)

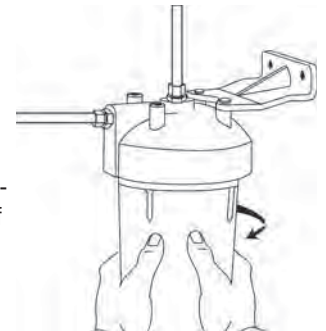


Figure 10

11. Install cartridge by threading into head about 5-6 revolutions. Do not overtighten. Lubricate o-ring with a thin film of a silicone based lubricant and put it back in housing groove. Thread the housing back on the head and hand tighten. Using of wrench to tighten the housing may damage housing and result in water leakage. (Figure 11)

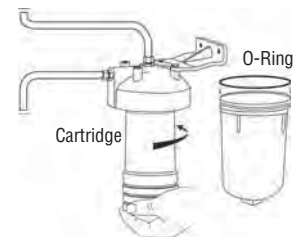


Figure 11

12. Open the cold water faucet to expel any trapped air. Open the shut-off valve to allow water to enter the filter. If any leaks occur, close the shut-off valve and open the faucet to relieve the pressure, then gently tighten the fitting that is leaking. Allow water to run 5 minutes if there are no leaks. Water may run cloudy but will quickly clear.

# FILTER CARTRIDGE REPLACEMENT INSTRUCTIONS

## CAUTION

To reduce the risk associated with property damage due to water leakage:

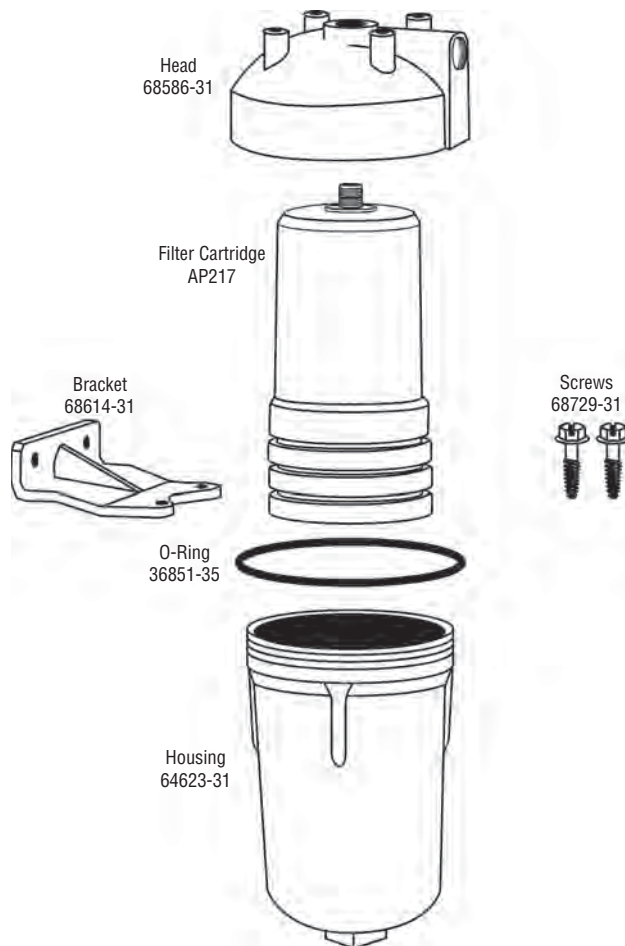
- The disposable filter cartridge **must** be replaced every six months or at the specified service cycle.

Replace cartridge at least every 6 months or when there is a decided decrease in water flowing from the faucet or when objectionable taste and/or odors return. Always have spare cartridges on hand.

1. Close shutoff valve.
2. Open faucet to relieve pressure.
3. Unscrew housing to the left from the head of the filter. Have a small pan handy to catch any spillage. Unscrew used cartridge to the left and discard.
4. Thread in new cartridge and hand tighten about 5-6 revolutions. Do not overtighten.
5. Remove o-ring from top of housing and lubricate with a thin film of a silicone based lubricant and put it back in housing groove. If o-ring is stretched or damaged, replace it with a new o-ring.
6. Thread housing on filter head and hand tighten.
7. Open shut-off valve and allow water to run for five minutes. Water may run cloudy but will clear quickly.

NOTE: If a leak occurs at the housing, close the shut-off valve and open the faucet to relieve pressure. Remove the housing and check the o-ring for correct placement or damage. Install a new o-ring if necessary to stop leaks.

## REPLACEMENT PARTS



## LIMITED WARRANTY

### 5 Year Limited Warranty

CUNO Incorporated, a 3M Company, warrants that this product is free from defects in materials and workmanship. This warranty, together with any and all warranties implied by law, shall be limited to a period of five (5) years from the date of original purchase. This warranty does not apply to failures that result from abuse, misuse, alteration or damage not caused by CUNO or failure to properly comply with these installation or cartridge change-out instructions. This warranty is subject to exclusions and limitations. Please refer to the Warranty Card provided with the product for details.


# INFORMACIÓN DE SEGURIDAD

Lea, entienda y observe toda la información de seguridad que se incluye en estas instrucciones antes de instalar y usar del sistema de filtrado de agua AP200. Retenga estas instrucciones como referencia futura.

## Uso previsto:

El sistema de filtrado de agua AP200 tiene por objeto ser usado en el filtrado de agua potable en viviendas y no ha sido evaluado para otros usos. El sistema se instala generalmente debajo del fregadero y un profesional calificado debe instalarlo de acuerdo a estas instrucciones de instalación.

## EXPLICACIÓN DE LAS CONSECUENCIAS DE LAS PALABRAS INDICADORAS

 <b>ADVERTENCIA</b>	Indica una situación peligrosa potencial, la cual, si no se evita, podría resultar en una lesión seria o la muerte y/o daño a la propiedad.
<b>PRECAUCIÓN</b>	Indica una situación peligrosa potencial, la cual, si no se evita, podría resultar en daños a la propiedad.

## ADVERTENCIA

### Para reducir el riesgo asociado con la ingestión de contaminantes:

- **No lo utilice** con agua que sea microbiológicamente insegura o de calidad desconocida sin la desinfección adecuada previa o posterior al sistema.

### Para reducir el riesgo asociado con un voltaje peligroso:

- **No lo instale** cerca de alambres eléctricos o cañerías que pudieran estar en el lugar de perforación cuando se selecciona el lugar para montar el soporte del filtro.

## PRECAUCIÓN

### Para reducir el riesgo asociado con el daño a la propiedad debido a pérdidas de agua:

- **Lea y observe** las Instrucciones de uso antes de la instalación y uso de este sistema.
- La instalación y Uso DEBE cumplir con los códigos de plomería existentes locales y estatales.
- **Proteja al filtro contra el congelamiento.** Drene el filtro cuando la temperatura ambiente cae por debajo de 40°F (4,4°C);
- **No lo instale** si la presión del agua excede los 125 psi (862 kPa). Si la presión del agua excede los 125 psi, debe instalar una válvula que limite la presión. Consulte a un profesional de la plomería si no está seguro sobre cómo verificar la presión del agua.
- **No lo instale** donde pudieran ocurrir situaciones de golpes de ariete. Si existen situaciones de golpe de ariete debe instalar un supresor de golpes de ariete. Consulte a un profesional de la plomería si no está seguro sobre cómo comprobar si existe dicha situación.
- Para uso con **AGUA** fría solamente. (40-100°F (4.4-37.8°C))
- El cartucho desechable del filtro debe cambiarse cada seis meses o según el ciclo de servicio especificado.
- **No use** un soplete ni otras fuentes de altas temperaturas cerca del filtro o accesorios de plástico.
- **No lo instale** cerca de cañerías de agua que pudieran estar en el lugar de perforación cuando se selecciona el lugar para montar el soporte.
- Instale el filtro en una posición tal que se prevenga la posibilidad de golpearlo con otros artículos usados en el lugar de la instalación (canastas de desechos, etc.).
- En los accesorios de plástico, nunca use selladores ni compuestos lubricantes para tuberías. Use **SOLAMENTE** la cinta para el sellado de la rosca.
- Asegúrese que todas las tuberías y accesorios estén aseguradas y sin pérdidas.
- **Cierre el suministro de combustible al calentador de agua** luego de cortar el agua.

## NOTIFICACIÓN IMPORTANTE

- No observar las instrucciones podría cancelar la garantía.
- Deje un espacio libre mínimo de 19.5 cm (7 1/2") debajo del filtro para facilitar el cambio del cartucho.
- Instálelo con los puertos de entrada y salida como se indican. Asegúrese de no invertir las conexiones.
- No doble la tubería de cobre.



## PARA COMENZAR

Su nuevo filtro de agua Aqua-Pure® AP200 eliminará gustos y olores a cloro y sedimento del agua potable. El filtro se instala debajo del fregadero en la cañería de agua fría. El procedimiento de instalación cubierto en este manual requiere la eliminación de una sección del tubo de agua fría. Los accesorios de compresión y la tubería de cobre blando pueden comprarse localmente para completar la instalación.

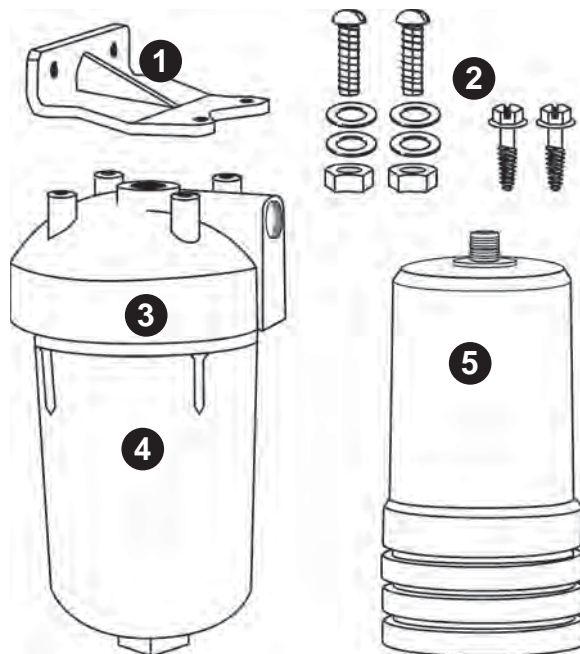
### Piezas y Materiales Incluidos:

1. Soporte de Montaje
2. Dos tornillos de montaje, Cuatro arandelas, Dos tuercas y Dos tornillos autoperforantes
3. Cabezal del sistema
4. Sumidero
5. Cartucho de AP217

### Herramientas y Piezas Necesarias (no se incluyen):

- Dos conexiones macho con rosca de 3/8 de pulgada
- Accesorios de compresión
- Tubería de cobre blando de 3/8 de pulgada
- Taladro eléctrico (se recomienda uno inalámbrico)
- Llave ajustable
- Destornillador con cabeza Phillips
- Cuchillo o cortador de tubería

Vacíe el contenido del paquete e identifique todas las piezas que se muestran en el diagrama. Lea todas las instrucciones detenidamente antes de tratar de comenzar la instalación. La válvula de paso existente permanece en su lugar y sigue funcionando como el corte de agua fría.



## IMPORTANTE: INSTRUCCIONES PARA LA INSTALACIÓN

1. Ponga el filtro sujetándolo en contra del costado de la pared del mueble debajo del fregadero. Deje por lo menos un espacio de 7 pulgadas y medio debajo del filtro para instalar el cartucho. Determine un lugar deseable para la instalación del filtro y conexión de entrada. Sujete el soporte de montaje a los accesorios de montaje del cabezal del filtro con los tornillos autoperforantes. (Figura 1)
2. Saque el cajón (si es necesario) del mueble y perforo dos agujeros de 7/32 de pulgada de diámetro a través de la pared del mueble. Sujete el filtro a la pared con las tuercas y los pernos suministrados. Use arandelas en ambos costados de la pared. Montarlo en la pared lateral del mueble brindará al filtro un soporte sólido y rígido. (Figura 2)



Figura 1

### ⚠️ ADVERTENCIA

#### Para reducir el riesgo asociado con un voltaje peligroso:

- **No lo instale** cerca de alambres eléctricos o cañerías que pudieran estar en el lugar de perforación cuando se selecciona el lugar para montar el soporte del filtro.

### PRECAUCIÓN

#### Para reducir el riesgo asociado con el daño a la propiedad debido a pérdidas de agua:

- Para uso con **AGUA** fría solamente. (40-100°F (4.4-37.8°C))
- Instale el filtro en una posición tal que se prevenga la posibilidad de golpearlo con otros artículos usados en el lugar de la instalación (canastas de desechos, etc.).
- **No lo instale** cerca de cañerías de agua que pudieran estar en el lugar de perforación cuando se selecciona el lugar para montar el soporte.



Figura 2

### NOTIFICACIÓN IMPORTANTE

- Deje un espacio libre mínimo de 19.5 cm (7 1/2") debajo del filtro para facilitar el cambio del cartucho.

# INSTRUCCIONES PARA LA INSTALACIÓN (CONTINUACIÓN)

3. Envuelva un pedazo de cinta de PTFE de 3 pulgadas (7,62 cm) de largo hacia la derecha alrededor de las roscas macho de los accesorios. Envuélvalo apretadamente para que entre en las roscas del accesorio y se superponga por lo menos 1/2 pulgada. (Figura 3)

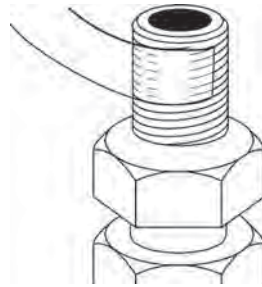


Figura 3

4. Enrosque un accesorio en la salida del filtro (arriba) y el otro accesorio en la entrada del filtro (costado). Apriete ambos accesorios con una llave. No lo apriete demasiado. (Figura 4)

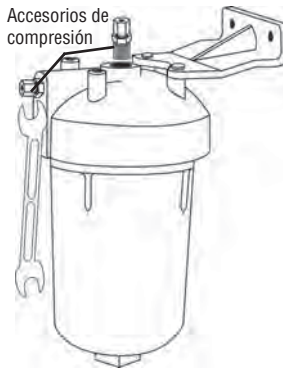


Figura 4

5. Mida hacia abajo desde la línea central de la entrada del filtro cerca de 3 pulgadas y marque el tubo. Desde esta marca, mida 8 pulgadas hacia arriba y marque el tubo. Esta es la sección del tubo que debe sacar. De ser necesario, debido a la falta de espacio, se podrá cortar más tubo. (Figura 5)



Figura 5

6. Corte el tubo de agua fría. Ponga un recipiente debajo del tubo para recoger el agua que pudiera caer. (Figura 6)



Figura 6

**PRECAUCIÓN**

- Para uso con **AGUA** fría solamente. (40-100°F (4.4-37.8°C))

7. Se requieren dos accesorios de compresión para los extremos del tubo. Verifique el tamaño del tubo. Use accesorios de compresión de 5/8 x 3/8 de pulgada, 3/8 x 3/8 de pulgada ó 1/2 pulgada x 3/8 de pulgada según sea necesario. Deslice la tuerca y el regatón sobre la tubería del agua como se indica y ajuste los accesorios en su lugar. (Figura 7)

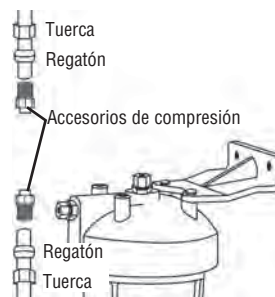


Figura 7

8. Corte dos pedazos de tubería de cobre blando de 3/8 de pulgada y dóblelos como se indica. Doble la tubería para crear curvas suaves en lugar de cerradas. (Figura 8)

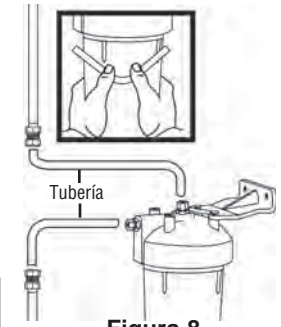


Figura 8

## NOTIFICACIÓN IMPORTANTE

- No doble la tubería de cobre.

9. Conecte ambos pedazos de tubería al filtro y tubo de agua como se indica con los accesorios de compresión. No apriete las tuercas demasiado. (Figura 9)



Figura 9

10. Saque el armazón agarrándolo con las dos manos y haciéndolo girar a la izquierda. Se podrá usar una llave en la tuerca cuadrada en el fondo del armazón si fuera necesario. (Figura 10)

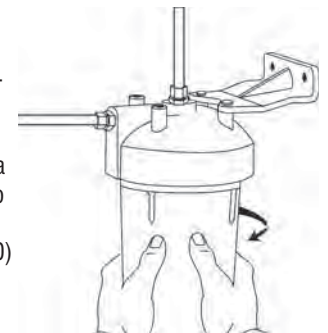


Figura 10

11. Instale el cartucho enrosándolo al cabezal unas 5 ó 6 vueltas. No lo apriete demasiado. Lubrique la junta tórica con una película delgada de lubricante con base de silicona y póngalo en la ranura del armazón. Enrosque el armazón al cabezal de nuevo, apretándolo con la mano. Usar la llave para apretar el armazón podría dañarlo y resultar en pérdida de agua. (Figura 11)

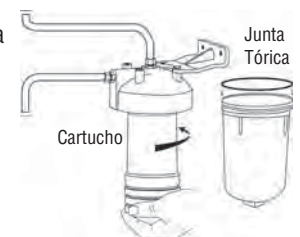


Figura 11

12. Abra el grifo de agua fría para que salga el aire atrapado. Abra la válvula de paso para permitir que entre agua al filtro. Si ocurriera alguna pérdida, cierre la válvula y abra el grifo para aliviar la presión y luego ajuste suavemente el accesorio donde está la pérdida. Deje que el agua corra durante 5 minutos si no hay pérdidas. El agua podrá salir algo turbia pero se aclarará rápidamente.



# DIRECTIVES DE REMPLACEMENT DE LA CARTOUCHE FILTRANTE

## PRECAUCIÓN

**Para reducir el riesgo asociado con el daño a la propiedad debido a pérdidas de agua:**

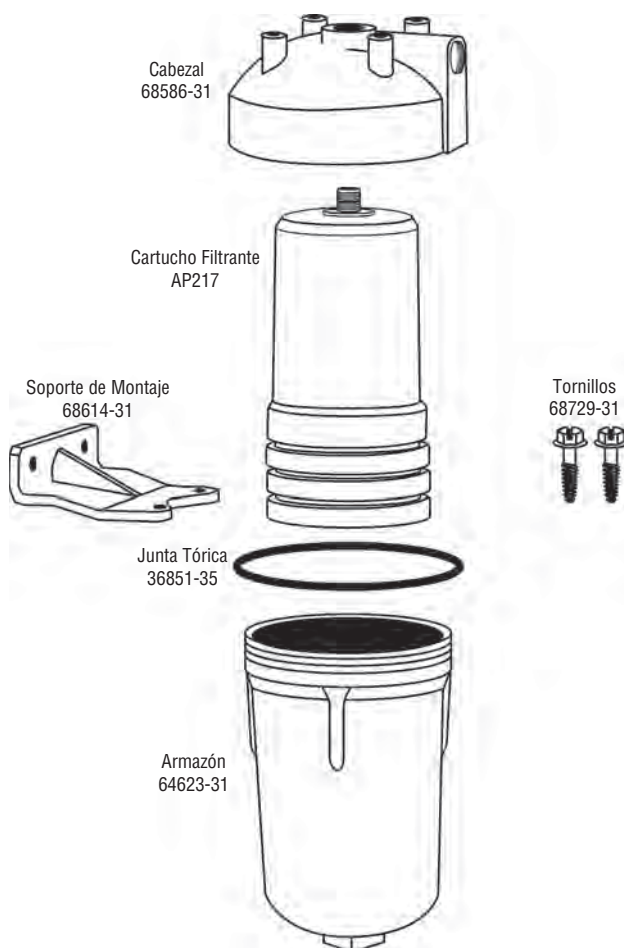
- El cartucho desechable del filtro debe cambiarse cada seis meses o según el ciclo de servicio especificado.

Cambie el cartucho por lo menos cada 6 meses o cuando haya una reducción significativa en el flujo de agua del grifo o cuando vuelvan gustos u olores objetables. Tenga siempre cartuchos de repuesto a mano.

1. Cierre la válvula de paso.
2. Abra el grifo para aliviar la presión.
3. Desenrosque el armazón hacia la izquierda desde el cabezal del filtro. Tenga un recipiente pequeño a mano para recoger los derrames. Desenrosque el cartucho usado hacia la izquierda y deséchelo.
4. Enrosque el nuevo cartucho y apriételo con la mano unas 5 ó 6 vueltas. No lo apriete demasiado.
5. Saque la junta tórica desde arriba del armazón y lubríquela con una delgada película de lubricante con base de silicona y vuelva a ponerla en la ranura del armazón. Si la junta tórica está estirada o dañada, cámbiela por una nueva.
6. Enrosque el armazón al cabezal del filtro y apriételo con la mano.
7. Abra la válvula de paso y deje que el agua corra durante cinco minutos. El agua podrá salir algo turbia pero se aclarará rápidamente.

NOTA: Si ocurre una pérdida en el armazón, cierre la válvula de paso y abra el grifo para aliviar la presión. Saque el armazón y verifique que la junta tórica está en el lugar correcto y sin daños. Instale una nueva junta si fuera necesario para detener las pérdidas.

## PIEZAS DE RECAMBIO



## GARANTÍA LIMITADA

### Garantía Limitada de Cinco Años

CUNO Incorporated, una compañía 3M, garantiza que este producto no tiene defectos en los materiales y mano de obra. Esta garantía, junto con cualquiera y todas las garantías implícitas por ley, se limitará a un período de cinco (5) años desde la fecha de compra original. Esta garantía no se aplica a fallas que resulten del abuso, maltrato, alteración o daño no causado por CUNO o por no observar debidamente las instrucciones para la instalación o el cambio del cartucho. Esta garantía está sujeta a exclusiones y limitaciones. Por favor, consulte la Tarjeta de la garantía provista con el producto para obtener detalles.


# CONSIGNES DE SÉCURITÉ

Avant d'installer et d'utiliser les systèmes d'eau potable AP200, s'assurer de lire, comprendre et suivre toutes les consignes de sécurité que renferme ce mode d'emploi. Conserver ce mode d'emploi pour consultation future.

## Utilisation du produit:

Ce système d'eau potable AP200 est destiné à filtrer l'eau potable à la maison; il n'a pas été évalué pour d'autres utilisations. Ce système est généralement placé sous un évier, et devrait être installé par un installateur qualifié en respectant ces directives d'installation.

## EXPLICATION DES CONSÉQUENCES LIÉES AUX MOTS INDICATEURS

 <b>MISE EN GARDE</b>	Indique une situation potentiellement dangereuse qui, si elle n'est pas évitée, pourrait entraîner la mort, des blessures graves et des dégâts matériels.
<b>AVERTISSEMENT</b>	Indique une situation potentiellement dangereuse qui, si elle n'est pas évitée, pourrait occasionner des dégâts matériels.

## MISE EN GARDE

### Pour réduire les risques associés à l'ingestion de contaminants:

- **Ne pas utiliser** avec de l'eau qui n'est pas sûre au point de vue microbiologique ou de qualité incertaine sans assurer une désinfection adéquate avant ou après le système.

### Pour réduire les risques d'électrocution:

- **Ne pas installer** près de câbles électriques ou de conduites d'eau susceptibles d'être endommagés par la perceuse au moment de fixer le support du filtre.

## AVERTISSEMENT

### Afin de réduire les risques de dommages matériels associés aux fuites d'eau:

- **Lire et suivre** le mode d'emploi avant l'installation et l'utilisation de ce système.
- L'installation et l'utilisation **DOIT** être conforme aux codes d'État et de plomberie en vigueur.
- **Protéger le filtre du gel.** Vidanger le filtre si la température ambiante tombe sous les 4,4°C (40°F).
- **Ne pas** installer sur une conduite d'eau dont la pression est supérieure à 862 kPa (125 psi). Si la pression est supérieure à 862 kPa (125 psi), il est nécessaire d'installer une soupape de limitation de pression. En cas de doute sur la manière de vérifier la pression de l'eau, communiquer avec un plombier.
- **Ne pas** installer où des coups de bélier peuvent se produire. S'il se produit des coups de bélier, il est nécessaire d'installer un dispositif antibélier. En cas de doute sur la manière de vérifier cette situation, communiquer avec un plombier.
- À utiliser uniquement sur une conduite d'eau **FROIDE**. (40-100°F (4.4-37.8°C)).
- Il faut remplacer la cartouche filtrante jetable au moins tous les six mois ou selon le cycle de vie indiqué.
- **Ne pas** utiliser de torche ni d'autres appareils dégagant beaucoup de chaleur près du filtre ou des raccords en plastique.
- **Ne pas** installer près de conduites d'eau susceptibles d'être endommagées par la perceuse au moment de fixer le support.
- Installer le filtre dans une position le protégeant contre les risques de contact avec d'autres objets utilisés dans la zone d'installation (poubelle, etc.).
- **Ne pas** utiliser de garniture d'étanchéité ou d'enduit d'enrobage avec les raccords en plastique. Utiliser uniquement du ruban d'étanchéité pour filets.
- **Assurez-vous** que tous les tuyaux et raccords sont solides et exempts de fuites.
- **Couper l'alimentation en combustible du chauffe-eau** après avoir coupé l'eau.

## REMARQUES IMPORTANTES

- Ne pas se conformer à ces directives pourrait annuler la garantie.
- Laisser un espace libre d'au moins 19,5 cm sous le filtre pour faciliter le remplacement de la cartouche.
- Installer avec les orifices d'entrée et de sortie aux endroits indiqués sur l'étiquette. S'assurer de ne pas intervertir les raccords.
- Ne pas pincer le tuyau de cuivre.

# DÉMARRAGE

Votre nouveau filtre à eau Aqua-Pure® AP200 réduira la présence de goût et d'odeur de chlore, ainsi que de sédiments dans votre eau potable. Ce filtre s'installe sur le tuyau d'alimentation en eau froide, sous l'évier. Les directives d'installation contenues dans ce manuel impliquent le retrait d'une section du tuyau d'alimentation en eau froide. On doit acheter localement le tuyau en cuivre mou et les raccords nécessaires pour compléter l'installation.

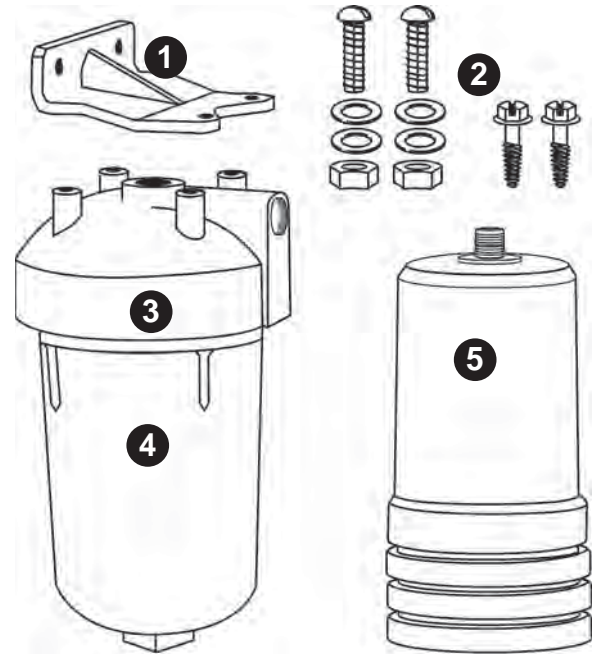
## Pièces et Matériel Inclus

1. Support de Fixation
2. Deux vis de fixation, Quatre rondelles, Deux écrous et Deux vis autotaraudeuses
3. Tête du système
4. Réservoir collecteur
5. Cartouche AP217

## Outils et Pièces Nécessaires (non compris):

- Deux (2) raccords filetés mâles de 3/8 po
- Raccords à compression
- Tuyau en cuivre mou de 3/8 po
- Perceuse (sans fil recommandée)
- Clé anglaise réglable
- Tournevis cruciforme (Phillips)
- Couteau à lame de rasoir ou coupe-tuyau

Vider le contenu de l'emballage et repérer toutes les pièces représentées dans le schéma. Lire avec soin toutes les directives avant de commencer l'installation. Le robinet d'arrêt déjà en place demeure et sert toujours à couper l'eau.



# IMPORTANT: DIRECTIVES D'INSTALLATION

1. Positionner le filtre en le tenant contre le côté de l'armoire sous l'évier. Laisser un espace libre d'au moins 19 cm (7½ po) sous le filtre pour permettre d'installer la cartouche filtrante. Déterminer l'endroit où seront installés le filtre et le raccordement à l'arrivée d'eau. Fixer le support de fixation aux endroits prévus à cette fin sur la tête du filtre à l'aide des vis autotaraudeuses. (Figure 1)
2. Retirer le tiroir de l'armoire (au besoin) et percer deux trous de 5,6 mm (7/32 po) de diamètre dans la paroi de l'armoire. Fixer le filtre au mur à l'aide des boulons et écrous fournis. Utiliser des rondelles des deux côtés du mur. Fixer le filtre au panneau latéral de l'armoire lui assurera un support solide et rigide. (Figure 2)



Figure 1

## ⚠ MISE EN GARDE

### Pour réduire les risques d'électrocution:

- **Ne pas installer** près de câbles électriques ou de conduites d'eau susceptibles d'être endommagés par la perceuse au moment de fixer le support du filtre.

## AVERTISSEMENT

### Afin de réduire les risques de dommages matériels associés aux fuites d'eau:

- À utiliser uniquement sur une conduite d'eau **FROIDE**. (40-100°F (4.4-37.8°C)).
- Installer le filtre dans une position le protégeant contre les risques de contact avec d'autres objets utilisés dans la zone d'installation (poubelle, etc.).
- **Ne pas** installer près de conduites d'eau susceptibles d'être endommagées par la perceuse au moment de fixer le support.

## REMARQUES IMPORTANTES

- Laisser un espace libre d'au moins 19,5 cm sous le filtre pour faciliter le remplacement de la cartouche.

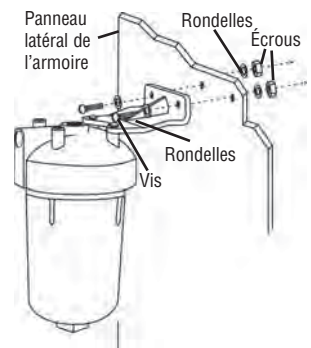


Figure 2

# DIRECTIVES D'INSTALLATION (SUITE)

3. Enrouler une longueur de ruban de PTFE de 7,62 cm (3 po) de gauche à droite autour du filetage mâle des raccords. Bien resserrer afin qu'il épouse le filetage du raccordement et recouvre environ 1,3 cm (1/2 po). (Figure 3)

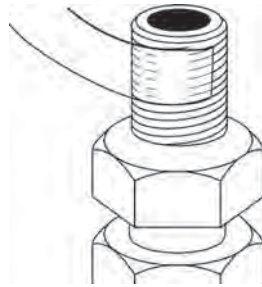


Figure 3

4. Visser un raccordement dans la sortie du filtre (sommet) et l'autre dans l'entrée du filtre (côté). Resserrer les deux raccords à l'aide d'une clé. Ne pas trop serrer. (Figure 4)

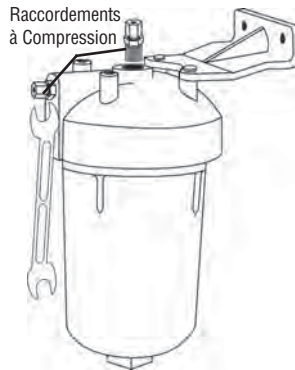


Figure 4

5. Mesurer environ 7,6 cm (3 po) vers le bas à partir du centre de l'entrée du filtre et faire une marque sur le tube. À partir de cette marque, mesure 20,3 cm (8 po) vers le haut, et faire une marque. Cela indique la portion du tuyau à retirer. Si nécessaire en raison d'un manque d'espace de travail, on peut couper une plus grande longueur de tuyau. (Figure 5)

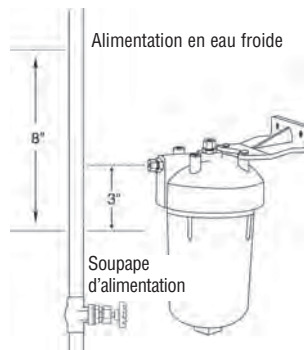


Figure 5

6. Couper le tuyau d'eau froide. Placer un récipient sous le tuyau pour recueillir l'eau qui pourrait s'écouler. (Figure 6)



Figure 6

**AVERTISSEMENT**

- À utiliser uniquement sur une conduite d'eau **FROIDE**. (40-100°F (4.4-37.8°C)).

7. Deux raccords à compression doivent être placés aux extrémités du tuyau. Vérifier la taille du tuyau. Utiliser des adaptateurs de raccordement à compression de 5/8 po x 3/8 po, 3/8 po x 3/8 po ou 1/2 po x 3/8 po au besoin. Faire glisser l'écrou et la bague d'extrémité sur le tuyau d'eau tel qu'illustré et fixer les raccords en place. (Figure 7)

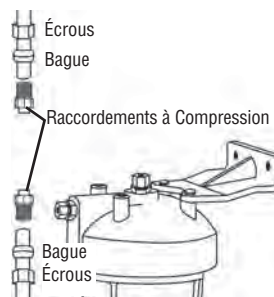


Figure 7

8. Couper deux longueurs de tuyau de cuivre mou de 3/8 po et plier pour donner la forme illustrée. Plier le tube de manière à former des courbes douces plutôt que des angles aigus. (Figure 8)

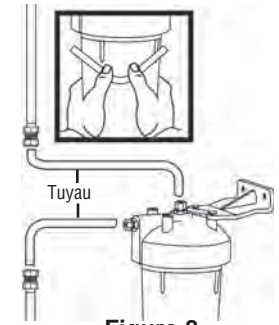


Figure 8

## REMARQUES IMPORTANTES

- Ne pas pincer le tuyau de cuivre.

9. Raccorder les deux bouts du tuyau au filtre et au tuyau d'eau à l'aide des raccords à compression. Ne pas trop serrer les écrous. (Figure 9)

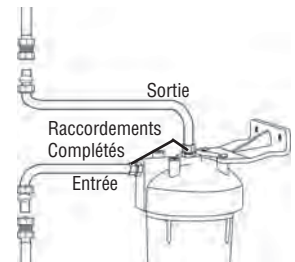


Figure 9

10. Retirer le boîtier en le tenant à deux mains et en le tournant vers la gauche. On peut utiliser une clé pour tenir la cheville carrée au bas du boîtier, si nécessaire. (Figure 10)

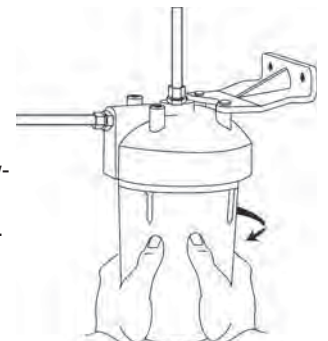


Figure 10

11. Installer la cartouche filtrante en la vissant sur la tête, environ 5 à 6 tours. Ne pas trop serrer. Lubrifier le joint torique à l'aide d'une mince couche de lubrifiant à base de silicone et remettre en place dans la rainure du boîtier. Revisser le boîtier sur la tête et bien resserrer à la main. L'utilisation d'une clé pour resserrer le boîtier peut l'endommager et causer des fuites. (Figure 11)

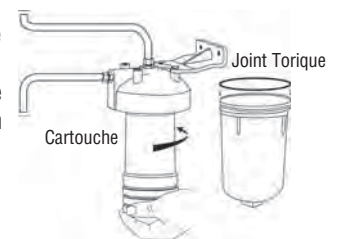


Figure 11

12. Ouvrir le robinet d'eau froide pour expulser l'air. Ouvrir la soupape d'arrêt pour permettre à l'eau de pénétrer dans le filtre. En cas de fuite, refermer la soupape d'alimentation et ouvrir le robinet pour laisser échapper la pression avant de resserrer doucement le raccordement d'où provient la fuite. Lorsqu'il n'y a plus de fuite, laisser l'eau couler pendant 5 minutes. Il est possible que l'eau soit brouillée, mais elle deviendra claire rapidement.



# DIRECTIVES DE REMPLACEMENT DE LA CARTOUCHE FILTRANTE

## AVERTISSEMENT

**Afin de réduire les risques de dommages matériels associés aux fuites d'eau:**

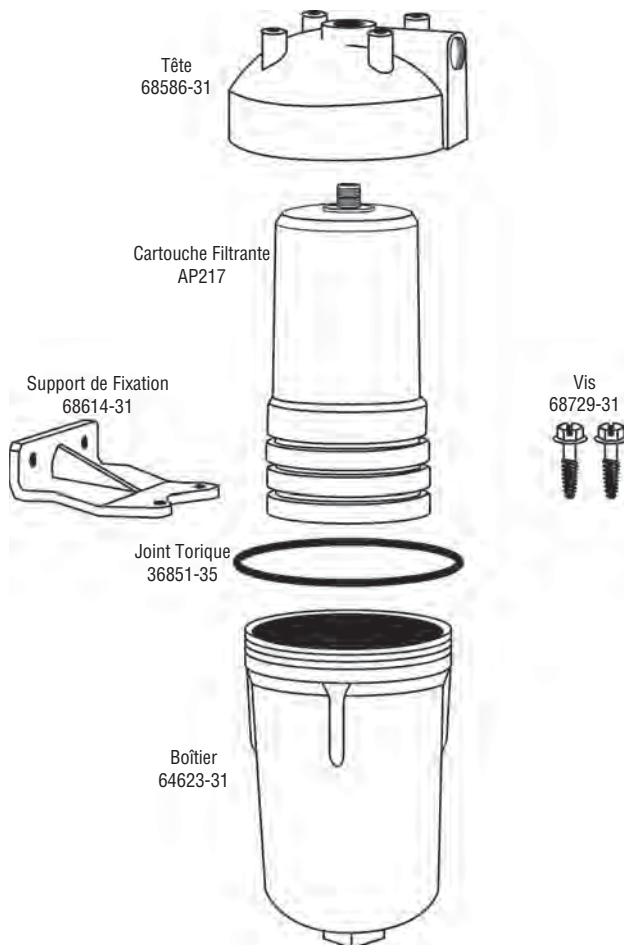
- Il faut remplacer la cartouche filtrante jetable au moins tous les six mois ou selon le cycle de vie indiqué.

Remplacer la cartouche au moins tous les six mois ou lorsque le débit d'eau est nettement moins important ou lorsque l'eau qui s'écoule dégage un goût moins agréable ou que les odeurs réapparaissent. Conserver toujours des cartouches de rechange en réserve.

1. Fermer la soupape d'alimentation.
2. Ouvrir le robinet pour dépressuriser le système.
3. Dévisser le boîtier de la tête du filtre en le tournant vers la gauche. Avoir un petit récipient sous la main pour recueillir tout écoulement. Dévisser la cartouche usagée en la tournant vers la gauche et la mettre au rebut.
4. Visser la nouvelle cartouche et resserrer à la main de 5 à 6 tours. Ne pas trop serrer.
5. Retirer le joint torique du sommet du boîtier et lubrifier à l'aide d'une mince couche de lubrifiant à base de silicone et remettre en place dans la rainure du boîtier. Remplacer le joint torique s'il est étiré ou endommagé.
6. Revisser le boîtier et serrer à la main.
7. Ouvrir la soupape d'arrêt et laisser l'eau couler pendant cinq minutes. Il est possible que l'eau soit brouillée, mais elle deviendra claire rapidement.

REMARQUE : En cas de fuite au niveau du boîtier, refermer la soupape d'alimentation et ouvrir le robinet pour laisser échapper la pression. Retirer le boîtier et vérifier si le joint torique est bien placé et s'il est en bon état. Installer un nouveau joint si nécessaire pour empêcher les fuites.

## PIÈCES DE REMPLACEMENT



## GARANTIE LIMITÉE

### Garantie Limitée de Cinq Ans

CUNO Incorporated, une société 3M, garantit que ce produit est exempt de tout défaut de matériaux ou de fabrication. Cette garantie, ainsi que toute autre garantie prévue par la loi, sera limitée à une période de cinq (5) ans à partir de la date de l'achat original effectué. Cette garantie ne couvre pas les pannes qui sont la conséquence d'usage abusif, de mauvais usage, d'altération ou de dommages non causés par CUNO, ou encore par le fait de négliger de respecter les directives d'installation ou de remplacement de la cartouche. Cette garantie est soumise à certaines limites et exclusions. Veuillez consulter la carte de garantie fournie avec ce produit pour plus de détails.

NOTES:

CUNO and Aqua-Pure are trademarks of 3M Company used under license.  
© 2007 3M Company. All rights reserved.



**CUNO Incorporated**  
400 Research Parkway  
Meriden, CT 06450 USA  
Toll Free: 1-800-222-7880  
Worldwide: 203-237-5541  
Fax: 203-238-8701  
[www.aquapure.com](http://www.aquapure.com) • [www.cuno.com](http://www.cuno.com)

# Installation Instructions

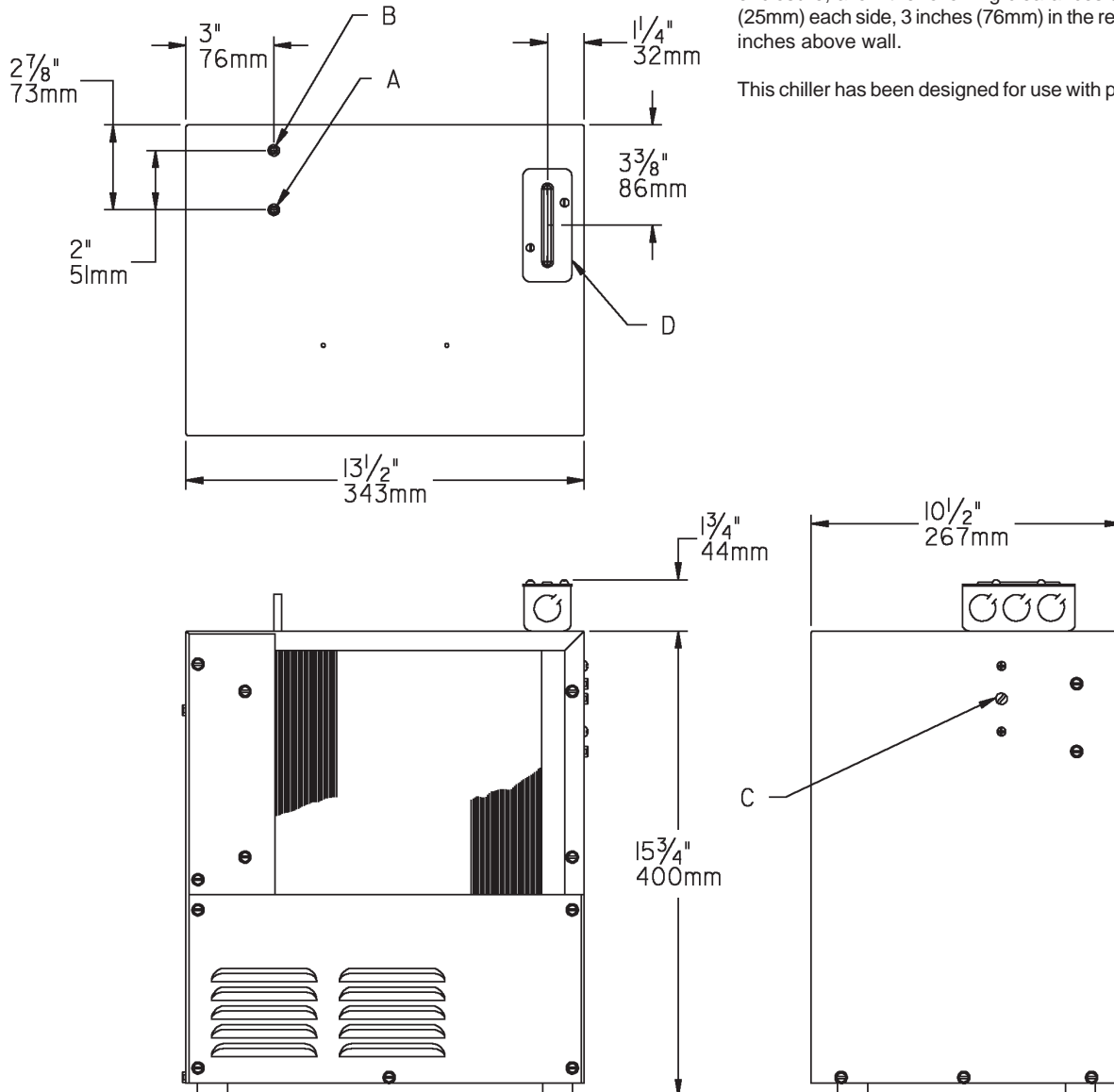
## ER2 Remote Chiller

**Note: Danger! Electric shock hazard. Disconnect power before servicing unit.**

*USES HFC-134A REFRIGERANT*

**NOTE:** It is important to insure proper ventilation. Allow a minimum clearance of 6 inches (152 mm) in front and 3 inches (76mm) in the rear of the unit. If unit is to be installed in an enclosure, allow the following clearances around unit - 1 inch (25mm) each side, 3 inches (76mm) in the rear, 3 inches (76mm) inches above wall.

This chiller has been designed for use with potable water **ONLY**.



### LEGEND

A=  $1/4$ " (6mm) O.D. TUBE WATER OUT

B =  $1/4$ " (6mm) O.D. TUBE WATER INLET

C = TEMPERATURE ADJUSTMENT

D = ELECTRICAL



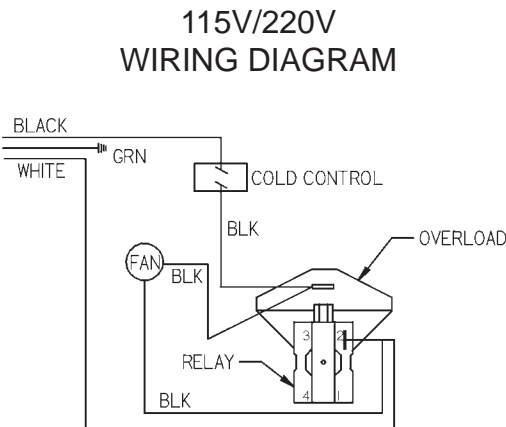
ITEM NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION
1	30040C	Cover - Electrical Box
2	30039C	Box - Electrical
3	98773C	Kit - Cold Control/Screws
4	31341C	Motor - Fan
5	30824C	Fan - Blade
6	42677000	Fan - Bracket
7	111543043890	Nut - Hex #6-32
8	66266C	Condenser
*9	0000001194	Compressor Service Pak
10	98747C	Kit - Electrical (Relay/Cvrr/O/L)
11	98181C	Kit - Heat Exchanger/Drier
12	98777C	Kit - Compr. Mounting Hardware
13	66201C	Drier
14	98724C	Kit - Evaporator Assembly
15	50930C	Bumper
16	23105C	Cabinet
17	27304C	Baseplate
18	23107C	Panel - Rear (Not Shown)
19	23108C	Panel - Front
20	23109C	Panel - Condenser Mounting
NS	56092C	Poly Tubing (Cut To Length)
NS	1000001602	Kit - Elbow - 5/16" x 1/4" (3 Pack)

**220/240V 50HZ**

ITEM NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION
4	31395C	Motor - Fan
*9	35967C	Compr. Service Pak
10	98746C	Kit - Electrical (Relay/Cvrr/O/L)
11	0000001014	Kit - Heat Exchanger/Drier
13	66200C	Drier

**\*INCLUDES RELAY & OVERLOAD. IF UNDER WARRANTY, REPLACE WITH SAME COMPRESSOR USED IN ORIGINAL ASSEMBLY.**

NOTE: All correspondence pertaining to any of the above water cooler or orders for repair MUST include model number and serial number of cooler, name and part number of replacement part.



**INSTALLATION**

1. It is important to insure proper ventilation. For remote installation a minimum clearance of 6 inches (152 mm) to the front must be maintained, 1 inch (25 mm) each side, 3 inches (76 mm) to the rear above the unit. Wall grille EG-1 or EG-2 to be used when unit is inserted into an enclosure. Install unit as close as possible to wall grille. A 6 inch (152 mm) clearance beyond the front of the wall grille is required for adequate air circulation.
2. When unit is installed in a kitchen cabinet, two air openings with a minimum of 40 square inches each (minimum of 75% open area) must be provided in the cabinet. One opening should be in the overhang of the toe space. The other opening near the top of the cabinet. The remote unit must be installed with a minimum of 3 inch clearance between the unit and the walls of the cabinet. In addition a minimum 2 inch clearance must be provided between the toe space air opening and front of remote unit.
3. Water inlet is 1/4" (6 mm) O.D. tube. Contractor to supply connections as required.
4. Connecting lines to be of copper, thoroughly flushed to remove all foreign matter before being connected to chiller. If flushing does not remove all particles, a water strainer should be installed in supply line.
5. Connect cooler to building supply line with a shut-off valve and install a union connection between the valve and chiller.
6. Electrical: Make sure power supply is identical in voltage, cycle, and phase to that specified on chiller serial plate. Never wire compressor directly to the power supply.

**START-UP**

1. Open supply line valve.
2. Purge air from all water lines by operating bubbler valve of fountain to which chiller is connected. Steady stream assures all air removed.
3. Rotate fan to insure proper clearance and free fan action.
4. Connect to electrical power.

**TROUBLE SHOOTING & MAINTENANCE**

**Temperature Control:** Factory set at 50°F (+/- 5°) under normal conditions. For colder water, adjust screw on item no. 3 CW.

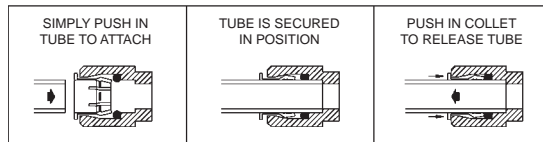
**Ventilation:** Cabinet louvers and condenser fins should be periodically cleaned with brush, air hose or vacuum cleaner. Excess dirt or poor ventilation can cause no cold water and compressor cycling on the compressor overload protector.

**Lubrication:** Motors are lifetime lubricated.

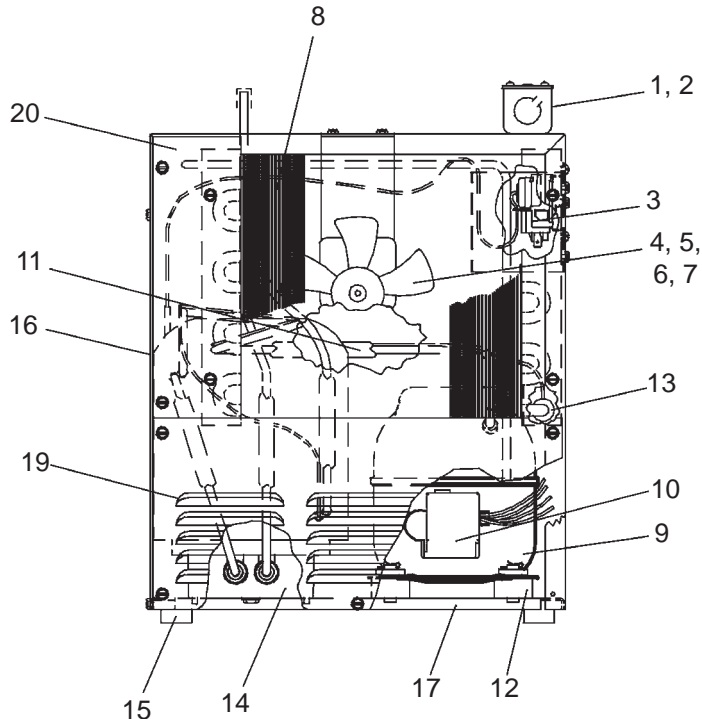
**ACTUATION OF QUICK CONNECT WATER FITTINGS:**

Chiller is provided with a lead-free plug which utilizes an o-ring water seal. To remove plug from chiller, relieve water pressure, pull the collar towards the fitting and pull the fitting off the tube. To install plug, push fitting straight onto tubing until it reaches a positive stop, approximately 3/4 in. (19mm).

**OPERATION OF QUICK CONNECT FITTINGS**



PUSHING TUBE IN BEFORE PULLING IT OUT HELPS TO RELEASE TUBE



REPAIR SERVICE INFORMATION TOLL FREE NUMBER 1.800.260.6640  
FOR PARTS, CONTACT YOUR LOCAL DISTRIBUTOR OR CALL 1.800.834.4816

**ELKAY MANUFACTURING COMPANY • 2222 CAMDEN COURT • OAK BROOK, IL 60523 • 630.574.8484**



## Elkay Residential Stainless Sinks Limited Lifetime Warranty

Elkay warrants to the original purchaser of an Elkay stainless steel sink that Elkay will, at its option, replace or repair, without charge, such product if it fails due to a manufacturing defect for a lifetime of normal residential use. Product replacement does not include transportation cost or labor installation cost. This warranty covers only stainless steel self-rimming drop-in sinks installed in a conventional countertop surface and stainless steel undermount sinks installed in a conventional solid surface countertop and applies to residential installations only. Elkay reserves the right to examine product in question and its installation prior to repair or replacement.

Elkay waste fittings and accessories are warranted for 1 year from the date of purchase.

### Other Warranty Conditions on Sinks

**This warranty applies to sinks purchased after March 1 2001 as shown on the purchaser's** dated receipt. For sinks purchased prior to March 1 2001, the applicable warranty at that time will be in effect. Our warranty does not cover product failure or damage caused by the use of optional accessories, abusive treatment, misuse, environmental factors, normal wear including dents and scratches, improper care and cleaning, use of aggressive and abrasive cleaners, damage due to handling or failure to follow the recommended procedures for installation, care and maintenance as detailed in the installation and care guide provided with every sink. This warranty is extended only to the original consumer purchaser of the product.

This warranty does not cover shipping costs, labor costs, or any other charges for such items as installation or replacement of the sink, diagnosis or replacement of any faucet or component part, or any other expense or loss.

All incidental or consequential damages are specifically excluded. No additional warranties, express or implied are given, including but not limited to, any implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose.

Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages or limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitations or exclusions may not apply to you.

This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights which vary from state to state.

### To Obtain Service Under Warranty

1. Write to: Elkay Manufacturing Company  
Attention: Consumer Care  
1333 Butterfield Road, Suite 200  
Downers Grove, Illinois 60515
2. Include a letter containing the following information:
  - a. Date of purchase and installation.
  - b. Proof of Purchase (copy of original dated invoice)
  - c. Description of nature of defect.
  - d. Model number or description of model and/or component part if possible.



CONTEMPORARY  
ANTIQUE  
TUSCAN  
MODERN

# Instant Hot Water Dispenser Owner's Manual

Installation, Care & Use

Instalación, cuidado y uso

Installation, soin et utilisation

HWT-F1000S  
HWT-HP  
HWT-00



To see a tutorial of this installation:

Para ver un tutorial de esta instalación ingrese a

Pour voir un tutoriel de cette installation

<http://goo.gl/yYrFOA>



The Emerson logo is a trademark and a service mark of Emerson Electric Co. InSinkErator may make improvements and/or changes in the specifications at any time, in its sole discretion, without notice or obligation and further reserves the right to change or discontinue models.

©2014 InSinkErator, a business unit of Emerson Electric Co. All Rights Reserved.

El logotipo Emerson es una marca registrada y una marca de servicio de Emerson Electric Co.

InSinkErator puede realizar mejoras y/o modificaciones en las especificaciones en cualquier momento, y bajo su exclusivo criterio, sin previo aviso u obligación; además, se reserva el derecho de cambiar o suspender los modelos.

©2014 InSinkErator, una unidad comercial de Emerson Electric Co. Todos los derechos reservados.

Le logo Emerson est une marque de commerce et de service d'Emerson Electric Co.

InSinkErator se réserve le droit, à son entière discrétion, d'apporter en tout temps des améliorations ou des modifications aux spécifications, et ce, sans préavis ou obligation de sa part, ou de modifier ou de supprimer des modèles.

©2014 InSinkErator, une unité commerciale d'Emerson Electric Co. Tous droits réservés.

GN/HC1100  
GN/HC2200  
GN/HC2215  
H/HC3300



1.800.558.5700  
[www.insinkerator.com](http://www.insinkerator.com)





We are delighted that you have chosen the InSinkErator® Instant Hot Water Dispenser to be a part of your home. This unique appliance will save you time and effort in the kitchen, and you'll enjoy discovering new uses for it each day. That's exactly why millions of people are now using an InSinkErator Instant Hot Water Dispenser.

We are confident that by following our step-by-step instructions, you'll soon be enjoying the convenience of instant hot water.

## WHAT YOU SHOULD KNOW BEFORE YOU BEGIN

- For your satisfaction and safety, read all instructions, cautions and warnings before installing or using this instant hot water dispenser.
- This particular unit is not intended for commercial use.
- Make sure that all electrical wiring and connections conform to local codes.
- A standard 115-volt grounded electrical outlet is required under the sink for the dispenser's electrical power.
- The wall outlet powering your dispenser must have power supplied to it continuously.
- This outlet must be fused and should not be controlled by the same wall switch that operates the disposer, unless you have a SinkTop Switch™ from InSinkErator®.
- It is recommended that a dedicated control valve be installed on the cold water line supplying water to this system.
- If you suspect elevated levels of chlorine in your water, or your water has a rusty appearance before the installation of this unit, it is recommended to use our water filtration system.  
This product contains stainless steel. The manufacturer cannot guarantee against rusty water because of the number of factors that are involved beyond the manufacturer's control. However, the sudden appearance of rusty water discharged from the hot water dispenser may indicate the need for service or replacement of this product.
- The use of a water filter should NOT result in the water pressure to drop below 30 psi (207kPa). If it does, this will prevent your unit from operating properly.
- Moving parts inside the tank causing a rattling noise is normal.

## WHAT YOU NEED TO GET STARTED

### Equipment Required:

- Drill
- T-fitting
- Dedicated control valve
- Adjustable wrench
- Philips Screw Driver
- Pencil
- Tape Measure

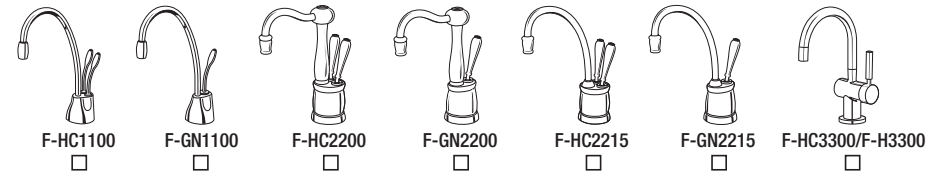
### Equipment You May Need:

- Anchors for drywall
- Hole saw
- Basin wrench
- Hole punch

If you intend to use the sprayer hole in your sink for your dispenser, you may need a basin wrench and a 1/8" plug or a 1/4" cap (**not supplied**) for the faucet sprayer hose line. **See Step 1B.**

If you need to cut a mounting hole in your stainless steel sink, you may need a 1 1/4" - 1 1/2" hole saw made for cutting stainless steel or a hole punch. Consult a professional if you are drilling into a surface other than stainless steel.

Identify the model of your instant hot water dispenser and record it here: \_\_\_\_\_



## HOW TO USE THIS INSTRUCTION MANUAL

These instructions are separated into main sections, indicated by numbers, and subsections, indicated by capital letters. The manual is setup this way to allow you to take a break at any point after completing a section or subsection without affecting the installation process.

What you'll see in the instruction manual:

### INSTALLING THE FAUCET

**A**

**NOTICE**

**Property Damage:** Do not pinch or break copper tubing. Do not distort the last 1 inch of tubing.

- Unpack dispenser components.
- On a firm, flat surface, carefully straighten the copper tubing.

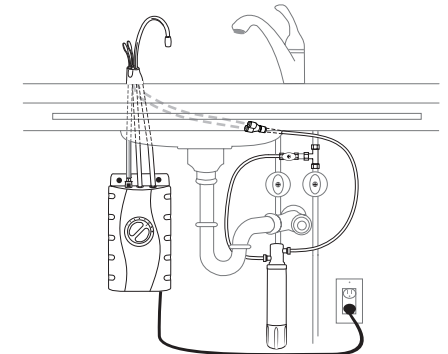
- 1** Provides a step-by-step narrative describing the installation step, with check boxes that can be marked as you progress through the installation.
- 2** Contains simple illustrations that provide visual instruction to support the narrative.
- 3** Important safety messages that will require your attention during the step.

**▲ WARNING** A potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

**▲ CAUTION** A potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury.

**NOTICE** Notice is used to address practices not related to personal injury.

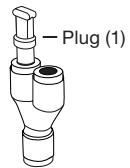
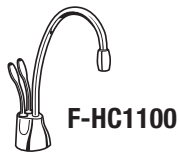
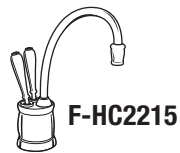
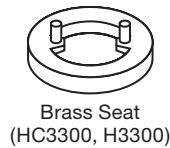
## OVERVIEW OF A COMPLETED SETUP



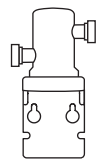
To see a tutorial of this installation:  
<http://goo.gl/yYrfOA>

**NOTICE** Do not plug in the power to the hot water tank until Step 6C. To avoid permanent damage to the product, only operate the tank after it is filled with water.

# COMPONENTS IN THIS PACKAGE



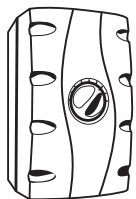
Y-Quick Connector



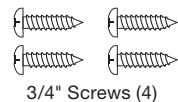
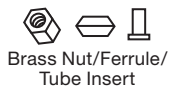
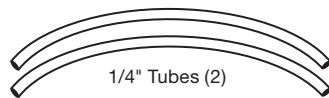
Filter Head



Filter Cartridge



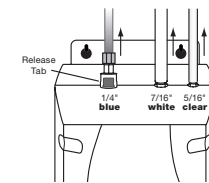
\*(filtration system optional)



If installing **BOTH** new faucet and new tank, skip to page 6.

## IF INSTALLING ONLY NEW FAUCET

**A**



- Turn off water supply.
- Remove tubes from tank: At tank top, depress gray release tab into quick-connect fitting securing **blue** or **copper** 1/4" tube and gently pull line out of fitting. Pull **white** 7/16" tube and **clear** 5/16" tube off fittings.

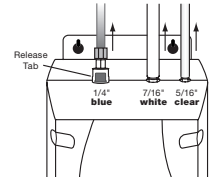
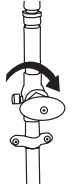
### NOTICE

**Property Damage:** Unplug tank before disconnecting tubing.

- Remove existing faucet and continue to page 6.

## IF INSTALLING ONLY NEW TANK

**A**



- Turn off water supply.
- Remove tubes from tank: At tank top, depress gray release tab into quick-connect fitting securing **blue** tube and gently pull line out of fitting. Pull **white** 7/16" tube and **clear** 5/16" tube off fittings.

### NOTICE

**Property Damage:** Do not pinch or break copper tubing. Do not distort the last 1 inch of tubing.

- Remove existing tank and continue to page 9.

### NOTICE

Do not plug in the power to the hot water tank until Step 6C. To avoid permanent damage to the product, only operate the tank after it is filled with water.



Snap-connect fitting not included. Required when replacing tank manufactured prior to January 2006. Call the AnswerLine® 1-800-558-5700 to order.

To see a tutorial of this installation:

<http://goo.gl/yYrFOA>



**AnswerLine®**  
1-800-558-5700

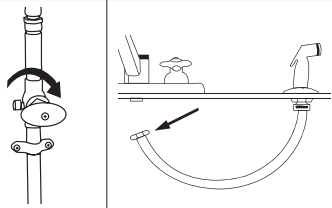
# START HERE

# 1

## PREPARATION

<b>A</b>	<b>Required minimum from center of hole to wall</b> F-HC1100 ..... 2 $\frac{1}{8}$ " F-GN1100 ..... 3 $\frac{1}{4}$ " F-HC2200 ..... 2 $\frac{1}{8}$ " F-GN2200 ..... 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ " F-HC2215 ..... 2 $\frac{1}{8}$ " F-GN2215 ..... 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ " F-HC3300 ..... 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ " F-H3300 ..... 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ "	<input type="checkbox"/> Identify locations for the dispenser faucet, tank and filter. <input type="checkbox"/> Check to make sure there is proper clearance for dispenser handles to be fully opened. <input type="checkbox"/> Check to make sure counter is 3" thick or less. <input type="checkbox"/> Make sure there is a grounded electrical outlet under the sink.
	<b>Maximum counter thickness is 3".</b>	

The wall outlet for your dispenser must have power supplied to it continuously and must be fused. It should not be controlled by the same wall switch that operates your disposer, unless using an InSinkErator SinkTop Switch™.

<b>B</b> 	<input type="checkbox"/> Turn off water supply. <input type="checkbox"/> If using the sink sprayer hose hole, remove nut that connects sprayer hose at bottom of faucet. <input type="checkbox"/> Using adjustable wrench, remove nut connecting sprayer washer flange in sprayer hole. <input type="checkbox"/> Plug hose opening with either a 1/8" plug or a 1/4" cap (not supplied).
	<p>If you have to drill through sink or countertop, you may need to rent or purchase the appropriate tools.</p>

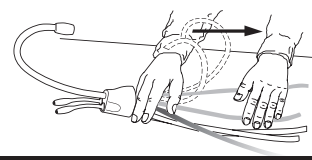
<b>C</b>	<b>Required Hole Size</b> F-HC1100 ..... 1 $\frac{3}{8}$ " - 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ " F-GN1100 ..... 1 $\frac{1}{4}$ " - 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ " F-HC2200 ..... 1 $\frac{3}{8}$ " - 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ " F-GN2200 ..... 1 $\frac{1}{4}$ " - 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ " F-HC2215 ..... 1 $\frac{3}{8}$ " - 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ " F-GN2215 ..... 1 $\frac{1}{4}$ " - 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ " F-HC3300 ..... 1 $\frac{3}{8}$ " - 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ " F-H3300 ..... 1 $\frac{3}{8}$ " - 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ "	<b>What if you don't have a sprayer hole or don't want to use it?</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Many homeowners replace the soap dispenser in their sink with an instant hot water dispenser. <input type="checkbox"/> If drilling a hole into a stainless steel sink or counter top, you can cut a mounting hole for the dispenser with a hole saw for stainless steel, or you can use a hole punch.
	<p>Consult a professional before drilling into a surface other than stainless steel.</p>	

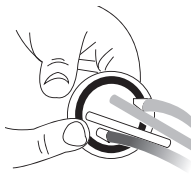


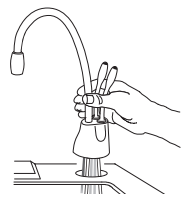
To see a tutorial of this installation:  
<http://goo.gl/yYrfOA>

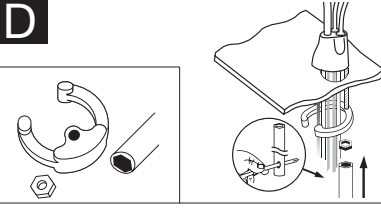
# 2

## INSTALLING THE FAUCET - 1100/2200/2215

<b>A</b> 	<input type="checkbox"/> Unpack dispenser components. <input type="checkbox"/> On a firm, flat surface, carefully straighten the copper tubing.
	<p><b>NOTICE</b></p> <p><b>Property Damage:</b> Do not pinch or break copper tubing. Do not distort the last 1 inch of tubing.</p>

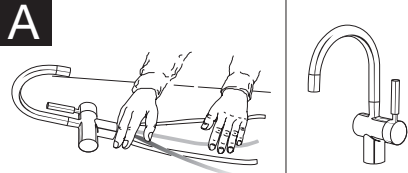
<b>B</b> 	<input type="checkbox"/> Ensure that the black O-ring is properly seated in the base of the dispenser head (the groove on the underside of the dispenser).
	<p>Make sure to use rubber O-ring to ensure proper seal.</p>

<b>C</b> 	<input type="checkbox"/> Feed tubes down through the hole in the sink or countertop until the base is at rest on the sink or countertop surface.
	<p>To ease feeding of tubes through hole, first insert blue tube with quick-connect attachment and then insert the remaining tubes.</p> <p>An assistant may be needed to hold the dispenser head in place while securing the dispenser.</p>

<b>D</b> 	<input type="checkbox"/> From under the sink, place the semi-circular mounting plate onto the threaded stud. <input type="checkbox"/> Place hex nut onto the threaded stud. Ensure faucet head is at desired angle. <input type="checkbox"/> Insert screwdriver into hole on side of hex tool (creating a "T"), and use tool to tighten nut and secure faucet.
	<p>Semi-circular mounting plate should encircle all descending tubes and extend beyond sink hole when tight.</p>



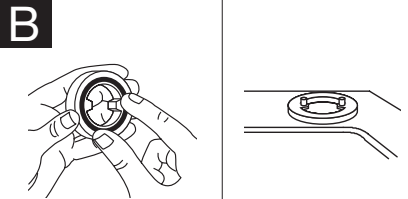
## INSTALLING THE FAUCET - 3300



### NOTICE

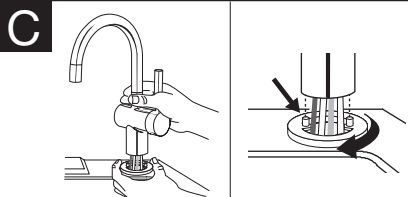
**Property Damage:** Do not pinch or break tubing. Do not distort the last 1 inch of tubing.

- Unpack dispenser components.
  - The recommended installation for this faucet is dispenser handle on the right.
- The unique design allows the handle to be fully functional when placed to the right or left of faucet. Determine preferred handle placement before installing.



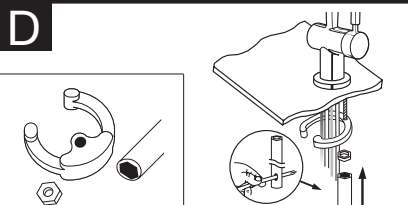
Wetting O-ring with water prior to inserting into brass seat helps hold ring in place during installation.

- Insert rubber O-ring into groove on brass seat.
- Place brass seat, O-ring side down, over hole in sink or countertop.



To ease feeding of tubes through hole, first insert blue tube with quick-connect attachment and then insert the remaining tubes.

- Holding brass seat in place, feed tubes down through the hole in sink or countertop until base touches brass seat.
- Rotate brass seat until the two retaining studs fit into the holes on the faucet base and base sits firmly on brass seat.

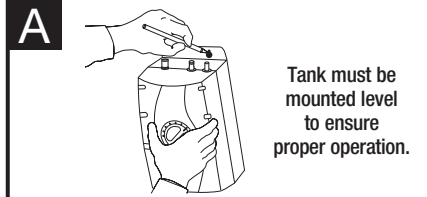


Semi-circular mounting plate should encircle all descending tubes and extend beyond sink hole when tight.

- From under the sink, place the semi-circular mounting plate onto the threaded stud.
- Place hex nut onto the threaded stud. Ensure dispenser handle is on preferred side and that faucet head is at desired angle.
- Insert screwdriver into hole on side of hex tool (creating a "T"), and use tool to tighten nut and secure faucet.

**CAUTION** Do not plug in the hot water tank Until Step 6C.

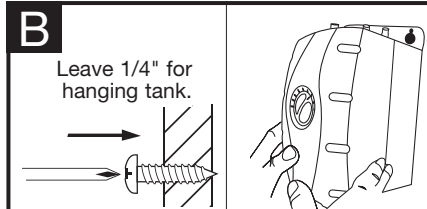
## MOUNTING THE TANK



### NOTICE

**Property Damage:** Tank must be located within 16" of faucet and within 30" or less of a standard grounded outlet. DO NOT extend plumbing or electrical lines.

- Select a spot under the sink to mount tank vertically within reach of both plumbing and electrical connections. The tank should be within 16" or less of faucet water lines and within 30" or less of a standard grounded outlet.
- While holding tank in place on the spot selected for installation, use a pencil to mark locations for 2 hanging screws.

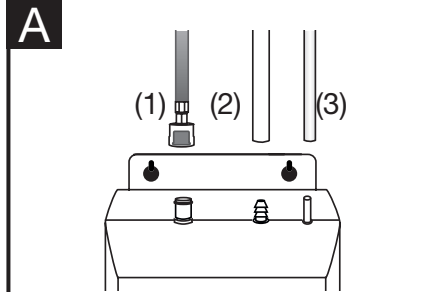


Mount tank vertically in an area that allows clearance on the underside of the tank for drainage, if necessary. DO NOT over tighten screws.

**Screws provided are for use in wood studs or cabinets only. Use wall anchors (not supplied) for installation into drywall.**

- Pre-drill 1/8" pilot holes at marks.
- Turn screws into pre-drilled holes, leaving 1/4" exposed.
- Hang the tank on the screws.
- Tighten the screws with only 1/2 turn clockwise.

## CONNECTING FAUCET TO TANK



### NOTICE

**Property Damage:** Pinched or blocked water lines may cause damage to the dispenser tank. Check to make sure tubes are connected properly and are pushed down as far as possible.

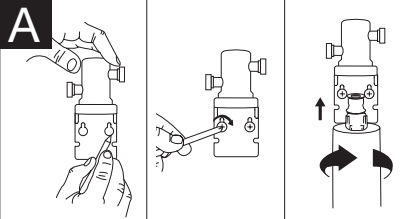
- Without depressing the gray button, place the snap-connect fitting at the end of the **blue** tube onto the left fitting on the tank, pushing until it clicks into place. (1)
- Slip the flexible **white** 7/16" tube over barbed steel fitting and slide down approximately 1/2". (2)
- Slip the **clear** 5/16" tube over the smooth plastic fitting and slide down approximately 1/2". (3)
- Check for pinched or crimped tubes.

Hose clamps are not needed for any of the connections.



To see a tutorial of this installation:  
<http://goo.gl/yYrFOA>

# 5 INSTALLING FILTRATION SYSTEM

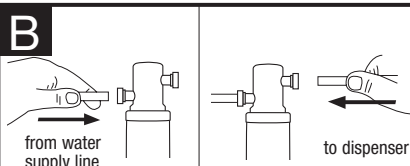


## WARNING

**Personal Injury:** Do not locate filter above an outlet or other electrical device. Install head and bracket so that connections require no stretching, kinking or pinching of tubing.

**Screws provided are for use in wood studs or cabinets only. Use wall anchors (not supplied) for installation into drywall.**

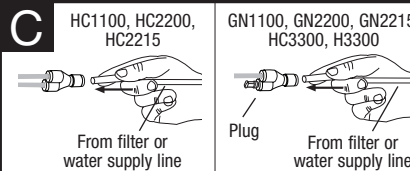
- Separate cartridge from filter head.
- Mark hole locations for filter head and bracket in a spot that allows for filter replacement.
- Drill 1/8" starter holes and attach bracket to wall with wood screws, turning until snug.
- Insert cartridge into filter head. Top surface of cartridge will become flush with bottom of filter head when fully engaged.



## NOTICE

**Property Damage:** Tube runs need to form to the cabinet's contours to allow storage space with no sharp bends. Tubes need clean, perpendicular, burr-free cuts to ensure a true fit.

- Determine length of tubing required, then cut to length making sure the cut is perpendicular and burr-free.
- Insert a **white** 1/4" tube into inlet side of filter head until it stops. **Press in again to ensure a secure fit.**
- Insert the other **white** 1/4" tube into outlet side of filter head until it stops. **Press in again to ensure a secure fit.**

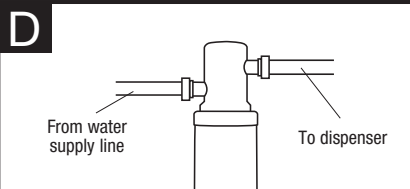


## NOTICE

**Property Damage:** Do not extend the lines farther than the 16" provided. Ensure tube(s) and "Y" connector are securely fit.

- Insert the copper tube(s) from the dispenser into "Y" quick-connector using the plug for hot-only models.
- Connect the **white** 1/4" tube from the right outlet on the filter head into the quick-connect fitting until it stops. **Press in again to ensure a secure fit.**

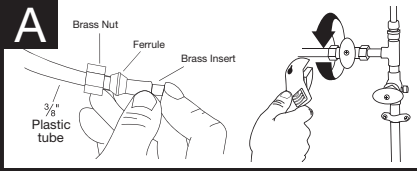
To remove tube(s) or plug from quick-connector, depress the release ring and gently pull away.



It is normal for approximately 2 oz. of water to discharge when filter is removed.

- Connect remaining **white** 1/4" tube to incoming water supply line. (See Step 6.)

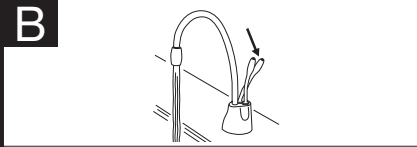
# 6 FINAL WATER CONNECTION



## NOTICE

**Property Damage:** Join remaining tube to cold water supply only.

- Install a T-fitting (*not included*) onto the cold water supply line.
- Install dedicated water control valve with 1/4" compression fitting.
- At the end of the **white** 1/4" tube from the filter or quick-connector, slide the supplied brass nut and ferrule over the tube and then push in the brass tube insert.
- Insert the **white** 1/4" tube into the 1/4" compression fitting and tighten.

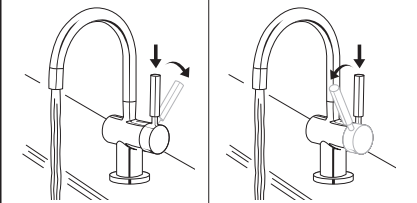


## WARNING

**Scalding Hazard:** The faucet dispenses near-boiling (212°F) water which can instantly cause scalds or burns. Use care when operating this appliance.

- Turn on water supply.
- Open hot water faucet to expel trapped air.
- For the F-1000S and F-1000, flush 2.25 gallons through filter before use (approximately 3 minutes). For the F-2000S and F-2000, flush 3 gallons through filter before use (approximately 4 minutes).

Dispensing Hot Water (HC3300, H3300)      Dispensing Cool Water (HC3300)



## WARNING

**Scalding Hazard:** The faucet dispenses near-boiling (212°F) water which can instantly cause scalds or burns. Use care when operating this appliance.

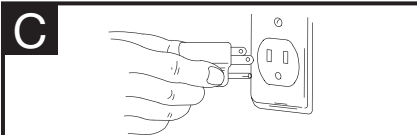
## Operating Instructions for Indulge™ Modern Faucets

Featuring OptiPush™ hot side activation with automatic shut off and cool side Stay-On™, which keeps the faucet open when dispensing cool water.

- HC3300:** To dispense instant hot water, first **press down** on the faucet handle and then push the handle backward in the direction of the red indicator on the top of the handle. To dispense cool water, first **press down** on the faucet handle and then pull the handle forward in the direction of the blue indicator on the handle.
- Note:** Only applies when handle is mounted on left side.

Featuring OptiPush™ hot side activation with automatic shut off.

- H3300:** To dispense instant hot water, first **press down** on the faucet handle and then push the handle backward in the direction of the red indicator on the top of the handle.



## NOTICE

**Property Damage:** A standard grounded outlet within 30" of the dispenser is required under the sink. Do not use an extension cord set with the dispenser.

- Check all connections to ensure they are tight and that there are no leaks.
- Plug in instant hot water tank.

**Water will be cold at first.**

**Allow 12-15 minutes for water to reach target temperature.**

**Gurgling or hissing is normal during the initial heating cycle.**

**If the water coming from the faucet is not hot 15 minutes after the unit has been plugged in – or for other issues related to the operation of your instant hot water dispenser – refer to the "Troubleshooting" section on Page 17.**



To see a tutorial of this installation:  
<http://goo.gl/yYrFOA>



# IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

- Use this water heater only for its intended use as described in this manual.
- This appliance is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of appliance by a person responsible for their safety. Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with hot water tap. To reduce the risk of injury, close supervision is required when an appliance is used near children.
- Do not operate this product if it has been or appears to be damaged in any manner or after the product malfunctions, or is dropped. Return the complete product immediately to your retail dealer for inspection, and if necessary, adjustment or repair.

<b>⚠ WARNING</b>	To reduce the risk associated with choking: Do not allow children under 3 years of age to have access to small parts during the installation of this product.
------------------	---

<b>⚠ WARNING</b>	<b>Electric Shock Hazard:</b> To reduce the risk of electric shock, do not immerse or expose the product, flexible cord or plug to rain, moisture or any liquid or when standing in or on damp or wet surfaces. If any electrical product falls into water, UNPLUG it immediately. DO NOT REACH INTO THE WATER. <b>Important:</b> Prior to reconnecting to the power supply, the product should be inspected by a qualified technician.
------------------	---

<b>⚠ WARNING</b>	<b>Personal Injury/Property Damage:</b> To reduce the risk associated with hazardous voltage due to an installer drilling through existing electric wiring in the area of installation: Do not install near electric wiring which may be in path of a drilling tool when selecting the position to mount the system bracket. Also avoid the risk of drilling into water pipes which may result in property damage.
------------------	---

**Important:** Always arrange the power cord so that it cannot come in contact with hot surfaces.

- Do not disconnect the product from the power supply by pulling on the cord.
- Do not use the product for other than its intended use as described in these instructions. The use of accessory attachments other than those recommended by the manufacturer may cause safety hazards.
- The recommended connection may be made to an existing cold water line with a branch terminating with a shutoff valve, a pressure relief and dual check non-return valve sited adjacent to the product.

<b>⚠ WARNING</b>	<b>Electric Shock Hazard:</b> Using an ungrounded (no earth ground) or improperly connected appliance can result in serious injury or death from electrical shock.
------------------	--

**This appliance must be earthed (grounded).** This steaming hot water tap is equipped with a cord that has a grounding conductor and earth ground pin. The plug must be connected to an appropriate outlet that is properly installed and earthed (grounded) in accordance with all local codes and ordinances. Do not modify the plug provided with the appliance – if it will not fit the outlet, have a proper outlet installed by a qualified electrician. Check with a qualified electrician or tradesman if you are in doubt as to whether the steaming hot water tap is properly earthed (grounded).

<b>⚠ CAUTION</b>	<b>Personal Injury/Property Damage:</b> This tank is a non-pressurized tank. DO NOT modify this system. DO NOT close vent tube or connect other types of taps or valves to the tank. Use only the InSinkErator tap supplied. Use only parts provided. Contact an authorized InSinkErator Service agent for repairs or replacement components.
------------------	---

<b>⚠ WARNING</b>	To reduce the risk associated with the ingestion of contaminants: Do not use with water that is microbiologically unsafe or of unknown quality without adequate disinfection before or after the system.
------------------	--

A steaming hot water tap, like any water heater, has a limited life and will eventually fail. To avoid possible property damage and personal injury, this steaming hot water tap should be regularly examined for leakage and/or corrosion and replaced when necessary. A drain pan, plumbed to an appropriate drain or outfitted with a leak detector, should be used in those applications where any leakage could cause property damage.

<b>⚠ WARNING</b>	<b>Fire Hazard:</b> To minimize possibility of fire, DO NOT store flammable items such as rags, paper or aerosol cans near the tank. DO NOT store or use petrol or other flammable vapors and liquids in the vicinity of this or any other appliance.
------------------	---

<b>⚠ WARNING</b>	<b>Leak Hazard:</b> Regularly inspect dispenser and plumbing fittings for leaks, which can cause property damage and could result in personal injury.
------------------	---

# IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

## NOTICE

**Property Damage:** To reduce the risk associated with property damage due to water leakage or flooding, and to ensure optimal performance:

- Read and follow Use Instructions before installation and use of this system.
- Installation and use MUST comply with all state and local plumbing codes.

### System Requirements (Hot Water Tank, Filtration System and Dispenser):

- The flexible vent and outlet tubes must be correctly connected to the tap supplied by the manufacturer. They must not be obstructed or connected to a normal type tap or any other type.
- Do not install on hot water supply lines. The maximum operating water temperature of this system is 100°F (37.8°C). Attach to cold water supply only.
- Do not install if water pressure exceeds 125 psi (862 kPa). If your water pressure exceeds 80 psi (552 kPa), you must install a pressure limiting valve. Contact a plumbing professional if you are uncertain how to check your water pressure.
- Do not install where water hammer conditions may occur. If water hammer conditions exist you must install a water hammer arrester. Contact a plumbing professional if you are uncertain how to check for this condition.
- Where a backflow prevention device is installed on a water system, a device for controlling pressure due to thermal expansion must be installed.
- Protect from freezing, shut off water supply, remove filter cartridge, drain hot water tank and tubing when temperatures are expected to drop below 40° F (4.4° C); see Seasonal Storage/Drainage section.
- Do not use a torch or other high temperature sources near system, cartridges, plastic fittings or plastic plumbing.
- Do not install near water pipes which will be in path of a drilling tool when selecting the position to mount the bracket.
- Mount system in such a position as to prevent it from being struck by other items used in the area of installation.
- Ensure that the location and fasteners will support the weight of the system when installed and full of water.
- Ensure all tubing and fittings are secure and free of leaks.
- Do not install using rigid piping. System intended for use with plastic water lines (such as PEX tubing, PE tubing, PP tubing).
- Do not install this system if any of the quick connect collets are missing from the filter head or Y-Quick Connector. Contact an authorized InSinkErator Service agent if collets are missing from any fittings.
- For systems using two handle HC model faucets, operate only one handle at a time.
- Important: Do not allow the unit to continuously boil.
- Regularly inspect the system. If there are signs of water leakage, turn off the water supply and contact an authorized InSinkErator Service agent.
- A drain pan, plumbed to an appropriate drain or outfitted with a leak detector, should be used in those applications where any leakage could cause property damage.
- For questions or concerns, please contact an authorized InSinkErator Service agent (see back page for contact information).

### Additional Consideration when Utilizing Filtration System:

- The disposable filter cartridge MUST be replaced every 6 months, at the rated capacity or sooner if a noticeable reduction in flow rate occurs.
- Failure to replace the disposable filter cartridge at recommended intervals may lead to reduced filter performance and cracks in the filter housing, causing water leakage or flooding.
- Protect from freezing, remove filter cartridge when temperatures are expected to drop below 40° F (4.4° C).
- Do not install systems in areas where ambient temperatures may go above 100°F (37.8°C).
- Do not install in direct sunlight or outdoors.

# IN-HOME FULL SERVICE LIMITED WARRANTY

**Dispenser:** 5-year warranty  
**Stainless Steel Tank:** 3-year warranty  
**Filtration System:** 1-year warranty (excluding replaceable filtration cartridge)

This warranty is provided by InSinkErator, a business unit of Emerson Electric Co., ("InSinkErator" or "Manufacturer" or "we" or "our" or "us") to the original consumer owner of the InSinkErator product with which this warranty is provided (the "InSinkErator Product"), and any subsequent owner of the residence in which the Product was originally installed ("Customer" or "you" or "your").

InSinkErator warrants to Customer that your InSinkErator Product will be free from defects in materials and workmanship, subject to the exclusions described below, for the "Warranty Period", commencing on the later of: (a) the date your InSinkErator Product is originally installed, (b) the date of purchase, or (c) the date of manufacture as identified by your InSinkErator Product serial number. You will be required to show written documentation supporting (a) or (b). If you are unable to provide documentation supporting either (a) or (b), the Warranty Period commencement date will be determined by Manufacturer, in its sole and absolute discretion, based upon your InSinkErator Product serial number.

#### What is Covered

This warranty covers defects in materials or workmanship, subject to the exclusions below, in InSinkErator Products used by a consumer Customer for residential use only, and includes all replacement parts and labor costs. YOUR SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDY UNDER THIS LIMITED WARRANTY SHALL BE LIMITED TO REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT OF THE INSINKERATOR PRODUCT.

#### What is not Covered

This limited warranty does not extend to and expressly excludes:

- Losses or damages or the inability to operate your InSinkErator Product resulting from conditions beyond the Manufacturer's control including, without limitation, accident, alteration, misuse, abuse, neglect, negligence (other than Manufacturer's), failure to install, maintain, assemble, or mount the InSinkErator Product in accordance with Manufacturer's instructions or local electrical and plumbing codes.
- Wear and tear expected to occur during the normal course of use, including without limitation, cosmetic rust, scratches, dents or comparable and reasonably expected losses or damages.

In addition to the above exclusions, this warranty does not apply to InSinkErator Products installed in a commercial or industrial application.

#### No Other Express Warranty Applies

This warranty is the sole and exclusive warranty provided to the Customer identified above. No other express warranty, written or verbal, applies. No employee, agent, dealer, or other person is authorized to alter this limited warranty or make any other warranty on behalf of Manufacturer. The terms of this warranty shall not be modified by the Manufacturer, the original owner, or their respective successors or assigns.

#### What we will do to Correct Problems

If your InSinkErator Product does not operate in accordance with the documentation provided to you, or you have questions concerning your InSinkErator Product or how to determine when service is needed, please call the toll free InSinkErator AnswerLine at 1 (800) 558-5700, or visit our website at [www.insinkerator.com](http://www.insinkerator.com). You may also notify us at: InSinkErator Service Center, 4700 21st Street, Racine, Wisconsin 53406 USA.

The following information must be provided as part of your warranty claim: your name, address, phone number, your InSinkErator Product model and serial number, and if necessary, upon request, written confirmation of either: (a) the date shown on your installation receipt, or (b) the date shown on your purchase receipt.

Manufacturer or its authorized service representative will determine, in its sole and absolute discretion, if your InSinkErator Product is covered under this warranty. You will be given the contact information for your closest authorized InSinkErator Service Center. Please contact your InSinkErator Service Center directly to receive in home warranty repair or replacement service. Only an authorized InSinkErator service representative may provide warranty service. InSinkErator is not responsible for warranty claims arising from work performed on your InSinkErator Product by anyone other than an authorized InSinkErator service representative.

If a covered claim is made during the Warranty Period, Manufacturer will, through its authorized service representative, either repair or replace your InSinkErator Product. Cost of replacement parts or a new InSinkErator Product, and cost of labor for repair or installation of the replacement InSinkErator Product are provided at no cost to you. Repair or replacement shall be determined by Manufacturer or its authorized service representative in their sole discretion. All repair and replacement services will be provided to you at your home. If Manufacturer determines that your InSinkErator Product must be replaced rather than repaired, the warranty on the replacement InSinkErator Product will be limited to the unexpired term remaining in the original Warranty Period.

#### Limitation of Liability

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL MANUFACTURER OR ITS AUTHORIZED SERVICE REPRESENTATIVES BE LIABLE FOR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY ECONOMIC LOSS, WHETHER RESULTING FROM NONPERFORMANCE, USE, MISUSE OR INABILITY TO USE THE INSINKERATOR PRODUCT OR THE MANUFACTURER'S OR ITS AUTHORIZED SERVICE REPRESENTATIVE'S NEGLIGENCE. MANUFACTURER SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES CAUSED BY DELAY IN PERFORMANCE AND IN NO EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE CLAIM OR CAUSE OF ACTION (WHETHER BASED IN CONTRACT, INFRINGEMENT, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, OTHER SORT OR OTHERWISE), SHALL MANUFACTURER'S LIABILITY TO YOU EXCEED THE PRICE PAID BY THE ORIGINAL OWNER FOR THE INSINKERATOR PRODUCT.

The term "consequential damages" shall include, but not be limited to, loss of anticipated profits, business interruption, loss of use or revenue, cost of capital or loss or damage to property or equipment.

Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation may not apply to you. This warranty gives you specific legal rights and you may also have other rights which vary from state to state.

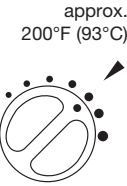
# CARE AND USE

## ⚠ WARNING

**Electric Shock Hazard:** To prevent electrical shock, disconnect power before servicing unit. Use only a properly earthed (grounded) and polarized electric outlet.

## ADJUSTING THE THERMOSTAT

Factory temperature pre-set is 200°F (93°C) (205°F (96°C) for HWT-HP Tank)). **To reset the thermostat to 200°F (93°C) (205°F (96°C) for HWT-HP Tank)), turn the indicator one notch to the right of vertical.** After adjusting, depress the tap handle for 20 seconds for water to re-heat to the new setting.



- To adjust water temperature, turn thermostat dial on the front of the tank clockwise to increase temperature or turn anticlockwise to decrease temperature. Repeat if necessary. All changes should be minimal.

## ⚠ WARNING

**Scalding Hazard:** Do not allow water to boil. May result in severe burns.

## SEASONAL STORAGE/DRAINAGE

Anytime the steaming hot water tap is not used for extended periods of time, unplug and drain unit. If it is below freezing you will need to unplug the unit and drain it.

- Disconnect power from unit (unplug unit).
- Push hot water tap lever and allow water to flow until it is cool.
- Shut the cold water tap off at the valve.
- Disconnect tubes from the tank.
- Unhook tank from wall.
- Hold tank upside down and drain the water into the sink.
- Towel dry any water drippings from tank area.
- Reinstall tank to wall and reconnect tubes.
- Remove and discard filter cartridge, if applicable.
- To put back into working order, install new filter cartridge (if applicable) and turn on cold water supply at valve. Depress the hot water dispenser faucet lever and hold until water flows from the spout. Reconnect the electrical cord.

## CLEANING THE TAP AND TANK

- Only use mild cleaners to clean the tap and plastic components.
- Cleaners with acids, abrasives, alkaline, and organic solvents will result in deterioration of the plastic components and void the warranty.

## FILTER GUIDE AND REPLACEMENT

Replace filter cartridge when there is an obvious decrease in water flow to the tap or if there is an objectionable taste or odor to the water.

When the inlet and outlet ports have been closed and the filter's internal pressure has been relieved, water (about 2oz; 60ml) will discharge from vent line.

If the new filter cartridge cannot be inserted, insert the old one and turn until it stops, remove it and then retry the new cartridge.

The disposable filter cartridge MUST be replaced every 6 months, at the rated capacity or sooner if a noticeable reduction in flow rate occurs.

Filter replacement instructions:

- Replace with an InSinkErator® filter.
- Place pan or dish towel under the filter to catch water drainage during change.
- Slowly turn the cartridge anticlockwise completely until it stops (1/4 turn).
- Pull cartridge straight down and discard.
- Insert new cartridge into filter head.
- Top surface of cartridge will become flush with the bottom of the filter head when fully engaged.
- Turn the cartridge clockwise until it stops (1/4 turn).
- Open tap to expel trapped air.
- Run water for 3 minutes before usage.

## ⚠ CAUTION

### Personal Injury:

- Regularly check for signs of corrosion by examining the appearance of the dispensed water every three (3) months.
- If there is any discoloration or rusty appearance, unplug and drain unit as described in the Seasonal Storage/Drainage section on this page of the manual.
- If the water discoloration remains after draining and refilling unit, discontinue use and contact an authorized InSinkErator service agent.

# FILTRATION INFORMATION

The InSinkErator Instant Hot Water Dispenser Filtration System offers two levels of filtration, depending on the filter used: **F-1000S** is intended for use in filtering particulates, chlorine taste and odor from drinking water, and has not been evaluated for other uses; **F-2000S** reduces particulates, chlorine taste and odor, plus cysts, lead, mercury, asbestos, benzene, atrazine, 2,4-D, Lindane, Carbofuran and p-Dichlorobenzene. The system is typically installed (near or beneath a sink) where filtered drinking water is desired, and must be installed, operated and maintained as specified in the installation and use instructions.

## NOTICE

To reduce the risk associated with property damage due to water leakage or flooding:

- Read and follow Use Instructions provided with the original system before installation and use of this product.

To reduce the risk of water leakage or flooding, and to ensure optimal filter performance:

- Change the disposable filter cartridge every six months or sooner if you observe a noticeable reduction in water flow rate.
- Failure to replace the disposable filter cartridge at recommended intervals may lead to reduced filter performance and cracks in the filter housing, causing water leakage or flooding.
- For systems using two handle HC model faucets, operate only one handle at a time.
- For questions or concerns, please contact Customer Service at 1-800-558-5700.

## WARNING

Do not use with water that is microbiologically unsafe or of unknown quality without adequate disinfection before or after the system.

### F-1000 Cartridge (included with this system) Chemical & Mechanical Reduction Filter Specifications:

This cartridge provides mechanical and chemical reduction of chlorine taste & odor and particulate class III.



Tested & Certified by NSF International against NSF/ANSI Standard 42 in the following InSinkErator Systems Only: GN1100, HC1100, GN2200, HC2200, GN2215, HC2215, H3300 or HC3300 for the reduction of claims specified on the Performance Data Sheet. For systems using two handle HC model faucets, operate only one handle at a time.

Pressure: 30-120 (207-827 kPa) psi  
 Temperature: 33°F - 100°F  
 Flow Rate: 0.75 gpm  
 Capacity: 500 gallons

**Filter Capacity:** 500 gallons, depending on local water conditions. Note that while the testing was performed under standard laboratory conditions, actual performance may vary. Do not use with water that is microbiologically unsafe or of unknown quality without adequate disinfection before or after the system. For cold water use only. Systems must be installed and operated in accordance with the Manufacturer's recommended procedures and guidelines. See warranty card for warranty. For service and parts, contact your local dealer or InSinkErator® directly at 1-800-558-5700.

Contaminant Reduction	Average Influent	Influent Challenge Concentration, Except As Noted, Units Apply to Each Row.	Avg. Product Water	Average % Reduction	NSF Red. Requirements	NSF Test
Chlorine Taste & Odor	2.1 mg/L	2.0 mg/L ± 10%	0.06 mg/L	97.0%	≥ 50%	J-00082587
Nominal Particulate Class III, ≥5 µm to <15 µm	270,000 pts/mL	At least 10,000 particles/mL	82 pts/mL	99.9%	≥85%	J-00119308

**Application guidelines/Water Supply Parameters for NSF Testing:** Service flow of 0.75 gpm, community or private well water supply, water pressure of 20-120 psi (138-827 kPa), water temperature of 33°F-100°F Except as noted, all testing performed at pH = 7.5 ± 0.5, Flow: 0.75 gpm, Pressure: 60 psi, Temp: 20±3°C.

Refer to the Performance Data Sheet for InSinkErator Filter System Model F-2000S  
 Replacement Cartridge: F-2000

Contact an authorized InSinkErator service agent for repairs or replacement components. Replacement filters F-1000 and F-2000 can be ordered by calling 800-558-5700, visiting shop.insinkerator.com, or by contacting an authorized InSinkErator reseller.



Please read Troubleshooting Guide and/or visit [www.insinkerator.com](http://www.insinkerator.com) before calling AnswerLine®

# TROUBLESHOOTING

PROBLEM	POSSIBLE CAUSE	WHAT TO DO
Water and steam spits forcefully from spout without turning on the dispenser faucet.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unit is boiling.</li> </ul> <p><i>May be normal during initial setup.</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Activate faucet lever to release some water from the tank.</li> <li>• Adjust water temperature using dial on tank front.</li> </ul> <p><i>Remember that at higher altitudes, water boils at lower temperatures.</i></p>
Water is not hot.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The unit is unplugged.</li> <li>• The electric outlet is inoperative.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure the unit is connected to a properly grounded electric outlet.</li> <li>• Make sure the circuit breaker or fuses are functioning properly.</li> <li>• Check that the outlet is not switched off.</li> </ul>
Water is too hot or not hot enough.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Thermostat is not adjusted to your needs.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adjust the thermostat slowly, then activate faucet lever for 20 seconds to bring in fresh water to be heated at the new setting. Allow 5-7 minutes for water to reach new temperature.</li> </ul>
Water comes out the vent instead of spout.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Outlet tube is blocked.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check that outlet tube is not kinked, twisted or pinched.</li> <li>• Unscrew spout end piece and clean out any debris.</li> </ul>
Water is dripping from the spout/vent intermittently.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The expansion chamber isn't draining properly due to low water pressure.</li> <li>• The spout is blocked.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unplug the unit. If the dripping doesn't stop after a few minutes, check the supply valve to ensure that is fully open and there are no obstructions in the water line reducing the pressure below 30 psi (i.e., a poorly mounted saddle valve, a clogged water filter, or a partially opened shut-off valve).</li> <li>• Unscrew spout end piece and clean out any debris.</li> </ul>
Water is dripping from the spout/vent constantly.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Debris in the water line may be in the faucet valve seat causing a slow water leak.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unscrew spout end piece and clean out any debris.</li> <li>• Activate faucet lever 7-10 times to flush faucet &amp; lines.</li> </ul>
Divided stream.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Debris in the end piece.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unscrew spout end piece and clean out any debris.</li> </ul>
Water discoloration/rusty appearance.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Corrosion of unit.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unplug and drain unit as described in the Seasonal Storage/Drainage Section on page 15 of this manual. If the water discoloration remains after draining and refilling unit, discontinue use and contact an authorized InSinkErator service agent.</li> </ul>

## FILTRATION ISSUES

Water taste or odor.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Filter needs to be flushed out.</li> <li>• Life of filter has expired.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Activate the faucet lever and run until the water is cold. If there is no change, replace filter cartridge.</li> </ul>
New filter leaks or doesn't fit.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Head and bracket not fully rotated.</li> <li>• Filter O-ring breach.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Remove, inspect, reinstall filter cartridge.</li> <li>• Remove new filter, replace with old filter. Check operation. If OK, reinstall new filter and recheck operation.</li> </ul>
No water flow or low water flow.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Life of filter has expired.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace filter cartridge. <b>See page 15.</b></li> </ul>

If you are still experiencing trouble call the AnswerLine® 1-800-558-5700.



Dispensador de agua caliente instantánea

# Manual del usuario

Instalación, cuidado y uso

Installation, Care & Use

Installation, soin et utilisation

CONTEMPORARY  
ANTIQUE  
TUSCAN  
MODERN

HWT-F1000S  
HWT-HP  
HWT-OO



Para ver un tutorial de esta instalación ingrese a  
<http://goo.gl/yYrFOA>



GN/HC1100  
GN/HC2200  
GN/HC2215  
H/HC3300

Nos complace que haya elegido el dispensador de agua caliente instantánea InSinkErator® para formar parte de su hogar. Con este singular electrodoméstico usted ahorrará tiempo y esfuerzo en su cocina, y disfrutará al descubrir un nuevo uso cada día. Es por eso que millones de personas utilizan hoy en día el dispensador de agua caliente instantánea InSinkErator.

Confiamos en que al aplicar las instrucciones paso por paso, usted estará disfrutando pronto de los beneficios del agua caliente instantánea.

## LO QUE USTED DEBE SABER ANTES DE COMENZAR

- Para su satisfacción y propia seguridad, lea todas las instrucciones, así como los enunciados de precaución y advertencia antes de instalar o de utilizar su dispensador de agua instantánea.
- Esta unidad en particular no está preparada para uso comercial.
- Verifique que todo el cableado y conexiones eléctricas cumplan con las especificaciones de las normas de su localidad.
- El dispensador debe enchufarse en una toma eléctrica estándar de 115 voltios con conexión a tierra ubicada bajo el fregadero.
- Esta toma eléctrica debe tener energía ininterrumpida.
- La toma debe contar con un fusible y no debe ser controlada por el mismo interruptor de pared con el que funciona el dispensador, excepto si usted tiene un interruptor marca SinkTop Switch de InSinkErator®.
- Se recomienda la instalación de una válvula de corte en la línea de agua fría que alimenta de agua al sistema.
- Si usted sospecha niveles elevados de cloro en el agua, o si el agua tiene una apariencia ferrosa antes de instalar esta unidad, se recomienda utilizar nuestro sistema de filtración de agua.  
Este producto contiene acero inoxidable. El fabricante no puede garantizar contra el agua ferrosa debido a la cantidad de factores que están involucrados más allá del control del fabricante. No obstante, la apariencia repentina de agua ferrosa descargada del distribuidor de agua caliente puede indicar la necesidad de servicio o reemplazo de este producto.
- El uso de un filtro de agua NO DEBE causar disminución de la presión por abajo de 30 psi (207 kPa). En caso de ocurrir, esto impedirá el funcionamiento correcto de la unidad.
- Las partes internas del tanque provocan un traqueteo normal.

## LO QUE USTED NECESITA PARA COMENZAR

### Herramientas:

- Taladro
- Conector "T"
- Válvula de control dedicada
- Llave ajustable
- Destornillador Philips
- Lápiz
- Cinta métrica

### Equipo que puede necesitar:

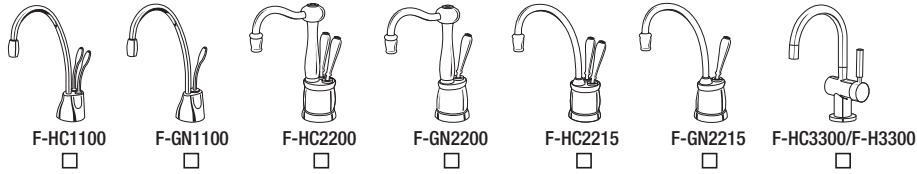
- Tarugos para panel de yeso
- Broca corta-círculos
- Llave para fregadero
- Punzón

Si tiene planeado usar el orificio del rociador del fregadero para el dispensador, es posible que necesite una llave para fregadero y un tapón de 1/8" o 1/4" (**no incluido**) para la manguera del rociador. **Vea el paso 1B.**

Si necesita hacer un orificio para montaje en un fregadero de acero inoxidable, es posible que necesite una broca corta-círculos de 1 1/4" a 1 1/2" para cortar el acero inoxidable o un punzón. Si va a perforar una superficie que no sea de acero inoxidable, solicite los servicios de un profesional.



Identifique el número de modelo de su dispensador y anótelo aquí: \_\_\_\_\_



## CÓMO USAR ESTE MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES

Estas instrucciones están divididas en apartados principales indicados por números, y apartados secundarios indicados por letras mayúsculas. El manual está organizado en esta forma para permitir al usuario hacer una pausa en cualquier momento después de terminar un apartado principal o secundario sin afectar el proceso de instalación.

Lo que usted verá en el manual de instrucciones:

**A** **INSTALACIÓN DEL GRIFO**

- Desempaque los componentes del dispensador.
- Enderece con cuidado el tubo de cobre sobre una superficie firme y plana.

**AVISO**

**Daños materiales:** No apriete ni rompa el tubo de cobre. No deforme la última pulgada (2.5 cm) del extremo del tubo de cobre.

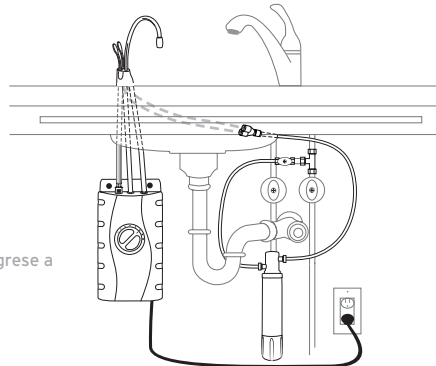
- 1** Describe paso a paso en forma narrativa el proceso de instalación, con cuadros que usted puede ir marcando conforme avanza en la instalación.
- 2** Contiene ilustraciones sencillas como ayuda visual para la narración.
- 3** Mensajes importantes de seguridad a los que debe prestar atención durante la instalación.

**⚠ ADVERTENCIA** Una situación potencialmente peligrosa que si no se evita podría causar la muerte o lesiones graves.

**⚠ PRECAUCIÓN** Una situación potencialmente peligrosa que si no se evita podría causar lesiones menores o moderadas.

**AVISO** Aviso hace referencia a prácticas que no presentan riesgos de generar lesiones personales.

## VISTA GENERAL DE LA INSTALACIÓN TERMINADA

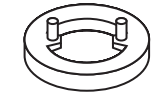


Para ver un tutorial de esta instalación ingrese a <http://goo.gl/yYrfOA>

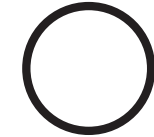
**AVISO**

No conecte la corriente al tanque de agua caliente hasta llegar al paso 6C. Para evitar que el producto se dañe permanentemente, solo opere el tanque después de que esté lleno de agua.

## CONTENIDO DE ESTE PAQUETE



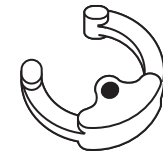
Asiento de bronce (HC3300, H3300)



Anillo "O" de caucho



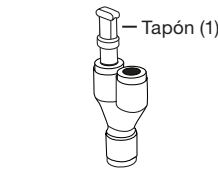
Tuerca hexagonal



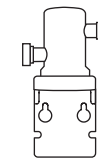
Placa de montaje semicircular



Herramienta hexagonal



Conector rápido con forma de Y



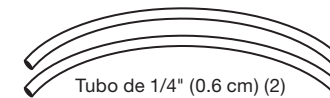
Cabeza del Filtro



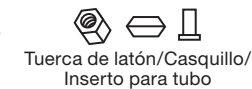
Cartucho de Filtro



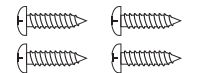
HWT-F1000S  
HWT-HP\*  
HWT-00\*



Tubo de 1/4" (0.6 cm) (2)



Tuerca de latón/Casquillo/  
Inserto para tubo



Tornillos de 3/4" (1.9cm) (4)

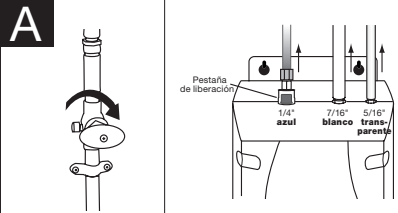
\*(el sistema de filtración es opcional)



El adaptador de encaje a presión no viene incluido. Se necesita para reemplazar los tanques fabricados antes de enero de 2006. Llame a la línea AnswerLine® 1-800-558-5700 para realizar su pedido.

Si va a instalar un grifo nuevo Y un tanque nuevo, pase a la página 23.

## PARA INSTALAR SÓLO UN GRIFO NUEVO

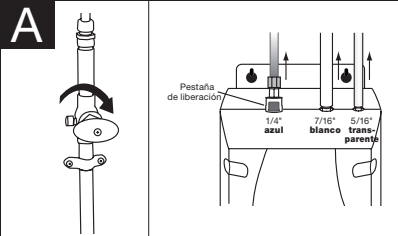


### AVISO

**Daños materiales:** desconecte el tanque antes de desconectar la tubería.

- Cierre la toma del agua.
- Retire los tubos del tanque: en la parte superior del tanque, oprima la pestaña de liberación de color gris en el accesorio de conexión rápida que asegura el tubo **azul** o **de cobre** de 1/4" (0.6 cm) y tire suavemente de la línea para sacarla del accesorio. Saque el tubo **blanco** de 7/16" (1.1 cm) y el **transparente** de 5/16" (0.8 cm) de sus conectores.
- Retire el grifo anterior y continúe con la página 23.

## PARA INSTALAR SÓLO UN TANQUE NUEVO



### AVISO

**Daños materiales:** no apriete ni rompa el tubo de cobre. No deforme la última pulgada (2.5 cm) del extremo de cobre.

- Cierre la toma del agua.
- Retire los tubos del tanque: en la parte superior del tanque, oprima la pestaña de liberación de color gris en el accesorio de conexión rápida que asegura el tubo **azul** y tire suavemente de la línea para sacarla del accesorio. Saque el tubo **blanco** de 7/16" (1.1 cm) y el **transparente** de 5/16" (0.8 cm) de sus conectores.
- Retire el tanque instalado y continúe en la página 26.

### AVISO

No conecte la corriente al tanque de agua caliente hasta llegar al paso 6C. Para evitar que el producto se dañe permanentemente, solo opere el tanque después de que esté lleno de agua.

## COMIENZE AQUÍ

# 1

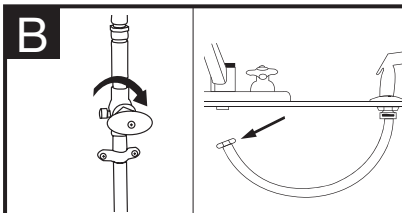
## PREPARACIÓN

Mínimo requerido del centro del orificio a la pared	
F-HC1100 .....	2 <sup>5</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " (7 cm)
F-GN1100 .....	3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " (8 cm)
F-HC2200 .....	2 <sup>5</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " (7 cm)
F-GN2200 .....	3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " (9 cm)
F-HC2215 .....	2 <sup>5</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " (7 cm)
F-GN2215 .....	3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " (9 cm)
F-HC3300 .....	2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " (6 cm)
F-H3300 .....	2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " (6 cm)

**El grosor máximo de la cubierta (profundidad) es de 3 pulgadas (5 cm)**

- Identifique las ubicaciones del grifo, tanque y filtro (si es el caso) del dispensador.
- Compruebe que haya espacio libre suficiente (vea la tabla a la izquierda) para poder abrir las manijas del dispensador.
- Asegúrese de que la cubierta no sea demasiado gruesa (máximo de 3").
- Asegúrese de que haya una toma eléctrica con conexión a tierra debajo del fregadero.

**El tomacorriente de pared para su surtidor debe estar constantemente energizado y protegido con fusibles. No debe estar controlado por el mismo interruptor de pared que opera su triturador de desechos, a menos que use un interruptor InSinkEerator SinkTop Switch™.**



**Si es necesario perforar el fregadero o la cubierta, es posible que tenga que rentar o comprar las herramientas apropiadas.**

- Cierre la toma del agua.
- Si utiliza el orificio de la manguera del rociador, quite la tuerca que conecta la manguera del rociador debajo del grifo.
- Quite con la llave ajustable la pestaña de la arandela del rociador que está en el orificio del rociador.
- Tape la abertura de la manguera con un tapón de 1/8" (0.3 cm) o de 1/4" (0.6 cm) (**no incluido**).

Tamaño requerido del agujero	
F-HC1100 .....	1 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " - 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " (3.5 - 3.8 cm)
F-GN1100 .....	1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " - 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " (3.1 - 3.8 cm)
F-HC2200 .....	1 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " - 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " (3.5 - 3.8 cm)
F-GN2200 .....	1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " - 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " (3.1 - 3.8 cm)
F-HC2215 .....	1 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " - 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " (3.5 - 3.8 cm)
F-GN2215 .....	1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " - 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " (3.1 - 3.8 cm)
F-HC3300 .....	1 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " - 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " (3.5 - 3.8 cm)
F-H3300 .....	1 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " - 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " (3.5 - 3.8 cm)

**Consulte los servicios de un profesional antes de perforar una superficie que no sea de acero inoxidable.**

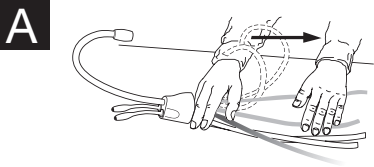
### Si no hay un orificio para rociador o si no lo usa

- Muchas personas colocan un dispensador de agua caliente instantánea en lugar de un dispensador para jabón en el fregadero.
- Si perfora un fregadero de acero inoxidable o una cubierta, puede hacer el orificio de montaje para el dispensador con una broca corta-círculos en el acero, o puede usar un punzón.



Para ver un tutorial de esta instalación ingrese a <http://goo.gl/yYrfoA>

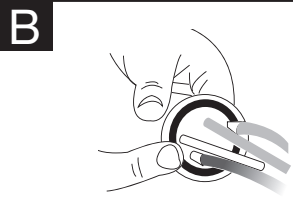
## 2 INSTALACIÓN DEL GRIFO - 1100/2200/2215



### AVISO

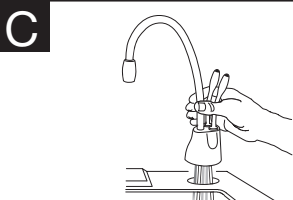
**Daños materiales:** no apriete ni rompa el tubo de cobre. No deforme la última pulgada (2.5 cm) del extremo del tubo de cobre.

- Desempaque los componentes del dispensador.
- Enderece con cuidado el tubo de cobre sobre una superficie firme y plana.



**Asegúrese de usar una junta tórica de caucho para obtener un sellado correcto.**

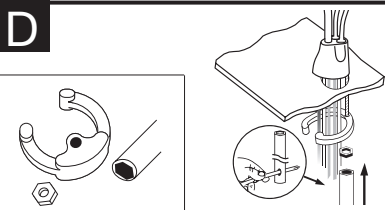
- Compruebe que la junta tórica quede sentada correctamente en la base de la cabeza del dispensador (la ranura en la parte inferior del dispensador).



**Para facilitar el paso de los tubos a través del orificio, inserte primero el tubo azul con el accesorio de conexión rápida y luego coloque los tubos restantes.**

- Inserte los tubos por el orificio en el fregadero o cubierta hasta que el extremo descansa en la superficie del fregadero o cubierta.

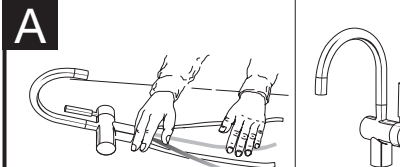
Puede ser necesario un ayudante paravel dispensador mientras se fija en su lugar.



**La placa de montaje semicircular debe circundar todos los tubos que descenden y rebasar el agujero del fregadero cuando esté apretada.**

- Coloque la placa de montaje semicircular en el perno roscado por abajo del fregadero.
- Enrosque la tuerca hexagonal en el perno. Compruebe que la cabeza del grifo quede al ángulo deseado.
- Inserte un destornillador en el orificio de la herramienta hexagonal (para formar una "T"), y apriete la tuerca y fije el grifo con esta herramienta.

## 2 INSTALACIÓN DEL GRIFO - 3300

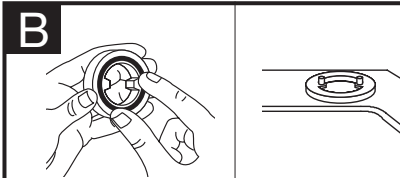


### AVISO

**Daños materiales:** no apriete ni rompa el tubo. No deforme la última pulgada (2.5 cm) del extremo del tubo de cobre.

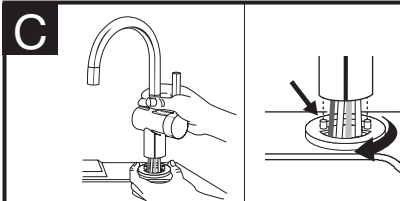
- Desempaque los componentes del dispensador.
- La instalación recomendada para este grifo es con el mango del distribuidor hacia la derecha.

El diseño exclusivo permite que el mango sea completamente funcional cuando se lo instala a la derecha o a la izquierda del grifo. Determine la ubicación preferida del mango antes de la instalación.



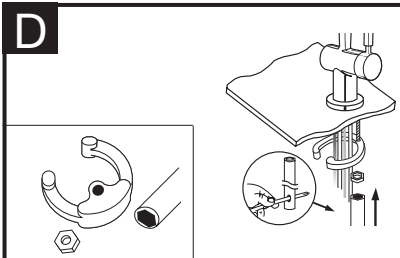
**Humedecer la junta tórica antes de colocarla en el asiento de bronce ayuda a que la junta permanezca en su lugar durante la instalación.**

- Inserte la junta tórica de goma en la ranura del asiento de bronce.
- Coloque el asiento de bronce, con la junta tórica hacia abajo, sobre el orificio del fregadero o la encimera.



**Para facilitar el paso de los tubos a través del orificio, inserte primero el tubo azul con el accesorio de conexión rápida y luego coloque los tubos restantes.**

- Sujete el asiento de bronce en su lugar, coloque los tubos a través del orificio del fregadero o la encimera hasta que la base haga contacto con el asiento de bronce.
- Gire el asiento de bronce hasta que ambos pernos de retención calcen en los orificios de la base del grifo y la base se asiente firmemente en el asiento de bronce.



**La placa de montaje semicircular debe circundar todos los tubos que descenden y rebasar el agujero del fregadero cuando esté apretada.**

- Coloque la placa de montaje semicircular en el perno roscado por abajo del fregadero.
- Coloque la tuerca hexagonal en el perno roscado. Asegúrese de que el mango del distribuidor esté del lado correcto y la cabeza del grifo esté en el ángulo deseado.
- Inserte un destornillador en el orificio de la herramienta hexagonal (para formar una "T"), y apriete la tuerca y fije el grifo con esta herramienta.

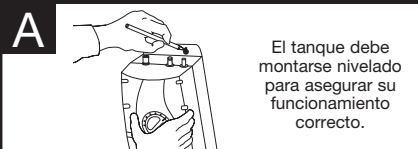


Para ver un tutorial de esta instalación ingrese a <http://goo.gl/yYrFOA>

**PRECAUCIÓN** No conecte el tanque de agua caliente hasta que llegue al paso 6C.

3

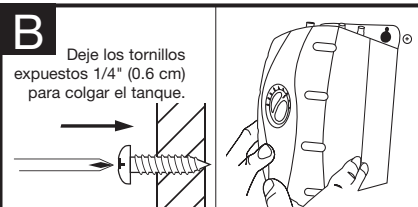
## MONTAJE DEL TANQUE



### AVISO

**Daños materiales:** el tanque debe estar colocado dentro de una distancia de 16" (40 cm) del grifo y a 30" (75 cm) o menos de una toma eléctrica estándar con conexión a tierra. **NO EXTIENDA** las líneas de plomería y eléctricas.

- Seleccione un punto debajo del fregadero para montar el tanque verticalmente al alcance de las conexiones de plomería y eléctricas. El tanque debe estar a una distancia máxima de 16" (40 cm) del grifo y a una distancia máxima de 30" (75 cm) de una toma eléctrica estándar con conexión a tierra.
- Sostenga el tanque en el punto seleccionado para instalarlo y marque con un lápiz los lugares para colocar dos tornillos para colgarlo.



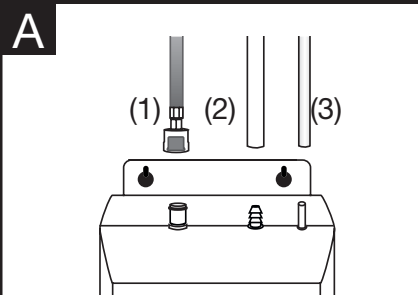
Monte el tanque verticalmente en un lugar que permita tener un espacio libre abajo para drenarlo si es necesario. **NO APRIETE** los tornillos excesivamente.

**Los tornillos incluidos sólo deben usarse en montantes de madera o gabinetes. Para instalarse en paneles de yeso utilice tarugos (no incluidos).**

- Haga orificios guía de 1/8" (0.3 cm) en las marcas.
- Inserte los tornillos en los orificios guía y deje 1/4" (0.6 cm) de tornillo expuesto.
- Cuelgue el tanque en los tornillos.
- Apriete los tornillos media vuelta.

4

## CONEXIÓN DEL GRIFO EN EL TANQUE



### AVISO

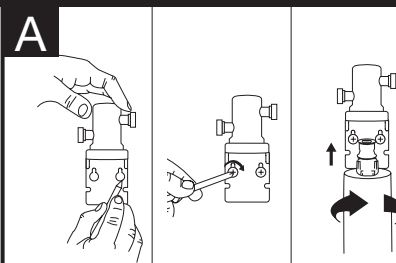
**Daños materiales:** las líneas de agua estrechas o bloqueadas pueden dañar al tanque. Asegúrese de que los tubos estén conectados correctamente y se hayan medido tanto como sea posible.

- Inserte el conector de inserción del tubo **azul** en el conector rápido (izquierda) del tanque. (1)
- Inserte el tubo **blanco** flexible de 7/16" (1.1 cm) en el conector escalonado del centro y deslícelo aproximadamente 1/2" (1.3 cm). (2)
- Inserte el tubo **transparente** de 5/16" (0.8 cm) en el conector liso de la derecha y deslícelo aproximadamente 1/2" (1.3 cm). (3)
- Revise visualmente para que los tubos no queden aplastados ni torcidos.

Las abrazaderas de manguera no son necesarias para cualquiera de las conexiones.

5

## INSTALACIÓN DEL FILTRO

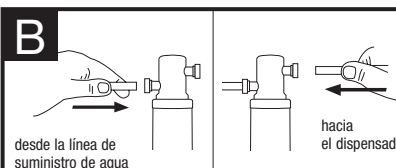


### ADVERTENCIA

**Lesiones personales:** no coloque el filtro por encima de una toma eléctrica o de otro aparato. Instale la cabeza y el soporte de tal forma que no sea necesario estirar, torcer o estrechar la tubería.

**Los tornillos incluidos sólo deben usarse en montantes de madera o gabinetes. Para instalarse en paneles de yeso utilice tarugos (no incluidos).**

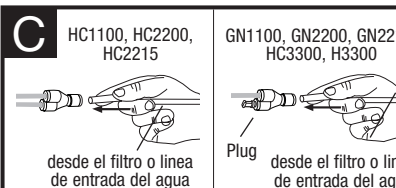
- Separe el cartucho de la cabeza del filtro.
- Marque la ubicación de los orificios para la cabeza y el soporte en un lugar que permita cambiar el filtro.
- Haga orificios guía de 1/8" (0.3 cm), fije el soporte en la pared con tornillos de madera y gire éstos hasta que queden apretados.
- Introduzca el nuevo cartucho en la cabeza del filtro. La superficie superior del cartucho quedará rasante con el fondo de la cabeza del filtro cuando esté completamente encajado.



### AVISO

**Daños materiales:** los tramos de tubo necesitan tener el mismo contorno del gabinete para dejar espacio de almacenamiento sin curvas pronunciadas. Los cortes de los tubos deben ser limpios, perpendiculares y no tener rebabas para garantizar una conexión correcta.

- Determine la longitud requerida del tubo y corte el tubo en forma perpendicular y sin dejar rebabas.
- Inserte un tubo **blanco** de 1/4" (0.6 cm) en el lado de entrada de la cabeza del filtro hasta que tope. **Oprima una vez más para asegurar una conexión correcta.**
- Inserte el otro tubo **blanco** de 1/4" (0.6 cm) en el lado de salida de la cabeza del filtro hasta que tope. **Oprima una vez más para asegurar una conexión correcta.**

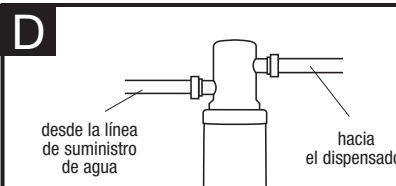


### AVISO

**Daños materiales:** no estire las líneas a más de las 16" (40 cm) proporcionadas. Verifique que el (los) tubo(s) y el conector en "Y" estén bien ajustados.

- Inserte el (los) tubo(s) de cobre del dispensador en el conector rápido en "Y" y utilice el tapón para los modelos que solo suministran agua caliente.
- Conecte el tubo **blanco** de 1/4" (0.6 cm) de la salida del lado derecho en la cabeza del filtro en el conector rápido hasta que tope. **Oprima una vez más para asegurar una conexión correcta.**

Para quitar el tubo de cada conector rápido, oprima el anillo de liberación y saque el tubo con cuidado.



La descarga de agua de aproximadamente 2 oz. (60 ml) es normal, cuando el filtro es retirado.

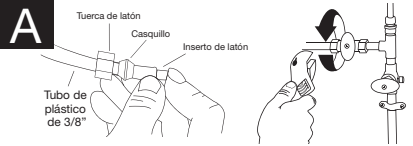
- Conecte el tubo restante **blanco** de 1/4" (0.6 cm) a la línea de suministro de agua de entrada. (Vea el paso 6)



Para ver un tutorial de esta instalación ingrese a <http://goo.gl/yYrfOA>



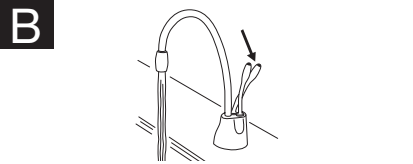
## CONEXIÓN FINAL DEL AGUA



### AVISO

**Daños materiales:** conecte el tubo restante al agua fría de entrada solamente.

- Instale una "T" (*no incluido*) en la línea de agua fría.
- Instale la válvula de control de agua dedicada con el accesorio de compresión de 1/4" (0.6 cm).
- En el extremo del tubo **blanco** de 1/4" (0.6 cm) que sale del conector rápido, deslice la tuerca de latón y el casquillo y luego coloque el inserto para tubo.
- Inserte el tubo **blanco** de 1/4" (0.6 cm) en la conexión de compresión de 1/4" (0.6 cm) y apriete.

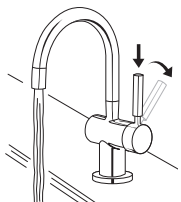


### ⚠ ADVERTENCIA

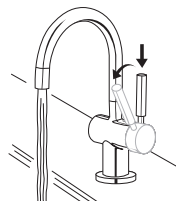
**Riesgo de quemadura:** la llave entrega agua casi en ebullición (212 °F) la cual puede producir quemaduras instantáneas. Tenga cuidado cuando opere este equipo.

- Abra el suministro de agua.
- Abra el grifo de agua caliente para expulsar el aire contenido.
- Para los modelos F-1000S y F-1000, haga correr 2,25 galones por el filtro antes de utilizarlos (durante aproximadamente 3 minutos). Para los modelos F-2000S y F-2000, haga correr 3 galones por el filtro antes de utilizarlos (durante aproximadamente 4 minutos).

Distribución de agua caliente (HC3300, H3300)



Distribución de agua fría (HC3300)



### ⚠ ADVERTENCIA

**Riesgo de quemadura:** la llave entrega agua casi en ebullición (212 °F) la cual puede producir quemaduras instantáneas. Tenga cuidado cuando opere este equipo.

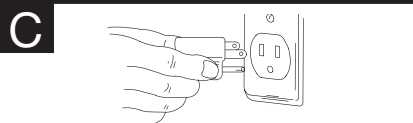
### Instrucciones de operación para los grifos modernos Indulge™

Con el sistema OptiPush™ de activación de agua caliente con cierre automático y sistema de activación de agua fría Stay-On™, que mantiene el grifo abierto cuando se utiliza agua fría.

- HC3300:** para utilizar agua caliente instantánea, primero presione hacia abajo la manija del grifo y luego oprima la manija hacia atrás en el sentido del indicador rojo que se encuentra en la parte superior de la manija. Para utilizar agua fría, primero presione la manija del grifo hacia abajo y luego empuje la manija hacia adelante en el sentido del indicador azul que se encuentra en la manija. **Nota:** Solo aplica cuando la manija está instalada en el lado izquierdo.

Con el sistema Optipush™ de activación de agua caliente con cierre automático.

- H3300:** para utilizar agua caliente instantánea, primero presione hacia abajo la manija del grifo y luego empuje la manija hacia atrás en el sentido del indicador rojo que se encuentra en la parte superior de la manija.



### AVISO

**Daños materiales:** es necesario tener una toma eléctrica estándar con conexión a tierra a una distancia de 30" (75 cm) debajo del fregadero. No utilice extensiones eléctricas con el dispensador.

- Revise todas las conexiones para asegurarse de que estén apretadas y que no presenten fugas.
- Enchufe el tanque de agua caliente.

**El agua saldrá fría en un principio.**

**Espere entre 12 y 15 minutos para que el agua se caliente a la temperatura indicada.**

**Durante el ciclo inicial de calentamiento es normal escuchar gorgoteos y siseos.**

Si el agua que viene del grifo no es caliente 15 minutos después de que se ha enchufado la unidad (o para otras ediciones relacionadas con la operación de su dispensador inmediato de la agua caliente) consulte a la sección de "localización de averías" en la página 34.

## INFORMACIÓN IMPORTANTE PARA SU SEGURIDAD

- Utilice el calentador de agua solo según su uso previsto, como se describe en este manual.
- Este artefacto no está diseñado para que lo usen personas (incluidos niños) con capacidades físicas, sensoriales o mentales disminuidas, o con falta de experiencia y conocimiento, a menos que una persona responsable de su seguridad les haya brindado supervisión o instrucciones con respecto al uso del artefacto. Se debe supervisar a los niños para garantizar que no jueguen con el dispensador de agua caliente. Para reducir el riesgo de lesiones, se requiere estrecha supervisión cuando se usa un artefacto cerca de niños.
- No opere este producto si está dañado o si parece tener algún daño o si presenta fallas o se cae. Envíe de regreso el producto completo de inmediato a su distribuidor para que lo inspeccione y, si es necesario, lo ajuste y repare.

### ⚠ ADVERTENCIA

Para reducir el riesgo de asfixia: No permita que los niños menores de 3 años accedan a piezas pequeñas durante la instalación de este producto.

### ⚠ ADVERTENCIA

**Riesgo de descarga eléctrica:** A fin de reducir el riesgo de descarga eléctrica, no sumerja ni exponga el producto, ni el cable flexible ni el enchufe a la lluvia, la humedad ni a ningún líquido ni se pare en charcos o superficies húmedas. Si cualquier producto eléctrico cae al agua, **DESCONÉCTELO** de inmediato. **NO SE INTRODUZCA EN EL AGUA.** **Importante:** Antes de volver a conectar la fuente de alimentación, un técnico calificado debe inspeccionar el producto.

### ⚠ ADVERTENCIA

**Lesiones personales y daños materiales:** Para reducir el riesgo de tensión peligrosa debido a que el instalador perforó el cableado eléctrico en el área de la instalación: No realice la instalación cerca de cableado eléctrico que pueda estar en la trayectoria del taladro cuando seleccione la ubicación de montaje del soporte del sistema.

También evite el riesgo de taladrar tuberías de agua, pues podría causar daños materiales.

**Importante:** Siempre ubique el cable de alimentación donde no pueda entrar en contacto con superficies calientes.

- No desconecte el producto de la fuente de alimentación halando el cable.
- No utilice el producto con fines diferentes a su uso previsto, según como se describe en estas instrucciones. Si a los accesorios se les da un uso diferente al recomendado por el fabricante, podrán presentarse riesgos para la seguridad.
- La conexión recomendada se puede realizar a una línea de agua fría que ya esté instalada con una derivación que termine con una válvula de cierre, una válvula de alivio de presión y una válvula doble antirretorno localizadas junto al producto.

### ⚠ ADVERTENCIA

**Riesgo de descarga eléctrica:** Utilizar un aparato conectado incorrectamente o sin conexión a tierra (ninguna puesta a tierra), puede ocasionar lesiones graves o incluso la muerte por descarga eléctrica.

**Este aparato debe tener conexión a tierra.** Este dispensador de agua caliente está equipado con un cordón que tiene un conductor a tierra y una espiga puesta a tierra. El enchufe debe estar conectado a un tomacorriente apropiado que esté instalado correctamente y con conexión a tierra de acuerdo con todos los reglamentos y códigos locales. No cambie el enchufe que viene con el aparato. Si no coincide con el tipo de tomacorriente, pídale a un electricista calificado que instale un tomacorriente adecuado. Consulte con un electricista calificado o al comerciante si tiene dudas sobre la conexión a tierra adecuada del dispensador de agua caliente.

### ⚠ PRECAUCIÓN

**Lesiones personales y daños materiales:** Este tanque no es presurizado. **NO** modifique este sistema. **NO** cierre el tubo de ventilación ni conecte otro tipo de dispensadores o válvulas al tanque. Use sólo el dispensador InSinkErator suministrado. Use sólo las piezas suministradas. Comuníquese con un agente de servicio InSinkErator autorizado para reparar o reemplazar los componentes.

### ⚠ ADVERTENCIA

Para reducir el riesgo de ingestión de contaminantes: No use el producto con agua que sea microbiológicamente insegura o de dudosa calidad sin realizar una desinfección adecuada antes o después de utilizar el sistema.

Un dispensador de agua caliente, como cualquier calentador de agua, tiene una vida limitada y eventualmente fallará. Para evitar posibles daños materiales o lesiones personales, este dispensador de agua caliente debe ser regularmente examinado por fugas y reemplazado cuando sea necesario. Se recomienda instalar un depósito de desagüe conectado a un desagüe adecuado o equipado con un detector de fugas en aquellos usos en los que las fugas puedan causar daños materiales.

### ⚠ ADVERTENCIA

**Riesgo de incendio:** Para disminuir las posibilidades de que se produzca un incendio, **NO** guarde productos inflamables, tales como trapos, papel o aerosol enlatados, cerca del tanque. **NO** almacene ni utilice petróleo u otros vapores y líquidos inflamables cerca de este u otros dispositivos.

### ⚠ ADVERTENCIA

**Riesgo de fugas:** Revise periódicamente el dispensador y los acoples de plomería para ver si hay fugas que puedan ocasionar daños materiales y provocar lesiones personales.

## AVISO

**Daños materiales:** Para reducir el riesgo relacionado con daños materiales por fugas y desbordes de agua y para garantizar un funcionamiento óptimo:

- Lea y siga las Instrucciones de uso antes de instalar y utilizar este sistema.
- La instalación y el uso DEBEN cumplir con todos los códigos estatales y locales de plomería.

### Requisitos del sistema (tanque de agua caliente, sistema de filtración y dispensador):

- Los tubos flexibles de ventilación y de salida se deben conectar de forma correcta al dispensador que proporcione el fabricante. No deben tener obstrucciones ni deben conectarse a un dispensador normal ni de otro tipo.
- No instale el sistema en líneas de suministro de agua caliente. La temperatura máxima del agua de operación de este sistema es de 100 °F (37,8 °C). Fijelo solamente a un suministro de agua fría.
- No instale el sistema si la presión del agua supera los 125 psi (862 kPa). Si la presión del agua supera los 80 psi (552 kPa), debe instalar una válvula reductora de presión. Comuníquese con un plomero profesional si no está seguro sobre cómo revisar la presión del agua.
- No instale en lugares donde se puedan presentar condiciones de golpe de ariete. Si se dan estas condiciones, debe instalar un protector para golpe de ariete. Comuníquese con un plomero profesional si no está seguro sobre cómo verificar esta condición.
- Donde se instale un dispositivo de prevención del contraflujo en un sistema de agua, también se debe instalar un dispositivo para el control de la presión debido a la dilatación térmica.
- Proteja la unidad del congelamiento, cierre el suministro de agua, retire el cartucho de filtro, drene el tanque de agua caliente y la tubería cuando prevea que las temperaturas descenderán por debajo de los 40 °F (4,4 °C); consulte la sección Almacenamiento/ Drenado de temporada.
- No utilice antorchas ni otras fuentes de temperatura elevada cerca del sistema, los cartuchos, los acoples plásticos o la tubería plástica.
- No realice la instalación cerca de tuberías de agua que estén en la trayectoria del taladro cuando seleccione la ubicación de montaje del soporte.
- Instale el sistema en un lugar donde se evite que sea golpeado por otros objetos utilizados en el área de instalación.
- Cerciórese de que el lugar y los sujetadores soporten el peso del sistema cuando esté instalado y lleno de agua.
- Asegúrese de que toda la tubería y los acoples estén sujetos con firmeza y que no tengan fugas.
- No realice la instalación con tubería rígida. El sistema es para utilizarlo con líneas plásticas de agua (como tubería PEX, PE, PP).
- No instale este sistema si falta alguno de los collares de conexión rápida en el cabezal del filtro o el conector rápido en Y. Llame a un agente de servicio autorizado de InSinkErator si faltan los collares de cualquiera de los acoples.
- En los sistemas que utilizan grifos modelo HC de dos manijas, opere solo una manija a la vez.
- Importante: No permita que la unidad hierva el agua de forma continua.
- Inspeccione el sistema con regularidad. Si hay señales de fugas de agua, cierre el suministro de agua y comuníquese con un agente de servicio autorizado de InSinkErator.
- Se recomienda instalar un depósito de desagué conectado a un desagué adecuado o equipado con un detector de fugas en aquellos usos en los que las fugas puedan causar daños materiales.
- Si tiene preguntas o inquietudes, comuníquese con un agente de servicio autorizado de InSinkErator (en el reverso de la página encontrará la información de contacto).

### Consideraciones adicionales cuando utilice el sistema de filtro:

- El cartucho desechable del filtro se DEBE reemplazar cada 6 meses, según la capacidad asignada o antes si se presenta una reducción evidente del caudal de flujo.
- Si no se reemplaza el cartucho desechable según la frecuencia recomendada, se podrá ver reducido el funcionamiento de filtro y podrán producirse grietas en la caja del filtro, lo que causará fugas y desbordes de agua.
- Proteja el filtro del congelamiento; retire el cartucho del filtro cuando se prevea que las temperaturas pueden descender por debajo de los 40 °F (4,4 °C).
- No instale el sistema en áreas donde la temperatura ambiente pueda superar los 110 °F (43,3 °C).
- No realice la instalación en la luz directa del sol o en exteriores.

<b>Dispensador:</b>	<b>5 años de garantía</b>
<b>Tanques de acero inoxidable:</b>	<b>3 años de garantía</b>
<b>Sistema de Filtración:</b>	<b>1 año de garantía</b> (excluyendo el cartucho del filtro reemplazable)

Esta es una garantía que InSinkErator, una unidad comercial de Emerson Electric Co., (“InSinkErator”, “Fabricante”, “nosotros”, “nos” o “nuestro”) brinda al cliente original propietario del producto InSinkErator (el “Producto InSinkErator”) y a cualquier otro propietario posterior de la residencia en la que se instaló originalmente el Producto (“Cliente”, “usted” o “su”).

InSinkErator le garantiza al Cliente que su Producto InSinkErator no tendrá defectos en el material o la mano de obra, sujetos a las exclusiones descritas a continuación, durante el “Período de garantía”, que comienza luego de: (a) la fecha en la que se instaló originalmente su Producto InSinkErator, (b) la fecha de compra o (c) la fecha de fabricación indicada por el número de serie de su Producto InSinkErator. Deberá presentar la documentación escrita correspondiente para justificar (a) o (b). En caso de que no pueda presentar la documentación para justificar (a) o (b), la fecha de inicio del Período de Garantía quedará a consideración del Fabricante, bajo su único y absoluto criterio, basado en el número de serie del Producto InSinkErator.

### Qué cubre la garantía

Esta garantía cubre los defectos en el material o la mano de obra, sujetos a las exclusiones descritas a continuación, en lo que respecta a los Productos InSinkErator a los que el Cliente confiera un uso doméstico únicamente, e incluye todas las piezas de repuesto y los gastos de reparación. SU ÚNICO Y EXCLUSIVO RECURSO SEGÚN LOS TÉRMINOS DE ESTA GARANTÍA LIMITADA SERÁ LA REPARACIÓN O EL REEMPLAZO DEL PRODUCTO INSINKERATOR.

### Qué no cubre la garantía

Esta garantía limitada no se extiende y excluye expresamente lo siguiente:

- Pérdidas, daños o incapacidad de operar el Producto InSinkErator, como resultado de circunstancias fuera del control del Fabricante, sin limitaciones, tales como: accidente, alteración, mal uso, abuso, abandono, negligencia (de otra persona que no sea el Fabricante), instalación, mantenimiento, ensamble o montaje inadecuados del Producto InSinkErator que no respeten las instrucciones del Fabricante o los códigos eléctricos y/o de plomería locales.
- Desgaste como resultado del uso normal del producto, lo que incluye sin limitaciones, oxidación de la superficie, rayones, abolladuras o pérdidas o daños similares y razonables.

Además de las exclusiones antes descritas, esta garantía no se aplica en caso de que los Productos InSinkErator se instalen para fines industriales o comerciales.

### No se aplica ninguna otra garantía expresa

Esta es la única y exclusiva garantía que se le brinda al Cliente descrito anteriormente. No se aplica ninguna otra garantía expresa, oral o escrita. No se autoriza a ningún empleado, agente, distribuidor u otra persona a alterar esta garantía limitada o a brindar cualquier otra garantía en nombre del Fabricante. Ninguna persona podrá modificar los términos de esta garantía, independientemente de si se trata del Fabricante, el propietario original o sus respectivos sucesores o beneficiarios.

### Qué haremos para solucionar los problemas

Si su Producto InSinkErator no funciona de acuerdo con la documentación que usted recibió, o si tiene dudas acerca de su Producto InSinkErator o no sabe cómo determinar cuándo necesita servicio técnico, comuníquese con la línea de ayuda gratuita InSinkErator AnswerLine al 1 (800) 558-5700 o bien, visite nuestra página web en [www.insinkerator.com](http://www.insinkerator.com). También puede escribirnos a: Centro de Servicio InSinkErator, 4700 21st Street, Racine, Wisconsin, 53406, EE. UU.

En el reclamo de garantía debe especificar la siguiente información: su nombre, dirección, número de teléfono, modelo y número de serie de su Producto InSinkErator y, si es necesario o si se lo solicitan, una confirmación por escrito de: (a) la fecha que figura en su recibo de instalación, o (b) la fecha que figura en su recibo de compra.

El Fabricante o el representante de servicio autorizado determinarán, bajo su único y absoluto criterio, si esta garantía cubre su Producto InSinkErator. Se le proporcionará la información de contacto del Centro de Servicio Autorizado de InSinkErator más cercano. Comuníquese directamente con dicho centro para recibir servicios de reparación o reemplazo cubiertos por la garantía en su hogar. El representante de servicio autorizado de InSinkErator es el único capaz de brindarle el servicio de garantía. InSinkErator no se hace responsable por los reclamos de garantía que surjan como consecuencia de trabajos realizados en su Producto InSinkErator por cualquier otra persona que no sea el representante de servicio autorizado de InSinkErator.

Si un reclamo cubierto se realiza durante el Período de Garantía, el Fabricante reparará o reemplazará su Producto InSinkErator por intermedio de su representante de servicio autorizado. Usted no deberá afrontar el costo de las piezas de repuesto o de un nuevo Producto InSinkErator, ni el costo de mano de obra para la reparación o instalación del Producto InSinkErator de reemplazo. El Fabricante o su representante de servicio autorizado, bajo su exclusivo criterio, determinarán si es necesaria la reparación o el reemplazo del producto. Recibirá todos los servicios de reparación o reemplazo en su hogar. Si el Fabricante determina que se debe reemplazar su Producto InSinkErator en vez de repararlo, la garantía del Producto InSinkErator de reemplazo se limitará al plazo vigente de la garantía original.

### Limitación de responsabilidad

EN LA MEDIDA EN QUE LO PERMITA LA LEY, EL FABRICANTE O SUS REPRESENTANTES DE SERVICIO AUTORIZADOS NO SERÁN RESPONSABLES POR DAÑOS INCIDENTALES, ESPECIALES, INDIRECTOS O CONSECUENTES, TALES COMO DAÑOS PATRIMONIALES, YA SEA QUE SEAN CONSECUENCIA DEL INCUMPLIMIENTO, USO, MAL USO O INCAPACIDAD DE USAR EL PRODUCTO INSINKERATOR, O DE LA NEGLIGENCIA DEL FABRICANTE O SUS REPRESENTANTES DE SERVICIO AUTORIZADOS. EL FABRICANTE NO SERÁ RESPONSABLE POR LOS DAÑOS CAUSADOS POR EL RETRASO EN EL RENDIMIENTO Y EN NINGÚN CASO, SIN IMPORTAR EL TIPO DE RECLAMO O LAS MEDIDAS IMPLEMENTADAS (AUNQUE SE BASEN EN EL CONTRATO, UNA CONTRAVENCIÓN, LA NEGLIGENCIA, LA RESPONSABILIDAD ESTRICTA, OTRO AGRAVIO, ETC.), SU RESPONSABILIDAD EXCEDERÁ EL PRECIO QUE EL PROPIETARIO ORIGINAL HAYA PAGADO POR EL PRODUCTO INSINKERATOR.

El término “daños consecuentes” debe incluir, entre otros, la pérdida de ganancias anticipadas, la interrupción de los negocios, la falta de uso o ingresos, el costo del capital, o la pérdida o daño a la propiedad o al equipo.

Algunos estados prohíben la exclusión o limitación de los daños incidentales o consecuentes, de modo que estas limitaciones pueden no aplicarse en su caso. Esta garantía le otorga derechos legales específicos y también puede tener otros derechos que varían según el estado.

## CUIDADO Y USO

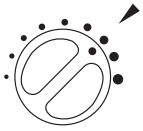
### ⚠️ ADVERTENCIA

**Riesgo de descarga eléctrica:** Para prevenir descargas eléctricas, desconecte la corriente eléctrica antes de reparar la unidad. Utilice solamente un tomacorriente eléctrico debidamente polarizado y con conexión a tierra (puesta a tierra).

### AJUSTE DEL TERMOSTATO

La temperatura preestablecida de fábrica es 200°F (93°C) (205°F (96°C) para el tanque HWT-HP). Para restablecer el termostato en 200°F (93°C) (205°F (96°C) del tanque HWT-HP), gire el indicador un poco a la derecha del vertical. Después de ajustar, presione la perilla del dispensador durante 20 segundos para que el agua se vuelva a calentar según el nuevo ajuste.

aprox. 93°C  
(200°F)



- Para ajustar la temperatura del agua, gire el dial del termostato en el frente del depósito en sentido horario para incrementar la temperatura o gire en sentido antihorario para disminuir la temperatura. Repita si es necesario. Todos los cambios deben ser mínimos.

### ⚠️ ADVERTENCIA

**Riesgo de escaldado:** No deje que el agua hierva. Ello podría ocasionar quemaduras graves.

### ALMACENAMIENTO TEMPORAL/DRENAJE

Cada vez que el dispensador de agua caliente no se utilice por períodos prolongados, desenchufe y drene la unidad. Si la temperatura está por debajo de los cero grados, deberá desenchufar la unidad y drenarla.

- Desconecte la energía de la unidad (desconecte la unidad).
- Empuje la palanca del dispensador de agua caliente y deje que el agua fluya hasta que esté fría.
- Cierre el dispensador de agua fría en la válvula.
- Desconecte los tubos del depósito.
- Desenganche el depósito de la pared.
- Sostenga el depósito volteado hacia abajo y drene el agua dentro del fregadero.
- Seque con una toalla los restos de agua del área del depósito.
- Reinstale el depósito en la pared y reconecte los tubos.
- Retire y deseche el cartucho del filtro, si corresponde.
- Para colocar nuevamente en perfecto funcionamiento la unidad, instale el nuevo cartucho del filtro (si corresponde) y abra el suministro de agua fría en la válvula. Pulse la palanca del grifo del dispensador de agua caliente y manténgala así hasta que el flujo de agua salga por el surtidor. Reconecte el cable de alimentación eléctrico.

### LIMPIEZA DEL DISPENSADOR Y DEL DEPÓSITO

- Utilice sólo limpiadores suaves para limpiar el dispensador y los componentes plásticos.
- Los limpiadores con ácidos, abrasivos, solventes alcalinos y orgánicos dañan los componentes plásticos y anulan la garantía.

### GUÍA DE FILTRO Y REEMPLAZO

Reemplace el cartucho del filtro cuando haya una disminución evidente en el flujo de agua del dispensador o si hay un sabor u olor desagradable en el agua.

Una vez que haya cerrado los orificios de entrada y salida, y que la presión interna del filtro haya disminuido, el agua (cerca de 60 ml [2 onzas]) fluirá desde la tubería de ventilación.

Si no se puede colocar el nuevo cartucho del filtro, introduzca el anterior y gírelo hasta que se asiente, a continuación, retírelo y vuelva a insertar el cartucho nuevo.

El cartucho desechable del filtro se DEBE reemplazar cada 6 meses, según la capacidad asignada o antes si se presenta una reducción evidente del caudal de flujo.

Instrucciones para reemplazo de filtro:

- Reemplace con un filtro InSinkErator®.
- Coloque una cacerola o un secador de platos debajo del filtro para contener el drenaje del agua durante el cambio.
- Gire lentamente el cartucho en sentido antihorario completamente hasta que se detenga (1/4 de giro).
- Jale del cartucho en línea recta y hacia abajo, y deséchelo.
- Introduzca el nuevo cartucho en la cabeza del filtro.
- Cuando el cartucho esté completamente encajado, la superficie superior de éste quedará a ras de la parte inferior de la cabeza del filtro.
- Gire el cartucho en sentido horario hasta que se detenga (1/4 de giro).
- Abra el dispensador para expulsar el aire contenido.
- Deje correr el agua durante 3 minutos antes de usarla.

### ⚠️ PRECAUCIÓN

#### Lesiones personales:

- Verifique cada tres (3) meses que no haya señales de corrosión en el aspecto del agua que sale del dispensador.
- Si hay decoloración o un aspecto ferroso, desconecte y drene la unidad tal como se describe en la sección Almacenamiento/Drenado de temporada en esta página del manual.
- Si persiste la coloración del agua luego de drenar y llenar la unidad, suspenda el uso y comuníquese con un agente de servicio autorizado de InSinkErator.

## INFORMACIÓN DE LA FILTRACIÓN

Los sistemas de filtración InSinkErator para dispensadores de agua caliente instantánea ofrecen dos niveles de filtración, dependiendo del filtro que se utilice: **F-1000S** sirve para filtrar material particulado, y el sabor y olor a cloro del agua potable, y no se han evaluado otros usos; **F-2000S** reduce el material particulado, el sabor y olor a cloro, así como quistes bacterianos, plomo, mercurio, asbestos, benceno, atrazina, 2,4-D, lindano, carbofurano y p-diclorobenceno. Por lo general, el sistema se instala (cerca o debajo de un fregadero) donde se desee obtener agua potable filtrada y se debe instalar, operar y mantener de acuerdo las instrucciones de instalación y uso.

### AVISO

Para reducir el riesgo de daños materiales debido a fugas o desbordamientos de agua:

- Lea y siga las Instrucciones de uso que vienen con el sistema original antes de instalar y utilizar este producto.

Para reducir el riesgo de fugas y desbordamientos de agua y para garantizar un funcionamiento óptimo del filtro:

- Cambie el cartucho desechable del filtro cada seis meses o antes si observa una reducción evidente del caudal de flujo.
- Si no se reemplaza el cartucho desechable según la frecuencia recomendada, se podrá ver reducido el funcionamiento de filtro y podrán producirse grietas en la caja del filtro, lo que causará fugas y desbordamientos de agua.
- En los sistemas que utilizan grifos modelo HC de dos manijas, opere solo una manija a la vez.
- Si tiene preguntas o inquietudes, comuníquese con Servicio al Cliente al 1-800-558-5700.

### ⚠️ ADVERTENCIA

No lo use con agua que sea microbiológicamente insegura o de calidad desconocida sin previamente asegurarse de la desinfección adecuada antes o después de que esa agua pase por el sistema.

#### Especificaciones del filtro de reducción química y mecánica F-1000:

(Use el cartucho de sustitución F-1000) Este cartucho proporciona reducción química y mecánica del sabor y olor a cloro y de material particulado de clase III.



Probado y certificado por NSF International en relación con la norma 42 de NSF/ANSI solamente en los siguientes sistemas InSinkErator: GN1100, HC1100, GN2200, HC2200, GN2215, HC2215, H3300 ó HC3300 para la reducción de las afirmaciones que se indican en la ficha de datos de funcionamiento. En los sistemas que utilizan grifos modelo HC de dos manijas, opere solo una manija a la vez.

Presión: 30-120 (207-827 kPa) psi  
Temperatura: 33°F - 100°F  
Caudal: 0.75 gpm  
Capacidad: 500 gallons

**Capacidad del filtro:** 500 galones, dependiendo de las condiciones locales del agua. Tenga en cuenta que las pruebas se efectuaron en condiciones estándar de laboratorio; el rendimiento real puede variar. No emplee el producto con agua que no sea segura microbiológicamente o cuya calidad se desconozca sin una desinfección adecuada anterior o posterior al sistema. Sólo debe utilizarse con agua fría. Los sistemas deben instalarse y utilizarse según los procedimientos y pautas recomendados por el fabricante. Para la garantía, consulte la tarjeta de garantía. Para reparaciones y piezas, comuníquese con su distribuidor local o directamente con InSinkErator® al 1-800-558-5700.

Reducción de contaminantes	Flujo entrante promedio	Concentración Del Desafío Del Influent. Excepto según lo observado, las unidades se aplican a cada fila.	Agua promedio del producto	Reducción media	Requisitos de la reducción del NSF	Prueba NSF
Sabor y olor a cloro	2.1 mg/L	2.0 mg/L ± 10%	0.06 mg/L	97.0%	≥ 50%	J-00082587
Material particulado nominal clase III, <math>5 \mu\text{m}</math> a <math>15 \mu\text{m}</math>	270,000 pts/mL	Al menos 10,000 partículas/mL	82 pts/mL	99.9%	≥ 85%	J-00119308

**Pautas de aplicación y parámetros del suministro de agua para las pruebas NSF:** Caudal de servicio de 0.75 gpm, suministro de agua comunitario o de pozo privado, presión del agua entre 20 y 120 psi (138-827 kPa), temperatura del agua entre 33°F y 100°F. Excepto donde se indique lo contrario, todas las pruebas se efectuaron con pH = 7.5 ± 0.5, Caudal: 0.75 gpm, Presión: 60 psi, Temp: 20° ± 3°C.

Consulte la ficha de datos de funcionamiento del sistema de filtro modelo F-2000S de InSinkErator. Cartucho de repuesto: F-2000

Comuníquese con un agente de Servicio InSinkErator autorizado para reparar o reemplazar los componentes. Filtros de repuesto Puede solicitar los modelos F-1000 y F-2000 llamando al 800-558-5700, ingresando a [shop.insinkerator.com](http://shop.insinkerator.com), o contactando uno de los distribuidores autorizados de InSinkErator.





Por favor lea la Guía de Solución de Problemas y/o visite el sitio [www.insinkerator.com](http://www.insinkerator.com) antes de llamar al AnswerLine®

## IDENTIFICACIÓN Y SOLUCIÓN DE PROBLEMAS

PROBLEMA	CAUSA POSIBLE	SOLUCIÓN
El agua y el vapor salen forzosamente por el grifo sin abrir la manija del dispensador.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>El agua de la unidad está hirviendo.</li> </ul> <p><i>Puede ser durante el ajuste inicial.</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active la palanca del grifo para que salga agua del tanque.</li> <li>Ajuste la temperatura del agua con el indicador que está en frente del tanque.</li> </ul> <p><i>Recuerde que a mayor altitud, el agua hierve a menor temperatura</i></p>
El agua no está caliente.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Posiblemente la unidad no está enchufada.</li> <li>La toma eléctrica no funciona.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Verifique que la unidad esté enchufada en una toma eléctrica conectada a tierra correctamente.</li> <li>Asegúrese de que el interruptor de circuito o los fusibles funcionen correctamente.</li> <li>Compruebe que la corriente de la toma eléctrica no esté interrumpida.</li> </ul>
El agua está demasiado caliente o no está suficientemente caliente.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>El termostato no está ajustado como usted lo necesita.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ajuste el termostato lentamente y luego active la manija del grifo durante 20 segundos para que entre agua fría y se caliente a la nueva temperatura ajustada. Espere entre cinco y siete minutos para que el agua se caliente a la nueva temperatura.</li> </ul>
El agua sale por el orificio de purga y no por la llave.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>El tubo de salida está bloqueado.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Revise que el tubo de salida no esté torcido o estrechado.</li> <li>Desatorille la pieza del extremo del grifo y quite cualquier residuo depositado.</li> </ul>
El agua gotea por la llave u orificio de purga intermitentemente.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>La cavidad de expansión no está drenando correctamente debido a una presión baja del agua.</li> <li>El grifo está bloqueado.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Desenchufe la unidad. Si el goteo no cesa después de algunos minutos, revise la válvula de suministro para verificar que esté completamente abierta y que no haya obstrucciones en la tubería de agua que causen reducción de la presión por abajo de 30 psi (<i>por ejemplo, la válvula de asiento mal instalada, el filtro de agua tapado o la válvula de cierre parcialmente abierta</i>).</li> </ul>
El agua gotea por la llave u orificio de purga constantemente.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Los residuos en la línea de agua pueden estar en la válvula del grifo y causan una salida lenta del agua.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Desatorille la pieza del extremo del grifo y quite cualquier residuo depositado.</li> <li>Active la manija del grifo de 7 a 10 veces para limpiar el grifo.</li> </ul>
Corriente dividida.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Residuos en las líneas del grifo.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Desatorille la pieza del extremo del grifo y quite cualquier residuo depositado.</li> </ul>
Decoloración del agua/ apariencia ferrosa.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Corrosión de la unidad.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Desconecte y drene la unidad tal como se describe en la sección Almacenamiento/Drenado de temporada en la página 32 de este manual. Si la decoloración del agua permanece después de drenar y rellenar la unidad, descontinúe el uso y póngase en contacto con un agente de servicio autorizado por InSinkEerator.</li> </ul>

### PROBLEMAS DE FILTRACIÓN

El agua tiene sabor u olor.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>El filtro necesita limpieza.</li> <li>El filtro necesita cambiarse.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active el grifo y deje salir el agua hasta que esté fría.</li> </ul>
El nuevo filtro tiene fuga o no ajusta.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>La cabeza y el soporte no están girados completamente.</li> <li>Separación entre el filtro y la junta tórica</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Si no hay cambio, reemplace el cartucho del filtro.</li> <li>Retire, revise, reinstale el cartucho del filtro.</li> </ul>
El agua no fluye o fluye muy poco.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>El filtro necesita cambiarse.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reemplace el cartucho del filtro. Vea la página 32.</li> </ul>

Si los problemas continúan, visite [www.insinkerator.com](http://www.insinkerator.com) o solicite ayuda en la línea AnswerLine® en el número 1-800-558-5700.



CONTEMPORARY  
ANTIQUÉ  
TUSCAN  
MODERN

Distributeur d'eau chaude instantanée

## Manuel d'utilisation

Installation, soin et utilisation

Installation, Care & Use

Instalacion, cuidado & uso



Pour voir un tutoriel de cette installation  
<http://goo.gl/yYrFOA>



**EMERSON**  
Commercial & Residential Solutions

GN/HC1100  
GN/HC2200  
GN/HC2215  
H/HC3300

Nous sommes très heureux que vous ayez choisi d'utiliser chez vous le distributeur d'eau chaude instantanée InSinkErator®. Cet appareil unique vous permettra d'économiser du temps et vous évitera des efforts dans la cuisine. Et vous découvrirez avec joie chaque jour de nouveaux usages pour cet appareil. C'est la raison pour laquelle des millions de personnes utilisent un distributeur d'eau chaude instantanée InSinkErator.

Nous sommes persuadés qu'en suivant nos instructions étape par étape, vous profiterez sans tarder des avantages de l'eau chaude instantanée.

## CE QUE VOUS DEVEZ SAVOIR AVANT DE COMMENCER

- Pour votre satisfaction et votre sécurité, lisez bien toutes les instructions, mises en garde et avertissements avant d'installer ou d'utiliser ce distributeur d'eau chaude instantanée
- Cette unité particulière n'est pas destinée à un usage commercial.
- Assurez-vous que tous les raccordements et le câblage électrique sont conformes aux codes locaux.
- Une prise électrique avec prise de terre de 115 volts ordinaire est nécessaire sous l'évier pour l'alimentation électrique du distributeur.
- La prise murale alimentant votre distributeur doit avoir du courant d'une façon continue.
- Cette prise doit être dotée d'un fusible et ne doit pas être contrôlée par le même interrupteur mural que celui qui fait fonctionner le broyeur, à moins que vous n'ayez un commutateur SinkTop Switch™ de InSinkErator®.
- Il est recommandé d'installer un robinet de réglage spécialisé sur le conduit d'eau froide fournissant l'eau au système.
- Si vous croyez avoir des niveaux élevés de chlore dans votre eau ou si votre eau semble rouillée avant l'installation de cette unité, il est recommandé d'utiliser un système de filtration d'eau.  
Ce produit contient de l'acier inoxydable. Le fabricant n'offre pas de garantie contre l'eau rouillée à cause des nombreux facteurs impliqués qui sont hors de son contrôle. Cependant, l'apparition subite d'une eau rouillée provenant du distributeur d'eau chaude peut indiquer le besoin d'une réparation ou du remplacement de ce produit.
- L'utilisation d'un filtre à eau ne devrait PAS entraîner une baisse de pression d'eau en dessous de 30 psi (207 kPa). Si c'est le cas, ceci empêchera votre appareil de fonctionner convenablement.
- Les pièces mobiles à l'intérieur du réservoir peuvent causer un son de crécelle. Ceci est normal.

## CE DONT VOUS AVEZ BESOIN POUR COMMENCER

### Équipement nécessaire :

- Perceuse
- Raccord en T
- Robinet de réglage spécialisé
- Clé anglaise
- Tournevis cruciforme
- Crayon
- Ruban à mesurer

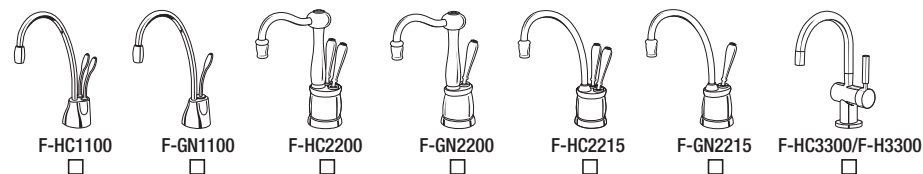
### Équipement dont vous pourriez avoir besoin :

- Ancrages pour mur sec
- Scie cylindrique
- Clé de robinet à montée
- Emporte-pièce

Si vous avez l'intention d'utiliser le trou de l'arroseur dans votre évier pour votre distributeur, vous pourrez avoir besoin d'une clé de robinet à montée et d'un bouchon de 3 mm ou d'un chapeau de 6 mm (non fournis) pour le conduit de boyau d'arroseur du robinet. **Reportez-vous à l'étape 1B.**

Si vous devez découper un trou de montage dans votre évier en acier inoxydable, vous pourrez avoir besoin d'une scie cylindrique de 3,2 - 3,8 cm pour découper l'acier inoxydable ou d'un emporte-pièce. Consultez un professionnel si vous percez dans une surface autre que l'acier inoxydable.

Identifiez le numéro de modèle de votre distributeur d'eau chaude instantanée et inscrivez-le ici : \_\_\_\_\_



## COMMENT UTILISER CE MANUEL D'UTILISATION

Ces instructions sont divisées en chapitres principaux, indiqués par des numéros et des sous-chapitres, indiqués par des lettres en majuscule. Le manuel est configuré ainsi pour vous permettre de faire une pause à n'importe quel point, une fois un chapitre ou un sous-chapitre terminé sans affecter le processus d'installation.

Ce que vous verrez dans le manuel d'utilisation :

### INSTALLATION DU ROBINET

**A**

**AVIS**

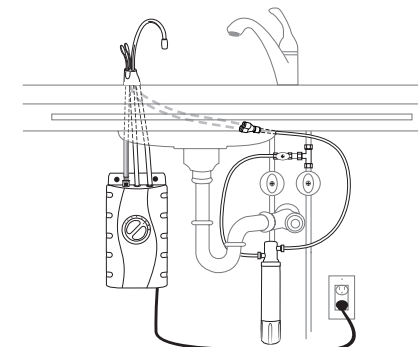
Dompage matériel : ne pincez pas ou ne brisez pas les tubes en cuivre. Ne déformez pas les trois derniers centimètres du tube.

- Déballiez les composantes du distributeur.
- Sur une surface plane et ferme, redressez soigneusement le tube de cuivre.

- 1** Fournit une description narrative étape par étape de l'installation, avec cases à cocher pouvant être marquées au fur et à mesure que vous progressez dans l'installation.
- 2** Contient des illustrations très simples qui fournissent des instructions visuelles pour appuyer le texte.
- 3** Messages de sécurité importants qui requièrent votre attention durant l'étape.

<b>▲ AVERTISSEMENT</b>	Une situation potentiellement dangereuse qui, si elle n'est pas évitée, pourrait entraîner la mort ou des blessures graves.
<b>▲ MISE EN GARDE</b>	Une situation potentiellement dangereuse qui, si elle n'est pas évitée, pourrait entraîner des blessures mineures ou modérées.
<b>AVIS</b>	Avis est utilisé pour décrire des pratiques qui ne sont pas liées à des blessures.

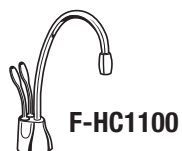
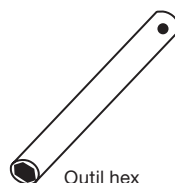
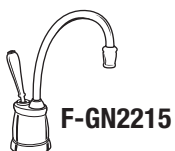
## VUE GÉNÉRALE D'UNE CONFIGURATION TERMINÉE



Pour voir un tutoriel de cette installation  
<http://goo.gl/yYrFOA>

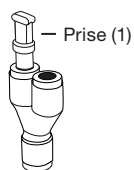
<b>AVIS</b>	Ne branchez pas l'alimentation du réservoir d'eau chaude avant l'étape 6C. Pour éviter tout dommage permanent au produit, ne faites fonctionner le réservoir que lorsqu'il est rempli d'eau.
-------------	--

## DANS CET EMBALLAGE

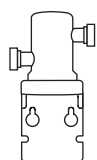


Plaque de montage semi-circulaire

Outil hex



Connecteur rapide en Y



Tête de filtre

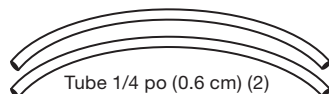


Cartouche de filtre



HWT-F1000S  
HWT-HP\*  
HWT-00\*

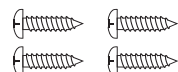
\*(système de filtration en option)



Tube 1/4 po (0.6 cm) (2)



Écrou en laiton/  
Virole/Insertion de tube

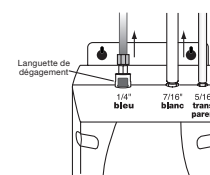


Vis 3/4 po (1.9cm) (4)

Si vous installez un nouveau robinet ET un nouveau réservoir, passez à la page 40.

### SI VOUS INSTALLEZ SEULEMENT UN NOUVEAU ROBINET

A



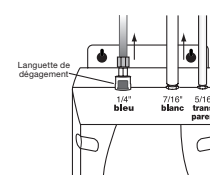
- Fermez l'approvisionnement en eau.
- Retirez les tubes du réservoir : sur le dessus du réservoir, enfoncez la languette de dégagement grise dans le raccord rapide fixant le tube **bleu** ou en **cuivre** de 1/4 po (0.6 cm) et tirez délicatement le conduit hors du raccord. Tirez le tube **blanc** de 7/16 po (1.1 cm) et le tube **transparent** de 5/16 po (0.8 cm) hors des raccords.
- Retirez le robinet existant et passez à la page 40.

AVIS

**Domage matériel : débranchez le réservoir avant de débrancher les tubes.**

### SI VOUS INSTALLEZ SEULEMENT UN NOUVEAU RÉSERVOIR

A



- Fermez l'approvisionnement en eau.
- Retirez les tubes du réservoir : sur le dessus du réservoir, enfoncez la languette de dégagement grise dans le raccord rapide fixant le tube **bleu** et tirez délicatement le conduit hors du raccord. Tirez le tube **blanc** de 7/16 po (1.1 cm) et le tube **transparent** de 5/16 po (0.8 cm) hors des raccords.
- Retirez le réservoir existant et passez à la page 43.

AVIS

**Domage matériel : ne pincez pas ou ne brisez pas les tubes en cuivre. Ne déformez pas les trois derniers centimètres du tube.**

AVIS

Ne branchez pas l'alimentation du réservoir d'eau chaude avant l'étape 6C. Pour éviter tout dommage permanent au produit, ne faites fonctionner le réservoir que lorsqu'il est rempli d'eau.

Pour voir un tutoriel de cette installation

<http://goo.gl/yYrf0A>



Le raccord à enclenchement n'est pas compris. Requis lors du remplacement du réservoir fabriqué avant janvier 2006. Appelez la ligne AnswerLine® au 1-800-58-5700 pour commander.

**AnswerLine®**  
1-800-558-5700

# COMMENCEZ ICI

# 1

## PRÉPARATION

### A

Minimum requis depuis le centre du trou jusqu'au mur

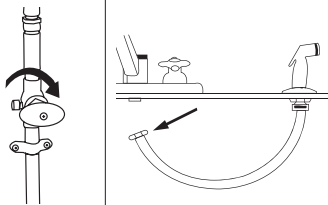
F-HC1100 .....	7 cm
F-GN1100 .....	8 cm
F-HC2200 .....	7 cm
F-GN2200 .....	9 cm
F-HC2215 .....	7 cm
F-GN2215 .....	9 cm
F-HC3300 .....	6 cm
F-H3300 .....	6 cm

L'épaisseur maximale du comptoir est de 76 mm.

- Identifiez les emplacements pour le robinet du distributeur, le réservoir et le filtre (le cas échéant).
- Vérifiez s'il y a un dégagement suffisant pour que les poignées du distributeur puissent être ouvertes complètement.
- Vérifiez que le comptoir ne mesure pas plus de 3 po (7.6 cm).
- Assurez-vous qu'il y ait une prise mise à la terre sous l'évier.

**La prise murale utilisée pour votre distributeur doit être constamment alimentée et avoir un fusible. Elle ne doit pas être commandée par le même interrupteur qui active votre broyeur à déchets, à moins d'utiliser un InSinkErator SinkTop Switch™.**

### B



Si vous devez percer à travers l'évier ou le comptoir, il vous faudra louer ou acheter les outils appropriés.

- Fermez l'approvisionnement en eau.
- Si vous utilisez le trou de boyau pour l'arroseur de l'évier, retirez l'écrou qui raccorde le boyau de l'arroseur au fond du robinet.
- À l'aide d'une clé à mollette, retirez l'écrou raccordant la bride de rondelle d'arroseur dans le trou de l'arroseur.
- Bouchez l'ouverture du boyau à l'aide d'un bouchon de 1/8 po (0.3 cm) ou un chapeau de 1/4 po (0.6 cm) (non fournis).

### C

Taille requise du trou

F-HC1100 .....	3.5 - 3.8 cm
F-GN1100 .....	3.5 - 3.8 cm
F-HC2200 .....	3.5 - 3.8 cm
F-GN2200 .....	3.5 - 3.8 cm
F-HC2215 .....	3.5 - 3.8 cm
F-GN2215 .....	3.5 - 3.8 cm
F-HC3300 .....	3.5 - 3.8 cm
F-H3300 .....	3.5 - 3.8 cm

Que faire si vous n'avez pas de trou d'arroseur ou que vous ne voulez pas l'utiliser?

- De nombreux propriétaires remplacent le distributeur à savon de leur évier par un distributeur d'eau chaude instantanée.
- Si vous percez un trou dans un évier ou le dessus du comptoir dans un évier en acier inoxydable ou le dessus du comptoir, vous pouvez découper un trou de montage pour le distributeur à l'aide d'une scie cylindrique pour acier inoxydable, ou vous pouvez utiliser un emporte-pièce.

Consultez un professionnel avant de percer dans une surface autre que de l'acier inoxydable.

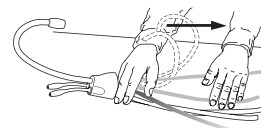


Pour voir un tutoriel de cette installation  
<http://goo.gl/yYrFOA>

# 2

## INSTALLATION DU ROBINET - 1100/2200/2215

### A

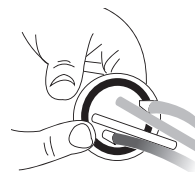


- Déballez les composantes du distributeur.
- Sur une surface plane et ferme, edressez soigneusement le tube de cuivre.

**AVIS**

**Domage matériel : ne pincez pas ou ne brisez pas les tubes de cuivre. Ne déformez pas les trois derniers centimètres du tube.**

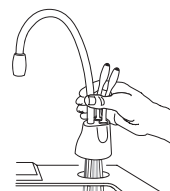
### B



- Vérifiez si le joint torique noir est correctement appuyé dans la base de la tête du distributeur (la rainure étant en dessous du distributeur).

Utilisez un joint torique en caoutchouc pour assurer une étanchéité adéquate.

### C

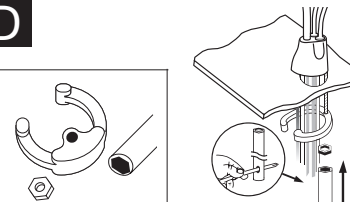


- Faites passer les tubes vers le bas à travers le trou dans l'évier ou le dessus de comptoir jusqu'à ce que la base repose sur l'évier ou sur la surface du dessus de comptoir.

Pour faire passer les tubes plus facilement par le trou, insérer d'abord le tube bleu avec l'attache de connexion rapide, puis insérer les autres tubes.

Un assistant peut être nécessaire pour tenir la tête du distributeur en place lors de la fixation du distributeur.

### D



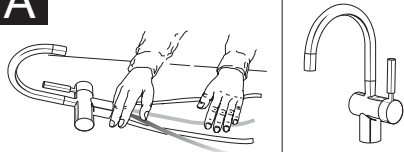
- À partir du dessous de l'évier, placez la plaque de montage semi-circulaire sur le goujon fileté.
- Placez l'écrou hex. Sur la tige filetée. Vérifiez si la tête du robinet est à l'angle voulu.
- Insérez le tournevis dans le trou sur le côté de l'outil hexagonal (pour créer un « T ») et utilisez l'outil pour serrer l'écrou et fixez le robinet.

La plaque de montage semi-circulaire devrait encadrer tous les tubes descendants et se prolonger au-delà du trou de l'évier une fois serrée.



## INSTALLATION DU ROBINET - 3300

A



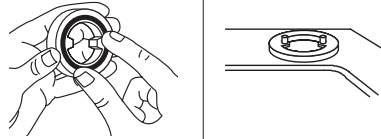
**AVIS**

**Dompage matériel :** ne pincez pas ou ne brisez pas les tubes. Ne déformez pas les trois derniers centimètres du tube.

- Déballez les composantes du distributeur.
- Il est recommandé d'installer ce robinet en gardant la poignée distributrice à la droite.

La conception unique permet à la poignée d'être entièrement fonctionnelle qu'elle soit placée à la droite ou à la gauche du robinet. Déterminez le côté que vous préférez avant de procéder à l'installation.

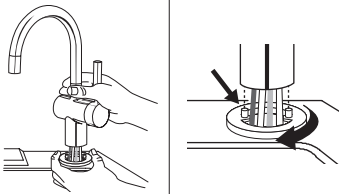
B



**Le fait de mouiller le joint torique avec de l'eau avant de l'insérer dans le siège en laiton aide à le tenir en place durant l'installation.**

- Insérez le joint torique en caoutchouc dans la rainure du siège en laiton.
- Placez le siège en laiton, le joint torique vers le bas, sur le trou dans l'évier ou le comptoir.

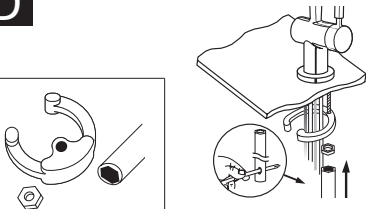
C



**Pour faciliter l'acheminement des tubes dans le trou, insérez d'abord le tube bleu avec l'attache à connexion rapide, puis insérez les autres tubes.**

- En tenant le siège en laiton en place, acheminez les tubes vers le bas à travers le trou dans l'évier ou le comptoir jusqu'à ce que la base touche au siège en laiton.
- Faites tourner le siège en laiton jusqu'à ce que les deux goujons de retenue se glissent dans les trous de la base du robinet et que la base soit appuyée fermement sur le siège en laiton.

D



**La plaque de montage semi-circulaire devrait encercler tous les tubes descendants et se prolonger au-delà du trou de l'évier une fois serrée.**

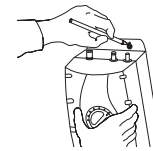
- À partir du dessous de l'évier, placez la plaque de montage semi-circulaire sur le goujon fileté.
- Placez un écrou hexagonal sur le goujon fileté. Assurez-vous que la poignée distributrice se trouve sur le côté choisi et que la tête du robinet se trouve à l'angle désiré.
- Insérez le tournevis dans le trou sur le côté de l'outil hexagonal (pour créer un « T ») et utilisez l'outil pour serrer l'écrou et fixez le robinet.

**▲ MISE EN GARDE**

Ne branchez pas le réservoir d'eau chaude avant l'étape 6C.

## MONTAGE DU RÉSERVOIR

A



Le réservoir doit être monté de niveau pour assurer un bon fonctionnement

**AVIS**

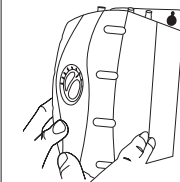
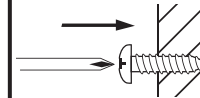
**Dompage matériel :** le réservoir doit être situé à moins de 40,6 cm du robinet et à moins de 76,2 cm d'une prise standard mise à la terre. **NE PROLONGEZ PAS** les tuyaux de plomberie et conduites électriques.

- Sélectionnez un endroit sous l'évier pour monter le réservoir verticalement à la portée des connexions de plomberie et d'électricité. Le réservoir devrait se trouver à 16 po (40.6 cm) ou moins des conduits d'eau du robinet et à 30 po (76.2 cm) ou moins d'une prise ordinaire mise à la terre.

- Tout en maintenant le réservoir en place à l'endroit choisi pour l'installation, servez-vous d'un crayon pour marquer les emplacements pour les deux vis de suspension.

B

Laissez 6 mm pour suspendre le réservoir



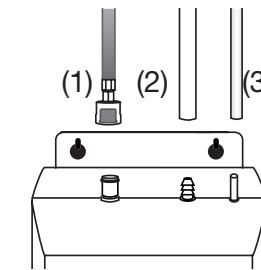
**Les vis fournies doivent être utilisées uniquement sur des montants ou des armoires en bois. Servez-vous d'ancrages muraux (non fournis) pour l'installation sur un mur sec.**

- Percez des avant-trous de 1/8 po (0.3 cm) sur les marques.
- Serrez les vis dans les trous prépercés en laissant 1/4 po (0.6 cm) exposés.
- Suspendez le réservoir sur les vis.
- Serrez les vis avec seulement 1/2 tour dans le sens horaire.

**Montez le réservoir verticalement dans un endroit qui permet un dégagement sur le dessous du réservoir pour le drainage au besoin. NE PAS trop serrer les vis.**

## RACCORDEMENT DU ROBINET AU RÉSERVOIR

A



**AVIS**

**Dompage matériel :** les conduits d'eau pincés ou bloqués peuvent causer des dommages au réservoir du distributeur. Vérifiez pour vous assurer que les tubes sont bien raccordés et poussés aussi loin que possible.

- Sans enfoncer le bouton gris, placez le raccord à connexion à pression sur l'extrémité du tube **bleu** sur le raccord gauche du réservoir, en le poussant jusqu'à ce qu'il s'enclenche en place. (1)
- Faites glisser le tube flexible **blanc** 7/16 po (1.1 cm) au-dessus du raccord barbelé en acier et faites-le glisser vers le bas d'environ 1/2 po (1.3 cm). (2).
- Faites glisser le tube **transparent** de 5/16 po (0.8 cm) sur le raccord lisse en plastique et faites-le descendre d'environ 1/2 po (1.3 cm). (3).
- Vérifiez visuellement s'il y a des tubes pincés ou écrasés.

Aucun de ces raccordements ne requiert de collier de serrage.

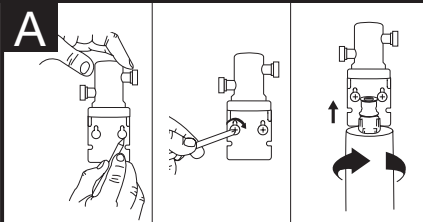


Pour voir un tutoriel de cette installation

<http://goo.gl/yYrFOA>

**AnswerLine®**  
1-800-558-5700

# 5 INSTALLATION DU SYSTÈME DE FILTRATION

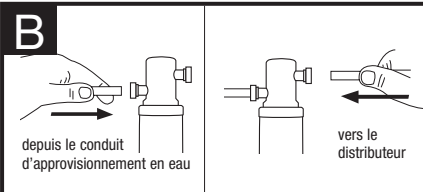


**Les vis fournies doivent être utilisées seulement sur des montants ou des armoires en bois. Servez-vous d'ancrages muraux (non fournis) pour l'installation sur un mur sec.**

- Séparez la cartouche de la tête du filtre.
- Marquez les emplacements des trous pour la tête de filtre et le support à un endroit qui permet le remplacement du filtre.
- Percez des trous de départ de 1/8 po (0.3 cm) et fixez le support au mur à l'aide de vis à bois en les serrant bien.
- Insérez la nouvelle cartouche dans la tête du filtre. La surface supérieure de la cartouche arrivera au ras du fond de la tête du filtre lorsqu'elle est complètement enclenchée.

## ⚠ AVERTISSEMENT

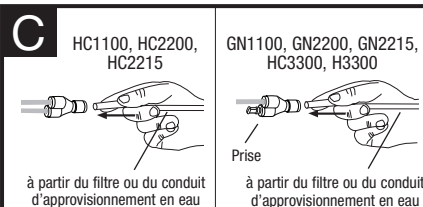
**Risque de blessure :** ne placez pas le filtre au-dessus d'une prise de courant ou autre dispositif électrique. Installez la tête et le support de façon à ce que les raccordements ne nécessitent pas d'étirement, de tortillement ou de pincement du tube.



- Déterminez la longueur du tube nécessaire, puis coupez à la longueur en vous assurant que la coupe est perpendiculaire et ne comporte pas d'ébarbures.
- Insérez un tube **blanc** 1/4 po (0.64 cm) dans le côté de l'entrée de la tête de filtre jusqu'à ce qu'il s'arrête. **Appuyez à nouveau pour assurer un ajustement précis.**
- Insérez l'autre tube **blanc** de 1/4 po (0.64 cm) dans le côté de sortie de la tête de filtre jusqu'à ce qu'il s'arrête. **Appuyez à nouveau pour assurer un ajustement précis.**

## AVIS

**Dommage matériel :** Le tube doit se conformer au contour de l'armoire pour permettre un espace de rangement sans courbures trop prononcées. Les tubes ont besoin de coupes propres, perpendiculaires et sans ébarbures pour assurer un bon ajustement.

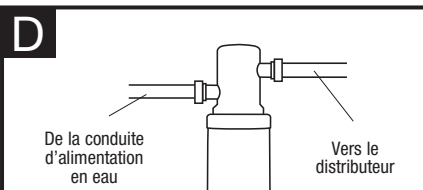


- Insérer le(s) tube(s) de cuivre du distributeur dans la connexion rapide en « Y » à l'aide du bouchon pour modèles à eau chaude seulement.
- Raccordez le tube **blanc** 1/4 po (0.64 cm) depuis la sortie de droite sur la tête de filtre dans le raccord de la connexion rapide jusqu'à ce qu'il s'arrête qu'il s'arrête. **Appuyez à nouveau sur le tube pour assurer un ajustement précis.**

## AVIS

**Dommage matériel :** N'étendez pas les conduits plus loin que les 16 po fournis. S'assurer que le(s) tube(s) et le connecteur en « Y » soient fixés solidement.

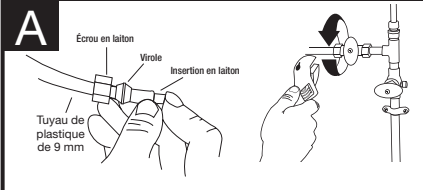
Pour enlever le(s) tube(s) de la connexion rapide, appuyez sur la bague de dégagement et tirez doucement le tube pour l'éloigner.



- Raccordez le tuyau **blanc** restant de 1/4 po (0.64 cm) pour la conduite d'alimentation d'eau d'entrée. (Reportez-vous à l'étape 6)

Une évacuation d'eau de 58 ml environ est normale lors du retrait du filtre.

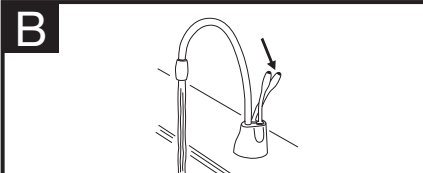
# 6 CONNEXION FINALE DE L'EAU



- Installez un raccord en T sur la conduite (*non compris*) d'alimentation d'eau froide.
- Installez le robinet de réglage d'eau spécialisé avec le raccord compression de 1/4 po (0.64 cm).
- À l'extrémité du tube **blanc** de 1/4 po (0.64 cm) venant du filtre ou de la connexion rapide, faites glisser l'écrou en laiton et la virole fournis sur le tube et poussez l'insertion de tube en laiton.
- Insérez le tube **blanc** 1/4 po (0.64 cm) dans le raccord à compression de 1/4 po (0.64 cm) et serrez.

## AVIS

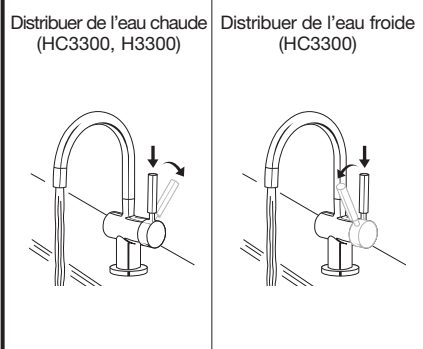
**Dommage matériel :** joignez le reste du tube à l'alimentation d'eau froide seulement.



- Ouvrez l'alimentation d'eau.
- Ouvrez le robinet d'eau chaude pour expulser l'air emprisonné.
- Pour le F-1000S et le F-1000, rincez 8,5 litres à travers le filtre avant l'utilisation (pendant environ trois minutes). Pour le F-2000S et le F-2000, rincez 11,3 litres à travers le filtre avant l'utilisation (pendant environ quatre minutes).

## ⚠ AVERTISSEMENT

**Danger d'échaudage :** le robinet donne de l'eau presque bouillante (100 °C) qui pourrait brûler ou échauder instantanément. Faites attention lorsque vous utilisez cet appareil.



## Directives d'utilisation pour les robinets Indulge™ Modern

Avec OptiPush<sup>MC</sup> activation de côté chaud avec arrêt automatique et Stay-On<sup>MC</sup> du côté froid, ce qui garde le robinet ouvert en distribuant de l'eau froide.

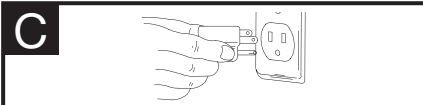
- HC3300 :** Pour distribuer de l'eau chaude instantanée, appuyer d'abord sur la poignée du robinet, puis pousser la poignée vers l'arrière dans la direction de la marque rouge sur le dessus de la poignée. Pour distribuer de l'eau froide, appuyer d'abord sur la poignée du robinet, puis tirer la poignée vers l'avant dans la direction de la marque bleue sur la poignée. **Remarque :** s'applique seulement lorsque la poignée est installée du côté gauche.

## ⚠ AVERTISSEMENT

**Danger d'échaudage :** le robinet donne de l'eau presque bouillante (100 °C) qui pourrait brûler ou échauder instantanément. Faites attention lorsque vous utilisez cet appareil.

Avec OptiPush<sup>MC</sup> activation du côté chaud avec arrêt automatique.

- H3300 :** Pour distribuer de l'eau chaude instantanée, appuyer d'abord sur la poignée du robinet, puis pousser la poignée vers l'arrière dans la direction de la marque rouge sur le dessus de la poignée.



- Vérifiez tous les raccordements pour vous assurer qu'ils sont serrés et qu'il n'y a pas de fuite.
- Branchez le réservoir d'eau chaude instantanée.

## AVIS

**Danger de brûlures :** une prise standard mise à la terre et se trouvant à moins de 76,2 cm du distributeur est nécessaire sous l'évier. N'utilisez pas de fil de rallonge avec le distributeur.

L'eau sera froide au début.

Allouez 12-15 minutes pour que l'eau atteigne la température voulue.

Les bruits de sifflement et de gargouillement sont normaux durant le cycle de chauffage initial.

Si l'eau venant du robinet n'est pas chaude 15 minutes après que l'unité a été branchée - ou pour d'autres raisons liées à l'opération de votre distributeur d'eau chaude instantanée reportez-vous à la section « Dépannage » à la page 51.

## RENSEIGNEMENTS IMPORTANTS SUR LA SÉCURITÉ

- N'utilisez ce chauffe-eau qu'aux fins d'utilisation prévues, de la manière décrite dans ce manuel.
- Cet appareil n'est pas destiné à être utilisé par des personnes (y compris des enfants) dont les capacités physiques, sensorielles ou mentales sont réduites ou dont l'expérience et les connaissances sont insuffisantes, sauf si elles bénéficient d'une supervision ou de directives sur l'utilisation de l'appareil de la part d'une personne responsable de leur sécurité. Les enfants doivent être surveillés pour s'assurer qu'ils ne jouent pas avec le robinet d'eau chaude. Pour réduire les risques de blessure, surveillez étroitement les enfants lorsqu'ils se trouvent à proximité d'un appareil en marche.
- N'utilisez pas ce produit s'il est ou s'il semble être endommagé de quelque manière que ce soit, ou suite à son mauvais fonctionnement ou après l'avoir échappé. Retournez immédiatement le produit à votre détaillant pour qu'il l'examine et si nécessaire, l'ajuste ou le répare.

<b>▲ AVERTISSEMENT</b>	Pour réduire le risque associé à une suffocation : ne laissez pas les enfants de moins de trois ans accéder aux petites pièces durant l'installation de ce produit.
<b>▲ AVERTISSEMENT</b>	<b>Risque d'électrocution :</b> pour réduire le risque d'électrocution, ne submergez pas et n'exposez pas le produit, le cordon flexible ou la fiche à la pluie, à l'humidité ou à tout liquide ou lorsque vous vous tenez sur ou dans des surfaces humides ou mouillées. Si un produit électrique tombe dans l'eau, DÉBRANCHEZ-LE immédiatement. NE TOUCHEZ PAS À L'EAU. <b>Important :</b> le produit doit être inspecté par un technicien qualifié avant de le rebrancher à la source d'alimentation.
<b>▲ AVERTISSEMENT</b>	<b>Blessures/dommages matériels :</b> pour réduire les risques associés à une tension dangereuse présente lorsqu'un installateur perce une ligne électrique existante dans la zone d'installation : n'installez pas à proximité de fils électriques qui risquent de se trouver sur la trajectoire d'une perceuse lors du choix de l'emplacement de montage du support du système. Évitez aussi le risque de percer dans des tuyaux d'eau, ce qui pourrait entraîner des dommages matériels.

**Important :** acheminez toujours le cordon d'alimentation de manière à ce qu'il ne puisse pas entrer en contact avec des surfaces chaudes.

- Ne débranchez pas le produit de l'alimentation électrique en tirant sur le cordon.
- N'utilisez pas le produit à des fins autres que celles prévues et décrites dans ces directives. L'utilisation de pièces accessoires autres que celles recommandées par le fabricant risque d'entraîner des situations dangereuses.
- La connexion recommandée peut être effectuée à une conduite d'eau froide existante avec un raccord se terminant par une vanne d'arrêt, un limiteur de pression et un clapet de non-retour à vérification double se trouvant à proximité du produit.

<b>▲ AVERTISSEMENT</b>	<b>Risque de choc électrique :</b> utiliser un appareil qui n'est pas mis à la terre ou qui n'est pas correctement raccordé peut entraîner des blessures graves, voire fatales en cas de choc électrique.
------------------------	---

**Cet appareil doit être mis à la terre.** Ce robinet d'eau bouillante est muni d'un cordon d'alimentation doté d'un conducteur de mise à la terre et d'une goupille de masse. La fiche doit être branchée sur une prise appropriée, correctement installée et mise à la terre conformément à tous les codes et règlements locaux. Ne modifiez pas la fiche fournie avec l'appareil. Si la fiche ne convient pas à la prise de courant, faites installer une prise adéquate par un électricien qualifié. En cas de doute sur la mise à la terre du robinet d'eau bouillante, demandez l'avis d'un électricien ou d'un réparateur qualifié.

<b>▲ MISE EN GARDE</b>	<b>Blessures/dommages matériels :</b> ce réservoir est un réservoir non pressurisé. NE modifiez PAS ce système. NE fermez PAS le tube d'aération et NE branchez PAS d'autres types de robinets ou de vannes au réservoir. N'utilisez que le robinet InSinkErator fourni. Utilisez seulement les pièces fournies. Communiquez avec un agent de service InSinkErator autorisé pour toute réparation ou pièce de rechange.
<b>▲ AVERTISSEMENT</b>	Pour réduire le risque associé à un étouffement découlant de l'ingestion de contaminants : n'utilisez pas avec de l'eau micro-biologiquement dangereuse ou de qualité inconnue sans désinfection adéquate à l'entrée ou à la sortie du système.

Un robinet d'eau bouillante, tout comme n'importe quel chauffe-eau, a une durée de vie limitée et finit par tomber en panne. Pour éviter les dommages matériels et les blessures, le robinet d'eau bouillante doit être inspecté régulièrement pour déceler toute fuite éventuelle et corrosion et le remplacer au besoin. Il est recommandé d'utiliser un bac de vidange raccordé à un drain approprié ou équipé d'un détecteur de fuite dans tous les cas où une fuite d'eau pourrait causer des dommages matériels.

<b>▲ AVERTISSEMENT</b>	<b>Risque d'incendie :</b> afin de réduire les risques d'incendie, n'entreposez PAS des articles inflammables comme des chiffons, du papier ou des bombes aérosol à proximité du réservoir. N'entreposez PAS et n'utilisez PAS de l'essence ou d'autres liquides ou gaz inflammables à proximité de cet appareil ou de tout autre appareil.
<b>▲ AVERTISSEMENT</b>	<b>Risque de fuite :</b> examinez régulièrement le distributeur et les raccords de plomberie pour y détecter des fuites qui peuvent entraîner des dommages matériels et des blessures.

## RENSEIGNEMENTS IMPORTANTS SUR LA SÉCURITÉ

### AVIS

**Dommage matériel :** pour réduire le risque associé aux dommages matériels causés par une fuite d'eau ou une inondation et afin d'assurer la performance optimale du produit :

- Lisez et suivez les directives d'utilisation avant d'installer et d'utiliser ce système.
- L'installation et l'utilisation de l'équipement DOIVENT se conformer à tous les codes de plomberie locaux et provinciaux.

**Exigences du système (réservoir d'eau chaude, système de filtration et distributeur) :**

- Le conduit flexible de mise à l'air et les tubes de sortie doivent être correctement reliés au robinet fourni par le fabricant. Ils ne doivent pas être obstrués ni reliés à un robinet de type normal ou de tout autre type.
- N'installez pas sur des conduites d'alimentation en eau chaude. La température maximale de l'eau lors du fonctionnement de ce système est de 37,8 °C (100 °F). Reliez uniquement à de l'alimentation en eau froide.
- N'installez pas si la pression d'eau dépasse 862 kPa (125 lb/po<sup>2</sup>). Si votre pression d'eau dépasse 552 kPa (80 lb/po<sup>2</sup>), vous devez installer un limiteur de pression. Communiquez avec un plombier professionnel si vous n'êtes pas sûr(e) comment vérifier votre pression d'eau.
- N'installez pas lorsque des coups de bélier risquent de se produire. Si de telles conditions existent, vous devez installer un antibélier. Communiquez avec un plombier professionnel si vous n'êtes pas sûr(e) comment vérifier cette condition.
- Lorsqu'un dispositif d'écoulement de retour est installé sur un système d'eau, un dispositif de contrôle de pression causée par l'expansion thermique doit être installé.
- Protégez contre le gel, coupez l'alimentation en eau, retirez la cartouche du filtre, vidangez le réservoir d'eau chaude et la conduite lorsque des températures inférieures à 4,4 °C (40 °F) sont prévues; reportez-vous à la section Entreposage et drainage saisonniers.
- N'utilisez pas de chalumeau ou d'autres sources à température élevée près du système, des cartouches, des raccords en plastique ou de la plomberie en plastique.
- N'installez pas à proximité de conduites d'eau qui risquent de se trouver sur la trajectoire d'une perceuse lors du choix de l'emplacement de montage du support.
- Installez le système de manière à éviter qu'il ne soit heurté par d'autres éléments utilisés dans la zone d'installation.
- Veillez à ce que son emplacement et ses fixations supportent le poids du système installé et rempli d'eau.
- Veillez à ce que les conduites et les raccords soient bien fixés et exempts de fuites.
- N'installez pas avec des conduites rigides. Ce système doit être utilisé avec des conduites d'eau en plastique (comme des conduites PEX, PE et PP).
- N'installez pas ce système si l'une des bagues de connexion rapide est manquante sur la tête du filtre ou de la connexion rapide en Y. Communiquez avec un agent de service InSinkErator autorisé si des bagues manquent à l'un ou l'autre des raccords.
- Pour les systèmes qui utilisent les robinets modèle HC à deux poignées, n'utilisez qu'une poignée à la fois.
- Important : ne laissez pas le système bouillir continuellement.
- Inspectez le système régulièrement. S'il présente des signes de fuite d'eau, fermez l'alimentation en eau et communiquez avec un agent de service InSinkErator autorisé.
- Il est recommandé d'utiliser un bac de vidange raccordé à un drain approprié ou équipé d'un détecteur de fuite dans tous les cas où une fuite d'eau pourrait causer des dommages matériels.
- Pour toute question ou inquiétude, veuillez communiquer avec un agent de service InSinkErator autorisé (reportez-vous à la couverture arrière pour obtenir les renseignements de contact).

**Autres considérations concernant l'utilisation du système de filtration :**

- La cartouche jetable du filtre DOIT être remplacée tous les six mois, à la capacité nominale ou plus tôt si une réduction importante du débit se produit.
- Ne pas remplacer cette cartouche jetable aux intervalles recommandés risque de réduire la performance du filtre, de fissurer le boîtier du filtre et d'entraîner des fuites d'eau ou une inondation.
- Protégez contre le gel, retirez la cartouche du filtre lorsque des températures inférieures à 4,4 °C (40 °F) sont prévues.
- N'installez pas les systèmes dans des zones où les températures ambiantes risquent de dépasser 43,3 °C (110 °F).
- N'installez pas directement sous la lumière du soleil ou à l'extérieur.



# GARANTIE LIMITÉE DE SERVICE INTÉGRAL A DOMICILE

**Distributeur :** garantie de cinq ans  
**Réservoir en acier inoxydable :** garantie de trois ans  
**Système de filtration :** garantie d'un an (cartouche de filtre exclue)

Cette garantie est fournie par InSinkErator, une unité commerciale d'Emerson Electric Co., (« **InSinkErator** », « **Fabricant** », « **nous** » ou « **notre** ») au consommateur original propriétaire du produit InSinkErator avec lequel cette garantie est fournie (le « **Produit InSinkErator** ») et tout propriétaire subséquent de la résidence dans laquelle le Produit a originalement été installé (« **Client** », « **vous** » ou « **votre** »).

InSinkErator garantit au Client que votre Produit InSinkErator sera libre de défauts de matériaux et de main d'œuvre, sous réserve des exclusions décrites ci-dessous, pendant la « **Période de garantie** », à compter de la date la plus récente entre : (a) la date d'installation originale de votre Produit InSinkErator, (b) la date d'achat ou (c) la date de fabrication identifiée par le numéro de série de votre Produit InSinkErator. Vous devrez présenter une documentation écrite prouvant (a) ou (b). Si vous ne pouvez pas fournir un document prouvant (a) ou (b), la date de début de la Période de garantie sera déterminée par le Fabricant, à son entière discrétion, selon le numéro de série du Produit InSinkErator.

## Ce qui est couvert

Cette garantie couvre les défauts de matériaux ou de main d'œuvre, sous réserve des exclusions ci-dessous, dans les Produits InSinkErator utilisés par un Client consommateur en vertu d'un usage résidentiel seulement et comprend toutes les pièces de rechange et les frais de main d'œuvre. VOTRE SEUL ET EXCLUSIF REMÈDE EN VERTU DE CETTE GARANTIE LIMITÉE SE LIMITE À LA RÉPARATION OU AU REMPLACEMENT DU PRODUIT INSINKERATOR.

## Ce qui n'est pas couvert

Cette garantie limitée ne couvre pas et exclut expressément :

- Les pertes ou les dommages ou l'incapacité à utiliser votre Produit InSinkErator en raison de conditions indépendantes de la volonté du Fabricant, y compris sans en exclure d'autres, les accidents, les altérations, les mauvaises utilisations, les abus, la négligence (autre que celle du Fabricant), le défaut d'installer, de maintenir, d'assembler ou de monter le Produit InSinkErator conformément aux directives du Fabricant ou aux codes locaux de plomberie ou d'électricité.
- L'usage devant se produire durant le cours normal de l'utilisation, y compris sans en exclure d'autres, la rouille cosmétique, les égratignures, les bosselures ou les pertes ou dommages similaires et raisonnablement prévus.

En plus des exclusions ci-dessus, cette garantie ne s'applique pas aux Produits InSinkErator installés dans une application commerciale ou industrielle.

## Aucune autre garantie expresse ne s'applique

Cette garantie est la seule et unique garantie fournie au Client identifié ci-dessus. Aucune autre garantie expresse, écrite ou verbale ne s'applique. Aucun employé, agent, dépositaire ou autre personne ne sont autorisés à modifier cette garantie limitée ou à effectuer toute autre garantie au nom du Fabricant. Les conditions de cette garantie ne seront pas modifiées par le Fabricant, le propriétaire original ou leurs successeurs ou ayants droit respectifs.

## Ce que nous ferons pour corriger les problèmes

Si votre Produit InSinkErator ne fonctionne pas conformément à la documentation qui vous est fournie ou si vous avez des questions concernant votre Produit InSinkErator ou comment déterminer s'il doit être réparé, veuillez appeler sans frais la ligne d'assistance AnswerLine d'InSinkErator au 1 (800) 558-5700 ou visitez notre site Web à [www.insinkerator.com](http://www.insinkerator.com). Vous pouvez aussi nous écrire à : Centre de service InSinkErator, 4700 21st Street, Racine, Wisconsin 53406 É.-U.

Les renseignements suivants doivent être fournis lors de votre réclamation au titre de la garantie : votre nom, adresse, numéro de téléphone, le numéro de série et modèle de votre Produit InSinkErator et si nécessaire, sur demande, une confirmation écrite de : (a) la date indiquée sur votre reçu d'installation ou (b) la date indiquée sur votre reçu d'achat.

Le Fabricant ou son représentant de service autorisé détermineront, à leur entière discrétion, si votre Produit InSinkErator est couvert en vertu de cette garantie. On vous remettra les renseignements de contact de votre centre de service InSinkErator autorisé le plus proche. Veuillez communiquer avec votre centre de service InSinkErator directement pour obtenir une réparation de garantie à domicile ou un service de remplacement. Seul un représentant de service InSinkErator autorisé peut fournir le service de garantie. InSinkErator n'est pas responsable des réclamations de garantie découlant du travail effectué sur votre Produit InSinkErator par toute personne autre qu'un représentant de service InSinkErator autorisé.

Si une réclamation couverte est effectuée pendant la Période de garantie, le Fabricant, par l'entremise de son représentant de service autorisé, réparera ou remplacera votre Produit InSinkErator. Le coût des pièces de rechange ou d'un nouveau Produit InSinkErator et les frais de main d'œuvre pour la réparation ou l'installation du Produit InSinkErator de rechange sont offerts gratuitement. La réparation ou le remplacement seront déterminés par le Fabricant ou son représentant de service autorisé à leur entière discrétion. Tous les services de réparation et de remplacement seront effectués à votre domicile. Si le Fabricant détermine que votre Produit InSinkErator doit être remplacé au lieu d'être réparé, la garantie sur le Produit InSinkErator de rechange se limitera à la durée restante de la Période de garantie originale.

## Limite de responsabilité

DANS LA MESURE PERMISE PAR LA LOI, LE FABRICANT OU SES REPRÉSENTANTS DE SERVICE AUTORISÉS NE SERONT DANS AUCUN CAS RESPONSABLES DES DOMMAGES CONSÉCUTIFS, SPÉCIAUX, INDIRECTS OU CORRÉLATIFS, Y COMPRIS LES PERTES ÉCONOMIQUES DÉCOULANT DE LA NON PERFORMANCE, DE L'UTILISATION, DE LA MAUVAISE UTILISATION OU DE L'INCAPACITÉ À UTILISER LE PRODUIT INSINKERATOR OU DE LA NÉGLIGENCE DU FABRICANT OU DU REPRÉSENTANT DE SERVICE AUTORISÉ. LE FABRICANT NE SERA PAS RESPONSABLE DES DOMMAGES CAUSÉS PAR UN DÉLAI DE PERFORMANCE ET LA RESPONSABILITÉ DU FABRICANT NE DÉPASSERA DANS AUCUN CAS, QUELLE QUE SOIT LA FORME DE LA RÉCLAMATION OU LA RAISON DE L'ACTION (FONDÉE SUR UN CONTRAT, UNE INFRACTION, LA NÉGLIGENCE, LA RESPONSABILITÉ STRICTE OU TOUT AUTRE TORT OU AUTREMENT), LE PRIX PAYÉ PAR LE PROPRIÉTAIRE ORIGINAL DU PRODUIT INSINKERATOR.

Le terme « dommages indirects » comprend, sans en exclure d'autres, la perte des profits anticipés, l'interruption commerciale, la perte d'utilisation ou de revenus, le coût du capital ou la perte ou les dommages aux biens ou à l'équipement.

Certaines provinces ne permettent pas l'exclusion ou la limite des dommages indirects ou corrélatifs, par conséquent, la limite ci-dessus peut ne pas s'appliquer à votre cas. Cette garantie vous donne des droits légaux précis et vous pouvez aussi avoir d'autres droits qui peuvent varier d'un État ou d'une province à l'autre.

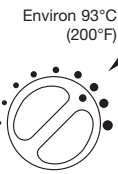
# ENTRETIEN ET UTILISATION

## ⚠ AVERTISSEMENT

**Risque de choc électrique :** pour éviter les risques de choc électrique, coupez l'alimentation avant de procéder à l'entretien de l'unité. N'utilisez qu'une prise électrique polarisée correctement mise à la terre.

## RÉGLAGE DU THERMOSTAT

La température préréglée en usine est de 93°C (200°F) (96°C (205°F) pour le réservoir HWT-HP). **Pour réinitialiser le thermostat à 93°C (200°F) (96°C (205°F) pour le réservoir HWT-HP), tournez l'indicateur d'un cran vers la droite de la verticale.** Ensuite, appuyez sur la poignée du robinet pendant 20 secondes pour que l'eau se réchauffe selon le nouveau réglage.



- Pour régler la température de l'eau, tournez le cadran du thermostat situé sur l'avant du réservoir dans le sens horaire pour augmenter la température et dans le sens antihoraire pour l'abaisser. Répétez l'opération au besoin. Tous les changements de température devraient être minimes.

## ⚠ AVERTISSEMENT

**Risque d'ébullition :** ne laissez pas l'eau atteindre le point d'ébullition. Cela peut causer de graves brûlures.

## ENTREPOSAGE ET DRAINAGE SAISONNIERS

Si le robinet d'eau bouillante ne sera pas utilisé pendant une période prolongée, débranchez-le et vidangez-le. Si la température descend en dessous de zéro, vous devrez débrancher l'unité et la vidanger.

- Coupez l'alimentation électrique de l'unité (débranchez l'unité).
- Poussez le levier d'eau chaude du robinet et laissez couler l'eau jusqu'à ce qu'elle soit froide.
- Fermez le robinet d'eau froide au niveau de la valve.
- Débranchez les tubes du réservoir.
- Décrochez le réservoir du mur.
- Renversez le réservoir au-dessus d'un évier pour vidanger l'eau.
- Séchez les éclaboussures d'eau autour du réservoir.
- Remettez le réservoir sur le mur et rebranchez les tubes.
- Retirez et jetez la cartouche de filtre, s'il y en a une.
- Pour remettre le dispositif en état de fonctionnement, installez une nouvelle cartouche de filtre (le cas échéant), puis ouvrez l'alimentation en eau froide au niveau de la valve. Appuyez sur le levier du robinet d'eau chaude et gardez-le enfoncé jusqu'à ce que l'eau s'écoule du bec. Rebranchez le cordon d'alimentation.

## NETTOYAGE DU ROBINET ET DU RÉSERVOIR

- Utilisez seulement des détergents doux pour nettoyer le robinet et les composants en plastique.
- L'usage de détergents contenant des solvants acides, abrasifs, alcalins et organiques détériore les composants en plastique et annule la garantie.

## GUIDE DU FILTRE ET REMPLACEMENT

Remplacez la cartouche du filtre lorsque le débit d'eau de la fontaine diminue visiblement ou si le goût ou l'odeur de l'eau devient désagréable.

Lorsque les orifices d'entrée et de sortie ont été fermés et que la pression interne du filtre a été relâchée, de l'eau (environ 60 ml) s'écoule de la conduite de mise à l'air libre.

Si la nouvelle cartouche du filtre ne peut pas être insérée, insérez l'ancienne et tournez-la jusqu'à ce qu'elle s'arrête, enlevez-la et réessayez d'insérer la nouvelle cartouche.

La cartouche jetable du filtre DOIT être remplacée tous les six mois, à la capacité nominale ou plus tôt si une réduction importante du débit se produit.

Directives de remplacement du filtre :

- Remplacez le filtre par un filtre InSinkErator®.
- Placez une cuvette ou un linge à vaisselle sous le filtre pour récupérer l'eau qui s'écoule pendant le remplacement.
- Tournez la cartouche lentement dans le sens antihoraire complètement jusqu'à ce qu'elle s'arrête (1/4 tour).
- Retirez la cartouche directement vers le bas et mettez-la au rebut.
- Insérez la nouvelle cartouche dans la tête du filtre.
- Lorsque la cartouche est complètement engagée, sa face supérieure est affleurée avec la base de la tête du filtre.
- Tournez la cartouche dans le sens horaire jusqu'à ce qu'elle s'arrête (1/4 tour).
- Ouvrez le robinet pour évacuer l'air emprisonné.
- Faites couler l'eau pendant trois minutes avant de l'utiliser.

## ⚠ MISE EN GARDE

### Blessures :

- Vérifiez régulièrement la présence de signes de corrosion en examinant l'apparence de l'eau distribuée tous les trois (3) mois.
- Si vous observez une décoloration ou la présence de rouille, débranchez et videz l'unité comme il est décrit dans la section Entreposage et drainage saisonniers de ce manuel.
- Si le problème de décoloration persiste après le drainage et le remplissage de l'unité, cessez d'utiliser l'unité et communiquez avec un agent de service InSinkErator autorisé.

# RENSEIGNEMENTS DE FILTRATION

Le système de filtration pour distributeur d'eau chaude instantanée InSinkEerator offre deux niveaux de filtration, selon le filtre utilisé : **F-1000S** est conçu pour filtrer les particules, le goût et l'odeur du chlore de l'eau potable et n'a pas été évalué pour d'autres usages; **F-2000S** réduit les particules, le goût et l'odeur du chlore, en plus des spores, du plomb, du mercure, de l'amiante, du benzène, de l'atrazine, du 2,4-D, du lindane, du carbofuran et du p-dichlorobenzène. Le système est habituellement installé (sous ou près d'un évier) où de l'eau potable filtrée est désirée et il doit être installé, utilisé et entretenu comme il est précisé dans les directives d'installation et d'utilisation.

## AVIS

Pour réduire le risque associé aux dommages matériels causés par des fuites d'eau ou une inondation :

- Lisez et suivez les directives d'utilisation fournies avec le système original avant d'installer et d'utiliser ce produit.

Pour réduire le risque de fuite d'eau ou d'inondation et assurer la performance maximale du filtre :

- Remplacez la cartouche de filtre jetable tous les six mois ou plus tôt si vous remarquez une diminution perceptible du débit.
- Le non-remplacement de la cartouche de filtre jetable au moment recommandé peut entraîner une performance réduite du filtre et des fissures dans le boîtier du filtre, causant ainsi des fuites d'eau ou une inondation.
- Pour les systèmes utilisant des robinets de type HC (eau chaude/froide) à deux poignées, n'utilisez qu'une poignée à la fois.
- Pour toute question ou inquiétude, veuillez communiquer avec le service à la clientèle au 1-800-558-5700.

## AVERTISSEMENT

N'utilisez pas de l'eau qui est microbiologiquement dangereuse ou de qualité inconnue sans désinfection adéquate avant ou après le système.

### F-1000 Configuration du filtre à réduction chimique et mécanique:

(Utilisez la cartouche de rechange F-1000) Cette cartouche fournit une réduction mécanique et chimique du goût et de l'odeur du chlore et des particules de catégorie III.



Testée et certifiée par la NSF International en vertu de la norme 42 de la NSF/ANSI dans les systèmes InSinkEerator suivants seulement : GN1100, HC1100, GN2200, HC2200, GN2215, HC2215, H3300 ou HC3300 pour la réduction de réclamations précisées sur la fiche signalétique de performance. Pour les systèmes utilisant des robinets de type HC (eau chaude/froide) à deux poignées, n'utilisez qu'une poignée à la fois.

Pression : 207 à 827 kPa (30 à 120 psi)  
Température : 0,5 °C à 37,7 °C (33 °F à 100 °F)  
Débit : 2,8 l/min (0,75 gal/min)  
Capacité : 1890 litres (500 gallons)

**Capacité du filtre:** 1890 litres (500 gal), en fonction des conditions locales. Notez que les tests ont été effectués dans des conditions de laboratoire standards, les performances actuelles peuvent donc s'avérer différentes. N'utilisez pas l'appareil avec de l'eau n'étant pas sécuritaire d'un point de vue microbiologique, ou d'une qualité inconnue, sans désinfecter adéquatement le système en amont ou en aval. Pour une utilisation avec de l'eau froide uniquement. Les systèmes doivent être installés et doivent fonctionner en accord avec les procédures et les directives recommandées par le fabricant. Voir la carte de garantie pour les informations relatives à la garantie. Pour une réparation et pour obtenir des pièces de rechange, adressez-vous à votre revendeur local ou contactez directement InSinkEerator® au 1-800-558-5700.

Réduction des contaminants dans l'eau	Influent moyen	Concentration De Défi D'Eaux à traiter. Sauf mention contraire, les unités s'appliquent à chaque rangée.	Eau moyenne du produit	Réduction moyenne	Conditions de réduction de NSF	Test NSF
Goût et odeur du chlore	2.1 mg/L	2.0 mg/L ± 10%	0.06 mg/L	97.0%	≥ 50%	J-00082587
Particules nominales de catégorie III, de 5 µm à <15 µm	270,000 pts/mL	Au moins 10 000 particules/ml	82 pts/mL	99.9%	≥85%	J-00119308

**Directives d'applications/Paramètres d'alimentation en eau pour tests NSF :** Débit d'alimentation de 2,8 l/min (0,75 gal/min), alim partir d'un forage privé ou public, pression d'eau de 138 à 827 kPa (20 à 120 psi), température de l'eau de 0,5 °C à 37,7 °C (33 moins d'indication contraire, tous les tests sont effectués à un pH de 7,5 ± 0,5, Débit : 2,8 l/min (0,75 gal/min) Pression : 413 kPa Température : 20 °C ± 3 °C.

Reportez-vous à la fiche signalétique de performance pour la cartouche de rechange du système de filtration InSinkEerator modèle F-2000S : F-2000

Communiquez avec un agent de service pour toute réparation ou obtenir des pièces de rechange. Filtres de rechange Les cartouches F-1000 et F-2000 peuvent être commandées en composant le 800-558-5700, en visitant shop.insinkerator.com ou en communiquant avec un revendeur InSinkEerator autorisé.



Veuillez vous reporter au Guide de dépannage et/ou consulter notre site Web à [www.insinkerator.com](http://www.insinkerator.com) avant d'appeler AnswerLine®.

# DÉPANNAGE

PROBLÈME	CAUSE POSSIBLE	QUOI FAIRE
De l'eau et de la vapeur sortent du bec sans éclaboussant, sans activer le robinet du distributeur.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• L'ébullition se produit dans l'appareil. <i>Peut être normal durant le réglage initial.</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appuyez sur le levier du robinet pour faire sortir un peu d'eau du réservoir.</li> <li>• Réglez la température de l'eau en utilisant le cadran à l'avant du réservoir.</li> </ul> <p><i>Rappelez-vous qu'à des altitudes plus élevées, l'eau bout à des températures plus basses.</i></p>
L'eau n'est pas chaude.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• L'appareil n'est peut être pas branché.</li> <li>• La prise électrique ne fonctionne pas.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vérifiez si l'appareil est bien branché à une prise électrique convenablement mise à la terre.</li> <li>• Vérifiez si le coupe-circuit ou les fusibles fonctionnent convenablement.</li> <li>• Vérifiez si la prise n'est pas fermée par un interrupteur.</li> </ul>
L'eau est trop chaude ou pas assez chaude.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Le thermostat n'est pas ajusté selon vos besoins.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ajustez lentement le thermostat, puis appuyez sur la poignée du robinet pendant 20 secondes pour amener de l'eau fraîche à chauffer au nouveau réglage. Allouez de cinq à sept minutes pour que l'eau atteigne la nouvelle température.</li> </ul>
L'eau sort de l'évent au lieu du bec.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Le tube de sortie est bloqué.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vérifiez si le tube de sortie n'est pas tordu, coincé ou pincé.</li> <li>• Dévissez l'extrémité du bec et nettoyez tout débris qui aurait pu s'accumuler.</li> </ul>
L'eau s'égoutte par intermittence du bec/évent.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• La chambre d'expansion ne se vidange pas correctement en raison d'une faible pression d'eau.</li> <li>• Le bec est bloqué.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Débranchez l'appareil. Si l'égouttement ne s'arrête pas au bout de quelques minutes, vérifiez la soupape d'alimentation pour vous assurer si elle est bien ouverte et sans obstruction dans la conduite d'eau qui réduira la pression en dessous de 206 kPa (<i>p. ex., un robinet-vanne à étrier mal monté, un filtre d'eau bouché ou un robinet d'arrêt partiellement ouvert</i>).</li> <li>• Dévissez la pièce d'extrémité du bec et nettoyez tous les débris.</li> </ul>
L'eau s'égoutte constamment du bec/évent.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Des débris dans la conduite d'eau peuvent se trouver dans le siège de soupape du robinet, causant une fuite d'eau lente.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Dévissez la pièce d'extrémité du bec et nettoyez tous les débris.</li> <li>• Appuyez sur le levier de sept à dix fois pour bien rincer le robinet et les conduits.</li> </ul>
Vapeur divisée.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Débris dans les conduites du robinet.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Dévissez la pièce d'extrémité du bec et nettoyez tous les débris.</li> </ul>
Décoloration de l'eau/ apparence de rouille.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Corrosion de l'unité.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Débranchez et vidangez l'unité comme il est décrit dans la section Entreposage/drainage saisonnier à la page 49 de ce manuel. Si la décoloration de l'eau demeure après le drainage et le remplissage de l'unité, cessez de l'utiliser et communiquez avec un agent de service InSinkEerator autorisé.</li> </ul>

## PROBLÈMES DE FILTRATION

L'eau a un goût ou une odeur.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Le filtre a besoin d'être rincé.</li> <li>• La durée du filtre est expirée.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appuyez sur le robinet et laissez couler jusqu'à ce que l'eau soit froide. S'il n'y a pas de changement, remplacez la cartouche de filtre.</li> </ul>
Le nouveau filtre fuit ou n'est pas adapté.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• La tête et le support n'ont pas été tournés à fond.</li> <li>• Défectuosité du joint torique du filtre.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Retirez, inspectez et réinstallez la cartouche de filtre.</li> <li>• Enlevez le nouveau filtre, remplacez-le par l'ancien. Vérifiez le fonctionnement. S'il est adéquat, réinstallez le nouveau filtre et vérifiez à nouveau le fonctionnement.</li> </ul>
Pas de débit d'eau ou faible débit d'eau.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• La durée du filtre est expirée.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Remplacez la cartouche de filtre. <b>Reportez-vous à la page 49.</b></li> </ul>

Si vous avez toujours des problèmes, communiquez avec la ligne d'assistance AnswerLine® 1-800-558-5700.



CONTEMPORARY  
ANTIQUE  
TUSCAN  
MODERN

# Instant Hot Water Dispenser Owner's Manual

## Installation, Care & Use

Instalación, cuidado y uso

Installation, soin et utilisation

HWT-F1000S  
HWT-HP  
HWT-00



To see a tutorial of this installation:

Para ver un tutorial de esta instalación ingrese a

Pour voir un tutoriel de cette installation

<http://goo.gl/yYrFOA>



The Emerson logo is a trademark and a service mark of Emerson Electric Co. InSinkErator may make improvements and/or changes in the specifications at any time, in its sole discretion, without notice or obligation and further reserves the right to change or discontinue models.

©2014 InSinkErator, a business unit of Emerson Electric Co. All Rights Reserved.

El logotipo Emerson es una marca registrada y una marca de servicio de Emerson Electric Co.

InSinkErator puede realizar mejoras y/o modificaciones en las especificaciones en cualquier momento, y bajo su exclusivo criterio, sin previo aviso u obligación; además, se reserva el derecho de cambiar o suspender los modelos.

©2014 InSinkErator, una unidad comercial de Emerson Electric Co. Todos los derechos reservados.

Le logo Emerson est une marque de commerce et de service d'Emerson Electric Co.

InSinkErator se réserve le droit, à son entière discrétion, d'apporter en tout temps des améliorations ou des modifications aux spécifications, et ce, sans préavis ou obligation de sa part, ou de modifier ou de supprimer des modèles.

©2014 InSinkErator, une unité commerciale d'Emerson Electric Co. Tous droits réservés.

GN/HC1100  
GN/HC2200  
GN/HC2215  
H/HC3300



1.800.558.5700  
[www.insinkerator.com](http://www.insinkerator.com)





We are delighted that you have chosen the InSinkErator® Instant Hot Water Dispenser to be a part of your home. This unique appliance will save you time and effort in the kitchen, and you'll enjoy discovering new uses for it each day. That's exactly why millions of people are now using an InSinkErator Instant Hot Water Dispenser.

We are confident that by following our step-by-step instructions, you'll soon be enjoying the convenience of instant hot water.

## WHAT YOU SHOULD KNOW BEFORE YOU BEGIN

- For your satisfaction and safety, read all instructions, cautions and warnings before installing or using this instant hot water dispenser.
- This particular unit is not intended for commercial use.
- Make sure that all electrical wiring and connections conform to local codes.
- A standard 115-volt grounded electrical outlet is required under the sink for the dispenser's electrical power.
- The wall outlet powering your dispenser must have power supplied to it continuously.
- This outlet must be fused and should not be controlled by the same wall switch that operates the disposer, unless you have a SinkTop Switch™ from InSinkErator®.
- It is recommended that a dedicated control valve be installed on the cold water line supplying water to this system.
- If you suspect elevated levels of chlorine in your water, or your water has a rusty appearance before the installation of this unit, it is recommended to use our water filtration system.  
This product contains stainless steel. The manufacturer cannot guarantee against rusty water because of the number of factors that are involved beyond the manufacturer's control. However, the sudden appearance of rusty water discharged from the hot water dispenser may indicate the need for service or replacement of this product.
- The use of a water filter should NOT result in the water pressure to drop below 30 psi (207kPa). If it does, this will prevent your unit from operating properly.
- Moving parts inside the tank causing a rattling noise is normal.

## WHAT YOU NEED TO GET STARTED

### Equipment Required:

- Drill
- T-fitting
- Dedicated control valve
- Adjustable wrench
- Philips Screw Driver
- Pencil
- Tape Measure

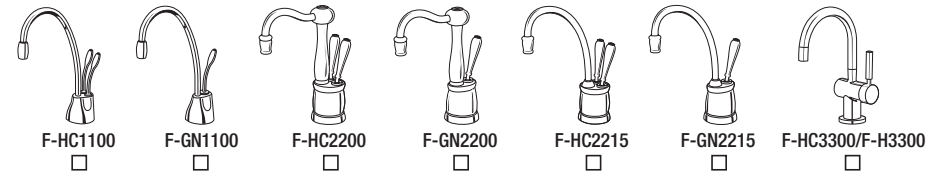
### Equipment You May Need:

- Anchors for drywall
- Hole saw
- Basin wrench
- Hole punch

If you intend to use the sprayer hole in your sink for your dispenser, you may need a basin wrench and a 1/8" plug or a 1/4" cap (**not supplied**) for the faucet sprayer hose line. **See Step 1B.**

If you need to cut a mounting hole in your stainless steel sink, you may need a 1 1/4" - 1 1/2" hole saw made for cutting stainless steel or a hole punch. Consult a professional if you are drilling into a surface other than stainless steel.

Identify the model of your instant hot water dispenser and record it here: \_\_\_\_\_



## HOW TO USE THIS INSTRUCTION MANUAL

These instructions are separated into main sections, indicated by numbers, and subsections, indicated by capital letters. The manual is setup this way to allow you to take a break at any point after completing a section or subsection without affecting the installation process.

What you'll see in the instruction manual:

### INSTALLING THE FAUCET

**A**

**NOTICE**

**Property Damage:** Do not pinch or break copper tubing. Do not distort the last 1 inch of tubing.

- Unpack dispenser components.
- On a firm, flat surface, carefully straighten the copper tubing.

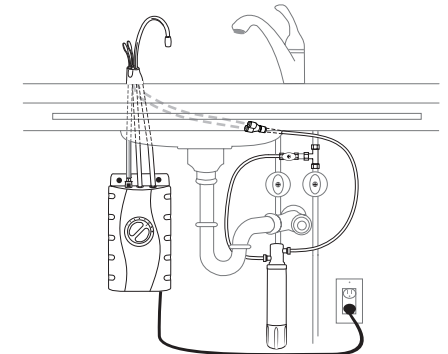
- 1** Provides a step-by-step narrative describing the installation step, with check boxes that can be marked as you progress through the installation.
- 2** Contains simple illustrations that provide visual instruction to support the narrative.
- 3** Important safety messages that will require your attention during the step.

**▲ WARNING** A potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

**▲ CAUTION** A potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury.

**NOTICE** Notice is used to address practices not related to personal injury.

## OVERVIEW OF A COMPLETED SETUP

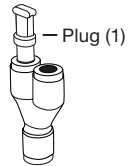
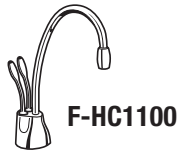
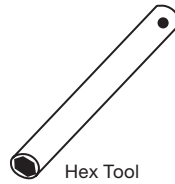
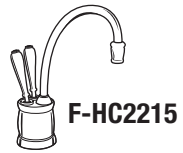
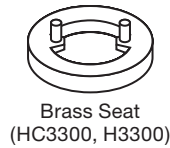


To see a tutorial of this installation:  
<http://goo.gl/yYrfOA>

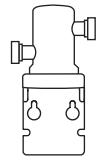
**NOTICE** Do not plug in the power to the hot water tank until Step 6C. To avoid permanent damage to the product, only operate the tank after it is filled with water.



# COMPONENTS IN THIS PACKAGE



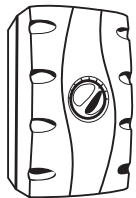
Y-Quick Connector



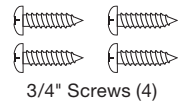
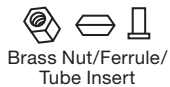
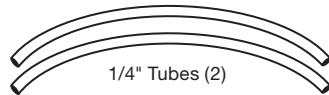
Filter Head



Filter Cartridge



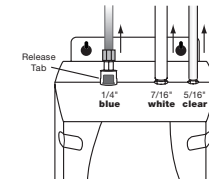
\*(filtration system optional)



If installing **BOTH** new faucet and new tank, skip to page 6.

## IF INSTALLING ONLY NEW FAUCET

**A**



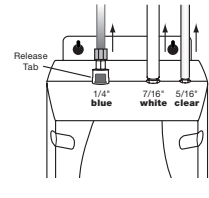
- Turn off water supply.
- Remove tubes from tank: At tank top, depress gray release tab into quick-connect fitting securing **blue** or **copper** 1/4" tube and gently pull line out of fitting. Pull **white** 7/16" tube and **clear** 5/16" tube off fittings.
- Remove existing faucet and continue to page 6.

### NOTICE

**Property Damage:** Unplug tank before disconnecting tubing.

## IF INSTALLING ONLY NEW TANK

**A**



- Turn off water supply.
- Remove tubes from tank: At tank top, depress gray release tab into quick-connect fitting securing **blue** tube and gently pull line out of fitting. Pull **white** 7/16" tube and **clear** 5/16" tube off fittings.
- Remove existing tank and continue to page 9.

### NOTICE

**Property Damage:** Do not pinch or break copper tubing. Do not distort the last 1 inch of tubing.

### NOTICE

Do not plug in the power to the hot water tank until Step 6C. To avoid permanent damage to the product, only operate the tank after it is filled with water.



Snap-connect fitting not included. Required when replacing tank manufactured prior to January 2006. Call the AnswerLine® 1-800-558-5700 to order.

To see a tutorial of this installation:

<http://goo.gl/yYrFOA>



**AnswerLine®**  
1-800-558-5700

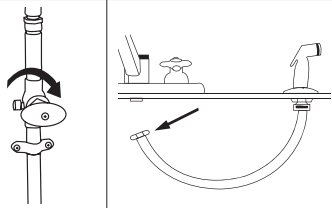
# START HERE

# 1

## PREPARATION

<b>A</b>	<b>Required minimum from center of hole to wall</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> Identify locations for the dispenser faucet, tank and filter. <input type="checkbox"/> Check to make sure there is proper clearance for dispenser handles to be fully opened. <input type="checkbox"/> Check to make sure counter is 3" thick or less. <input type="checkbox"/> Make sure there is a grounded electrical outlet under the sink.	
	F-HC1100 .....		2 $\frac{5}{8}$ "
	F-GN1100 .....		3 $\frac{1}{4}$ "
	F-HC2200 .....		2 $\frac{1}{8}$ "
	F-GN2200 .....		3 $\frac{1}{2}$ "
	F-HC2215 .....		2 $\frac{1}{8}$ "
	F-GN2215 .....		3 $\frac{1}{2}$ "
	F-HC3300 .....		2 $\frac{1}{2}$ "
	F-H3300.....		2 $\frac{1}{2}$ "
<b>Maximum counter thickness is 3".</b>			

The wall outlet for your dispenser must have power supplied to it continuously and must be fused. It should not be controlled by the same wall switch that operates your disposer, unless using an InSinkErator SinkTop Switch™.

<b>B</b>		<input type="checkbox"/> Turn off water supply. <input type="checkbox"/> If using the sink sprayer hose hole, remove nut that connects sprayer hose at bottom of faucet. <input type="checkbox"/> Using adjustable wrench, remove nut connecting sprayer washer flange in sprayer hole. <input type="checkbox"/> Plug hose opening with either a 1/8" plug or a 1/4" cap (not supplied).
	<p>If you have to drill through sink or countertop, you may need to rent or purchase the appropriate tools.</p>	

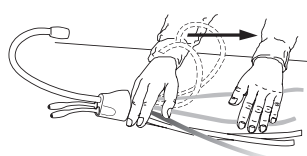
<b>C</b>	<b>Required Hole Size</b>	<b>What if you don't have a sprayer hole or don't want to use it?</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Many homeowners replace the soap dispenser in their sink with an instant hot water dispenser. <input type="checkbox"/> If drilling a hole into a stainless steel sink or counter top, you can cut a mounting hole for the dispenser with a hole saw for stainless steel, or you can use a hole punch.	
	F-HC1100 .....		1 $\frac{3}{8}$ " - 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ "
	F-GN1100 .....		1 $\frac{1}{4}$ " - 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ "
	F-HC2200 .....		1 $\frac{3}{8}$ " - 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ "
	F-GN2200 .....		1 $\frac{1}{4}$ " - 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ "
	F-HC2215 .....		1 $\frac{3}{8}$ " - 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ "
	F-GN2215 .....		1 $\frac{1}{4}$ " - 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ "
	F-HC3300 .....		1 $\frac{3}{8}$ " - 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ "
	F-H3300.....		1 $\frac{3}{8}$ " - 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ "
<b>Consult a professional before drilling into a surface other than stainless steel.</b>			

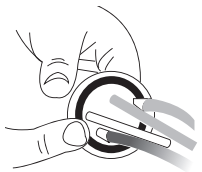


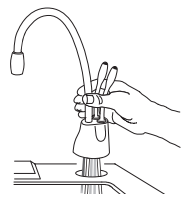
To see a tutorial of this installation:  
<http://goo.gl/yYrfOA>

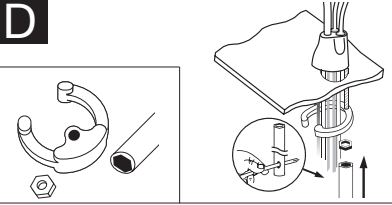
# 2

## INSTALLING THE FAUCET - 1100/2200/2215

<b>A</b>		<input type="checkbox"/> Unpack dispenser components. <input type="checkbox"/> On a firm, flat surface, carefully straighten the copper tubing.
	<p><b>NOTICE</b></p> <p><b>Property Damage:</b> Do not pinch or break copper tubing. Do not distort the last 1 inch of tubing.</p>	

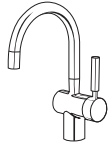
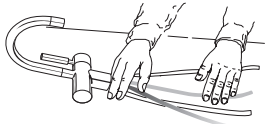
<b>B</b>		<input type="checkbox"/> Ensure that the black O-ring is properly seated in the base of the dispenser head (the groove on the underside of the dispenser).
	<p><b>Make sure to use rubber O-ring to ensure proper seal.</b></p>	

<b>C</b>		<input type="checkbox"/> Feed tubes down through the hole in the sink or countertop until the base is at rest on the sink or countertop surface.
	<p>To ease feeding of tubes through hole, first insert blue tube with quick-connect attachment and then insert the remaining tubes.</p> <p>An assistant may be needed to hold the dispenser head in place while securing the dispenser.</p>	

<b>D</b>		<input type="checkbox"/> From under the sink, place the semi-circular mounting plate onto the threaded stud. <input type="checkbox"/> Place hex nut onto the threaded stud. Ensure faucet head is at desired angle. <input type="checkbox"/> Insert screwdriver into hole on side of hex tool (creating a "T"), and use tool to tighten nut and secure faucet.
	<p><b>Semi-circular mounting plate should encircle all descending tubes and extend beyond sink hole when tight.</b></p>	

## INSTALLING THE FAUCET - 3300

A

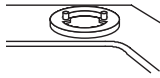


### NOTICE

**Property Damage:** Do not pinch or break tubing. Do not distort the last 1 inch of tubing.

- Unpack dispenser components.
  - The recommended installation for this faucet is dispenser handle on the right.
- The unique design allows the handle to be fully functional when placed to the right or left of faucet. Determine preferred handle placement before installing.

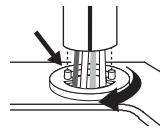
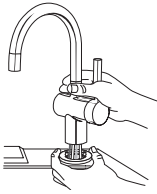
B



Wetting O-ring with water prior to inserting into brass seat helps hold ring in place during installation.

- Insert rubber O-ring into groove on brass seat.
- Place brass seat, O-ring side down, over hole in sink or countertop.

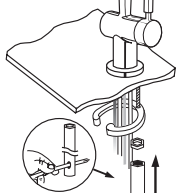
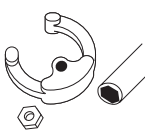
C



To ease feeding of tubes through hole, first insert blue tube with quick-connect attachment and then insert the remaining tubes.

- Holding brass seat in place, feed tubes down through the hole in sink or countertop until base touches brass seat.
- Rotate brass seat until the two retaining studs fit into the holes on the faucet base and base sits firmly on brass seat.

D



Semi-circular mounting plate should encircle all descending tubes and extend beyond sink hole when tight.

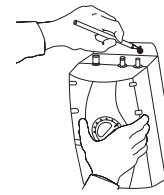
- From under the sink, place the semi-circular mounting plate onto the threaded stud.
- Place hex nut onto the threaded stud. Ensure dispenser handle is on preferred side and that faucet head is at desired angle.
- Insert screwdriver into hole on side of hex tool (creating a "T"), and use tool to tighten nut and secure faucet.

**CAUTION** Do not plug in the hot water tank Until Step 6C.

3

## MOUNTING THE TANK

A



Tank must be mounted level to ensure proper operation.

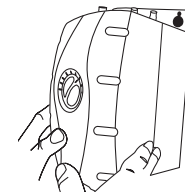
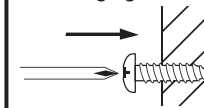
### NOTICE

**Property Damage:** Tank must be located within 16" of faucet and within 30" or less of a standard grounded outlet. DO NOT extend plumbing or electrical lines.

- Select a spot under the sink to mount tank vertically within reach of both plumbing and electrical connections. The tank should be within 16" or less of faucet water lines and within 30" or less of a standard grounded outlet.
- While holding tank in place on the spot selected for installation, use a pencil to mark locations for 2 hanging screws.

B

Leave 1/4" for hanging tank.



**Screws provided are for use in wood studs or cabinets only. Use wall anchors (not supplied) for installation into drywall.**

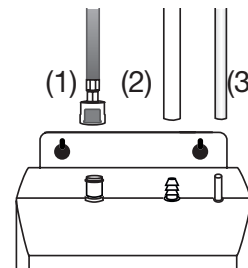
- Pre-drill 1/8" pilot holes at marks.
- Turn screws into pre-drilled holes, leaving 1/4" exposed.
- Hang the tank on the screws.
- Tighten the screws with only 1/2 turn clockwise.

Mount tank vertically in an area that allows clearance on the underside of the tank for drainage, if necessary. DO NOT over tighten screws.

4

## CONNECTING FAUCET TO TANK

A



- Without depressing the gray button, place the snap-connect fitting at the end of the **blue** tube onto the left fitting on the tank, pushing until it clicks into place. (1)
- Slip the flexible **white** 7/16" tube over barbed steel fitting and slide down approximately 1/2". (2)
- Slip the **clear** 5/16" tube over the smooth plastic fitting and slide down approximately 1/2". (3)
- Check for pinched or crimped tubes.

### NOTICE

**Property Damage:** Pinched or blocked water lines may cause damage to the dispenser tank. Check to make sure tubes are connected properly and are pushed down as far as possible.

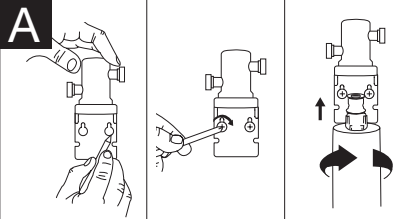
Hose clamps are not needed for any of the connections.



To see a tutorial of this installation:  
<http://goo.gl/yYrFOA>

**AnswerLine®**  
1-800-558-5700

# 5 INSTALLING FILTRATION SYSTEM

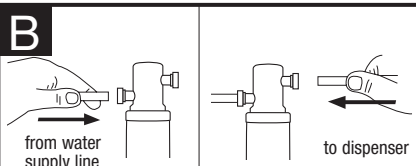


## WARNING

**Personal Injury:** Do not locate filter above an outlet or other electrical device. Install head and bracket so that connections require no stretching, kinking or pinching of tubing.

**Screws provided are for use in wood studs or cabinets only. Use wall anchors (not supplied) for installation into drywall.**

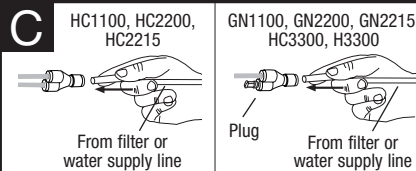
- Separate cartridge from filter head.
- Mark hole locations for filter head and bracket in a spot that allows for filter replacement.
- Drill 1/8" starter holes and attach bracket to wall with wood screws, turning until snug.
- Insert cartridge into filter head. Top surface of cartridge will become flush with bottom of filter head when fully engaged.



## NOTICE

**Property Damage:** Tube runs need to form to the cabinet's contours to allow storage space with no sharp bends. Tubes need clean, perpendicular, burr-free cuts to ensure a true fit.

- Determine length of tubing required, then cut to length making sure the cut is perpendicular and burr-free.
- Insert a **white** 1/4" tube into inlet side of filter head until it stops. **Press in again to ensure a secure fit.**
- Insert the other **white** 1/4" tube into outlet side of filter head until it stops. **Press in again to ensure a secure fit.**

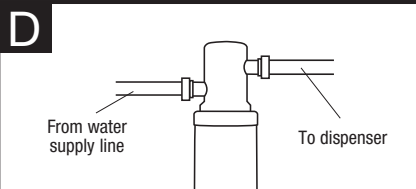


## NOTICE

**Property Damage:** Do not extend the lines farther than the 16" provided. Ensure tube(s) and "Y" connector are securely fit.

- Insert the copper tube(s) from the dispenser into "Y" quick-connector using the plug for hot-only models.
- Connect the **white** 1/4" tube from the right outlet on the filter head into the quick-connect fitting until it stops. **Press in again to ensure a secure fit.**

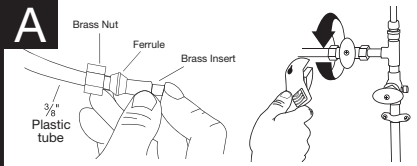
To remove tube(s) or plug from quick-connector, depress the release ring and gently pull away.



It is normal for approximately 2 oz. of water to discharge when filter is removed.

- Connect remaining **white** 1/4" tube to incoming water supply line. (See Step 6.)

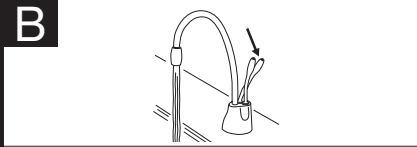
# 6 FINAL WATER CONNECTION



## NOTICE

**Property Damage:** Join remaining tube to cold water supply only.

- Install a T-fitting (*not included*) onto the cold water supply line.
- Install dedicated water control valve with 1/4" compression fitting.
- At the end of the **white** 1/4" tube from the filter or quick-connector, slide the supplied brass nut and ferrule over the tube and then push in the brass tube insert.
- Insert the **white** 1/4" tube into the 1/4" compression fitting and tighten.

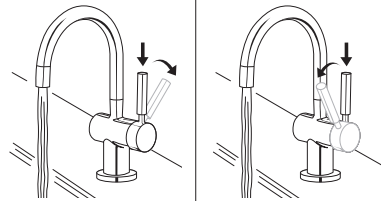


## WARNING

**Scalding Hazard:** The faucet dispenses near-boiling (212°F) water which can instantly cause scalds or burns. Use care when operating this appliance.

- Turn on water supply.
- Open hot water faucet to expel trapped air.
- For the F-1000S and F-1000, flush 2.25 gallons through filter before use (approximately 3 minutes). For the F-2000S and F-2000, flush 3 gallons through filter before use (approximately 4 minutes).

Dispensing Hot Water (HC3300, H3300)      Dispensing Cool Water (HC3300)



## WARNING

**Scalding Hazard:** The faucet dispenses near-boiling (212°F) water which can instantly cause scalds or burns. Use care when operating this appliance.

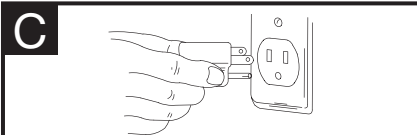
## Operating Instructions for Indulge™ Modern Faucets

Featuring OptiPush™ hot side activation with automatic shut off and cool side Stay-On™, which keeps the faucet open when dispensing cool water.

- HC3300:** To dispense instant hot water, first **press down** on the faucet handle and then push the handle backward in the direction of the red indicator on the top of the handle. To dispense cool water, first **press down** on the faucet handle and then pull the handle forward in the direction of the blue indicator on the handle.
- Note:** Only applies when handle is mounted on left side.

Featuring OptiPush™ hot side activation with automatic shut off.

- H3300:** To dispense instant hot water, first **press down** on the faucet handle and then push the handle backward in the direction of the red indicator on the top of the handle.



## NOTICE

**Property Damage:** A standard grounded outlet within 30" of the dispenser is required under the sink. Do not use an extension cord set with the dispenser.

- Check all connections to ensure they are tight and that there are no leaks.
- Plug in instant hot water tank.

**Water will be cold at first.**

**Allow 12-15 minutes for water to reach target temperature.**

**Gurgling or hissing is normal during the initial heating cycle.**

**If the water coming from the faucet is not hot 15 minutes after the unit has been plugged in – or for other issues related to the operation of your instant hot water dispenser – refer to the "Troubleshooting" section on Page 17.**



To see a tutorial of this installation:  
<http://goo.gl/yYrFOA>

# IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

- Use this water heater only for its intended use as described in this manual.
- This appliance is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of appliance by a person responsible for their safety. Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with hot water tap. To reduce the risk of injury, close supervision is required when an appliance is used near children.
- Do not operate this product if it has been or appears to be damaged in any manner or after the product malfunctions, or is dropped. Return the complete product immediately to your retail dealer for inspection, and if necessary, adjustment or repair.

<b>⚠ WARNING</b>	To reduce the risk associated with choking: Do not allow children under 3 years of age to have access to small parts during the installation of this product.
------------------	---

<b>⚠ WARNING</b>	<b>Electric Shock Hazard:</b> To reduce the risk of electric shock, do not immerse or expose the product, flexible cord or plug to rain, moisture or any liquid or when standing in or on damp or wet surfaces. If any electrical product falls into water, UNPLUG it immediately. DO NOT REACH INTO THE WATER. <b>Important:</b> Prior to reconnecting to the power supply, the product should be inspected by a qualified technician.
------------------	---

<b>⚠ WARNING</b>	<b>Personal Injury/Property Damage:</b> To reduce the risk associated with hazardous voltage due to an installer drilling through existing electric wiring in the area of installation: Do not install near electric wiring which may be in path of a drilling tool when selecting the position to mount the system bracket. Also avoid the risk of drilling into water pipes which may result in property damage.
------------------	---

**Important:** Always arrange the power cord so that it cannot come in contact with hot surfaces.

- Do not disconnect the product from the power supply by pulling on the cord.
- Do not use the product for other than its intended use as described in these instructions. The use of accessory attachments other than those recommended by the manufacturer may cause safety hazards.
- The recommended connection may be made to an existing cold water line with a branch terminating with a shutoff valve, a pressure relief and dual check non-return valve sited adjacent to the product.

<b>⚠ WARNING</b>	<b>Electric Shock Hazard:</b> Using an ungrounded (no earth ground) or improperly connected appliance can result in serious injury or death from electrical shock.
------------------	--

**This appliance must be earthed (grounded).** This steaming hot water tap is equipped with a cord that has a grounding conductor and earth ground pin. The plug must be connected to an appropriate outlet that is properly installed and earthed (grounded) in accordance with all local codes and ordinances. Do not modify the plug provided with the appliance – if it will not fit the outlet, have a proper outlet installed by a qualified electrician. Check with a qualified electrician or tradesman if you are in doubt as to whether the steaming hot water tap is properly earthed (grounded).

<b>⚠ CAUTION</b>	<b>Personal Injury/Property Damage:</b> This tank is a non-pressurized tank. DO NOT modify this system. DO NOT close vent tube or connect other types of taps or valves to the tank. Use only the InSinkErator tap supplied. Use only parts provided. Contact an authorized InSinkErator Service agent for repairs or replacement components.
------------------	---

<b>⚠ WARNING</b>	To reduce the risk associated with the ingestion of contaminants: Do not use with water that is microbiologically unsafe or of unknown quality without adequate disinfection before or after the system.
------------------	--

A steaming hot water tap, like any water heater, has a limited life and will eventually fail. To avoid possible property damage and personal injury, this steaming hot water tap should be regularly examined for leakage and/or corrosion and replaced when necessary. A drain pan, plumbed to an appropriate drain or outfitted with a leak detector, should be used in those applications where any leakage could cause property damage.

<b>⚠ WARNING</b>	<b>Fire Hazard:</b> To minimize possibility of fire, DO NOT store flammable items such as rags, paper or aerosol cans near the tank. DO NOT store or use petrol or other flammable vapors and liquids in the vicinity of this or any other appliance.
------------------	---

<b>⚠ WARNING</b>	<b>Leak Hazard:</b> Regularly inspect dispenser and plumbing fittings for leaks, which can cause property damage and could result in personal injury.
------------------	---

# IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION

## NOTICE

**Property Damage:** To reduce the risk associated with property damage due to water leakage or flooding, and to ensure optimal performance:

- Read and follow Use Instructions before installation and use of this system.
- Installation and use MUST comply with all state and local plumbing codes.

### System Requirements (Hot Water Tank, Filtration System and Dispenser):

- The flexible vent and outlet tubes must be correctly connected to the tap supplied by the manufacturer. They must not be obstructed or connected to a normal type tap or any other type.
- Do not install on hot water supply lines. The maximum operating water temperature of this system is 100°F (37.8°C). Attach to cold water supply only.
- Do not install if water pressure exceeds 125 psi (862 kPa). If your water pressure exceeds 80 psi (552 kPa), you must install a pressure limiting valve. Contact a plumbing professional if you are uncertain how to check your water pressure.
- Do not install where water hammer conditions may occur. If water hammer conditions exist you must install a water hammer arrester. Contact a plumbing professional if you are uncertain how to check for this condition.
- Where a backflow prevention device is installed on a water system, a device for controlling pressure due to thermal expansion must be installed.
- Protect from freezing, shut off water supply, remove filter cartridge, drain hot water tank and tubing when temperatures are expected to drop below 40° F (4.4° C); see Seasonal Storage/Drainage section.
- Do not use a torch or other high temperature sources near system, cartridges, plastic fittings or plastic plumbing.
- Do not install near water pipes which will be in path of a drilling tool when selecting the position to mount the bracket.
- Mount system in such a position as to prevent it from being struck by other items used in the area of installation.
- Ensure that the location and fasteners will support the weight of the system when installed and full of water.
- Ensure all tubing and fittings are secure and free of leaks.
- Do not install using rigid piping. System intended for use with plastic water lines (such as PEX tubing, PE tubing, PP tubing).
- Do not install this system if any of the quick connect collets are missing from the filter head or Y-Quick Connector. Contact an authorized InSinkErator Service agent if collets are missing from any fittings.
- For systems using two handle HC model faucets, operate only one handle at a time.
- Important: Do not allow the unit to continuously boil.
- Regularly inspect the system. If there are signs of water leakage, turn off the water supply and contact an authorized InSinkErator Service agent.
- A drain pan, plumbed to an appropriate drain or outfitted with a leak detector, should be used in those applications where any leakage could cause property damage.
- For questions or concerns, please contact an authorized InSinkErator Service agent (see back page for contact information).

### Additional Consideration when Utilizing Filtration System:

- The disposable filter cartridge MUST be replaced every 6 months, at the rated capacity or sooner if a noticeable reduction in flow rate occurs.
- Failure to replace the disposable filter cartridge at recommended intervals may lead to reduced filter performance and cracks in the filter housing, causing water leakage or flooding.
- Protect from freezing, remove filter cartridge when temperatures are expected to drop below 40° F (4.4° C).
- Do not install systems in areas where ambient temperatures may go above 100°F (37.8°C).
- Do not install in direct sunlight or outdoors.

**AnswerLine®**  
1-800-558-5700



# IN-HOME FULL SERVICE LIMITED WARRANTY

**Dispenser:** 5-year warranty  
**Stainless Steel Tank:** 3-year warranty  
**Filtration System:** 1-year warranty (excluding replaceable filtration cartridge)

This warranty is provided by InSinkErator, a business unit of Emerson Electric Co., ("InSinkErator" or "Manufacturer" or "we" or "our" or "us") to the original consumer owner of the InSinkErator product with which this warranty is provided (the "InSinkErator Product"), and any subsequent owner of the residence in which the Product was originally installed ("Customer" or "you" or "your").

InSinkErator warrants to Customer that your InSinkErator Product will be free from defects in materials and workmanship, subject to the exclusions described below, for the "Warranty Period", commencing on the later of: (a) the date your InSinkErator Product is originally installed, (b) the date of purchase, or (c) the date of manufacture as identified by your InSinkErator Product serial number. You will be required to show written documentation supporting (a) or (b). If you are unable to provide documentation supporting either (a) or (b), the Warranty Period commencement date will be determined by Manufacturer, in its sole and absolute discretion, based upon your InSinkErator Product serial number.

#### What is Covered

This warranty covers defects in materials or workmanship, subject to the exclusions below, in InSinkErator Products used by a consumer Customer for residential use only, and includes all replacement parts and labor costs. YOUR SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDY UNDER THIS LIMITED WARRANTY SHALL BE LIMITED TO REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT OF THE INSINKERATOR PRODUCT.

#### What is not Covered

This limited warranty does not extend to and expressly excludes:

- Losses or damages or the inability to operate your InSinkErator Product resulting from conditions beyond the Manufacturer's control including, without limitation, accident, alteration, misuse, abuse, neglect, negligence (other than Manufacturer's), failure to install, maintain, assemble, or mount the InSinkErator Product in accordance with Manufacturer's instructions or local electrical and plumbing codes.
- Wear and tear expected to occur during the normal course of use, including without limitation, cosmetic rust, scratches, dents or comparable and reasonably expected losses or damages.

In addition to the above exclusions, this warranty does not apply to InSinkErator Products installed in a commercial or industrial application.

#### No Other Express Warranty Applies

This warranty is the sole and exclusive warranty provided to the Customer identified above. No other express warranty, written or verbal, applies. No employee, agent, dealer, or other person is authorized to alter this limited warranty or make any other warranty on behalf of Manufacturer. The terms of this warranty shall not be modified by the Manufacturer, the original owner, or their respective successors or assigns.

#### What we will do to Correct Problems

If your InSinkErator Product does not operate in accordance with the documentation provided to you, or you have questions concerning your InSinkErator Product or how to determine when service is needed, please call the toll free InSinkErator AnswerLine at 1 (800) 558-5700, or visit our website at [www.insinkerator.com](http://www.insinkerator.com). You may also notify us at: InSinkErator Service Center, 4700 21st Street, Racine, Wisconsin 53406 USA.

The following information must be provided as part of your warranty claim: your name, address, phone number, your InSinkErator Product model and serial number, and if necessary, upon request, written confirmation of either: (a) the date shown on your installation receipt, or (b) the date shown on your purchase receipt.

Manufacturer or its authorized service representative will determine, in its sole and absolute discretion, if your InSinkErator Product is covered under this warranty. You will be given the contact information for your closest authorized InSinkErator Service Center. Please contact your InSinkErator Service Center directly to receive in home warranty repair or replacement service. Only an authorized InSinkErator service representative may provide warranty service. InSinkErator is not responsible for warranty claims arising from work performed on your InSinkErator Product by anyone other than an authorized InSinkErator service representative.

If a covered claim is made during the Warranty Period, Manufacturer will, through its authorized service representative, either repair or replace your InSinkErator Product. Cost of replacement parts or a new InSinkErator Product, and cost of labor for repair or installation of the replacement InSinkErator Product are provided at no cost to you. Repair or replacement shall be determined by Manufacturer or its authorized service representative in their sole discretion. All repair and replacement services will be provided to you at your home. If Manufacturer determines that your InSinkErator Product must be replaced rather than repaired, the warranty on the replacement InSinkErator Product will be limited to the unexpired term remaining in the original Warranty Period.

#### Limitation of Liability

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL MANUFACTURER OR ITS AUTHORIZED SERVICE REPRESENTATIVES BE LIABLE FOR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY ECONOMIC LOSS, WHETHER RESULTING FROM NONPERFORMANCE, USE, MISUSE OR INABILITY TO USE THE INSINKERATOR PRODUCT OR THE MANUFACTURER'S OR ITS AUTHORIZED SERVICE REPRESENTATIVE'S NEGLIGENCE. MANUFACTURER SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES CAUSED BY DELAY IN PERFORMANCE AND IN NO EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE CLAIM OR CAUSE OF ACTION (WHETHER BASED IN CONTRACT, INFRINGEMENT, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, OTHER SORT OR OTHERWISE), SHALL MANUFACTURER'S LIABILITY TO YOU EXCEED THE PRICE PAID BY THE ORIGINAL OWNER FOR THE INSINKERATOR PRODUCT.

The term "consequential damages" shall include, but not be limited to, loss of anticipated profits, business interruption, loss of use or revenue, cost of capital or loss or damage to property or equipment.

Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation may not apply to you. This warranty gives you specific legal rights and you may also have other rights which vary from state to state.

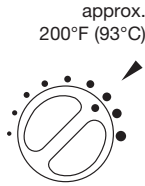
# CARE AND USE

## ⚠ WARNING

**Electric Shock Hazard:** To prevent electrical shock, disconnect power before servicing unit. Use only a properly earthed (grounded) and polarized electric outlet.

## ADJUSTING THE THERMOSTAT

Factory temperature pre-set is 200°F (93°C) (205°F (96°C) for HWT-HP Tank)). **To reset the thermostat to 200°F (93°C) (205°F (96°C) for HWT-HP Tank)), turn the indicator one notch to the right of vertical.** After adjusting, depress the tap handle for 20 seconds for water to re-heat to the new setting.



- To adjust water temperature, turn thermostat dial on the front of the tank clockwise to increase temperature or turn anticlockwise to decrease temperature. Repeat if necessary. All changes should be minimal.

## ⚠ WARNING

**Scalding Hazard:** Do not allow water to boil. May result in severe burns.

## SEASONAL STORAGE/DRAINAGE

Anytime the steaming hot water tap is not used for extended periods of time, unplug and drain unit. If it is below freezing you will need to unplug the unit and drain it.

- Disconnect power from unit (unplug unit).
- Push hot water tap lever and allow water to flow until it is cool.
- Shut the cold water tap off at the valve.
- Disconnect tubes from the tank.
- Unhook tank from wall.
- Hold tank upside down and drain the water into the sink.
- Towel dry any water drippings from tank area.
- Reinstall tank to wall and reconnect tubes.
- Remove and discard filter cartridge, if applicable.
- To put back into working order, install new filter cartridge (if applicable) and turn on cold water supply at valve. Depress the hot water dispenser faucet lever and hold until water flows from the spout. Reconnect the electrical cord.

## CLEANING THE TAP AND TANK

- Only use mild cleaners to clean the tap and plastic components.
- Cleaners with acids, abrasives, alkaline, and organic solvents will result in deterioration of the plastic components and void the warranty.

## FILTER GUIDE AND REPLACEMENT

Replace filter cartridge when there is an obvious decrease in water flow to the tap or if there is an objectionable taste or odor to the water.

When the inlet and outlet ports have been closed and the filter's internal pressure has been relieved, water (about 2oz; 60ml) will discharge from vent line.

If the new filter cartridge cannot be inserted, insert the old one and turn until it stops, remove it and then retry the new cartridge.

The disposable filter cartridge MUST be replaced every 6 months, at the rated capacity or sooner if a noticeable reduction in flow rate occurs.

Filter replacement instructions:

- Replace with an InSinkErator® filter.
- Place pan or dish towel under the filter to catch water drainage during change.
- Slowly turn the cartridge anticlockwise completely until it stops (1/4 turn).
- Pull cartridge straight down and discard.
- Insert new cartridge into filter head.
- Top surface of cartridge will become flush with the bottom of the filter head when fully engaged.
- Turn the cartridge clockwise until it stops (1/4 turn).
- Open tap to expel trapped air.
- Run water for 3 minutes before usage.

## ⚠ CAUTION

### Personal Injury:

- Regularly check for signs of corrosion by examining the appearance of the dispensed water every three (3) months.
- If there is any discoloration or rusty appearance, unplug and drain unit as described in the Seasonal Storage/Drainage section on this page of the manual.
- If the water discoloration remains after draining and refilling unit, discontinue use and contact an authorized InSinkErator service agent.

# FILTRATION INFORMATION

The InSinkErator Instant Hot Water Dispenser Filtration System offers two levels of filtration, depending on the filter used: **F-1000S** is intended for use in filtering particulates, chlorine taste and odor from drinking water, and has not been evaluated for other uses; **F-2000S** reduces particulates, chlorine taste and odor, plus cysts, lead, mercury, asbestos, benzene, atrazine, 2,4-D, Lindane, Carbofuran and p-Dichlorobenzene. The system is typically installed (near or beneath a sink) where filtered drinking water is desired, and must be installed, operated and maintained as specified in the installation and use instructions.

## NOTICE

To reduce the risk associated with property damage due to water leakage or flooding:

- Read and follow Use Instructions provided with the original system before installation and use of this product.

To reduce the risk of water leakage or flooding, and to ensure optimal filter performance:

- Change the disposable filter cartridge every six months or sooner if you observe a noticeable reduction in water flow rate.
- Failure to replace the disposable filter cartridge at recommended intervals may lead to reduced filter performance and cracks in the filter housing, causing water leakage or flooding.
- For systems using two handle HC model faucets, operate only one handle at a time.
- For questions or concerns, please contact Customer Service at 1-800-558-5700.

## WARNING

Do not use with water that is microbiologically unsafe or of unknown quality without adequate disinfection before or after the system.

### F-1000 Cartridge (included with this system) Chemical & Mechanical Reduction Filter Specifications:

This cartridge provides mechanical and chemical reduction of chlorine taste & odor and particulate class III.



Tested & Certified by NSF International against NSF/ANSI Standard 42 in the following InSinkErator Systems Only: GN1100, HC1100, GN2200, HC2200, GN2215, HC2215, H3300 or HC3300 for the reduction of claims specified on the Performance Data Sheet. For systems using two handle HC model faucets, operate only one handle at a time.

Pressure: 30-120 (207-827 kPa) psi  
Temperature: 33°F - 100°F  
Flow Rate: 0.75 gpm  
Capacity: 500 gallons

**Filter Capacity:** 500 gallons, depending on local water conditions. Note that while the testing was performed under standard laboratory conditions, actual performance may vary. Do not use with water that is microbiologically unsafe or of unknown quality without adequate disinfection before or after the system. For cold water use only. Systems must be installed and operated in accordance with the Manufacturer's recommended procedures and guidelines. See warranty card for warranty. For service and parts, contact your local dealer or InSinkErator® directly at 1-800-558-5700.

Contaminant Reduction	Average Influent	Influent Challenge Concentration, Except As Noted, Units Apply to Each Row.	Avg. Product Water	Average % Reduction	NSF Red. Requirements	NSF Test
Chlorine Taste & Odor	2.1 mg/L	2.0 mg/L ± 10%	0.06 mg/L	97.0%	≥ 50%	J-00082587
Nominal Particulate Class III, ≥5 µm to <15 µm	270,000 pts/mL	At least 10,000 particles/mL	82 pts/mL	99.9%	≥85%	J-00119308

**Application guidelines/Water Supply Parameters for NSF Testing:** Service flow of 0.75 gpm, community or private well water supply, water pressure of 20-120 psi (138-827 kPa), water temperature of 33°F-100°F Except as noted, all testing performed at pH = 7.5 ± 0.5, Flow: 0.75 gpm, Pressure: 60 psi, Temp: 20±3°C.

Refer to the Performance Data Sheet for InSinkErator Filter System Model F-2000S  
Replacement Cartridge: F-2000

Contact an authorized InSinkErator service agent for repairs or replacement components. Replacement filters F-1000 and F-2000 can be ordered by calling 800-558-5700, visiting shop.insinkerator.com, or by contacting an authorized InSinkErator reseller.



Please read Troubleshooting Guide and/or visit [www.insinkerator.com](http://www.insinkerator.com) before calling AnswerLine®

# TROUBLESHOOTING

PROBLEM	POSSIBLE CAUSE	WHAT TO DO
Water and steam spits forcefully from spout without turning on the dispenser faucet.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unit is boiling.</li> </ul> <p><i>May be normal during initial setup.</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Activate faucet lever to release some water from the tank.</li> <li>• Adjust water temperature using dial on tank front.</li> </ul> <p><i>Remember that at higher altitudes, water boils at lower temperatures.</i></p>
Water is not hot.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The unit is unplugged.</li> <li>• The electric outlet is inoperative.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure the unit is connected to a properly grounded electric outlet.</li> <li>• Make sure the circuit breaker or fuses are functioning properly.</li> <li>• Check that the outlet is not switched off.</li> </ul>
Water is too hot or not hot enough.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Thermostat is not adjusted to your needs.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adjust the thermostat slowly, then activate faucet lever for 20 seconds to bring in fresh water to be heated at the new setting. Allow 5-7 minutes for water to reach new temperature.</li> </ul>
Water comes out the vent instead of spout.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Outlet tube is blocked.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check that outlet tube is not kinked, twisted or pinched.</li> <li>• Unscrew spout end piece and clean out any debris.</li> </ul>
Water is dripping from the spout/vent intermittently.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The expansion chamber isn't draining properly due to low water pressure.</li> <li>• The spout is blocked.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unplug the unit. If the dripping doesn't stop after a few minutes, check the supply valve to ensure that is fully open and there are no obstructions in the water line reducing the pressure below 30 psi (i.e., a poorly mounted saddle valve, a clogged water filter, or a partially opened shut-off valve).</li> <li>• Unscrew spout end piece and clean out any debris.</li> </ul>
Water is dripping from the spout/vent constantly.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Debris in the water line may be in the faucet valve seat causing a slow water leak.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unscrew spout end piece and clean out any debris.</li> <li>• Activate faucet lever 7-10 times to flush faucet &amp; lines.</li> </ul>
Divided stream.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Debris in the end piece.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unscrew spout end piece and clean out any debris.</li> </ul>
Water discoloration/rusty appearance.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Corrosion of unit.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unplug and drain unit as described in the Seasonal Storage/Drainage Section on page 15 of this manual. If the water discoloration remains after draining and refilling unit, discontinue use and contact an authorized InSinkErator service agent.</li> </ul>

## FILTRATION ISSUES

Water taste or odor.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Filter needs to be flushed out.</li> <li>• Life of filter has expired.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Activate the faucet lever and run until the water is cold. If there is no change, replace filter cartridge.</li> </ul>
New filter leaks or doesn't fit.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Head and bracket not fully rotated.</li> <li>• Filter O-ring breach.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Remove, inspect, reinstall filter cartridge.</li> <li>• Remove new filter, replace with old filter. Check operation. If OK, reinstall new filter and recheck operation.</li> </ul>
No water flow or low water flow.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Life of filter has expired.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace filter cartridge. <b>See page 15.</b></li> </ul>

If you are still experiencing trouble call the AnswerLine® 1-800-558-5700.





Dispensador de agua caliente instantánea

# Manual del usuario

Instalación, cuidado y uso

Installation, Care & Use

Installation, soin et utilisation

CONTEMPORARY  
ANTIQUE  
TUSCAN  
MODERN

HWT-F1000S  
HWT-HP  
HWT-OO



Para ver un tutorial de esta instalación ingrese a  
<http://goo.gl/yYrFOA>



GN/HC1100  
GN/HC2200  
GN/HC2215  
H/HC3300

Nos complace que haya elegido el dispensador de agua caliente instantánea InSinkErator® para formar parte de su hogar. Con este singular electrodoméstico usted ahorrará tiempo y esfuerzo en su cocina, y disfrutará al descubrir un nuevo uso cada día. Es por eso que millones de personas utilizan hoy en día el dispensador de agua caliente instantánea InSinkErator.

Confiamos en que al aplicar las instrucciones paso por paso, usted estará disfrutando pronto de los beneficios del agua caliente instantánea.

## LO QUE USTED DEBE SABER ANTES DE COMENZAR

- Para su satisfacción y propia seguridad, lea todas las instrucciones, así como los enunciados de precaución y advertencia antes de instalar o de utilizar su dispensador de agua instantánea.
- Esta unidad en particular no está preparada para uso comercial.
- Verifique que todo el cableado y conexiones eléctricas cumplan con las especificaciones de las normas de su localidad.
- El dispensador debe enchufarse en una toma eléctrica estándar de 115 voltios con conexión a tierra ubicada bajo el fregadero.
- Esta toma eléctrica debe tener energía ininterrumpida.
- La toma debe contar con un fusible y no debe ser controlada por el mismo interruptor de pared con el que funciona el dispensador, excepto si usted tiene un interruptor marca SinkTop Switch de InSinkErator®.
- Se recomienda la instalación de una válvula de corte en la línea de agua fría que alimenta de agua al sistema.
- Si usted sospecha niveles elevados de cloro en el agua, o si el agua tiene una apariencia ferrosa antes de instalar esta unidad, se recomienda utilizar nuestro sistema de filtración de agua.  
Este producto contiene acero inoxidable. El fabricante no puede garantizar contra el agua ferrosa debido a la cantidad de factores que están involucrados más allá del control del fabricante. No obstante, la apariencia repentina de agua ferrosa descargada del distribuidor de agua caliente puede indicar la necesidad de servicio o reemplazo de este producto.
- El uso de un filtro de agua NO DEBE causar disminución de la presión por abajo de 30 psi (207 kPa). En caso de ocurrir, esto impedirá el funcionamiento correcto de la unidad.
- Las partes internas del tanque provocan un traqueteo normal.

## LO QUE USTED NECESITA PARA COMENZAR

### Herramientas:

- Taladro
- Conector "T"
- Válvula de control dedicada
- Llave ajustable
- Destornillador Philips
- Lápiz
- Cinta métrica

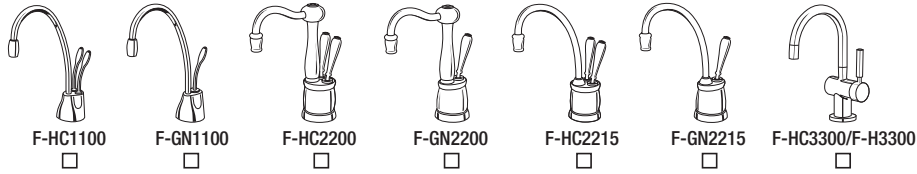
### Equipo que puede necesitar:

- Tarugos para panel de yeso
- Broca corta-círculos
- Llave para fregadero
- Punzón

Si tiene planeado usar el orificio del rociador del fregadero para el dispensador, es posible que necesite una llave para fregadero y un tapón de 1/8" o 1/4" (**no incluido**) para la manguera del rociador. **Vea el paso 1B.**

Si necesita hacer un orificio para montaje en un fregadero de acero inoxidable, es posible que necesite una broca corta-círculos de 1 1/4" a 1 1/2" para cortar el acero inoxidable o un punzón. Si va a perforar una superficie que no sea de acero inoxidable, solicite los servicios de un profesional.

Identifique el número de modelo de su dispensador y anótelo aquí: \_\_\_\_\_



## CÓMO USAR ESTE MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES

Estas instrucciones están divididas en apartados principales indicados por números, y apartados secundarios indicados por letras mayúsculas. El manual está organizado en esta forma para permitir al usuario hacer una pausa en cualquier momento después de terminar un apartado principal o secundario sin afectar el proceso de instalación.

Lo que usted verá en el manual de instrucciones:

**A INSTALACIÓN DEL GRIFO**

- Desempaque los componentes del dispensador.
- Enderece con cuidado el tubo de cobre sobre una superficie firme y plana.

**AVISO**

**Daños materiales:** No apriete ni rompa el tubo de cobre. No deforme la última pulgada (2.5 cm) del extremo del tubo de cobre.

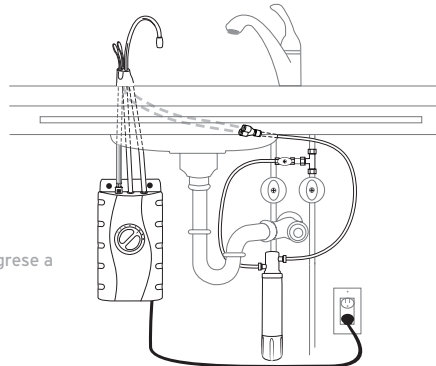
- 1** Describe paso a paso en forma narrativa el proceso de instalación, con cuadros que usted puede ir marcando conforme avanza en la instalación.
- 2** Contiene ilustraciones sencillas como ayuda visual para la narración.
- 3** Mensajes importantes de seguridad a los que debe prestar atención durante la instalación.

**⚠ ADVERTENCIA** Una situación potencialmente peligrosa que si no se evita podría causar la muerte o lesiones graves.

**⚠ PRECAUCIÓN** Una situación potencialmente peligrosa que si no se evita podría causar lesiones menores o moderadas.

**AVISO** Aviso hace referencia a prácticas que no presentan riesgos de generar lesiones personales.

## VISTA GENERAL DE LA INSTALACIÓN TERMINADA

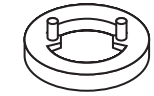


Para ver un tutorial de esta instalación ingrese a <http://goo.gl/yYrfOA>

**AVISO**

No conecte la corriente al tanque de agua caliente hasta llegar al paso 6C. Para evitar que el producto se dañe permanentemente, solo opere el tanque después de que esté lleno de agua.

## CONTENIDO DE ESTE PAQUETE



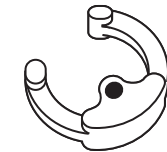
Asiento de bronce (HC3300, H3300)



Anillo "O" de caucho



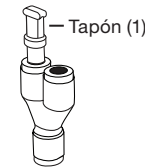
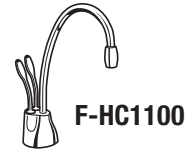
Tuerca hexagonal



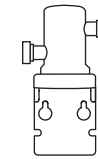
Placa de montaje semicircular



Herramienta hexagonal



Conector rápido con forma de Y



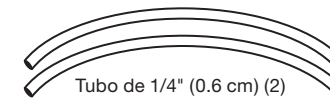
Cabeza del Filtro



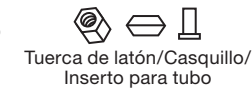
Cartucho de Filtro



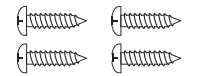
HWT-F1000S  
HWT-HP\*  
HWT-00\*



Tubo de 1/4" (0.6 cm) (2)



Tuerca de latón/Casquillo/  
Inserto para tubo



Tornillos de 3/4" (1.9cm) (4)

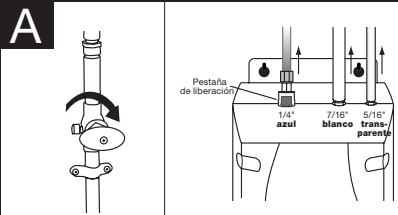
\*(el sistema de filtración es opcional)



El adaptador de encaje a presión no viene incluido. Se necesita para reemplazar los tanques fabricados antes de enero de 2006. Llame a la línea AnswerLine® 1-800-558-5700 para realizar su pedido.

Si va a instalar un grifo nuevo Y un tanque nuevo, pase a la página 23.

## PARA INSTALAR SÓLO UN GRIFO NUEVO

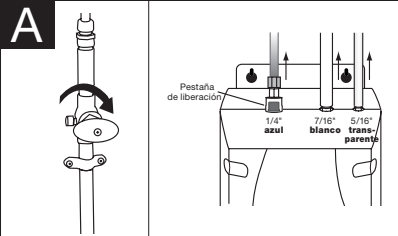


### AVISO

**Daños materiales:** desconecte el tanque antes de desconectar la tubería.

- Cierre la toma del agua.
- Retire los tubos del tanque: en la parte superior del tanque, oprima la pestaña de liberación de color gris en el accesorio de conexión rápida que asegura el tubo **azul** o **de cobre** de 1/4" (0.6 cm) y tire suavemente de la línea para sacarla del accesorio. Saque el tubo **blanco** de 7/16" (1.1 cm) y el **transparente** de 5/16" (0.8 cm) de sus conectores.
- Retire el grifo anterior y continúe con la página 23.

## PARA INSTALAR SÓLO UN TANQUE NUEVO



### AVISO

**Daños materiales:** no apriete ni rompa el tubo de cobre. No deforme la última pulgada (2.5 cm) del extremo de cobre.

- Cierre la toma del agua.
- Retire los tubos del tanque: en la parte superior del tanque, oprima la pestaña de liberación de color gris en el accesorio de conexión rápida que asegura el tubo **azul** y tire suavemente de la línea para sacarla del accesorio. Saque el tubo **blanco** de 7/16" (1.1 cm) y el **transparente** de 5/16" (0.8 cm) de sus conectores.
- Retire el tanque instalado y continúe en la página 26.

### AVISO

No conecte la corriente al tanque de agua caliente hasta llegar al paso 6C. Para evitar que el producto se dañe permanentemente, solo opere el tanque después de que esté lleno de agua.

## COMIENZE AQUÍ

# 1

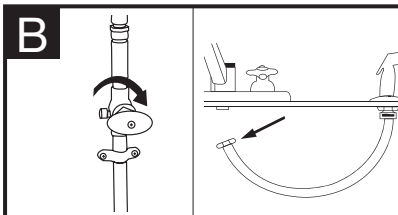
## PREPARACIÓN

Mínimo requerido del centro del orificio a la pared	
F-HC1100	2 5/8" (7 cm)
F-GN1100	3 1/4" (8 cm)
F-HC2200	2 5/8" (7 cm)
F-GN2200	3 1/2" (9 cm)
F-HC2215	2 5/8" (7 cm)
F-GN2215	3 1/2" (9 cm)
F-HC3300	2 1/2" (6 cm)
F-H3300	2 1/2" (6 cm)

**El grosor máximo de la cubierta (profundidad) es de 3 pulgadas (5 cm)**

- Identifique las ubicaciones del grifo, tanque y filtro (si es el caso) del dispensador.
- Compruebe que haya espacio libre suficiente (vea la tabla a la izquierda) para poder abrir las manijas del dispensador.
- Asegúrese de que la cubierta no sea demasiado gruesa (máximo de 3").
- Asegúrese de que haya una toma eléctrica con conexión a tierra debajo del fregadero.

**El tomacorriente de pared para su surtidor debe estar constantemente energizado y protegido con fusibles. No debe estar controlado por el mismo interruptor de pared que opera su triturador de desechos, a menos que use un interruptor InSinkEerator SinkTop Switch™.**



**Si es necesario perforar el fregadero o la cubierta, es posible que tenga que rentar o comprar las herramientas apropiadas.**

- Cierre la toma del agua.
- Si utiliza el orificio de la manguera del rociador, quite la tuerca que conecta la manguera del rociador debajo del grifo.
- Quite con la llave ajustable la pestaña de la arandela del rociador que está en el orificio del rociador.
- Tape la abertura de la manguera con un tapón de 1/8" (0.3 cm) o de 1/4" (0.6 cm) (**no incluido**).

Tamaño requerido del agujero	
F-HC1100	1 3/8" - 1 1/2" (3.5 - 3.8 cm)
F-GN1100	1 1/4" - 1 1/2" (3.1 - 3.8 cm)
F-HC2200	1 3/8" - 1 1/2" (3.5 - 3.8 cm)
F-GN2200	1 1/4" - 1 1/2" (3.1 - 3.8 cm)
F-HC2215	1 3/8" - 1 1/2" (3.5 - 3.8 cm)
F-GN2215	1 1/4" - 1 1/2" (3.1 - 3.8 cm)
F-HC3300	1 3/8" - 1 1/2" (3.5 - 3.8 cm)
F-H3300	1 3/8" - 1 1/2" (3.5 - 3.8 cm)

**Consulte los servicios de un profesional antes de perforar una superficie que no sea de acero inoxidable.**

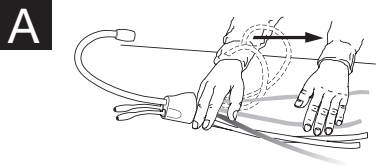
### Si no hay un orificio para rociador o si no lo usa

- Muchas personas colocan un dispensador de agua caliente instantánea en lugar de un dispensador para jabón en el fregadero.
- Si perfora un fregadero de acero inoxidable o una cubierta, puede hacer el orificio de montaje para el dispensador con una broca corta-círculos en el acero, o puede usar un punzón.



Para ver un tutorial de esta instalación ingrese a <http://goo.gl/yYrfoA>

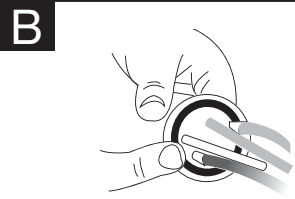
## 2 INSTALACIÓN DEL GRIFO - 1100/2200/2215



### AVISO

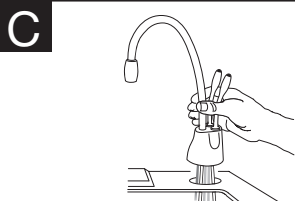
**Daños materiales:** no apriete ni rompa el tubo de cobre. No deforme la última pulgada (2.5 cm) del extremo del tubo de cobre.

- Desempaque los componentes del dispensador.
- Enderece con cuidado el tubo de cobre sobre una superficie firme y plana.



**Asegúrese de usar una junta tórica de caucho para obtener un sellado correcto.**

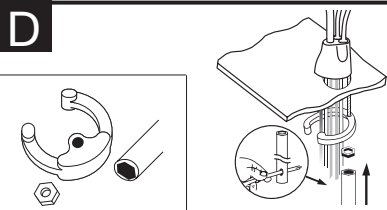
- Compruebe que la junta tórica quede sentada correctamente en la base de la cabeza del dispensador (la ranura en la parte inferior del dispensador).



**Para facilitar el paso de los tubos a través del orificio, inserte primero el tubo azul con el accesorio de conexión rápida y luego coloque los tubos restantes.**

- Inserte los tubos por el orificio en el fregadero o cubierta hasta que el extremo descance en la superficie del fregadero o cubierta.

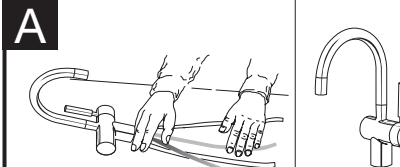
Puede ser necesario un ayudante paravel dispensador mientras se fija en su lugar.



**La placa de montaje semicircular debe circundar todos los tubos que descenden y rebasar el agujero del fregadero cuando esté apretada.**

- Coloque la placa de montaje semicircular en el perno roscado por abajo del fregadero.
- Enrosque la tuerca hexagonal en el perno. Compruebe que la cabeza del grifo quede al ángulo deseado.
- Inserte un destornillador en el orificio de la herramienta hexagonal (para formar una "T"), y apriete la tuerca y fije el grifo con esta herramienta.

## 2 INSTALACIÓN DEL GRIFO - 3300

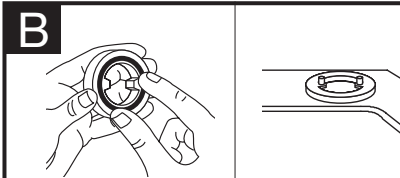


### AVISO

**Daños materiales:** no apriete ni rompa el tubo. No deforme la última pulgada (2.5 cm) del extremo del tubo de cobre.

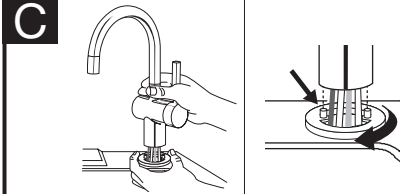
- Desempaque los componentes del dispensador.
- La instalación recomendada para este grifo es con el mango del distribuidor hacia la derecha.

El diseño exclusivo permite que el mango sea completamente funcional cuando se lo instala a la derecha o a la izquierda del grifo. Determine la ubicación preferida del mango antes de la instalación.



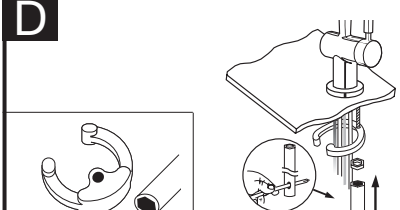
**Humedecer la junta tórica antes de colocarla en el asiento de bronce ayuda a que la junta permanezca en su lugar durante la instalación.**

- Inserte la junta tórica de goma en la ranura del asiento de bronce.
- Coloque el asiento de bronce, con la junta tórica hacia abajo, sobre el orificio del fregadero o la encimera.



**Para facilitar el paso de los tubos a través del orificio, inserte primero el tubo azul con el accesorio de conexión rápida y luego coloque los tubos restantes.**

- Sujete el asiento de bronce en su lugar, coloque los tubos a través del orificio del fregadero o la encimera hasta que la base haga contacto con el asiento de bronce.
- Gire el asiento de bronce hasta que ambos pernos de retención calcen en los orificios de la base del grifo y la base se asiente firmemente en el asiento de bronce.



**La placa de montaje semicircular debe circundar todos los tubos que descenden y rebasar el agujero del fregadero cuando esté apretada.**

- Coloque la placa de montaje semicircular en el perno roscado por abajo del fregadero.
- Coloque la tuerca hexagonal en el perno roscado. Asegúrese de que el mango del distribuidor esté del lado correcto y la cabeza del grifo esté en el ángulo deseado.
- Inserte un destornillador en el orificio de la herramienta hexagonal (para formar una "T"), y apriete la tuerca y fije el grifo con esta herramienta.

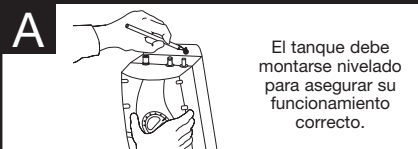


Para ver un tutorial de esta instalación ingrese a <http://goo.gl/yYrFOA>

**PRECAUCIÓN** No conecte el tanque de agua caliente hasta que llegue al paso 6C.

3

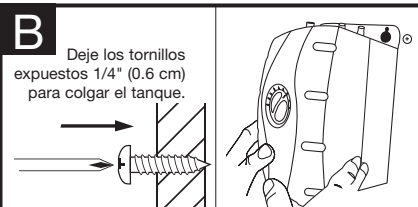
## MONTAJE DEL TANQUE



### AVISO

**Daños materiales:** el tanque debe estar colocado dentro de una distancia de 16" (40 cm) del grifo y a 30" (75 cm) o menos de una toma eléctrica estándar con conexión a tierra. **NO EXTIENDA** las líneas de plomería y eléctricas.

- Seleccione un punto debajo del fregadero para montar el tanque verticalmente al alcance de las conexiones de plomería y eléctricas. El tanque debe estar a una distancia máxima de 16" (40 cm) del grifo y a una distancia máxima de 30" (75 cm) de una toma eléctrica estándar con conexión a tierra.
- Sostenga el tanque en el punto seleccionado para instalarlo y marque con un lápiz los lugares para colocar dos tornillos para colgarlo.



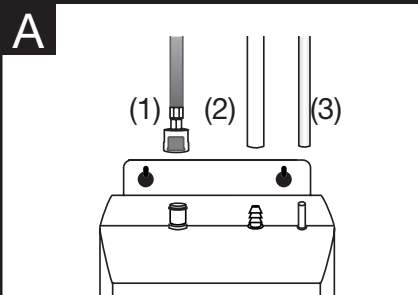
Monte el tanque verticalmente en un lugar que permita tener un espacio libre abajo para drenarlo si es necesario. **NO APRIETE** los tornillos excesivamente.

**Los tornillos incluidos sólo deben usarse en montantes de madera o gabinetes. Para instalarse en paneles de yeso utilice tarugos (no incluidos).**

- Haga orificios guía de 1/8" (0.3 cm) en las marcas.
- Inserte los tornillos en los orificios guía y deje 1/4" (0.6 cm) de tornillo expuesto.
- Cuelgue el tanque en los tornillos.
- Apriete los tornillos media vuelta.

4

## CONEXIÓN DEL GRIFO EN EL TANQUE



### AVISO

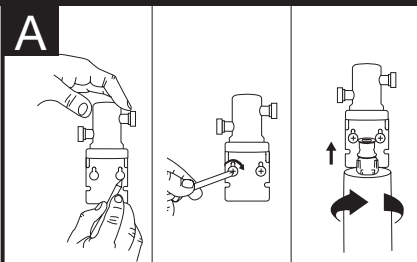
**Daños materiales:** las líneas de agua estrechas o bloqueadas pueden dañar al tanque. Asegúrese de que los tubos estén conectados correctamente y se hayan medido tanto como sea posible.

- Inserte el conector de inserción del tubo **azul** en el conector rápido (izquierda) del tanque. (1)
- Inserte el tubo **blanco** flexible de 7/16" (1.1 cm) en el conector escalonado del centro y deslícelo aproximadamente 1/2" (1.3 cm). (2)
- Inserte el tubo **transparente** de 5/16" (0.8 cm) en el conector liso de la derecha y deslícelo aproximadamente 1/2" (1.3 cm). (3)
- Revise visualmente para que los tubos no queden aplastados ni torcidos.

Las abrazaderas de manguera no son necesarias para cualquiera de las conexiones.

5

## INSTALACIÓN DEL FILTRO

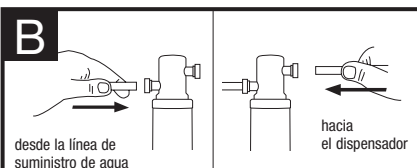


### ADVERTENCIA

**Lesiones personales:** no coloque el filtro por encima de una toma eléctrica o de otro aparato. Instale la cabeza y el soporte de tal forma que no sea necesario estirar, torcer o estrechar la tubería.

**Los tornillos incluidos sólo deben usarse en montantes de madera o gabinetes. Para instalarse en paneles de yeso utilice tarugos (no incluidos).**

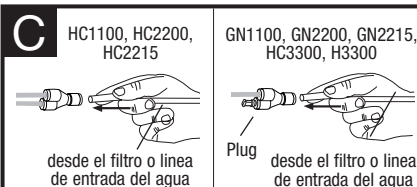
- Separe el cartucho de la cabeza del filtro.
- Marque la ubicación de los orificios para la cabeza y el soporte en un lugar que permita cambiar el filtro.
- Haga orificios guía de 1/8" (0.3 cm), fije el soporte en la pared con tornillos de madera y gire éstos hasta que queden apretados.
- Introduzca el nuevo cartucho en la cabeza del filtro. La superficie superior del cartucho quedará rasante con el fondo de la cabeza del filtro cuando esté completamente encajado.



### AVISO

**Daños materiales:** los tramos de tubo necesitan tener el mismo contorno del gabinete para dejar espacio de almacenamiento sin curvas pronunciadas. Los cortes de los tubos deben ser limpios, perpendiculares y no tener rebabas para garantizar una conexión correcta.

- Determine la longitud requerida del tubo y corte el tubo en forma perpendicular y sin dejar rebabas.
- Inserte un tubo **blanco** de 1/4" (0.6 cm) en el lado de entrada de la cabeza del filtro hasta que tope. **Oprima una vez más para asegurar una conexión correcta.**
- Inserte el otro tubo **blanco** de 1/4" (0.6 cm) en el lado de salida de la cabeza del filtro hasta que tope. **Oprima una vez más para asegurar una conexión correcta.**

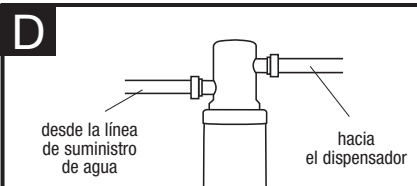


### AVISO

**Daños materiales:** no estire las líneas a más de las 16" (40 cm) proporcionadas. Verifique que el (los) tubo(s) y el conector en "Y" estén bien ajustados.

- Inserte el (los) tubo(s) de cobre del dispensador en el conector rápido en "Y" y utilice el tapón para los modelos que solo suministran agua caliente.
- Conecte el tubo **blanco** de 1/4" (0.6 cm) de la salida del lado derecho en la cabeza del filtro en el conector rápido hasta que tope. **Oprima una vez más para asegurar una conexión correcta.**

Para quitar el tubo de cada conector rápido, oprima el anillo de liberación y saque el tubo con cuidado.



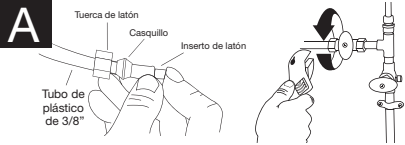
La descarga de agua de aproximadamente 2 oz. (60 ml) es normal, cuando el filtro es retirado.



Para ver un tutorial de esta instalación ingrese a <http://goo.gl/yYrfOA>



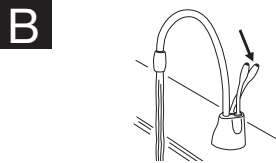
## CONEXIÓN FINAL DEL AGUA



### AVISO

**Daños materiales:** conecte el tubo restante al agua fría de entrada solamente.

- Instale una "T" (*no incluido*) en la línea de agua fría.
- Instale la válvula de control de agua dedicada con el accesorio de compresión de 1/4" (0.6 cm).
- En el extremo del tubo **blanco** de 1/4" (0.6 cm) que sale del conector rápido, deslice la tuerca de latón y el casquillo y luego coloque el inserto para tubo.
- Inserte el tubo **blanco** de 1/4" (0.6 cm) en la conexión de compresión de 1/4" (0.6 cm) y apriete.

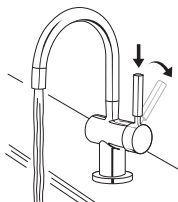


### ADVERTENCIA

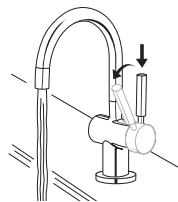
**Riesgo de quemadura:** la llave entrega agua casi en ebullición (212 °F) la cual puede producir quemaduras instantáneas. Tenga cuidado cuando opere este equipo.

- Abra el suministro de agua.
- Abra el grifo de agua caliente para expulsar el aire contenido.
- Para los modelos F-1000S y F-1000, haga correr 2,25 galones por el filtro antes de utilizarlos (durante aproximadamente 3 minutos). Para los modelos F-2000S y F-2000, haga correr 3 galones por el filtro antes de utilizarlos (durante aproximadamente 4 minutos).

Distribución de agua caliente (HC3300, H3300)



Distribución de agua fría (HC3300)



### ADVERTENCIA

**Riesgo de quemadura:** la llave entrega agua casi en ebullición (212 °F) la cual puede producir quemaduras instantáneas. Tenga cuidado cuando opere este equipo.

### Instrucciones de operación para los grifos modernos Indulge™

Con el sistema OptiPush™ de activación de agua caliente con cierre automático y sistema de activación de agua fría Stay-On™, que mantiene el grifo abierto cuando se utiliza agua fría.

- HC3300:** para utilizar agua caliente instantánea, primero presione hacia abajo la manija del grifo y luego oprima la manija hacia atrás en el sentido del indicador rojo que se encuentra en la parte superior de la manija. Para utilizar agua fría, primero presione la manija del grifo hacia abajo y luego empuje la manija hacia adelante en el sentido del indicador azul que se encuentra en la manija. **Nota:** Solo aplica cuando la manija está instalada en el lado izquierdo.

Con el sistema Optipush™ de activación de agua caliente con cierre automático.

- H3300:** para utilizar agua caliente instantánea, primero presione hacia abajo la manija del grifo y luego empuje la manija hacia atrás en el sentido del indicador rojo que se encuentra en la parte superior de la manija.



### AVISO

**Daños materiales:** es necesario tener una toma eléctrica estándar con conexión a tierra a una distancia de 30" (75 cm) debajo del fregadero. No utilice extensiones eléctricas con el dispensador.

- Revise todas las conexiones para asegurarse de que estén apretadas y que no presenten fugas.
- Enchufe el tanque de agua caliente.

**El agua saldrá fría en un principio.**

**Espere entre 12 y 15 minutos para que el agua se caliente a la temperatura indicada.**

**Durante el ciclo inicial de calentamiento es normal escuchar gorgoteos y siseos.**

Si el agua que viene del grifo no es caliente 15 minutos después de que se ha enchufado la unidad (o para otras ediciones relacionadas con la operación de su dispensador inmediato de la agua caliente) consulte a la sección de "localización de averías" en la página 34.

## INFORMACIÓN IMPORTANTE PARA SU SEGURIDAD

- Utilice el calentador de agua solo según su uso previsto, como se describe en este manual.
- Este artefacto no está diseñado para que lo usen personas (incluidos niños) con capacidades físicas, sensoriales o mentales disminuidas, o con falta de experiencia y conocimiento, a menos que una persona responsable de su seguridad les haya brindado supervisión o instrucciones con respecto al uso del artefacto. Se debe supervisar a los niños para garantizar que no jueguen con el dispensador de agua caliente. Para reducir el riesgo de lesiones, se requiere estrecha supervisión cuando se usa un artefacto cerca de niños.
- No opere este producto si está dañado o si parece tener algún daño o si presenta fallas o se cae. Envíe de regreso el producto completo de inmediato a su distribuidor para que lo inspeccione y, si es necesario, lo ajuste y repare.

### ADVERTENCIA

Para reducir el riesgo de asfixia: No permita que los niños menores de 3 años accedan a piezas pequeñas durante la instalación de este producto.

### ADVERTENCIA

**Riesgo de descarga eléctrica:** A fin de reducir el riesgo de descarga eléctrica, no sumerja ni exponga el producto, ni el cable flexible ni el enchufe a la lluvia, la humedad ni a ningún líquido ni se pare en charcos o superficies húmedas. Si cualquier producto eléctrico cae al agua, **DESCONÉCTELO** de inmediato. **NO SE INTRODUZCA EN EL AGUA. Importante:** Antes de volver a conectar la fuente de alimentación, un técnico calificado debe inspeccionar el producto.

### ADVERTENCIA

**Lesiones personales y daños materiales:** Para reducir el riesgo de tensión peligrosa debido a que el instalador perforó el cableado eléctrico en el área de la instalación: No realice la instalación cerca de cableado eléctrico que pueda estar en la trayectoria del taladro cuando seleccione la ubicación de montaje del soporte del sistema.

También evite el riesgo de taladrar tuberías de agua, pues podría causar daños materiales.

**Importante:** Siempre ubique el cable de alimentación donde no pueda entrar en contacto con superficies calientes.

- No desconecte el producto de la fuente de alimentación halando el cable.
- No utilice el producto con fines diferentes a su uso previsto, según como se describe en estas instrucciones. Si a los accesorios se les da un uso diferente al recomendado por el fabricante, podrán presentarse riesgos para la seguridad.
- La conexión recomendada se puede realizar a una línea de agua fría que ya esté instalada con una derivación que termine con una válvula de cierre, una válvula de alivio de presión y una válvula doble antirretorno localizadas junto al producto.

### ADVERTENCIA

**Riesgo de descarga eléctrica:** Utilizar un aparato conectado incorrectamente o sin conexión a tierra (ninguna puesta a tierra), puede ocasionar lesiones graves o incluso la muerte por descarga eléctrica.

**Este aparato debe tener conexión a tierra.** Este dispensador de agua caliente está equipado con un cordón que tiene un conductor a tierra y una espiga puesta a tierra. El enchufe debe estar conectado a un tomacorriente apropiado que esté instalado correctamente y con conexión a tierra de acuerdo con todos los reglamentos y códigos locales. No cambie el enchufe que viene con el aparato. Si no coincide con el tipo de tomacorriente, pídale a un electricista calificado que instale un tomacorriente adecuado. Consulte con un electricista calificado o al comerciante si tiene dudas sobre la conexión a tierra adecuada del dispensador de agua caliente.

### PRECAUCIÓN

**Lesiones personales y daños materiales:** Este tanque no es presurizado. **NO** modifique este sistema. **NO** cierre el tubo de ventilación ni conecte otro tipo de dispensadores o válvulas al tanque. Use sólo el dispensador InSinkEratator suministrado. Use sólo las piezas suministradas. Comuníquese con un agente de servicio InSinkEratator autorizado para reparar o reemplazar los componentes.

### ADVERTENCIA

Para reducir el riesgo de ingestión de contaminantes: No use el producto con agua que sea microbiológicamente insegura o de dudosa calidad sin realizar una desinfección adecuada antes o después de utilizar el sistema.

Un dispensador de agua caliente, como cualquier calentador de agua, tiene una vida limitada y eventualmente fallará. Para evitar posibles daños materiales o lesiones personales, este dispensador de agua caliente debe ser regularmente examinado por fugas y reemplazado cuando sea necesario. Se recomienda instalar un depósito de desagüe conectado a un desagüe adecuado o equipado con un detector de fugas en aquellos usos en los que las fugas puedan causar daños materiales.

### ADVERTENCIA

**Riesgo de incendio:** Para disminuir las posibilidades de que se produzca un incendio, **NO** guarde productos inflamables, tales como trapos, papel o aerosol enlatados, cerca del tanque. **NO** almacene ni utilice petróleo u otros vapores y líquidos inflamables cerca de este u otros dispositivos.

### ADVERTENCIA

**Riesgo de fugas:** Revise periódicamente el dispensador y los acoples de plomería para ver si hay fugas que puedan ocasionar daños materiales y provocar lesiones personales.

## AVISO

**Daños materiales:** Para reducir el riesgo relacionado con daños materiales por fugas y desbordes de agua y para garantizar un funcionamiento óptimo:

- Lea y siga las Instrucciones de uso antes de instalar y utilizar este sistema.
- La instalación y el uso DEBEN cumplir con todos los códigos estatales y locales de plomería.

### Requisitos del sistema (tanque de agua caliente, sistema de filtración y dispensador):

- Los tubos flexibles de ventilación y de salida se deben conectar de forma correcta al dispensador que proporcione el fabricante. No deben tener obstrucciones ni deben conectarse a un dispensador normal ni de otro tipo.
- No instale el sistema en líneas de suministro de agua caliente. La temperatura máxima del agua de operación de este sistema es de 100 °F (37,8 °C). Fijelo solamente a un suministro de agua fría.
- No instale el sistema si la presión del agua supera los 125 psi (862 kPa). Si la presión del agua supera los 80 psi (552 kPa), debe instalar una válvula reductora de presión. Comuníquese con un plomero profesional si no está seguro sobre cómo revisar la presión del agua.
- No instale en lugares donde se puedan presentar condiciones de golpe de ariete. Si se dan estas condiciones, debe instalar un protector para golpe de ariete. Comuníquese con un plomero profesional si no está seguro sobre cómo verificar esta condición.
- Donde se instale un dispositivo de prevención del contraflujo en un sistema de agua, también se debe instalar un dispositivo para el control de la presión debido a la dilatación térmica.
- Proteja la unidad del congelamiento, cierre el suministro de agua, retire el cartucho de filtro, drene el tanque de agua caliente y la tubería cuando prevea que las temperaturas descenderán por debajo de los 40 °F (4,4 °C); consulte la sección Almacenamiento/ Drenado de temporada.
- No utilice antorchas ni otras fuentes de temperatura elevada cerca del sistema, los cartuchos, los acoples plásticos o la tubería plástica.
- No realice la instalación cerca de tuberías de agua que estén en la trayectoria del taladro cuando seleccione la ubicación de montaje del soporte.
- Instale el sistema en un lugar donde se evite que sea golpeado por otros objetos utilizados en el área de instalación.
- Cerciórese de que el lugar y los sujetadores soporten el peso del sistema cuando esté instalado y lleno de agua.
- Asegúrese de que toda la tubería y los acoples estén sujetados con firmeza y que no tengan fugas.
- No realice la instalación con tubería rígida. El sistema es para utilizarlo con líneas plásticas de agua (como tubería PEX, PE, PP).
- No instale este sistema si falta alguno de los collares de conexión rápida en el cabezal del filtro o el conector rápido en Y. Llame a un agente de servicio autorizado de InSinkErator si faltan los collares de cualquiera de los acoples.
- En los sistemas que utilizan grifos modelo HC de dos manijas, opere solo una manija a la vez.
- Importante: No permita que la unidad hierva el agua de forma continua.
- Inspeccione el sistema con regularidad. Si hay señales de fugas de agua, cierre el suministro de agua y comuníquese con un agente de servicio autorizado de InSinkErator.
- Se recomienda instalar un depósito de desague conectado a un desague adecuado o equipado con un detector de fugas en aquellos usos en los que las fugas puedan causar daños materiales.
- Si tiene preguntas o inquietudes, comuníquese con un agente de servicio autorizado de InSinkErator (en el reverso de la página encontrará la información de contacto).

### Consideraciones adicionales cuando utilice el sistema de filtro:

- El cartucho desechable del filtro se DEBE reemplazar cada 6 meses, según la capacidad asignada o antes si se presenta una reducción evidente del caudal de flujo.
- Si no se reemplaza el cartucho desechable según la frecuencia recomendada, se podrá ver reducido el funcionamiento de filtro y podrán producirse grietas en la caja del filtro, lo que causará fugas y desbordes de agua.
- Proteja el filtro del congelamiento; retire el cartucho del filtro cuando se prevea que las temperaturas pueden descender por debajo de los 40 °F (4,4 °C).
- No instale el sistema en áreas donde la temperatura ambiente pueda superar los 110 °F (43,3 °C).
- No realice la instalación en la luz directa del sol o en exteriores.

<b>Dispensador:</b>	<b>5 años de garantía</b>
<b>Tanques de acero inoxidable:</b>	<b>3 años de garantía</b>
<b>Sistema de Filtración:</b>	<b>1 año de garantía</b> (excluyendo el cartucho del filtro reemplazable)

Esta es una garantía que InSinkErator, una unidad comercial de Emerson Electric Co., (“InSinkErator”, “Fabricante”, “nosotros”, “nos” o “nuestro”) brinda al cliente original propietario del producto InSinkErator (el “Producto InSinkErator”) y a cualquier otro propietario posterior de la residencia en la que se instaló originalmente el Producto (“Cliente”, “usted” o “su”).

InSinkErator le garantiza al Cliente que su Producto InSinkErator no tendrá defectos en el material o la mano de obra, sujetos a las exclusiones descritas a continuación, durante el “Período de garantía”, que comienza luego de: (a) la fecha en la que se instaló originalmente su Producto InSinkErator, (b) la fecha de compra o (c) la fecha de fabricación indicada por el número de serie de su Producto InSinkErator. Deberá presentar la documentación escrita correspondiente para justificar (a) o (b). En caso de que no pueda presentar la documentación para justificar (a) o (b), la fecha de inicio del Período de Garantía quedará a consideración del Fabricante, bajo su único y absoluto criterio, basado en el número de serie del Producto InSinkErator.

### Qué cubre la garantía

Esta garantía cubre los defectos en el material o la mano de obra, sujetos a las exclusiones descritas a continuación, en lo que respecta a los Productos InSinkErator a los que el Cliente confiera un uso doméstico únicamente, e incluye todas las piezas de repuesto y los gastos de reparación. SU ÚNICO Y EXCLUSIVO RECURSO SEGÚN LOS TÉRMINOS DE ESTA GARANTÍA LIMITADA SERÁ LA REPARACIÓN O EL REEMPLAZO DEL PRODUCTO INSINKERATOR.

### Qué no cubre la garantía

Esta garantía limitada no se extiende y excluye expresamente lo siguiente:

- Pérdidas, daños o incapacidad de operar el Producto InSinkErator, como resultado de circunstancias fuera del control del Fabricante, sin limitaciones, tales como: accidente, alteración, mal uso, abuso, abandono, negligencia (de otra persona que no sea el Fabricante), instalación, mantenimiento, ensamble o montaje inadecuados del Producto InSinkErator que no respeten las instrucciones del Fabricante o los códigos eléctricos y/o de plomería locales.
- Desgaste como resultado del uso normal del producto, lo que incluye sin limitaciones, oxidación de la superficie, rayones, abolladuras o pérdidas o daños similares y razonables.

Además de las exclusiones antes descritas, esta garantía no se aplica en caso de que los Productos InSinkErator se instalen para fines industriales o comerciales.

### No se aplica ninguna otra garantía expresa

Esta es la única y exclusiva garantía que se le brinda al Cliente descrito anteriormente. No se aplica ninguna otra garantía expresa, oral o escrita. No se autoriza a ningún empleado, agente, distribuidor u otra persona a alterar esta garantía limitada o a brindar cualquier otra garantía en nombre del Fabricante. Ninguna persona podrá modificar los términos de esta garantía, independientemente de si se trata del Fabricante, el propietario original o sus respectivos sucesores o beneficiarios.

### Qué haremos para solucionar los problemas

Si su Producto InSinkErator no funciona de acuerdo con la documentación que usted recibió, o si tiene dudas acerca de su Producto InSinkErator o no sabe cómo determinar cuándo necesita servicio técnico, comuníquese con la línea de ayuda gratuita InSinkErator AnswerLine al 1 (800) 558-5700 o bien, visite nuestra página web en [www.insinkerator.com](http://www.insinkerator.com). También puede escribirnos a: Centro de Servicio InSinkErator, 4700 21st Street, Racine, Wisconsin, 53406, EE. UU.

En el reclamo de garantía debe especificar la siguiente información: su nombre, dirección, número de teléfono, modelo y número de serie de su Producto InSinkErator y, si es necesario o si se lo solicitan, una confirmación por escrito de: (a) la fecha que figura en su recibo de instalación, o (b) la fecha que figura en su recibo de compra.

El Fabricante o el representante de servicio autorizado determinarán, bajo su único y absoluto criterio, si esta garantía cubre su Producto InSinkErator. Se le proporcionará la información de contacto del Centro de Servicio Autorizado de InSinkErator más cercano. Comuníquese directamente con dicho centro para recibir servicios de reparación o reemplazo cubiertos por la garantía en su hogar. El representante de servicio autorizado de InSinkErator es el único capaz de brindarle el servicio de garantía. InSinkErator no se hace responsable por los reclamos de garantía que surjan como consecuencia de trabajos realizados en su Producto InSinkErator por cualquier otra persona que no sea el representante de servicio autorizado de InSinkErator.

Si un reclamo cubierto se realiza durante el Período de Garantía, el Fabricante reparará o reemplazará su Producto InSinkErator por intermedio de su representante de servicio autorizado. Usted no deberá afrontar el costo de las piezas de repuesto o de un nuevo Producto InSinkErator, ni el costo de mano de obra para la reparación o instalación del Producto InSinkErator de reemplazo. El Fabricante o su representante de servicio autorizado, bajo su exclusivo criterio, determinarán si es necesaria la reparación o el reemplazo del producto. Recibirá todos los servicios de reparación o reemplazo en su hogar. Si el Fabricante determina que se debe reemplazar su Producto InSinkErator en vez de repararlo, la garantía del Producto InSinkErator de reemplazo se limitará al plazo vigente de la garantía original.

### Limitación de responsabilidad

EN LA MEDIDA EN QUE LO PERMITA LA LEY, EL FABRICANTE O SUS REPRESENTANTES DE SERVICIO AUTORIZADOS NO SERÁN RESPONSABLES POR DAÑOS INCIDENTALES, ESPECIALES, INDIRECTOS O CONSECUENTES, TALES COMO DAÑOS PATRIMONIALES, YA SEA QUE SEAN CONSECUENCIA DEL INCUMPLIMIENTO, USO, MAL USO O INCAPACIDAD DE USAR EL PRODUCTO INSINKERATOR, O DE LA NEGLIGENCIA DEL FABRICANTE O SUS REPRESENTANTES DE SERVICIO AUTORIZADOS. EL FABRICANTE NO SERÁ RESPONSABLE POR LOS DAÑOS CAUSADOS POR EL RETRASO EN EL RENDIMIENTO Y EN NINGÚN CASO, SIN IMPORTAR EL TIPO DE RECLAMO O LAS MEDIDAS IMPLEMENTADAS (AUNQUE SE BASEN EN EL CONTRATO, UNA CONTRAVENCIÓN, LA NEGLIGENCIA, LA RESPONSABILIDAD ESTRICTA, OTRO AGRAVIO, ETC.), SU RESPONSABILIDAD EXCEDERÁ EL PRECIO QUE EL PROPIETARIO ORIGINAL HAYA PAGADO POR EL PRODUCTO INSINKERATOR.

El término “daños consecuentes” debe incluir, entre otros, la pérdida de ganancias anticipadas, la interrupción de los negocios, la falta de uso o ingresos, el costo del capital, o la pérdida o daño a la propiedad o al equipo.

Algunos estados prohíben la exclusión o limitación de los daños incidentales o consecuentes, de modo que estas limitaciones pueden no aplicarse en su caso. Esta garantía le otorga derechos legales específicos y también puede tener otros derechos que varían según el estado.



## CUIDADO Y USO

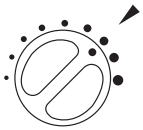
### ⚠️ ADVERTENCIA

**Riesgo de descarga eléctrica:** Para prevenir descargas eléctricas, desconecte la corriente eléctrica antes de reparar la unidad. Utilice solamente un tomacorriente eléctrico debidamente polarizado y con conexión a tierra (puesta a tierra).

### AJUSTE DEL TERMOSTATO

La temperatura preestablecida de fábrica es 200°F (93°C) (205°F (96°C) para el tanque HWT-HP). Para restablecer el termostato en 200°F (93°C) (205°F (96°C) del tanque HWT-HP), gire el indicador un poco a la derecha del vertical. Después de ajustar, presione la perilla del dispensador durante 20 segundos para que el agua se vuelva a calentar según el nuevo ajuste.

aprox. 93°C  
(200°F)



- Para ajustar la temperatura del agua, gire el dial del termostato en el frente del depósito en sentido horario para incrementar la temperatura o gire en sentido antihorario para disminuir la temperatura. Repita si es necesario. Todos los cambios deben ser mínimos.

### ⚠️ ADVERTENCIA

**Riesgo de escaldado:** No deje que el agua hierva. Ello podría ocasionar quemaduras graves.

### ALMACENAMIENTO TEMPORAL/DRENAJE

Cada vez que el dispensador de agua caliente no se utilice por períodos prolongados, desenchufe y drene la unidad. Si la temperatura está por debajo de los cero grados, deberá desenchufar la unidad y drenarla.

- Desconecte la energía de la unidad (desconecte la unidad).
- Empuje la palanca del dispensador de agua caliente y deje que el agua fluya hasta que esté fría.
- Cierre el dispensador de agua fría en la válvula.
- Desconecte los tubos del depósito.
- Desenganche el depósito de la pared.
- Sostenga el depósito volteado hacia abajo y drene el agua dentro del fregadero.
- Seque con una toalla los restos de agua del área del depósito.
- Reinstale el depósito en la pared y reconecte los tubos.
- Retire y deseche el cartucho del filtro, si corresponde.
- Para colocar nuevamente en perfecto funcionamiento la unidad, instale el nuevo cartucho del filtro (si corresponde) y abra el suministro de agua fría en la válvula. Pulse la palanca del grifo del dispensador de agua caliente y manténgala así hasta que el flujo de agua salga por el surtidor. Reconecte el cable de alimentación eléctrico.

### LIMPIEZA DEL DISPENSADOR Y DEL DEPÓSITO

- Utilice sólo limpiadores suaves para limpiar el dispensador y los componentes plásticos.
- Los limpiadores con ácidos, abrasivos, solventes alcalinos y orgánicos dañan los componentes plásticos y anulan la garantía.

### GUÍA DE FILTRO Y REEMPLAZO

Reemplace el cartucho del filtro cuando haya una disminución evidente en el flujo de agua del dispensador o si hay un sabor u olor desagradable en el agua.

Una vez que haya cerrado los orificios de entrada y salida, y que la presión interna del filtro haya disminuido, el agua (cerca de 60 ml [2 onzas]) fluirá desde la tubería de ventilación.

Si no se puede colocar el nuevo cartucho del filtro, introduzca el anterior y gírelo hasta que se asiente, a continuación, retírelo y vuelva a insertar el cartucho nuevo.

El cartucho desechable del filtro se DEBE reemplazar cada 6 meses, según la capacidad asignada o antes si se presenta una reducción evidente del caudal de flujo.

Instrucciones para reemplazo de filtro:

- Reemplace con un filtro InSinkErator®.
- Coloque una cacerola o un secador de platos debajo del filtro para contener el drenaje del agua durante el cambio.
- Gire lentamente el cartucho en sentido antihorario completamente hasta que se detenga (1/4 de giro).
- Jale del cartucho en línea recta y hacia abajo, y deséchelo.
- Introduzca el nuevo cartucho en la cabeza del filtro.
- Cuando el cartucho esté completamente encajado, la superficie superior de éste quedará a ras de la parte inferior de la cabeza del filtro.
- Gire el cartucho en sentido horario hasta que se detenga (1/4 de giro).
- Abra el dispensador para expulsar el aire contenido.
- Deje correr el agua durante 3 minutos antes de usarla.

### ⚠️ PRECAUCIÓN

#### Lesiones personales:

- Verifique cada tres (3) meses que no haya señales de corrosión en el aspecto del agua que sale del dispensador.
- Si hay decoloración o un aspecto ferroso, desconecte y drene la unidad tal como se describe en la sección Almacenamiento/Drenado de temporada en esta página del manual.
- Si persiste la coloración del agua luego de drenar y llenar la unidad, suspenda el uso y comuníquese con un agente de servicio autorizado de InSinkErator.

## INFORMACIÓN DE LA FILTRACIÓN

Los sistemas de filtración InSinkErator para dispensadores de agua caliente instantánea ofrecen dos niveles de filtración, dependiendo del filtro que se utilice: **F-1000S** sirve para filtrar material particulado, y el sabor y olor a cloro del agua potable, y no se han evaluado otros usos; **F-2000S** reduce el material particulado, el sabor y olor a cloro, así como quistes bacterianos, plomo, mercurio, asbestos, benceno, atrazina, 2,4-D, lindano, carbofurano y p-diclorobenceno. Por lo general, el sistema se instala (cerca o debajo de un fregadero) donde se desee obtener agua potable filtrada y se debe instalar, operar y mantener de acuerdo a las instrucciones de instalación y uso.

### AVISO

Para reducir el riesgo de daños materiales debido a fugas o desbordamientos de agua:

- Lea y siga las Instrucciones de uso que vienen con el sistema original antes de instalar y utilizar este producto.

Para reducir el riesgo de fugas y desbordamientos de agua y para garantizar un funcionamiento óptimo del filtro:

- Cambie el cartucho desechable del filtro cada seis meses o antes si observa una reducción evidente del caudal de flujo.
- Si no se reemplaza el cartucho desechable según la frecuencia recomendada, se podrá ver reducido el funcionamiento de filtro y podrán producirse grietas en la caja del filtro, lo que causará fugas y desbordamientos de agua.
- En los sistemas que utilizan grifos modelo HC de dos manijas, opere solo una manija a la vez.
- Si tiene preguntas o inquietudes, comuníquese con Servicio al Cliente al 1-800-558-5700.

### ⚠️ ADVERTENCIA

No lo use con agua que sea microbiológicamente insegura o de calidad desconocida sin previamente asegurarse de la desinfección adecuada antes o después de que esa agua pase por el sistema.

#### Especificaciones del filtro de reducción química y mecánica F-1000:

(Use el cartucho de sustitución F-1000) Este cartucho proporciona reducción química y mecánica del sabor y olor a cloro y de material particulado de clase III.



Probado y certificado por NSF International en relación con la norma 42 de NSF/ANSI solamente en los siguientes sistemas InSinkErator: GN1100, HC1100, GN2200, HC2200, GN2215, HC2215, H3300 ó HC3300 para la reducción de las afirmaciones que se indican en la ficha de datos de funcionamiento. En los sistemas que utilizan grifos modelo HC de dos manijas, opere solo una manija a la vez.

Presión: 30-120 (207-827 kPa) psi  
Temperatura: 33°F - 100°F  
Caudal: 0.75 gpm  
Capacidad: 500 gallons

**Capacidad del filtro:** 500 galones, dependiendo de las condiciones locales del agua. Tenga en cuenta que las pruebas se efectuaron en condiciones estándar de laboratorio; el rendimiento real puede variar. No emplee el producto con agua que no sea segura microbiológicamente o cuya calidad se desconozca sin una desinfección adecuada anterior o posterior al sistema. Sólo debe utilizarse con agua fría. Los sistemas deben instalarse y utilizarse según los procedimientos y pautas recomendados por el fabricante. Para la garantía, consulte la tarjeta de garantía. Para reparaciones y piezas, comuníquese con su distribuidor local o directamente con InSinkErator® al 1-800-558-5700.

Reducción de contaminantes	Flujo entrante promedio	Concentración Del Desafío Del Influent. Excepto según lo observado, las unidades se aplican a cada fila.	Agua promedio del producto	Reducción media	Requisitos de la reducción del NSF	Prueba NSF
Sabor y olor a cloro	2.1 mg/L	2.0 mg/L ± 10%	0.06 mg/L	97.0%	≥ 50%	J-00082587
Material particulado nominal clase III, <math>5 \mu\text{m}</math> a <math>15 \mu\text{m}</math>	270,000 pts/mL	Al menos 10,000 partículas/mL	82 pts/mL	99.9%	≥ 85%	J-00119308

**Pautas de aplicación y parámetros del suministro de agua para las pruebas NSF:** Caudal de servicio de 0.75 gpm, suministro de agua comunitario o de pozo privado, presión del agua entre 20 y 120 psi (138-827 kPa), temperatura del agua entre 33°F y 100°F. Excepto donde se indique lo contrario, todas las pruebas se efectuaron con pH = 7.5 ± 0.5, Caudal: 0.75 gpm, Presión: 60 psi, Temp: 20° ± 3°C.

Consulte la ficha de datos de funcionamiento del sistema de filtro modelo F-2000S de InSinkErator. Cartucho de repuesto: F-2000

Comuníquese con un agente de Servicio InSinkErator autorizado para reparar o reemplazar los componentes. Filtros de repuesto Puede solicitar los modelos F-1000 y F-2000 llamando al 800-558-5700, ingresando a [shop.insinkerator.com](http://shop.insinkerator.com), o contactando uno de los distribuidores autorizados de InSinkErator.



Por favor lea la Guía de Solución de Problemas y/o visite el sitio [www.insinkerator.com](http://www.insinkerator.com) antes de llamar al AnswerLine®

## IDENTIFICACIÓN Y SOLUCIÓN DE PROBLEMAS

PROBLEMA	CAUSA POSIBLE	SOLUCIÓN
El agua y el vapor salen forzosamente por el grifo sin abrir la manija del dispensador.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>El agua de la unidad está hirviendo.</li> </ul> <p><i>Puede ser durante el ajuste inicial.</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active la palanca del grifo para que salga agua del tanque.</li> <li>Ajuste la temperatura del agua con el indicador que está en frente del tanque.</li> </ul> <p><i>Recuerde que a mayor altitud, el agua hierve a menor temperatura</i></p>
El agua no está caliente.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Posiblemente la unidad no está enchufada.</li> <li>La toma eléctrica no funciona.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Verifique que la unidad esté enchufada en una toma eléctrica conectada a tierra correctamente.</li> <li>Asegúrese de que el interruptor de circuito o los fusibles funcionen correctamente.</li> <li>Compruebe que la corriente de la toma eléctrica no esté interrumpida.</li> </ul>
El agua está demasiado caliente o no está suficientemente caliente.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>El termostato no está ajustado como usted lo necesita.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ajuste el termostato lentamente y luego active la manija del grifo durante 20 segundos para que entre agua fría y se caliente a la nueva temperatura ajustada. Espere entre cinco y siete minutos para que el agua se caliente a la nueva temperatura.</li> </ul>
El agua sale por el orificio de purga y no por la llave.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>El tubo de salida está bloqueado.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Revise que el tubo de salida no esté torcido o estrechado.</li> <li>Desatorille la pieza del extremo del grifo y quite cualquier residuo depositado.</li> </ul>
El agua gotea por la llave u orificio de purga intermitentemente.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>La cavidad de expansión no está drenando correctamente debido a una presión baja del agua.</li> <li>El grifo está bloqueado.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Desenchufe la unidad. Si el goteo no cesa después de algunos minutos, revise la válvula de suministro para verificar que esté completamente abierta y que no haya obstrucciones en la tubería de agua que causen reducción de la presión por abajo de 30 psi (<i>por ejemplo, la válvula de asiento mal instalada, el filtro de agua tapado o la válvula de cierre parcialmente abierta</i>).</li> </ul>
El agua gotea por la llave u orificio de purga constantemente.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Los residuos en la línea de agua pueden estar en la válvula del grifo y causan una salida lenta del agua.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Desatorille la pieza del extremo del grifo y quite cualquier residuo depositado.</li> <li>Active la manija del grifo de 7 a 10 veces para limpiar el grifo.</li> </ul>
Corriente dividida.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Residuos en las líneas del grifo.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Desatorille la pieza del extremo del grifo y quite cualquier residuo depositado.</li> </ul>
Decoloración del agua/ apariencia ferrosa.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Corrosión de la unidad.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Desconecte y drene la unidad tal como se describe en la sección Almacenamiento/Drenado de temporada en la página 32 de este manual. Si la decoloración del agua permanece después de drenar y rellenar la unidad, descontinúe el uso y póngase en contacto con un agente de servicio autorizado por InSinkEerator.</li> </ul>

### PROBLEMAS DE FILTRACIÓN

El agua tiene sabor u olor.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>El filtro necesita limpieza.</li> <li>El filtro necesita cambiarse.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active el grifo y deje salir el agua hasta que esté fría.</li> </ul>
El nuevo filtro tiene fuga o no ajusta.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>La cabeza y el soporte no están girados completamente.</li> <li>Separación entre el filtro y la junta tórica</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Si no hay cambio, reemplace el cartucho del filtro.</li> <li>Retire, revise, reinstale el cartucho del filtro.</li> </ul>
El agua no fluye o fluye muy poco.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>El filtro necesita cambiarse.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reemplace el cartucho del filtro. Vea la página 32.</li> </ul>

Si los problemas continúan, visite [www.insinkerator.com](http://www.insinkerator.com) o solicite ayuda en la línea AnswerLine® en el número 1-800-558-5700.



CONTEMPORARY  
ANTIQUÉ  
TUSCAN  
MODERN

Distributeur d'eau chaude instantanée

## Manuel d'utilisation

Installation, soin et utilisation

Installation, Care & Use

Instalacion, cuidado & uso



Pour voir un tutorial de cette installation  
<http://goo.gl/yYrFOA>



**EMERSON**  
Commercial & Residential Solutions

GN/HC1100  
GN/HC2200  
GN/HC2215  
H/HC3300

Nous sommes très heureux que vous ayez choisi d'utiliser chez vous le distributeur d'eau chaude instantanée InSinkErator®. Cet appareil unique vous permettra d'économiser du temps et vous évitera des efforts dans la cuisine. Et vous découvrirez avec joie chaque jour de nouveaux usages pour cet appareil. C'est la raison pour laquelle des millions de personnes utilisent un distributeur d'eau chaude instantanée InSinkErator.

Nous sommes persuadés qu'en suivant nos instructions étape par étape, vous profiterez sans tarder des avantages de l'eau chaude instantanée.

## CE QUE VOUS DEVEZ SAVOIR AVANT DE COMMENCER

- Pour votre satisfaction et votre sécurité, lisez bien toutes les instructions, mises en garde et avertissements avant d'installer ou d'utiliser ce distributeur d'eau chaude instantanée
- Cette unité particulière n'est pas destinée à un usage commercial.
- Assurez-vous que tous les raccordements et le câblage électrique sont conformes aux codes locaux.
- Une prise électrique avec prise de terre de 115 volts ordinaire est nécessaire sous l'évier pour l'alimentation électrique du distributeur.
- La prise murale alimentant votre distributeur doit avoir du courant d'une façon continue.
- Cette prise doit être dotée d'un fusible et ne doit pas être contrôlée par le même interrupteur mural que celui qui fait fonctionner le broyeur, à moins que vous n'ayez un commutateur SinkTop Switch™ de InSinkErator®.
- Il est recommandé d'installer un robinet de réglage spécialisé sur le conduit d'eau froide fournissant l'eau au système.
- Si vous croyez avoir des niveaux élevés de chlore dans votre eau ou si votre eau semble rouillée avant l'installation de cette unité, il est recommandé d'utiliser un système de filtration d'eau.  
Ce produit contient de l'acier inoxydable. Le fabricant n'offre pas de garantie contre l'eau rouillée à cause des nombreux facteurs impliqués qui sont hors de son contrôle. Cependant, l'apparition subite d'une eau rouillée provenant du distributeur d'eau chaude peut indiquer le besoin d'une réparation ou du remplacement de ce produit.
- L'utilisation d'un filtre à eau ne devrait PAS entraîner une baisse de pression d'eau en dessous de 30 psi (207 kPa). Si c'est le cas, ceci empêchera votre appareil de fonctionner convenablement.
- Les pièces mobiles à l'intérieur du réservoir peuvent causer un son de crécelle. Ceci est normal.

## CE DONT VOUS AVEZ BESOIN POUR COMMENCER

### Équipement nécessaire :

- Perceuse
- Raccord en T
- Robinet de réglage spécialisé
- Clé anglaise
- Tournevis cruciforme
- Crayon
- Ruban à mesurer

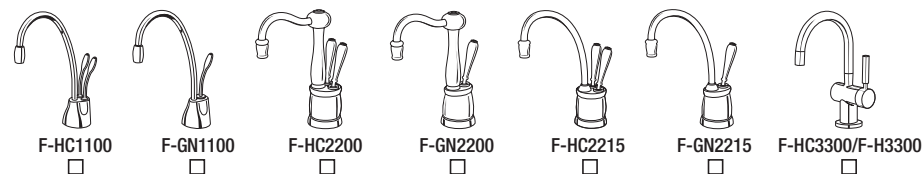
### Équipement dont vous pourriez avoir besoin :

- Ancrages pour mur sec
- Scie cylindrique
- Clé de robinet à montée
- Emporte-pièce

Si vous avez l'intention d'utiliser le trou de l'arroseur dans votre évier pour votre distributeur, vous pourrez avoir besoin d'une clé de robinet à montée et d'un bouchon de 3 mm ou d'un chapeau de 6 mm (non fournis) pour le conduit de boyau d'arroseur du robinet. **Reportez-vous à l'étape 1B.**

Si vous devez découper un trou de montage dans votre évier en acier inoxydable, vous pourrez avoir besoin d'une scie cylindrique de 3,2 - 3,8 cm pour découper l'acier inoxydable ou d'un emporte-pièce. Consultez un professionnel si vous percez dans une surface autre que l'acier inoxydable.

Identifiez le numéro de modèle de votre distributeur d'eau chaude instantanée et inscrivez-le ici : \_\_\_\_\_



## COMMENT UTILISER CE MANUEL D'UTILISATION

Ces instructions sont divisées en chapitres principaux, indiqués par des numéros et des sous-chapitres, indiqués par des lettres en majuscule. Le manuel est configuré ainsi pour vous permettre de faire une pause à n'importe quel point, une fois un chapitre ou un sous-chapitre terminé sans affecter le processus d'installation.

Ce que vous verrez dans le manuel d'utilisation :

### INSTALLATION DU ROBINET

**A**

**AVIS**

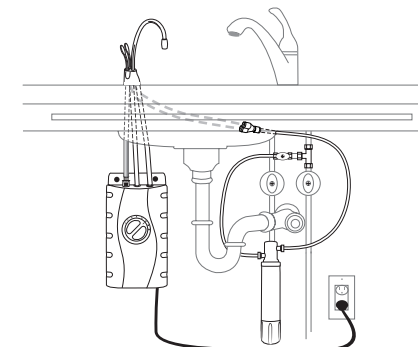
Domage matériel : ne pincez pas ou ne brisez pas les tubes en cuivre. Ne déformez pas les trois derniers centimètres du tube.

- Déballez les composantes du distributeur.
- Sur une surface plane et ferme, redressez soigneusement le tube de cuivre.

- 1** Fournit une description narrative étape par étape de l'installation, avec cases à cocher pouvant être marquées au fur et à mesure que vous progressez dans l'installation.
- 2** Contient des illustrations très simples qui fournissent des instructions visuelles pour appuyer le texte.
- 3** Messages de sécurité importants qui requièrent votre attention durant l'étape.

<b>▲ AVERTISSEMENT</b>	Une situation potentiellement dangereuse qui, si elle n'est pas évitée, pourrait entraîner la mort ou des blessures graves.
<b>▲ MISE EN GARDE</b>	Une situation potentiellement dangereuse qui, si elle n'est pas évitée, pourrait entraîner des blessures mineures ou modérées.
<b>AVIS</b>	Avis est utilisé pour décrire des pratiques qui ne sont pas liées à des blessures.

## VUE GÉNÉRALE D'UNE CONFIGURATION TERMINÉE

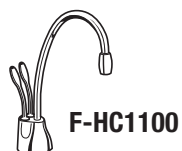
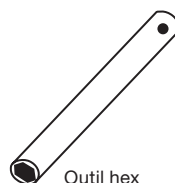
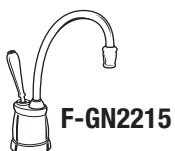
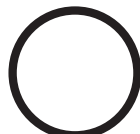


Pour voir un tutoriel de cette installation  
<http://goo.gl/yYrFOA>

**AVIS**

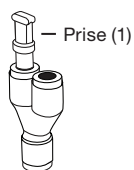
Ne branchez pas l'alimentation du réservoir d'eau chaude avant l'étape 6C. Pour éviter tout dommage permanent au produit, ne faites fonctionner le réservoir que lorsqu'il est rempli d'eau.

## DANS CET EMBALLAGE

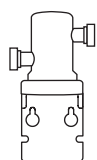


Plaque de montage semi-circulaire

Outil hex



Connecteur rapide en Y



Tête de filtre

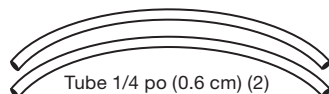


Cartouche de filtre



HWT-F1000S  
HWT-HP\*  
HWT-00\*

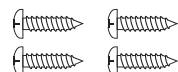
\*(système de filtration en option)



Tube 1/4 po (0.6 cm) (2)



Écrou en laiton/  
Virole/Insertion de tube

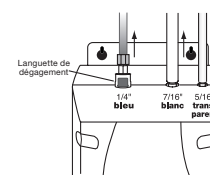


Vis 3/4 po (1.9cm) (4)

Si vous installez un nouveau robinet ET un nouveau réservoir, passez à la page 40.

### SI VOUS INSTALLEZ SEULEMENT UN NOUVEAU ROBINET

A



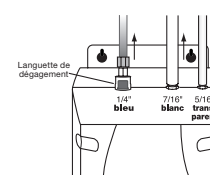
- Fermez l'approvisionnement en eau.
- Retirez les tubes du réservoir : sur le dessus du réservoir, enfoncez la languette de dégagement grise dans le raccord rapide fixant le tube **bleu** ou en **cuivre** de 1/4 po (0.6 cm) et tirez délicatement le conduit hors du raccord. Tirez le tube **blanc** de 7/16 po (1.1 cm) et le tube **transparent** de 5/16 po (0.8 cm) hors des raccords.
- Retirez le robinet existant et passez à la page 40.

AVIS

**Domage matériel : débranchez le réservoir avant de débrancher les tubes.**

### SI VOUS INSTALLEZ SEULEMENT UN NOUVEAU RÉSERVOIR

A



- Fermez l'approvisionnement en eau.
- Retirez les tubes du réservoir : sur le dessus du réservoir, enfoncez la languette de dégagement grise dans le raccord rapide fixant le tube **bleu** et tirez délicatement le conduit hors du raccord. Tirez le tube **blanc** de 7/16 po (1.1 cm) et le tube **transparent** de 5/16 po (0.8 cm) hors des raccords.
- Retirez le réservoir existant et passez à la page 43.

AVIS

**Domage matériel : ne pincez pas ou ne brisez pas les tubes en cuivre. Ne déformez pas les trois derniers centimètres du tube.**

AVIS

Ne branchez pas l'alimentation du réservoir d'eau chaude avant l'étape 6C. Pour éviter tout dommage permanent au produit, ne faites fonctionner le réservoir que lorsqu'il est rempli d'eau.

Pour voir un tutoriel de cette installation

<http://goo.gl/yYrf0A>



Le raccord à enclenchement n'est pas compris. Requis lors du remplacement du réservoir fabriqué avant janvier 2006. Appelez la ligne AnswerLine® au 1-800-58-5700 pour commander.

**AnswerLine®**  
1-800-558-5700



# COMMENCEZ ICI

# 1

## PRÉPARATION

### A

Minimum requis depuis le centre du trou jusqu'au mur

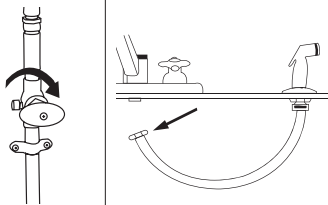
F-HC1100 .....	7 cm
F-GN1100 .....	8 cm
F-HC2200 .....	7 cm
F-GN2200 .....	9 cm
F-HC2215 .....	7 cm
F-GN2215 .....	9 cm
F-HC3300 .....	6 cm
F-H3300 .....	6 cm

L'épaisseur maximale du comptoir est de 76 mm.

- Identifiez les emplacements pour le robinet du distributeur, le réservoir et le filtre (le cas échéant).
- Vérifiez s'il y a un dégagement suffisant pour que les poignées du distributeur puissent être ouvertes complètement.
- Vérifiez que le comptoir ne mesure pas plus de 3 po (7.6 cm).
- Assurez-vous qu'il y ait une prise mise à la terre sous l'évier.

La prise murale utilisée pour votre distributeur doit être constamment alimentée et avoir un fusible. Elle ne doit pas être commandée par le même interrupteur qui active votre broyeur à déchets, à moins d'utiliser un InSinkErator SinkTop Switch™.

### B



Si vous devez percer à travers l'évier ou le comptoir, il vous faudra louer ou acheter les outils appropriés.

- Fermez l'approvisionnement en eau.
- Si vous utilisez le trou de boyau pour l'arroseur de l'évier, retirez l'écrou qui raccorde le boyau de l'arroseur au fond du robinet.
- À l'aide d'une clé à mollette, retirez l'écrou raccordant la bride de rondelle d'arroseur dans le trou de l'arroseur.
- Bouchez l'ouverture du boyau à l'aide d'un bouchon de 1/8 po (0.3 cm) ou un chapeau de 1/4 po (0.6 cm) (non fournis).

### C

Taille requise du trou

F-HC1100 .....	3.5 - 3.8 cm
F-GN1100 .....	3.5 - 3.8 cm
F-HC2200 .....	3.5 - 3.8 cm
F-GN2200 .....	3.5 - 3.8 cm
F-HC2215 .....	3.5 - 3.8 cm
F-GN2215 .....	3.5 - 3.8 cm
F-HC3300 .....	3.5 - 3.8 cm
F-H3300 .....	3.5 - 3.8 cm

Que faire si vous n'avez pas de trou d'arroseur ou que vous ne voulez pas l'utiliser?

- De nombreux propriétaires remplacent le distributeur à savon de leur évier par un distributeur d'eau chaude instantanée.
- Si vous percez un trou dans un évier ou le dessus du comptoir dans un évier en acier inoxydable ou le dessus du comptoir, vous pouvez découper un trou de montage pour le distributeur à l'aide d'une scie cylindrique pour acier inoxydable, ou vous pouvez utiliser un emporte-pièce.

Consultez un professionnel avant de percer dans une surface autre que de l'acier inoxydable.

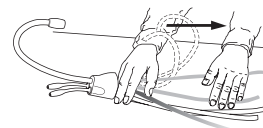


Pour voir un tutoriel de cette installation  
<http://goo.gl/yYrFOA>

# 2

## INSTALLATION DU ROBINET - 1100/2200/2215

### A

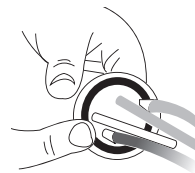


- Déballez les composantes du distributeur.
- Sur une surface plane et ferme, edressez soigneusement le tube de cuivre.

**AVIS**

**Domage matériel : ne pincez pas ou ne brisez pas les tubes de cuivre. Ne déformez pas les trois derniers centimètres du tube.**

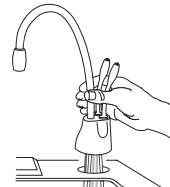
### B



- Vérifiez si le joint torique noir est correctement appuyé dans la base de la tête du distributeur (la rainure étant en dessous du distributeur).

Utilisez un joint torique en caoutchouc pour assurer une étanchéité adéquate.

### C

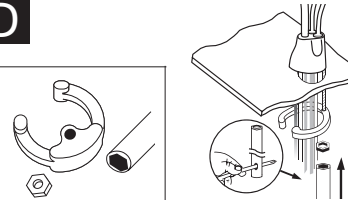


- Faites passer les tubes vers le bas à travers le trou dans l'évier ou le dessus de comptoir jusqu'à ce que la base repose sur l'évier ou sur la surface du dessus de comptoir.

Pour faire passer les tubes plus facilement par le trou, insérer d'abord le tube bleu avec l'attache de connexion rapide, puis insérer les autres tubes.

Un assistant peut être nécessaire pour tenir la tête du distributeur en place lors de la fixation du distributeur.

### D

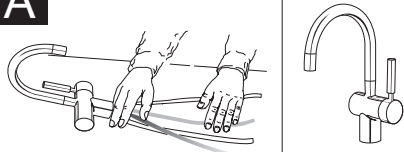


- À partir du dessous de l'évier, placez la plaque de montage semi-circulaire sur le goujon fileté.
- Placez l'écrou hex. Sur la tige fileté. Vérifiez si la tête du robinet est à l'angle voulu.
- Insérez le tournevis dans le trou sur le côté de l'outil hexagonal (pour créer un « T ») et utilisez l'outil pour serrer l'écrou et fixez le robinet.

La plaque de montage semi-circulaire devrait encadrer tous les tubes descendants et se prolonger au-delà du trou de l'évier une fois serrée.

## INSTALLATION DU ROBINET - 3300

A



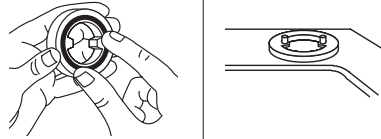
**AVIS**

**Domage matériel :** ne pincez pas ou ne brisez pas les tubes. Ne déformez pas les trois derniers centimètres du tube.

- Déballez les composantes du distributeur.
- Il est recommandé d'installer ce robinet en gardant la poignée distributrice à la droite.

La conception unique permet à la poignée d'être entièrement fonctionnelle qu'elle soit placée à la droite ou à la gauche du robinet. Déterminez le côté que vous préférez avant de procéder à l'installation.

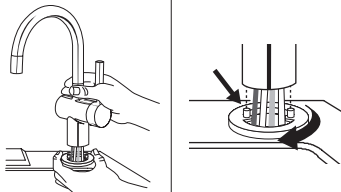
B



**Le fait de mouiller le joint torique avec de l'eau avant de l'insérer dans le siège en laiton aide à le tenir en place durant l'installation.**

- Insérez le joint torique en caoutchouc dans la rainure du siège en laiton.
- Placez le siège en laiton, le joint torique vers le bas, sur le trou dans l'évier ou le comptoir.

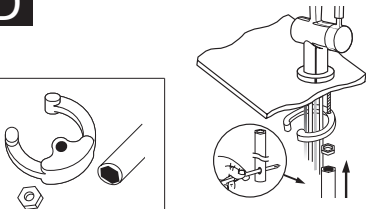
C



**Pour faciliter l'acheminement des tubes dans le trou, insérez d'abord le tube bleu avec l'attache à connexion rapide, puis insérez les autres tubes.**

- En tenant le siège en laiton en place, acheminez les tubes vers le bas à travers le trou dans l'évier ou le comptoir jusqu'à ce que la base touche au siège en laiton.
- Faites tourner le siège en laiton jusqu'à ce que les deux goujons de retenue se glissent dans les trous de la base du robinet et que la base soit appuyée fermement sur le siège en laiton.

D



**La plaque de montage semi-circulaire devrait encercler tous les tubes descendants et se prolonger au-delà du trou de l'évier une fois serrée.**

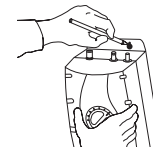
- À partir du dessous de l'évier, placez la plaque de montage semi-circulaire sur le goujon fileté.
- Placez un écrou hexagonal sur le goujon fileté. Assurez-vous que la poignée distributrice se trouve sur le côté choisi et que la tête du robinet se trouve à l'angle désiré.
- Insérez le tournevis dans le trou sur le côté de l'outil hexagonal (pour créer un « T ») et utilisez l'outil pour serrer l'écrou et fixez le robinet.

**▲ MISE EN GARDE**

Ne branchez pas le réservoir d'eau chaude avant l'étape 6C.

## MONTAGE DU RÉSERVOIR

A



Le réservoir doit être monté de niveau pour assurer un bon fonctionnement

**AVIS**

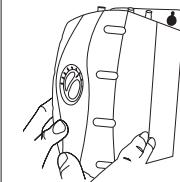
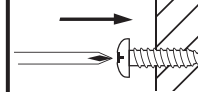
**Domage matériel :** le réservoir doit être situé à moins de 40,6 cm du robinet et à moins de 76,2 cm d'une prise standard mise à la terre. **NE PROLONGEZ PAS** les tuyaux de plomberie et conduites électriques.

- Sélectionnez un endroit sous l'évier pour monter le réservoir verticalement à la portée des connexions de plomberie et d'électricité. Le réservoir devrait se trouver à 16 po (40.6 cm) ou moins des conduits d'eau du robinet et à 30 po (76.2 cm) ou moins d'une prise ordinaire mise à la terre.

- Tout en maintenant le réservoir en place à l'endroit choisi pour l'installation, servez-vous d'un crayon pour marquer les emplacements pour les deux vis de suspension.

B

Laissez 6 mm pour suspendre le réservoir



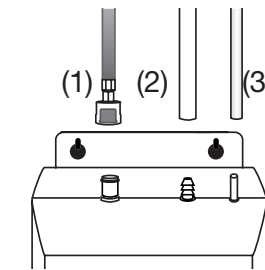
**Les vis fournies doivent être utilisées uniquement sur des montants ou des armoires en bois. Servez-vous d'ancrages muraux (non fournis) pour l'installation sur un mur sec.**

- Percez des avant-trous de 1/8 po (0.3 cm) sur les marques.
- Serrez les vis dans les trous prépercés en laissant 1/4 po (0.6 cm) exposés.
- Suspendez le réservoir sur les vis.
- Serrez les vis avec seulement 1/2 tour dans le sens horaire.

**Montez le réservoir verticalement dans un endroit qui permet un dégagement sur le dessous du réservoir pour le drainage au besoin. NE PAS trop serrer les vis.**

## RACCORDEMENT DU ROBINET AU RÉSERVOIR

A



**AVIS**

**Domage matériel :** les conduits d'eau pincés ou bloqués peuvent causer des dommages au réservoir du distributeur. Vérifiez pour vous assurer que les tubes sont bien raccordés et poussés aussi loin que possible.

- Sans enfoncer le bouton gris, placez le raccord à connexion à pression sur l'extrémité du tube **bleu** sur le raccord gauche du réservoir, en le poussant jusqu'à ce qu'il s'enclenche en place. (1)
- Faites glisser le tube flexible **blanc** 7/16 po (1.1 cm) au-dessus du raccord barbelé en acier et faites-le glisser vers le bas d'environ 1/2 po (1.3 cm). (2).
- Faites glisser le tube **transparent** de 5/16 po (0.8 cm) sur le raccord lisse en plastique et faites-le descendre d'environ 1/2 po (1.3 cm). (3).
- Vérifiez visuellement s'il y a des tubes pincés ou écrasés.

Aucun de ces raccordements ne requiert de collier de serrage.



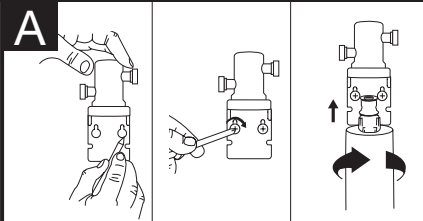
Pour voir un tutoriel de cette installation

<http://goo.gl/yYrfOA>

**AnswerLine®**  
1-800-558-5700



# 5 INSTALLATION DU SYSTÈME DE FILTRATION

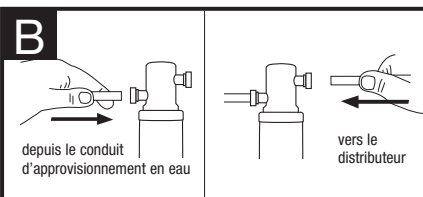


**Les vis fournies doivent être utilisées seulement sur des montants ou des armoires en bois. Servez-vous d'ancrages muraux (non fournis) pour l'installation sur un mur sec.**

- Séparez la cartouche de la tête du filtre.
- Marquez les emplacements des trous pour la tête de filtre et le support à un endroit qui permet le remplacement du filtre.
- Percez des trous de départ de 1/8 po (0.3 cm) et fixez le support au mur à l'aide de vis à bois en les serrant bien.
- Insérez la nouvelle cartouche dans la tête du filtre. La surface supérieure de la cartouche arrivera au ras du fond de la tête du filtre lorsqu'elle est complètement enclenchée.

**⚠ AVERTISSEMENT**

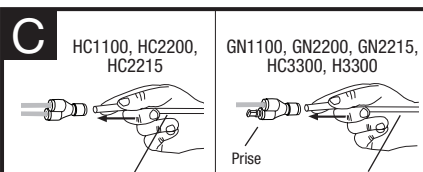
**Risque de blessure :** ne placez pas le filtre au-dessus d'une prise de courant ou autre dispositif électrique. Installez la tête et le support de façon à ce que les raccordements ne nécessitent pas d'étirement, de tortillement ou de pincement du tube.



- Déterminez la longueur du tube nécessaire, puis coupez à la longueur en vous assurant que la coupe est perpendiculaire et ne comporte pas d'ébarbures.
- Insérez un tube **blanc** 1/4 po (0.64 cm) dans le côté de l'entrée de la tête de filtre jusqu'à ce qu'il s'arrête. **Appuyez à nouveau pour assurer un ajustement précis.**
- Insérez l'autre tube **blanc** de 1/4 po (0.64 cm) dans le côté de sortie de la tête de filtre jusqu'à ce qu'il s'arrête. **Appuyez à nouveau pour assurer un ajustement précis.**

**⚠ AVERTISSEMENT**

**Dommage matériel :** Le tube doit se conformer au contour de l'armoire pour permettre un espace de rangement sans courbures trop prononcées. Les tubes ont besoin de coupes propres, perpendiculaires et sans ébarbures pour assurer un bon ajustement.

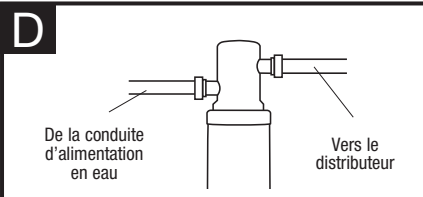


- Insérer le(s) tube(s) de cuivre du distributeur dans la connexion rapide en « Y » à l'aide du bouchon pour modèles à eau chaude seulement.
- Raccordez le tube **blanc** 1/4 po (0.64 cm) depuis la sortie de droite sur la tête de filtre dans le raccord de la connexion rapide jusqu'à ce qu'il s'arrête qu'il s'arrête. **Appuyez à nouveau sur le tube pour assurer un ajustement précis.**

Pour enlever le(s) tube(s) de la connexion rapide, appuyez sur la bague de dégagement et tirez doucement le tube pour l'éloigner.

**⚠ AVERTISSEMENT**

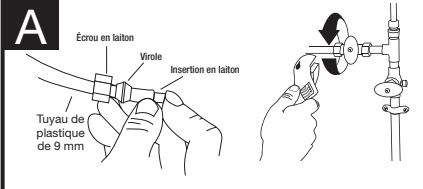
**Dommage matériel :** N'étendez pas les conduits plus loin que les 16 po fournis. S'assurer que le(s) tube(s) et le connecteur en « Y » soient fixés solidement.



- Raccordez le tuyau **blanc** restant de 1/4 po (0.64 cm) pour la conduite d'alimentation d'eau d'entrée. (Reportez-vous à l'étape 6)

**Une évacuation d'eau de 58 ml environ est normale lors du retrait du filtre.**

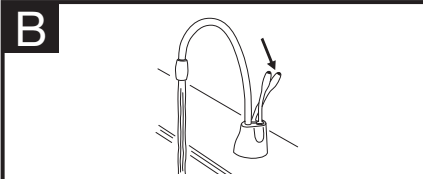
# 6 CONNEXION FINALE DE L'EAU



- Installez un raccord en T sur la conduite (*non compris*) d'alimentation d'eau froide.
- Installez le robinet de réglage d'eau spécialisé avec le raccord compression de 1/4 po (0.64 cm).
- À l'extrémité du tube **blanc** de 1/4 po (0.64 cm) venant du filtre ou de la connexion rapide, faites glisser l'écrou en laiton et la virole fournis sur le tube et poussez l'insertion de tube en laiton.
- Insérez le tube **blanc** 1/4 po (0.64 cm) dans le raccord à compression de 1/4 po (0.64 cm) et serrez.

**⚠ AVERTISSEMENT**

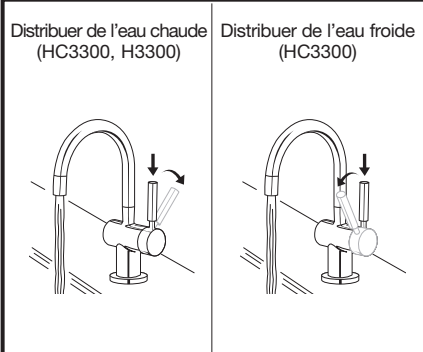
**Dommage matériel :** joignez le reste du tube à l'alimentation d'eau froide seulement.



- Ouvrez l'alimentation d'eau.
- Ouvrez le robinet d'eau chaude pour expulser l'air emprisonné.
- Pour le F-1000S et le F-1000, rincez 8,5 litres à travers le filtre avant l'utilisation (pendant environ trois minutes). Pour le F-2000S et le F-2000, rincez 11,3 litres à travers le filtre avant l'utilisation (pendant environ quatre minutes).

**⚠ AVERTISSEMENT**

**Danger d'échaudage :** le robinet donne de l'eau presque bouillante (100 °C) qui pourrait brûler ou échauder instantanément. Faites attention lorsque vous utilisez cet appareil.



**Directives d'utilisation pour les robinets Indulge™ Modern**

Avec OptiPush<sup>MC</sup> activation de côté chaud avec arrêt automatique et Stay-On<sup>MC</sup> du côté froid, ce qui garde le robinet ouvert en distribuant de l'eau froide.

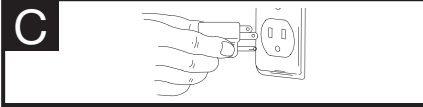
- HC3300 :** Pour distribuer de l'eau chaude instantanée, appuyer d'abord sur la poignée du robinet, puis pousser la poignée vers l'arrière dans la direction de la marque rouge sur le dessus de la poignée. Pour distribuer de l'eau froide, appuyer d'abord sur la poignée du robinet, puis tirer la poignée vers l'avant dans la direction de la marque bleue sur la poignée. **Remarque :** s'applique seulement lorsque la poignée est installée du côté gauche.

Avec OptiPush<sup>MC</sup> activation du côté chaud avec arrêt automatique.

- H3300 :** Pour distribuer de l'eau chaude instantanée, appuyer d'abord sur la poignée du robinet, puis pousser la poignée vers l'arrière dans la direction de la marque rouge sur le dessus de la poignée.

**⚠ AVERTISSEMENT**

**Danger d'échaudage :** le robinet donne de l'eau presque bouillante (100 °C) qui pourrait brûler ou échauder instantanément. Faites attention lorsque vous utilisez cet appareil.



- Vérifiez tous les raccordements pour vous assurer qu'ils sont serrés et qu'il n'y a pas de fuite.
- Branchez le réservoir d'eau chaude instantanée.

**L'eau sera froide au début.**

**Allouez 12-15 minutes pour que l'eau atteigne la température voulue.**

**Les bruits de sifflement et de gargouillement sont normaux durant le cycle de chauffage initial.**

**⚠ AVERTISSEMENT**

**Danger de brûlures :** une prise standard mise à la terre et se trouvant à moins de 76,2 cm du distributeur est nécessaire sous l'évier. N'utilisez pas de fil de rallonge avec le distributeur.

Si l'eau venant du robinet n'est pas chaude 15 minutes après que l'unité a été branchée - ou pour d'autres raisons liées à l'opération de votre distributeur d'eau chaude instantanée reportez-vous à la section « Dépannage » à la page 51.

## RENSEIGNEMENTS IMPORTANTS SUR LA SÉCURITÉ

- N'utilisez ce chauffe-eau qu'aux fins d'utilisation prévues, de la manière décrite dans ce manuel.
- Cet appareil n'est pas destiné à être utilisé par des personnes (y compris des enfants) dont les capacités physiques, sensorielles ou mentales sont réduites ou dont l'expérience et les connaissances sont insuffisantes, sauf si elles bénéficient d'une supervision ou de directives sur l'utilisation de l'appareil de la part d'une personne responsable de leur sécurité. Les enfants doivent être surveillés pour s'assurer qu'ils ne jouent pas avec le robinet d'eau chaude. Pour réduire les risques de blessure, surveillez étroitement les enfants lorsqu'ils se trouvent à proximité d'un appareil en marche.
- N'utilisez pas ce produit s'il est ou s'il semble être endommagé de quelque manière que ce soit, ou suite à son mauvais fonctionnement ou après l'avoir échappé. Retournez immédiatement le produit à votre détaillant pour qu'il l'examine et si nécessaire, l'ajuste ou le répare.

<b>▲ AVERTISSEMENT</b>	Pour réduire le risque associé à une suffocation : ne laissez pas les enfants de moins de trois ans accéder aux petites pièces durant l'installation de ce produit.
<b>▲ AVERTISSEMENT</b>	<b>Risque d'électrocution</b> : pour réduire le risque d'électrocution, ne submergez pas et n'exposez pas le produit, le cordon flexible ou la fiche à la pluie, à l'humidité ou à tout liquide ou lorsque vous vous tenez sur ou dans des surfaces humides ou mouillées. Si un produit électrique tombe dans l'eau, DÉBRANCHEZ-LE immédiatement. NE TOUCHEZ PAS À L'EAU. <b>Important</b> : le produit doit être inspecté par un technicien qualifié avant de le rebrancher à la source d'alimentation.
<b>▲ AVERTISSEMENT</b>	<b>Blessures/dommages matériels</b> : pour réduire les risques associés à une tension dangereuse présente lorsqu'un installateur perce une ligne électrique existante dans la zone d'installation : n'installez pas à proximité de fils électriques qui risquent de se trouver sur la trajectoire d'une perceuse lors du choix de l'emplacement de montage du support du système. Évitez aussi le risque de percer dans des tuyaux d'eau, ce qui pourrait entraîner des dommages matériels.

**Important** : acheminez toujours le cordon d'alimentation de manière à ce qu'il ne puisse pas entrer en contact avec des surfaces chaudes.

- Ne débranchez pas le produit de l'alimentation électrique en tirant sur le cordon.
- N'utilisez pas le produit à des fins autres que celles prévues et décrites dans ces directives. L'utilisation de pièces accessoires autres que celles recommandées par le fabricant risque d'entraîner des situations dangereuses.
- La connexion recommandée peut être effectuée à une conduite d'eau froide existante avec un raccord se terminant par une vanne d'arrêt, un limiteur de pression et un clapet de non-retour à vérification double se trouvant à proximité du produit.

<b>▲ AVERTISSEMENT</b>	<b>Risque de choc électrique</b> : utiliser un appareil qui n'est pas mis à la terre ou qui n'est pas correctement raccordé peut entraîner des blessures graves, voire fatales en cas de choc électrique.
------------------------	---

**Cet appareil doit être mis à la terre.** Ce robinet d'eau bouillante est muni d'un cordon d'alimentation doté d'un conducteur de mise à la terre et d'une goupille de masse. La fiche doit être branchée sur une prise appropriée, correctement installée et mise à la terre conformément à tous les codes et règlements locaux. Ne modifiez pas la fiche fournie avec l'appareil. Si la fiche ne convient pas à la prise de courant, faites installer une prise adéquate par un électricien qualifié. En cas de doute sur la mise à la terre du robinet d'eau bouillante, demandez l'avis d'un électricien ou d'un réparateur qualifié.

<b>▲ MISE EN GARDE</b>	<b>Blessures/dommages matériels</b> : ce réservoir est un réservoir non pressurisé. NE modifiez PAS ce système. NE fermez PAS le tube d'aération et NE branchez PAS d'autres types de robinets ou de vannes au réservoir. N'utilisez que le robinet InSinkErator fourni. Utilisez seulement les pièces fournies. Communiquez avec un agent de service InSinkErator autorisé pour toute réparation ou pièce de rechange.
<b>▲ AVERTISSEMENT</b>	Pour réduire le risque associé à un étouffement découlant de l'ingestion de contaminants : n'utilisez pas avec de l'eau micro-biologiquement dangereuse ou de qualité inconnue sans désinfection adéquate à l'entrée ou à la sortie du système.

Un robinet d'eau bouillante, tout comme n'importe quel chauffe-eau, a une durée de vie limitée et finit par tomber en panne. Pour éviter les dommages matériels et les blessures, le robinet d'eau bouillante doit être inspecté régulièrement pour déceler toute fuite éventuelle et corrosion et le remplacer au besoin. Il est recommandé d'utiliser un bac de vidange raccordé à un drain approprié ou équipé d'un détecteur de fuite dans tous les cas où une fuite d'eau pourrait causer des dommages matériels.

<b>▲ AVERTISSEMENT</b>	<b>Risque d'incendie</b> : afin de réduire les risques d'incendie, n'entreposez PAS des articles inflammables comme des chiffons, du papier ou des bombes aérosol à proximité du réservoir. N'entreposez PAS et n'utilisez PAS de l'essence ou d'autres liquides ou gaz inflammables à proximité de cet appareil ou de tout autre appareil.
<b>▲ AVERTISSEMENT</b>	<b>Risque de fuite</b> : examinez régulièrement le distributeur et les raccords de plomberie pour y détecter des fuites qui peuvent entraîner des dommages matériels et des blessures.

## RENSEIGNEMENTS IMPORTANTS SUR LA SÉCURITÉ

### AVIS

**Dommage matériel** : pour réduire le risque associé aux dommages matériels causés par une fuite d'eau ou une inondation et afin d'assurer la performance optimale du produit :

- Lisez et suivez les directives d'utilisation avant d'installer et d'utiliser ce système.
- L'installation et l'utilisation de l'équipement DOIVENT se conformer à tous les codes de plomberie locaux et provinciaux.

**Exigences du système (réservoir d'eau chaude, système de filtration et distributeur) :**

- Le conduit flexible de mise à l'air et les tubes de sortie doivent être correctement reliés au robinet fourni par le fabricant. Ils ne doivent pas être obstrués ni reliés à un robinet de type normal ou de tout autre type.
- N'installez pas sur des conduites d'alimentation en eau chaude. La température maximale de l'eau lors du fonctionnement de ce système est de 37,8 °C (100 °F). Reliez uniquement à de l'alimentation en eau froide.
- N'installez pas si la pression d'eau dépasse 862 kPa (125 lb/po<sup>2</sup>). Si votre pression d'eau dépasse 552 kPa (80 lb/po<sup>2</sup>), vous devez installer un limiteur de pression. Communiquez avec un plombier professionnel si vous n'êtes pas sûr(e) comment vérifier votre pression d'eau.
- N'installez pas lorsque des coups de bélier risquent de se produire. Si de telles conditions existent, vous devez installer un antibélier. Communiquez avec un plombier professionnel si vous n'êtes pas sûr(e) comment vérifier cette condition.
- Lorsqu'un dispositif d'écoulement de retour est installé sur un système d'eau, un dispositif de contrôle de pression causée par l'expansion thermique doit être installé.
- Protégez contre le gel, coupez l'alimentation en eau, retirez la cartouche du filtre, vidangez le réservoir d'eau chaude et la conduite lorsque des températures inférieures à 4,4 °C (40 °F) sont prévues; reportez-vous à la section Entreposage et drainage saisonniers.
- N'utilisez pas de chalumeau ou d'autres sources à température élevée près du système, des cartouches, des raccords en plastique ou de la plomberie en plastique.
- N'installez pas à proximité de conduites d'eau qui risquent de se trouver sur la trajectoire d'une perceuse lors du choix de l'emplacement de montage du support.
- Installez le système de manière à éviter qu'il ne soit heurté par d'autres éléments utilisés dans la zone d'installation.
- Veillez à ce que son emplacement et ses fixations supportent le poids du système installé et rempli d'eau.
- Veillez à ce que les conduites et les raccords soient bien fixés et exempts de fuites.
- N'installez pas avec des conduites rigides. Ce système doit être utilisé avec des conduites d'eau en plastique (comme des conduites PEX, PE et PP).
- N'installez pas ce système si l'une des bagues de connexion rapide est manquante sur la tête du filtre ou de la connexion rapide en Y. Communiquez avec un agent de service InSinkErator autorisé si des bagues manquent à l'un ou l'autre des raccords.
- Pour les systèmes qui utilisent les robinets modèle HC à deux poignées, n'utilisez qu'une poignée à la fois.
- Important : ne laissez pas le système bouillir continuellement.
- Inspectez le système régulièrement. S'il présente des signes de fuite d'eau, fermez l'alimentation en eau et communiquez avec un agent de service InSinkErator autorisé.
- Il est recommandé d'utiliser un bac de vidange raccordé à un drain approprié ou équipé d'un détecteur de fuite dans tous les cas où une fuite d'eau pourrait causer des dommages matériels.
- Pour toute question ou inquiétude, veuillez communiquer avec un agent de service InSinkErator autorisé (reportez-vous à la couverture arrière pour obtenir les renseignements de contact).

**Autres considérations concernant l'utilisation du système de filtration :**

- La cartouche jetable du filtre DOIT être remplacée tous les six mois, à la capacité nominale ou plus tôt si une réduction importante du débit se produit.
- Ne pas remplacer cette cartouche jetable aux intervalles recommandés risque de réduire la performance du filtre, de fissurer le boîtier du filtre et d'entraîner des fuites d'eau ou une inondation.
- Protégez contre le gel, retirez la cartouche du filtre lorsque des températures inférieures à 4,4 °C (40 °F) sont prévues.
- N'installez pas les systèmes dans des zones où les températures ambiantes risquent de dépasser 43,3 °C (110 °F).
- N'installez pas directement sous la lumière du soleil ou à l'extérieur.

# GARANTIE LIMITÉE DE SERVICE INTÉGRAL A DOMICILE

**Distributeur :** garantie de cinq ans  
**Réservoir en acier inoxydable :** garantie de trois ans  
**Système de filtration :** garantie d'un an (cartouche de filtre exclue)

Cette garantie est fournie par InSinkErator, une unité commerciale d'Emerson Electric Co., (« **InSinkErator** », « **Fabricant** », « **nous** » ou « **notre** ») au consommateur original propriétaire du produit InSinkErator avec lequel cette garantie est fournie (le « **Produit InSinkErator** ») et tout propriétaire subséquent de la résidence dans laquelle le Produit a originalement été installé (« **Client** », « **vous** » ou « **votre** »).

InSinkErator garantit au Client que votre Produit InSinkErator sera libre de défauts de matériaux et de main d'œuvre, sous réserve des exclusions décrites ci-dessous, pendant la « **Période de garantie** », à compter de la date la plus récente entre : (a) la date d'installation originale de votre Produit InSinkErator, (b) la date d'achat ou (c) la date de fabrication identifiée par le numéro de série de votre Produit InSinkErator. Vous devrez présenter une documentation écrite prouvant (a) ou (b). Si vous ne pouvez pas fournir un document prouvant (a) ou (b), la date de début de la Période de garantie sera déterminée par le Fabricant, à son entière discrétion, selon le numéro de série du Produit InSinkErator.

## Ce qui est couvert

Cette garantie couvre les défauts de matériaux ou de main d'œuvre, sous réserve des exclusions ci-dessous, dans les Produits InSinkErator utilisés par un Client consommateur en vertu d'un usage résidentiel seulement et comprend toutes les pièces de rechange et les frais de main d'œuvre. VOTRE SEUL ET EXCLUSIF REMÈDE EN VERTU DE CETTE GARANTIE LIMITÉE SE LIMITE À LA RÉPARATION OU AU REMPLACEMENT DU PRODUIT INSINKERATOR.

## Ce qui n'est pas couvert

Cette garantie limitée ne couvre pas et exclut expressément :

- Les pertes ou les dommages ou l'incapacité à utiliser votre Produit InSinkErator en raison de conditions indépendantes de la volonté du Fabricant, y compris sans en exclure d'autres, les accidents, les altérations, les mauvaises utilisations, les abus, la négligence (autre que celle du Fabricant), le défaut d'installer, de maintenir, d'assembler ou de monter le Produit InSinkErator conformément aux directives du Fabricant ou aux codes locaux de plomberie ou d'électricité.
- L'usage devant se produire durant le cours normal de l'utilisation, y compris sans en exclure d'autres, la rouille cosmétique, les égratignures, les bosselures ou les pertes ou dommages similaires et raisonnablement prévus.

En plus des exclusions ci-dessus, cette garantie ne s'applique pas aux Produits InSinkErator installés dans une application commerciale ou industrielle.

## Aucune autre garantie expresse ne s'applique

Cette garantie est la seule et unique garantie fournie au Client identifié ci-dessus. Aucune autre garantie expresse, écrite ou verbale ne s'applique. Aucun employé, agent, dépositaire ou autre personne ne sont autorisés à modifier cette garantie limitée ou à effectuer toute autre garantie au nom du Fabricant. Les conditions de cette garantie ne seront pas modifiées par le Fabricant, le propriétaire original ou leurs successeurs ou ayants droit respectifs.

## Ce que nous ferons pour corriger les problèmes

Si votre Produit InSinkErator ne fonctionne pas conformément à la documentation qui vous est fournie ou si vous avez des questions concernant votre Produit InSinkErator ou comment déterminer s'il doit être réparé, veuillez appeler sans frais la ligne d'assistance AnswerLine d'InSinkErator au 1 (800) 558-5700 ou visitez notre site Web à [www.insinkerator.com](http://www.insinkerator.com). Vous pouvez aussi nous écrire à : Centre de service InSinkErator, 4700 21st Street, Racine, Wisconsin 53406 É.-U.

Les renseignements suivants doivent être fournis lors de votre réclamation au titre de la garantie : votre nom, adresse, numéro de téléphone, le numéro de série et modèle de votre Produit InSinkErator et si nécessaire, sur demande, une confirmation écrite de : (a) la date indiquée sur votre reçu d'installation ou (b) la date indiquée sur votre reçu d'achat.

Le Fabricant ou son représentant de service autorisé détermineront, à leur entière discrétion, si votre Produit InSinkErator est couvert en vertu de cette garantie. On vous remettra les renseignements de contact de votre centre de service InSinkErator autorisé le plus proche. Veuillez communiquer avec votre centre de service InSinkErator directement pour obtenir une réparation de garantie à domicile ou un service de remplacement. Seul un représentant de service InSinkErator autorisé peut fournir le service de garantie. InSinkErator n'est pas responsable des réclamations de garantie découlant du travail effectué sur votre Produit InSinkErator par toute personne autre qu'un représentant de service InSinkErator autorisé.

Si une réclamation couverte est effectuée pendant la Période de garantie, le Fabricant, par l'entremise de son représentant de service autorisé, réparera ou remplacera votre Produit InSinkErator. Le coût des pièces de rechange ou d'un nouveau Produit InSinkErator et les frais de main d'œuvre pour la réparation ou l'installation du Produit InSinkErator de rechange sont offerts gratuitement. La réparation ou le remplacement seront déterminés par le Fabricant ou son représentant de service autorisé à leur entière discrétion. Tous les services de réparation et de remplacement seront effectués à votre domicile. Si le Fabricant détermine que votre Produit InSinkErator doit être remplacé au lieu d'être réparé, la garantie sur le Produit InSinkErator de rechange se limitera à la durée restante de la Période de garantie originale.

## Limite de responsabilité

DANS LA MESURE PERMISE PAR LA LOI, LE FABRICANT OU SES REPRÉSENTANTS DE SERVICE AUTORISÉS NE SERONT DANS AUCUN CAS RESPONSABLES DES DOMMAGES CONSÉCUTIFS, SPÉCIAUX, INDIRECTS OU CORRÉLATIFS, Y COMPRIS LES PERTES ÉCONOMIQUES DÉCOULANT DE LA NON PERFORMANCE, DE L'UTILISATION, DE LA MAUVAISE UTILISATION OU DE L'INCAPACITÉ À UTILISER LE PRODUIT INSINKERATOR OU DE LA NÉGLIGENCE DU FABRICANT OU DU REPRÉSENTANT DE SERVICE AUTORISÉ. LE FABRICANT NE SERA PAS RESPONSABLE DES DOMMAGES CAUSÉS PAR UN DÉLAI DE PERFORMANCE ET LA RESPONSABILITÉ DU FABRICANT NE DÉPASSERA DANS AUCUN CAS, QUELLE QUE SOIT LA FORME DE LA RÉCLAMATION OU LA RAISON DE L'ACTION (FONDÉE SUR UN CONTRAT, UNE INFRACTION, LA NÉGLIGENCE, LA RESPONSABILITÉ STRICTE OU TOUT AUTRE TORT OU AUTREMENT), LE PRIX PAYÉ PAR LE PROPRIÉTAIRE ORIGINAL DU PRODUIT INSINKERATOR.

Le terme « dommages indirects » comprend, sans en exclure d'autres, la perte des profits anticipés, l'interruption commerciale, la perte d'utilisation ou de revenus, le coût du capital ou la perte ou les dommages aux biens ou à l'équipement.

Certaines provinces ne permettent pas l'exclusion ou la limite des dommages indirects ou corrélatifs, par conséquent, la limite ci-dessus peut ne pas s'appliquer à votre cas. Cette garantie vous donne des droits légaux précis et vous pouvez aussi avoir d'autres droits qui peuvent varier d'un État ou d'une province à l'autre.

# ENTRETIEN ET UTILISATION

## ⚠ AVERTISSEMENT

**Risque de choc électrique :** pour éviter les risques de choc électrique, coupez l'alimentation avant de procéder à l'entretien de l'unité. N'utilisez qu'une prise électrique polarisée correctement mise à la terre.

## RÉGLAGE DU THERMOSTAT

La température préréglée en usine est de 93°C (200°F) (96°C (205°F) pour le réservoir HWT-HP). **Pour réinitialiser le thermostat à 93°C (200°F) (96°C (205°F) pour le réservoir HWT-HP), tournez l'indicateur d'un cran vers la droite de la verticale.** Ensuite, appuyez sur la poignée du robinet pendant 20 secondes pour que l'eau se réchauffe selon le nouveau réglage.

Environ 93°C  
(200°F)



- Pour régler la température de l'eau, tournez le cadran du thermostat situé sur l'avant du réservoir dans le sens horaire pour augmenter la température et dans le sens antihoraire pour l'abaisser. Répétez l'opération au besoin. Tous les changements de température devraient être minimes.

## ⚠ AVERTISSEMENT

**Risque d'ébullition :** ne laissez pas l'eau atteindre le point d'ébullition. Cela peut causer de graves brûlures.

## ENTREPOSAGE ET DRAINAGE SAISONNIERS

Si le robinet d'eau bouillante ne sera pas utilisé pendant une période prolongée, débranchez-le et vidangez-le. Si la température descend en dessous de zéro, vous devrez débrancher l'unité et la vidanger.

- Coupez l'alimentation électrique de l'unité (débranchez l'unité).
- Poussez le levier d'eau chaude du robinet et laissez couler l'eau jusqu'à ce qu'elle soit froide.
- Fermez le robinet d'eau froide au niveau de la valve.
- Débranchez les tubes du réservoir.
- Décrochez le réservoir du mur.
- Renversez le réservoir au-dessus d'un évier pour vidanger l'eau.
- Séchez les éclaboussures d'eau autour du réservoir.
- Remettez le réservoir sur le mur et rebranchez les tubes.
- Retirez et jetez la cartouche de filtre, s'il y en a une.
- Pour remettre le dispositif en état de fonctionnement, installez une nouvelle cartouche de filtre (le cas échéant), puis ouvrez l'alimentation en eau froide au niveau de la valve. Appuyez sur le levier du robinet d'eau chaude et gardez-le enfoncé jusqu'à ce que l'eau s'écoule du bec. Rebranchez le cordon d'alimentation.

## NETTOYAGE DU ROBINET ET DU RÉSERVOIR

- Utilisez seulement des détergents doux pour nettoyer le robinet et les composants en plastique.
- L'usage de détergents contenant des solvants acides, abrasifs, alcalins et organiques détériore les composants en plastique et annule la garantie.

## GUIDE DU FILTRE ET REMPLACEMENT

Remplacez la cartouche du filtre lorsque le débit d'eau de la fontaine diminue visiblement ou si le goût ou l'odeur de l'eau devient désagréable.

Lorsque les orifices d'entrée et de sortie ont été fermés et que la pression interne du filtre a été relâchée, de l'eau (environ 60 ml) s'écoule de la conduite de mise à l'air libre.

Si la nouvelle cartouche du filtre ne peut pas être insérée, insérez l'ancienne et tournez-la jusqu'à ce qu'elle s'arrête, enlevez-la et réessayez d'insérer la nouvelle cartouche.

La cartouche jetable du filtre DOIT être remplacée tous les six mois, à la capacité nominale ou plus tôt si une réduction importante du débit se produit.

Directives de remplacement du filtre :

- Remplacez le filtre par un filtre InSinkErator®.
- Placez une cuvette ou un linge à vaisselle sous le filtre pour récupérer l'eau qui s'écoule pendant le remplacement.
- Tournez la cartouche lentement dans le sens antihoraire complètement jusqu'à ce qu'elle s'arrête (1/4 tour).
- Retirez la cartouche directement vers le bas et mettez-la au rebut.
- Insérez la nouvelle cartouche dans la tête du filtre.
- Lorsque la cartouche est complètement engagée, sa face supérieure est affleurée avec la base de la tête du filtre.
- Tournez la cartouche dans le sens horaire jusqu'à ce qu'elle s'arrête (1/4 tour).
- Ouvrez le robinet pour évacuer l'air emprisonné.
- Faites couler l'eau pendant trois minutes avant de l'utiliser.

## ⚠ MISE EN GARDE

### Blessures :

- Vérifiez régulièrement la présence de signes de corrosion en examinant l'apparence de l'eau distribuée tous les trois (3) mois.
- Si vous observez une décoloration ou la présence de rouille, débranchez et videz l'unité comme il est décrit dans la section Entreposage et drainage saisonniers de ce manuel.
- Si le problème de décoloration persiste après le drainage et le remplissage de l'unité, cessez d'utiliser l'unité et communiquez avec un agent de service InSinkErator autorisé.



# RENSEIGNEMENTS DE FILTRATION

Le système de filtration pour distributeur d'eau chaude instantanée InSinkErator offre deux niveaux de filtration, selon le filtre utilisé : **F-1000S** est conçu pour filtrer les particules, le goût et l'odeur du chlore de l'eau potable et n'a pas été évalué pour d'autres usages; **F-2000S** réduit les particules, le goût et l'odeur du chlore, en plus des spores, du plomb, du mercure, de l'amiante, du benzène, de l'atrazine, du 2,4-D, du lindane, du carbofuran et du p-dichlorobenzène. Le système est habituellement installé (sous ou près d'un évier) où de l'eau potable filtrée est désirée et il doit être installé, utilisé et entretenu comme il est précisé dans les directives d'installation et d'utilisation.

## AVIS

Pour réduire le risque associé aux dommages matériels causés par des fuites d'eau ou une inondation :

- Lisez et suivez les directives d'utilisation fournies avec le système original avant d'installer et d'utiliser ce produit.

Pour réduire le risque de fuite d'eau ou d'inondation et assurer la performance maximale du filtre :

- Remplacez la cartouche de filtre jetable tous les six mois ou plus tôt si vous remarquez une diminution perceptible du débit.
- Le non-remplacement de la cartouche de filtre jetable au moment recommandé peut entraîner une performance réduite du filtre et des fissures dans le boîtier du filtre, causant ainsi des fuites d'eau ou une inondation.
- Pour les systèmes utilisant des robinets de type HC (eau chaude/froide) à deux poignées, n'utilisez qu'une poignée à la fois.
- Pour toute question ou inquiétude, veuillez communiquer avec le service à la clientèle au 1-800-558-5700.

## AVERTISSEMENT

N'utilisez pas de l'eau qui est microbiologiquement dangereuse ou de qualité inconnue sans désinfection adéquate avant ou après le système.

### F-1000 Configuration du filtre à réduction chimique et mécanique:

(Utilisez la cartouche de rechange F-1000) Cette cartouche fournit une réduction mécanique et chimique du goût et de l'odeur du chlore et des particules de catégorie III.



Testée et certifiée par la NSF International en vertu de la norme 42 de la NSF/ANSI dans les systèmes InSinkErator suivants seulement : GN1100, HC1100, GN2200, HC2200, GN2215, HC2215, H3300 ou HC3300 pour la réduction de réclamations précisées sur la fiche signalétique de performance. Pour les systèmes utilisant des robinets de type HC (eau chaude/froide) à deux poignées, n'utilisez qu'une poignée à la fois.

Pression : 207 à 827 kPa (30 à 120 psi)  
Température : 0,5 °C à 37,7 °C (33 °F à 100 °F)  
Débit : 2,8 l/min (0,75 gal/min)  
Capacité : 1890 litres (500 gallons)

**Capacité du filtre:** 1890 litres (500 gal), en fonction des conditions locales. Notez que les tests ont été effectués dans des conditions de laboratoire standards, les performances actuelles peuvent donc s'avérer différentes. N'utilisez pas l'appareil avec de l'eau n'étant pas sécuritaire d'un point de vue microbiologique, ou d'une qualité inconnue, sans désinfecter adéquatement le système en amont ou en aval. Pour une utilisation avec de l'eau froide uniquement. Les systèmes doivent être installés et doivent fonctionner en accord avec les procédures et les directives recommandées par le fabricant. Voir la carte de garantie pour les informations relatives à la garantie. Pour une réparation et pour obtenir des pièces de rechange, adressez-vous à votre revendeur local ou contactez directement InSinkErator® au 1-800-558-5700.

Réduction des contaminants dans l'eau	Influent moyen	Concentration De Défi D'Eaux à traiter. Sauf mention contraire, les unités s'appliquent à chaque rangée.	Eau moyenne du produit	Réduction moyenne	Conditions de réduction de NSF	Test NSF
Goût et odeur du chlore	2.1 mg/L	2.0 mg/L ± 10%	0.06 mg/L	97.0%	≥ 50%	J-00082587
Particules nominales de catégorie III, de 5 µm à <15 µm	270,000 pts/mL	Au moins 10 000 particules/ml	82 pts/mL	99.9%	≥85%	J-00119308

**Directives d'applications/Paramètres d'alimentation en eau pour tests NSF :** Débit d'alimentation de 2,8 l/min (0,75 gal/min), alim partir d'un forage privé ou public, pression d'eau de 138 à 827 kPa (20 à 120 psi), température de l'eau de 0,5 °C à 37,7 °C (33 moins d'indication contraire, tous les tests sont effectués à un pH de 7,5 ± 0,5, Débit : 2,8 l/min (0,75 gal/min) Pression : 413 kPa Température : 20 °C ± 3 °C.

Reportez-vous à la fiche signalétique de performance pour la cartouche de rechange du système de filtration InSinkErator modèle F-2000S : F-2000

Communiquez avec un agent de service pour toute réparation ou obtenir des pièces de rechange. Filtres de rechange Les cartouches F-1000 et F-2000 peuvent être commandées en composant le 800-558-5700, en visitant shop.insinkerator.com ou en communiquant avec un revendeur InSinkErator autorisé.



Veuillez vous reporter au Guide de dépannage et/ou consulter notre site Web à [www.insinkerator.com](http://www.insinkerator.com) avant d'appeler AnswerLine®.

# DÉPANNAGE

PROBLÈME	CAUSE POSSIBLE	QUOI FAIRE
De l'eau et de la vapeur sortent du bec sans éclaboussant, sans activer le robinet du distributeur.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• L'ébullition se produit dans l'appareil. <i>Peut être normal durant le réglage initial.</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appuyez sur le levier du robinet pour faire sortir un peu d'eau du réservoir.</li> <li>• Réglez la température de l'eau en utilisant le cadran à l'avant du réservoir.</li> </ul> <p><i>Rappelez-vous qu'à des altitudes plus élevées, l'eau bout à des températures plus basses.</i></p>
L'eau n'est pas chaude.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• L'appareil n'est peut être pas branché.</li> <li>• La prise électrique ne fonctionne pas.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vérifiez si l'appareil est bien branché à une prise électrique convenablement mise à la terre.</li> <li>• Vérifiez si le coupe-circuit ou les fusibles fonctionnent convenablement.</li> <li>• Vérifiez si la prise n'est pas fermée par un interrupteur.</li> </ul>
L'eau est trop chaude ou pas assez chaude.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Le thermostat n'est pas ajusté selon vos besoins.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ajustez lentement le thermostat, puis appuyez sur la poignée du robinet pendant 20 secondes pour amener de l'eau fraîche à chauffer au nouveau réglage. Allouez de cinq à sept minutes pour que l'eau atteigne la nouvelle température.</li> </ul>
L'eau sort de l'évent au lieu du bec.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Le tube de sortie est bloqué.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vérifiez si le tube de sortie n'est pas tordu, coincé ou pincé.</li> <li>• Dévissez l'extrémité du bec et nettoyez tout débris qui aurait pu s'accumuler.</li> </ul>
L'eau s'égoutte par intermittence du bec/évent.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• La chambre d'expansion ne se vidange pas correctement en raison d'une faible pression d'eau.</li> <li>• Le bec est bloqué.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Débranchez l'appareil. Si l'égouttement ne s'arrête pas au bout de quelques minutes, vérifiez la soupape d'alimentation pour vous assurer si elle est bien ouverte et sans obstruction dans la conduite d'eau qui réduira la pression en dessous de 206 kPa (<i>p. ex., un robinet-vanne à étrier mal monté, un filtre d'eau bouché ou un robinet d'arrêt partiellement ouvert</i>).</li> <li>• Dévissez la pièce d'extrémité du bec et nettoyez tous les débris.</li> </ul>
L'eau s'égoutte constamment du bec/évent.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Des débris dans la conduite d'eau peuvent se trouver dans le siège de soupape du robinet, causant une fuite d'eau lente.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Dévissez la pièce d'extrémité du bec et nettoyez tous les débris.</li> <li>• Appuyez sur le levier de sept à dix fois pour bien rincer le robinet et les conduits.</li> </ul>
Vapeur divisée.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Débris dans les conduites du robinet.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Dévissez la pièce d'extrémité du bec et nettoyez tous les débris.</li> </ul>
Décoloration de l'eau/ apparence de rouille.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Corrosion de l'unité.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Débranchez et vidangez l'unité comme il est décrit dans la section Entreposage/drainage saisonnier à la page 49 de ce manuel. Si la décoloration de l'eau demeure après le drainage et le remplissage de l'unité, cessez de l'utiliser et communiquez avec un agent de service InSinkErator autorisé.</li> </ul>

## PROBLÈMES DE FILTRATION

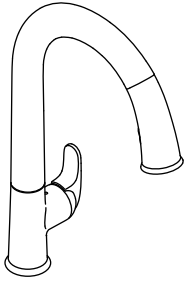
L'eau a un goût ou une odeur.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Le filtre a besoin d'être rincé.</li> <li>• La durée du filtre est expirée.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appuyez sur le robinet et laissez couler jusqu'à ce que l'eau soit froide. S'il n'y a pas de changement, remplacez la cartouche de filtre.</li> </ul>
Le nouveau filtre fuit ou n'est pas adapté.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• La tête et le support n'ont pas été tournés à fond.</li> <li>• Défectuosité du joint torique du filtre.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Retirez, inspectez et réinstallez la cartouche de filtre.</li> <li>• Enlevez le nouveau filtre, remplacez-le par l'ancien. Vérifiez le fonctionnement. S'il est adéquat, réinstallez le nouveau filtre et vérifiez à nouveau le fonctionnement.</li> </ul>
Pas de débit d'eau ou faible débit d'eau.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• La durée du filtre est expirée.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Remplacez la cartouche de filtre.</li> </ul> <p><b>Reportez-vous à la page 49.</b></p>

Si vous avez toujours des problèmes, communiquez avec la ligne d'assistance AnswerLine® 1-800-558-5700.

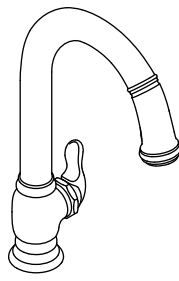
# Installation and Care Guide

## Electronic Kitchen Faucet

K-72218



K-99332



THE BOLD LOOK  
OF **KOHLER**®

1186051-2-F

# IMPORTANT INSTRUCTIONS



**WARNING:** When using electrical products, basic precautions should always be followed, including the following:



**DANGER: Risk of electric shock.** Connect only to a circuit protected by a Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI)\*.



**WARNING: Risk of electric shock.** Grounding is required. A licensed electrician should make all electrical connections.



**WARNING: Risk of electric shock.** Disconnect power before servicing.



**WARNING: Risk of injury or property damage.** Please read all instructions thoroughly before beginning installation.

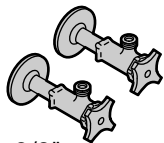


**CAUTION: Risk of property damage.** The faucet spout contains a magnet. Do not allow items susceptible to electromagnetic damage to come into close proximity to the spout.

Follow all plumbing, electrical, and building codes.

\*Outside North America, this device may be known as a Residual Current Device (RCD).

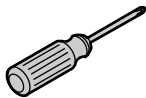
## Tools



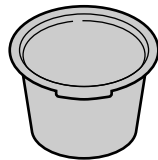
3/8"



Rags



Phillips Screwdriver



Bucket

**Plus:**

- Unswitched Electrical Outlet

## Important Information



**WARNING: Risk of fresh water contamination.** This faucet contains back-siphonage protection. Do not remove any internal components.

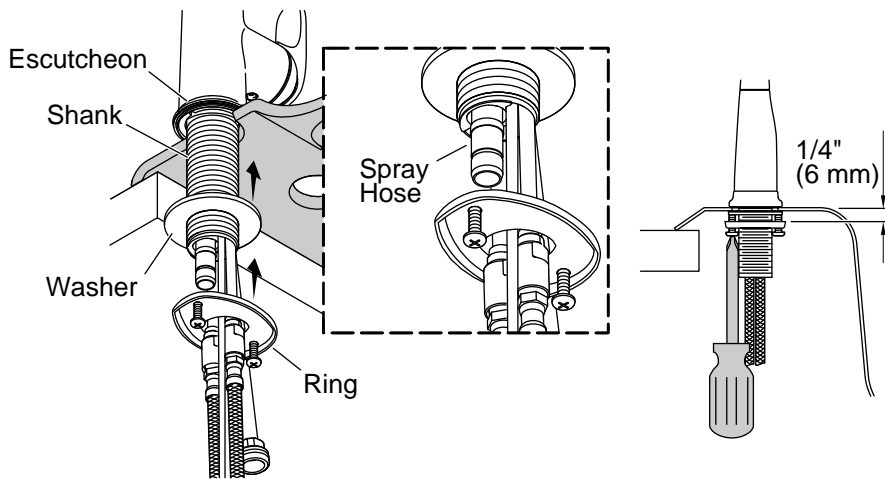


### Important Information (cont.)

**CAUTION: Risk of product damage.** This product contains sensitive electronic components. Do not store open containers of chemical or cleaning products near this product. Cleaning rags or sponges must be rinsed with fresh water before storage.

**IMPORTANT!** Do not use a switch-controlled outlet (typically used for garbage disposals) to provide power to the faucet.

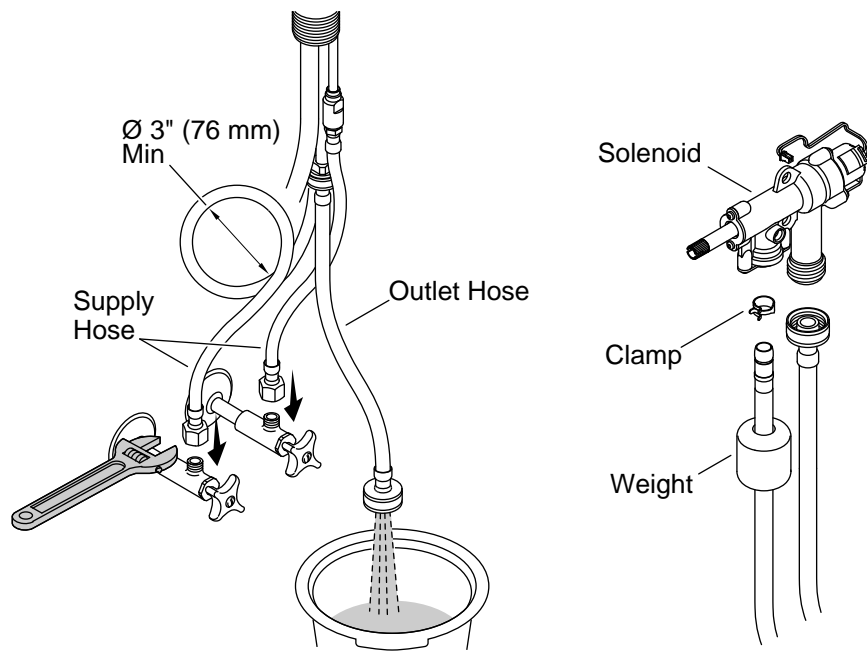
- Observe all local plumbing and building codes.
- Provide a constant **unswitched** 120 VAC electrical outlet located below the sink within 5' (1.5 m) of the control box.
- Turn off the water supply.
- For new installations, assemble the faucet to the sink before installing the sink.
- For uneven mounting surfaces (such as tile grout lines), apply a suitable sealant under the faucet. **Do not use petroleum-based sealant.**



## 1. Install the Faucet

**NOTE:** Handle orientation is designed to be on the right.

- Thread the screws into the ring 1/4" (6 mm) past the surface.
- Insert the faucet through the mounting surface with the handle on the right.
- Pull the sprayhead out and rest it in the sink basin. Do not pull the end of the spray hose into the shank.
- From under the sink, push the spray hose up to the shank.
- Slide the washer over the hoses and wires, then up onto the shank.
- Slide the ring over the hoses and wires, then up to the shank.
- Thread the ring onto the shank until the washer contacts the underside of the sink.
- Adjust the ring to align the screws with the front and back of the faucet.
- Use a Phillips screwdriver to securely tighten the screws.
- Pull the spray hose end down, away from the shank.
- Slide the sprayhead back into the spout.



## 2. Connect the Hoses

**CAUTION: Risk of restricted water flow and product damage.** Supply hoses must not be taut, kinked, or twisted during installation. If the supply hoses must be coiled, maintain an inside diameter of 3" (76 mm).

### Connect the Supplies

- Assemble the outlet hose to the faucet.
- Connect and tighten the supply hoses to the supply stops.
- Place a bucket under the outlet hose.
- Turn on the water supplies.
- Flush hot and cold water into a bucket for 1 minute to remove any debris.

### Connect the Spray Hose

- Remove the protective cap.

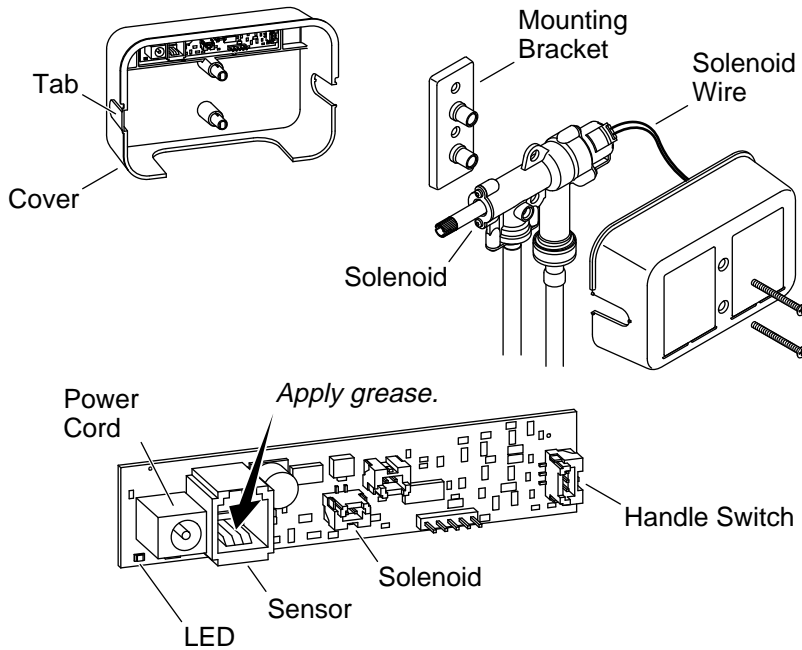
**NOTE:** The weight must be installed onto the spray hose to act as a pull stop and to prevent kinking damage.

**Connect the Hoses (cont.)**

- Slide the weight, then the clamp onto the spray hose.

**NOTE:** Use a pliers to expand the clamp over the hose end.

- Attach the spray hose to the outlet fitting on the solenoid. Ensure the hose is completely engaged into the fitting.



### 3. Install the Solenoid



**CAUTION: Risk of restricted waterflow.** The outlet hose must not be taut or kinked when installed. Locate the solenoid valve within 7" (178 mm) to 8" (203 mm) of the faucet centerline.

**NOTE:** Locate the solenoid valve within 7" (178 mm) to 8" (203 mm) from the faucet centerline. Allow adequate clearance for servicing.

#### Mount the Bracket

**NOTE:** The mounting bracket should be secured with two suitable fasteners (not supplied) based on the type and thickness of the cabinet or wall material.

- Fasten the mounting bracket vertically to the cabinet or wall.

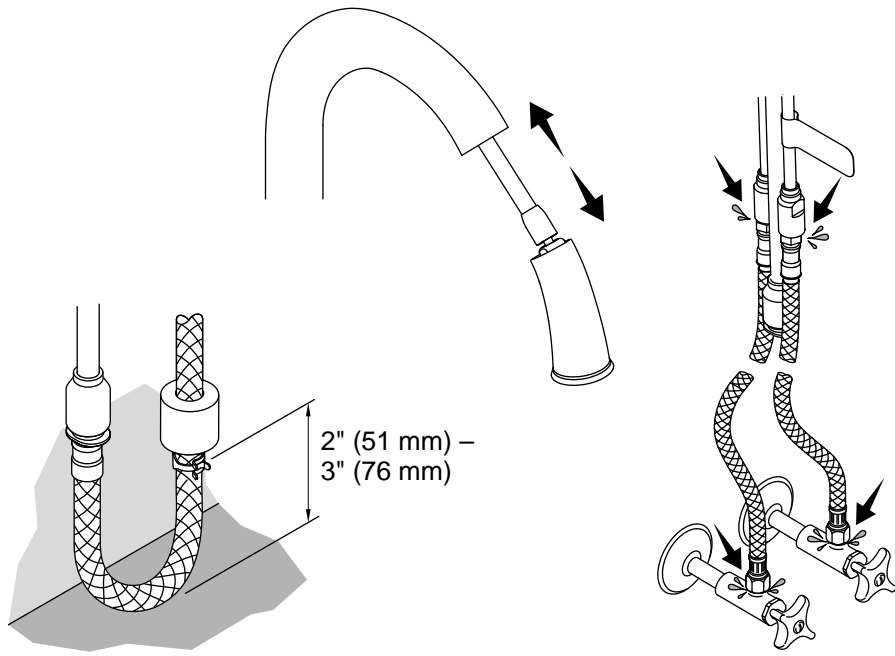
#### Connect the Wires

**NOTE:** The solenoid may be positioned to the right or left. Remove the appropriate tab on the cover.

### **Install the Solenoid (cont.)**

- Apply grease (provided) to the sensor socket located on the circuit board inside the cover. This will provide additional corrosion protection.
- Connect the handle switch wire and sensor wire from the faucet to the circuit board.
- Connect the power cord to the circuit board.
- Connect the solenoid wire to the circuit board.
- Plug the power cord into an unswitched 120 VAC outlet. The LED on the circuit board will illuminate.
- Test activation of the sensor. Refer to the "Faucet Operation" section.
- Fit the cover over the solenoid.
- Secure the assembly to the mounting bracket with the two screws provided.





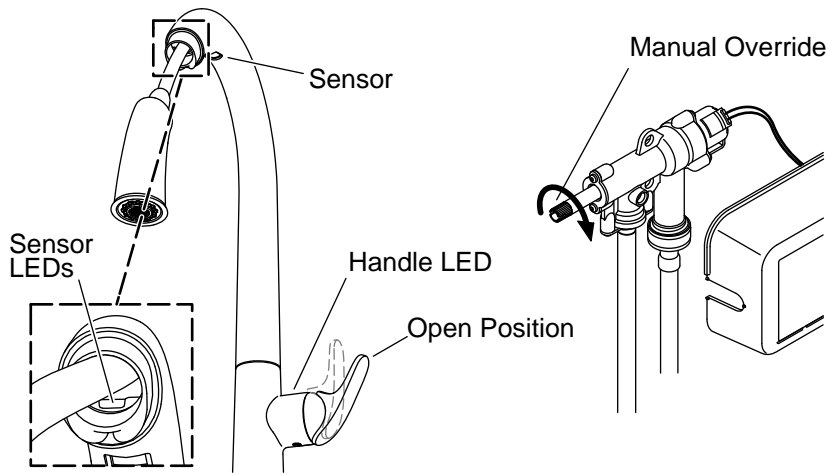
#### 4. Complete the Installation

##### Position the Weight

- Position the weight between 2" (51 mm) and 3" (76 mm) from the cabinet floor.
- Secure the clamp around the spray hose just below the weight.
- Extend and retract the spray hose to check for smooth operation.

##### Check for Leaks

- Ensure all connections are tight.
- Turn on the water supplies, and check all connections for leaks.
- Test the faucet for proper operation. Refer to the "Faucet Operation" section.



## Faucet Operation

- Rotate the handle outward to the open position to start water flow. The handle LED will illuminate to indicate that the sensor is functioning.
- Adjust the handle to the desired water temperature.
- Wave your hand under the spout to turn the water OFF.
- Wave your hand under the spout again to restart the water flow.

**NOTE:** Some objects that are clear and certain colors are not detectable by the sensor. Always use your hand for sensor testing.

- If needed, refer to the "Handle LED Adjustment" section for more information.

**NOTE:** For extended periods of nonuse, the handle should be returned to the closed (upright) position. The handle LED will turn OFF, indicating that water flow is not available.

### LED Indicators

- **Handle LED:** Illuminates when the sensor is active.
- **Circuit board LED:** Indicates there is power to the circuit board.

**NOTE:** The sensor LEDs are only visible inside the spout when the spray hose is extended.

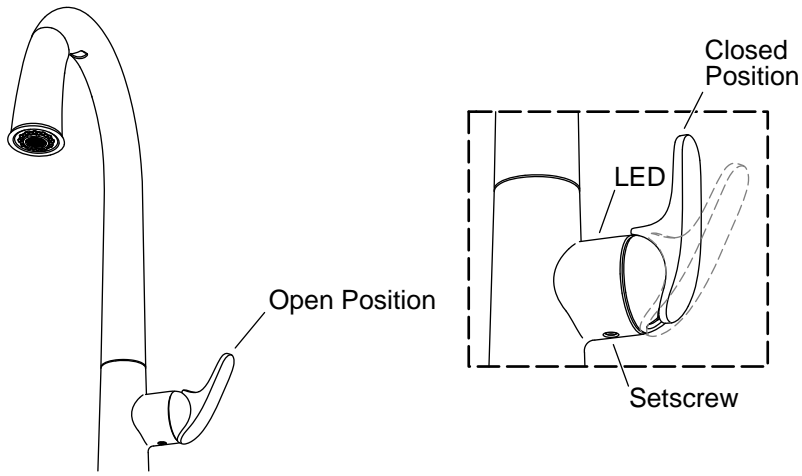
- **Green sensor LED:** Indicates there is power to the sensor.

### **Faucet Operation (cont.)**

- **Yellow sensor LED:** Illuminates when an object has been detected by the sensor.

### **Features**

- **Automatic shut-off:** After 4 minutes of inactivity, the water will automatically shut OFF.
- **Sensor override:** In the event of power loss, the sensor function can be bypassed by turning in the override feature on the solenoid valve. The faucet can then be operated manually.

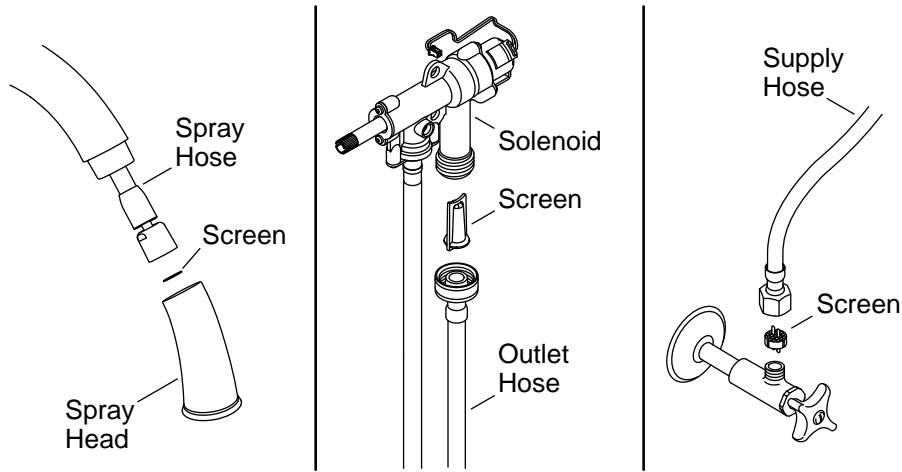


## Handle LED Adjustment

**NOTE:** The LED should turn ON as the handle is rotated open, and OFF when the handle is in the upright (closed) position. Use a 5/64" hex wrench to adjust the valve setscrew as needed.

**IMPORTANT!** Do not apply upward pressure to the valve setscrew while making adjustments.

- **LED is ON when the handle is closed:** Tighten the valve setscrew until the LED turns OFF. Then tighten the setscrew an additional 1/4 turn.
- **Handle does not return to the upright position:** Loosen the valve setscrew until the handle rotates to the full upright (closed) position and the LED turns ON. Then tighten the setscrew until the LED turns OFF, plus an additional 1/4 turn.
- **Water does not fully shut off:** Loosen the valve setscrew until the handle rotates to the full upright (closed) position and the LED turns ON. Then tighten the setscrew until the LED turns OFF, plus an additional 1/4 turn.



## Cleaning the Screens

### Sprayhead Screen

- Turn the handle to the closed position.
- Disconnect the nut at the end of the spray hose.
- Remove and clean the screen inside the spray hose.
- Reinsert the screen and reconnect the spray head.

### Solenoid Inlet Screen

- Turn the handle to the closed position.
- Disconnect the outlet hose from the solenoid.
- Remove and clean the inlet screen inside the solenoid.
- Reinstall the inlet screen and reconnect the outlet hose.

### Supply Hose Screen

- Turn off the water supplies.
- Disconnect the supply hose from the supply stop.
- Clean the screen inside the hose inlet.
- Reconnect the supply hose to the stop.
- Turn on the water supplies.

## Care and Cleaning

For best results, keep the following in mind when caring for your KOHLER product:

- Use a mild detergent such as liquid dishwashing soap and warm water for cleaning. Do not use abrasive cleaners that may scratch or dull the surface.
- Carefully read the cleaner product label to ensure the cleaner is safe for use on the material.
- Always test your cleaning solution on an inconspicuous area before applying to the entire surface.
- Do not allow cleaners to sit or soak on the surface.
- Wipe surfaces clean and rinse completely with water immediately after cleaner application. Rinse and dry any overspray that lands on nearby surfaces.
- Use a soft, dampened sponge or cloth. Never use an abrasive material such as a brush or scouring pad to clean surfaces.

For detailed cleaning information and products to consider, visit [www.kohler.com/clean](http://www.kohler.com/clean). To order Care & Cleaning information, call 1-800-456-4537.

## Warranty

### **KOHLER® Electronic Faucets, Valves and Controls FIVE-YEAR LIMITED WARRANTY**

Kohler Co. warrants that its electronic faucets, valves and controls will be free of defects in material and workmanship during normal residential use for five years from the date the product is installed. This warranty applies only to electronic faucets, valves and controls installed in the United States of America, Canada and Mexico ("North America").

If a defect is found in normal residential use, Kohler Co. will, at its election, repair, provide a replacement part or product, or make appropriate adjustment where Kohler Co.'s inspection discloses any such defect. Damage caused by accident, misuse, or abuse is not covered by this warranty. Improper care and cleaning will void the warranty\*. Proof of purchase (original sales receipt) must be provided to Kohler Co. with all warranty claims. Kohler Co. is not responsible for labor charges, installation, or other incidental or consequential costs other than those noted above. In no event shall the liability of Kohler Co. exceed the purchase price of the faucet, valve or control.



## **Warranty (cont.)**

If the electronic faucets, valves or controls are used commercially or are installed outside of North America, Kohler Co. warrants that the faucet, valve or control will be free from defects in material and workmanship for one (1) year from the date the product is installed, with all other terms of this warranty applying except duration.

If you believe that you have a warranty claim, contact your Home Center, Dealer, Plumbing Contractor or E-tailer. Please be sure to provide all pertinent information regarding your claim, including a complete description of the problem, the product, model number, the date the product was purchased, from whom the product was purchased and the installation date. Also include your original invoice. For other information, or to obtain the name and address of the service and repair facility nearest you, write Kohler Co., Attn: Customer Care Center, Kohler, Wisconsin 53044 USA, or by calling 1-800-4-KOHLER (1-800-456-4537) from within the USA and Canada, and 001-800-456-4537 from within Mexico, or visit [www.kohler.com](http://www.kohler.com) within the USA, [www.ca.kohler.com](http://www.ca.kohler.com) from within Canada, or [www.mx.kohler.com](http://www.mx.kohler.com) in Mexico.

**THE FOREGOING WARRANTIES ARE IN LIEU OF ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.**

**KOHLER CO. AND/OR SELLER DISCLAIM ANY LIABILITY FOR SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES.** Some states/provinces do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts or the exclusion or limitation of such damages, so these limitations and exclusions may not apply to you. This warranty gives the consumer specific legal rights. You may also have other rights that vary from state/province to state/province. This warranty is to the original consumer purchaser only, and excludes product damage due to installation error, product abuse, or product misuse, whether performed by a contractor, service company, or the consumer.

This is Kohler Co.'s exclusive written warranty.

\*Never use cleaners containing abrasive cleansers, ammonia, bleach, acids, waxes, alcohol, solvents or other products not recommended for chrome. This will void the warranty.

## **Troubleshooting**

## Troubleshooting (cont.)

**CAUTION: Risk of product damage.** This product contains sensitive electronic components. Use care not to damage pins and connectors during troubleshooting.

**CAUTION: Risk of product damage.** Do not insert anything other than the sensor wire into the sensor wire connector (phone jack) on the circuit board.

**NOTE:** For service parts information, visit your product page at [www.kohler.com](http://www.kohler.com).

### Faucet Troubleshooting Table

Symptoms	Probable Causes	Recommended Action
1. No water flow.	A. The supply stops are closed.	A. Confirm the supply stops are open.
	B. Handle is in the closed position.	B. Rotate the handle to the open position. Refer to the "Faucet Operation" section.
	C. The hot and/or cold supply hose is kinked.	C. Confirm the supply hoses are not kinked. If coiled, maintain an inside diameter of 3" (76 mm).
	D. The outlet hose is kinked.	D. Confirm the solenoid valve is located within 7" (178 mm) to 8" (203 mm) from the faucet base.
	E. Handle LED is not lit.	E. Refer to the "Handle Switch Troubleshooting Table."
	F. Sensor LED is not lit.	F. Refer to the "Sensor Troubleshooting Table."
	G. One or more screens are clogged.	G. Refer to the "Cleaning the Screens" section.
2. Low water flow.	A. The supply stops are partially closed.	A. Confirm the supply stops are fully open.
	B. Handle is partially closed.	B. Rotate the handle to the full open position.

**Troubleshooting (cont.)**

**Faucet Troubleshooting Table**

<b>Symptoms</b>	<b>Probable Causes</b>	<b>Recommended Action</b>
	<b>C.</b> The hot and/or cold supply hose is kinked or twisted.	<b>C.</b> Confirm the supply hoses are not kinked or twisted. If coiled, maintain an inside diameter of 3" (76 mm).
	<b>D.</b> The outlet hose is kinked.	<b>D.</b> Confirm the solenoid valve is located within 7" (178 mm) to 8" (203 mm) from the faucet base.
	<b>E.</b> One or more screens are clogged.	<b>E.</b> Refer to the "Cleaning the Screens" section.
	<b>F.</b> Cracked diaphragm.	<b>F.</b> Replace the solenoid valve assembly.
<b>3.</b> Poor spray pattern.	<b>A.</b> The spray nozzles are clogged.	<b>A.</b> Rub your finger over the nozzles with water running to dislodge debris.
<b>4.</b> Circuit board LED is not lit.	<b>A.</b> No power to the circuit board.	<b>A.</b> Check the power supply connections to the circuit board.
	<b>B.</b> Power cord is plugged into a switched outlet.	<b>B.</b> Plug the power cord into an unswitched 120 VAC outlet (test the outlet with a radio or other device). Confirm the circuit board LED illuminates.
<b>5.</b> Water drip or trickle when faucet is not in use.	<b>A.</b> Manual override is partially engaged.	<b>A.</b> Turn the white manual override clockwise until it stops; then turn it counterclockwise until the water drip stops.

## Troubleshooting (cont.)

### Solenoid Troubleshooting Table

Symptoms	Probable Causes	Recommended Action
1. Water leaking from the solenoid valve.	A. Hose connections are not secure.	A. <b>CAUTION: Risk of personal injury or product damage.</b> Turn off the main power and water supply. Check all connections. Make adjustments as needed.
	B. Internal leak.	B. Replace the solenoid valve assembly.
2. No audible "click" when solenoid is activated.	A. Loose solenoid wire connection.	A. Check solenoid wire connection to the circuit board.
	B. Solenoid valve is not functioning.	B. Replace the solenoid valve assembly.

### Handle Switch Troubleshooting Table

Symptoms	Probable Causes	Recommended Action
1. Handle LED is lit when the handle is closed.	A. Valve setscrew needs adjustment.	A. Refer to the "Handle LED Adjustment" section.
2. Handle does not return to the upright position.	A. Valve setscrew needs adjustment.	A. Refer to the "Handle LED Adjustment" section.
3. Water does not fully shut off.	A. Valve setscrew needs adjustment.	A. Refer to the "Handle LED Adjustment" section.
4. Handle LED does not illuminate when the handle is rotated open.	A. Loose handle switch wire connection.	A. Check handle switch wire connection to the circuit board.
	B. Circuit board is not functioning correctly.	B. Replace the cover assembly.

## Troubleshooting (cont.)

### Sensor Troubleshooting Table

Symptoms	Probable Causes	Recommended Action
1. Intermittent sensor operation.	A. Debris on the sensor lens.	A. Use mild soap and water to gently remove debris from the sensor lens.
	B. Sensor is detecting steam.	B. Rotate the spout away from the steam.
2. Handle LED is lit, but green sensor LED is not.	A. Loose sensor wire connection.	A. Check sensor wire connection to the circuit board.
	B. Debris on the sensor wire connector.	B. At the circuit board, gently disconnect, clean, and reconnect the sensor wire connector.
	C. Circuit board is not functioning.	C. Replace the cover assembly.
3. Yellow sensor LED does not illuminate with an object in front of it.	A. Object is clear or color is undetectable by the sensor.	A. Test the sensor using your hand.
	B. Debris on the sensor wire connector.	B. At the circuit board, gently disconnect, clean, and reconnect the sensor wire connector.

# Guide d'installation et d'entretien

## Robinet de cuisine électronique

### INSTRUCTIONS IMPORTANTES



**AVERTISSEMENT:** Lors de l'utilisation de produits électriques, toujours observer les précautions de base, notamment:



**DANGER: Risque de choc électrique.** Raccorder uniquement à un circuit protégé par un disjoncteur de fuite de terre (GFCI)\*.



**AVERTISSEMENT: Risque de choc électrique.** Une mise à la terre est requise. Toutes les connexions électriques doivent être effectuées par un électricien agréé.



**AVERTISSEMENT: Risque de choc électrique.** Déconnecter l'alimentation électrique avant d'effectuer un entretien.



**AVERTISSEMENT: Risque de blessures ou d'endommagement du matériel.** Lire toutes les instructions avec attention avant de commencer l'installation.



**ATTENTION: Risque de dommages matériels.** Le bec du robinet comprend un aimant. Ne pas laisser des objets pouvant subir des dommages électromagnétiques s'approcher de près du bec.

Respecter tous les codes de plomberie, d'électricité et de construction.

\*Hors de l'Amérique du Nord, ce dispositif peut être connu sous le nom de dispositif à courant résiduel (RCD).

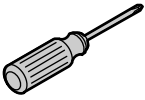
## Outils



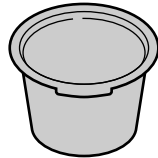
3/8"



Chiffons



Tournevis à pointe  
cruciforme



Seau

### Plus:

- Prise électrique non commutée

## Informations importantes



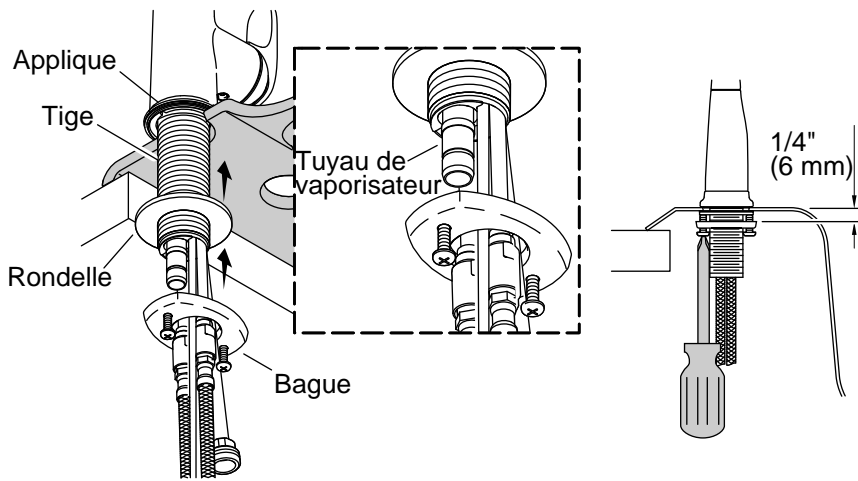
**AVERTISSEMENT: Risque de contamination de l'eau potable.** Ce robinet comprend une protection contre le siphonnage à rebours. Ne retirer les composants internes.

**ATTENTION: Risque d'endommagement du produit.** Ce produit contient des composants électroniques sensibles. Ne pas entreposer les récipients de produits chimiques ou de nettoyage près de ce produit. Les chiffons ou éponges de nettoyage doivent être rincés avec de l'eau fraîche avant le stockage.

**IMPORTANT!** Ne pas utiliser de prise de courant commandée par interrupteur (généralement utilisée pour les broyeurs de déchets) pour fournir une alimentation au robinet.

- Respecter tous les codes de plomberie et de bâtiment locaux.
- Fournir une prise électrique continue de 120 V c.a. **non commutée** placée sous l'évier à 5' (1,5 m) du boîtier de commande.
- Couper l'arrivée d'eau.
- Pour de nouvelles installations, assembler le robinet sur l'évier avant d'installer ce dernier.
- Pour des surfaces de fixation inégales (telles que des lignes de joints de carrelage), appliquer du mastic d'étanchéité adéquat sous le robinet. **Ne pas utiliser du mastic d'étanchéité à base de pétrole.**





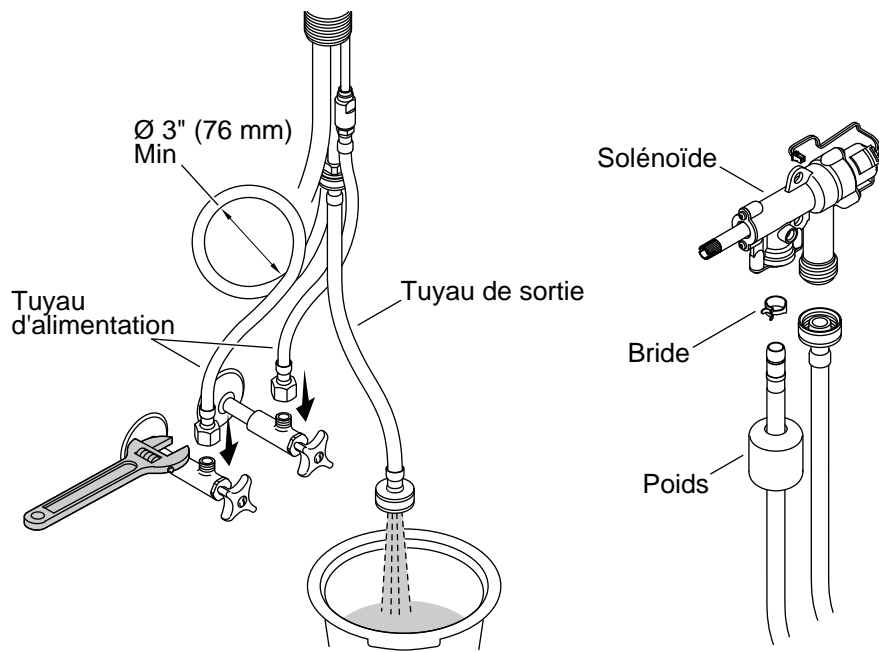
## 1. Installer le robinet

**REMARQUE:** L'orientation de la poignée est conçue pour se trouver sur la droite.

- Enfiler les vis dans l'anneau sur 1/4" (6 mm) au-delà de la surface.
- Insérer le robinet à travers la surface de fixation avec la poignée sur la droite.
- Tirer sur la tête du vaporisateur pour la faire sortir et la poser dans la vasque de l'évier. Ne pas tirer sur l'extrémité du tuyau du vaporisateur pour le mettre dans la tige.
- Pousser le tuyau vers le haut, vers la tige, à partir du dessous de l'évier.
- Faire glisser la rondelle par-dessus les tuyaux et les fils, puis vers le haut sur la tige.
- Faire glisser la rondelle par-dessus les tuyaux et les fils, puis vers le haut, vers la tige.
- Visser l'anneau sur la tige jusqu'à ce qu'il entre en contact avec le dessous de l'évier.
- Ajuster l'anneau de manière à aligner les vis sur l'avant et l'arrière du robinet.
- Utiliser un tournevis à pointe cruciforme pour serrer les vis en toute sécurité.
- Tirer l'extrémité du tuyau du vaporisateur vers le bas, dans le sens opposé de la tige.

### **Installer le robinet (cont.)**

- Glisser de nouveau la tête du vaporisateur dans le bec.



## 2. Raccorder les tuyaux

**ATTENTION: Risque de limitation de débit d'eau et d'endommagement du produit.** Les tuyaux d'alimentation ne doivent pas être tendus, déformés ou tordus pendant l'installation. Si les tuyaux d'alimentation doivent être embobinés, maintenir un diamètre intérieur de 3" (76 mm).

### Connecter les alimentations

- Assembler le tuyau de sortie sur le robinet.
- Connecter et serrer les tuyaux d'alimentation sur les arrêts d'alimentation.
- Placer un seau sous le tuyau de sortie.
- Ouvrir les arrivées d'eau.
- Vidanger l'eau chaude et froide dans un seau pendant 1 minute pour éliminer les débris éventuels.

### Connecter le tuyau du vaporisateur

- Retirer le capuchon de protection.

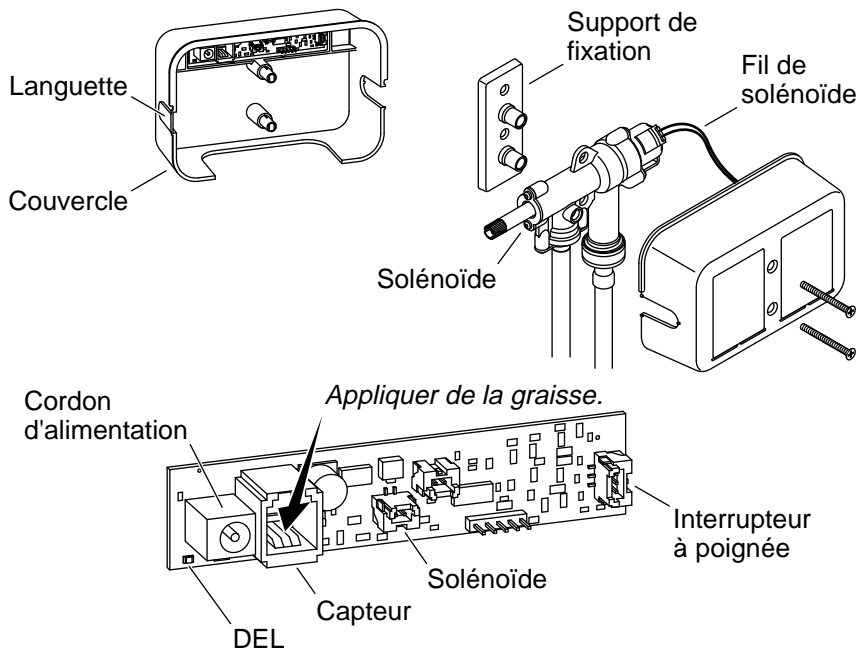
### **Raccorder les tuyaux (cont.)**

**REMARQUE:** Le poids doit être installé sur le tuyau du vaporisateur pour agir en tant qu'arrêt à traction et pour empêcher les dommages dus à une déformation.

- Faire glisser le poids puis le collier sur le tuyau du vaporisateur.

**REMARQUE:** Utiliser des pinces pour étendre le collier par-dessus l'extrémité du tuyau.

- Attacher le tuyau du vaporisateur sur le raccord de sortie se trouvant sur le solénoïde. S'assurer que le tuyau est entièrement engagé dans le raccord.



### 3. Installer le solénoïde



**ATTENTION: Risque de débit d'eau restreint.** Le tuyau de sortie ne doit pas être tendu ou déformé pendant l'installation. Positionner l'électrovanne dans un rayon de 7" (178 mm) à 8" (203 mm) de la ligne centrale du robinet.

**REMARQUE:** Positionner l'électrovanne dans un rayon de 7" (178 mm) à 8" (203 mm) à partir de la ligne centrale du robinet. Laisser assez de dégagement pour l'entretien.

#### Monter le support

**REMARQUE:** Le support de fixation doit être fixé avec deux dispositifs d'attache adéquats (non fournis) en fonction du type et de l'épaisseur du meuble ou du matériau du mur.

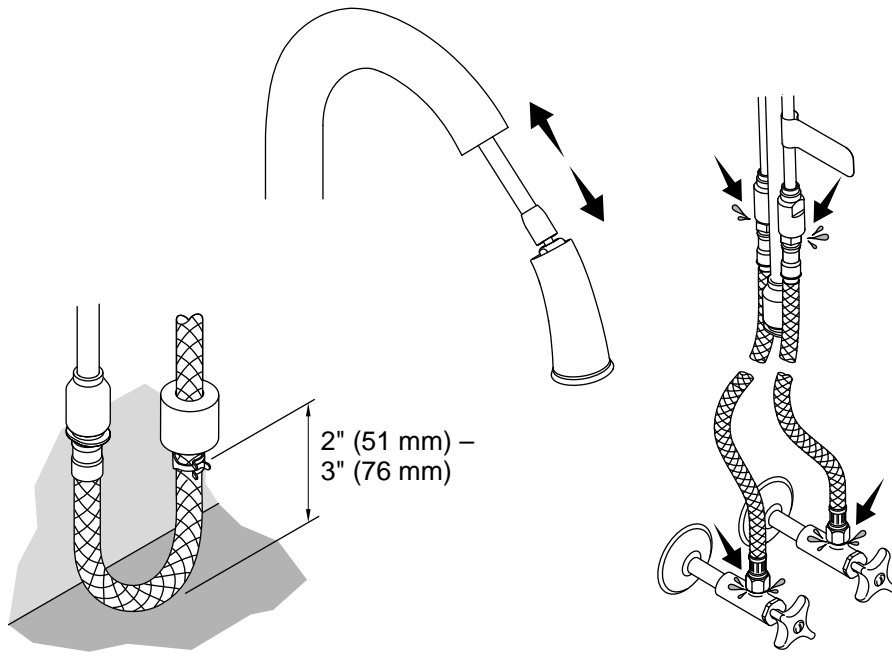
- Attacher le support de fixation à la verticale sur le meuble ou le mur.

#### Connecter les fils

**REMARQUE:** Le solénoïde peut être placé à droite ou à gauche. Retirer la languette adéquate sur le couvercle.

### Installer le solénoïde (cont.)

- Appliquer de la graisse (fournie) sur la douille du capteur se trouvant sur la carte de circuits imprimés à l'intérieur du couvercle. Ceci fournira une protection supplémentaire contre la corrosion.
- Connecter le fil de l'interrupteur de la poignée et le fil du capteur entre le robinet et la carte de circuits imprimés.
- Connecter le cordon d'alimentation à la carte de circuits imprimés.
- Connecter le fil du solénoïde à la carte de circuits imprimés.
- Brancher le cordon d'alimentation dans une prise de 120 V c.a. non commutée. La DEL de la carte de circuits imprimés s'allume.
- Tester l'activation du capteur. Se référer à la section "Fonctionnement du robinet".
- Ajuster le couvercle sur le solénoïde.
- Fixer l'ensemble sur le support de fixation avec les deux vis fournies.



#### 4. Terminer l'installation

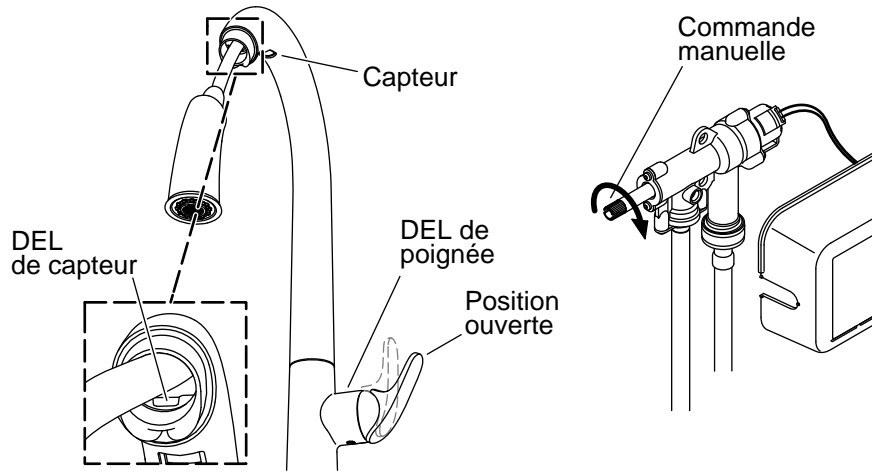
##### Positionner le poids

- Positionner le poids entre 2" (51 mm) et 3" (76 mm) du sol du meuble.
- Sécuriser le collier autour du tuyau du vaporisateur, juste en dessous du poids.
- Étendre et rétracter le tuyau du vaporisateur pour vérifier le fonctionnement adéquat.

##### Rechercher des fuites

- S'assurer que toutes les connexions sont bien serrées.
- Ouvrir les arrivées d'eau et vérifier tous les raccords pour y rechercher des fuites éventuelles.
- Tester le robinet pour assurer un fonctionnement adéquat. Se référer à la section "Fonctionnement du robinet".





## Fonctionnement du robinet

- Tourner la poignée vers l'extérieur en position ouverte pour démarrer le débit d'eau. La DEL de la poignée s'allume pour indiquer que le capteur fonctionne.
- Ajuster la poignée à la température d'eau souhaitée.
- Agiter la main sous le bec pour arrêter le débit d'eau.
- Agiter de nouveau la main sous le bec pour redémarrer le débit d'eau.

**REMARQUE:** Certains objets qui sont transparents et certaines couleurs ne peuvent pas être détectés par le capteur. Utiliser toujours la main pour tester le capteur.

- Si nécessaire, consulter la section "Réglage de la DEL de la poignée" pour obtenir de l'information supplémentaire.

**REMARQUE:** Lors de périodes prolongées de non utilisation, la poignée doit être ramenée à la position fermée (verticale). La DEL de la poignée s'éteint, et indique ainsi que le débit d'eau n'est pas disponible.

### Indicateurs DEL

- **DEL de poignée:** S'allume lorsque le capteur est en marche.
- **DEL de circuits imprimés:** Indique que la carte de circuits imprimés est alimentée.

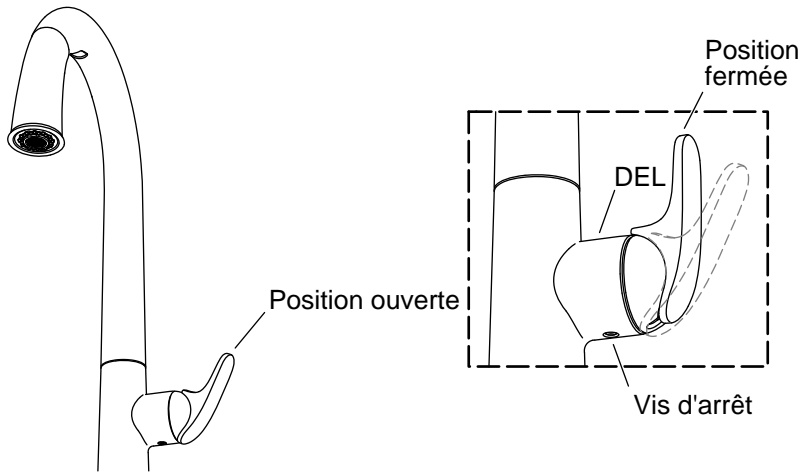
## Fonctionnement du robinet (cont.)

**REMARQUE:** Les DEL du capteur sont seulement visibles à l'intérieur du bec lorsque le tuyau du vaporisateur est étendu.

- **DEL verte de capteur:** Indique que le capteur est alimenté.
- **DEL jaune de capteur:** S'allume lorsqu'un objet a été détecté par le capteur.

### Caractéristiques

- **Arrêt automatique:** Au bout de 4 minutes d'inactivité, l'eau s'arrête automatiquement.
- **Annulation du capteur:** En cas de perte d'alimentation, la fonction du capteur peut être annulée en tournant la fonction d'annulation sur l'électrovanne. Le robinet peut alors être actionné manuellement.

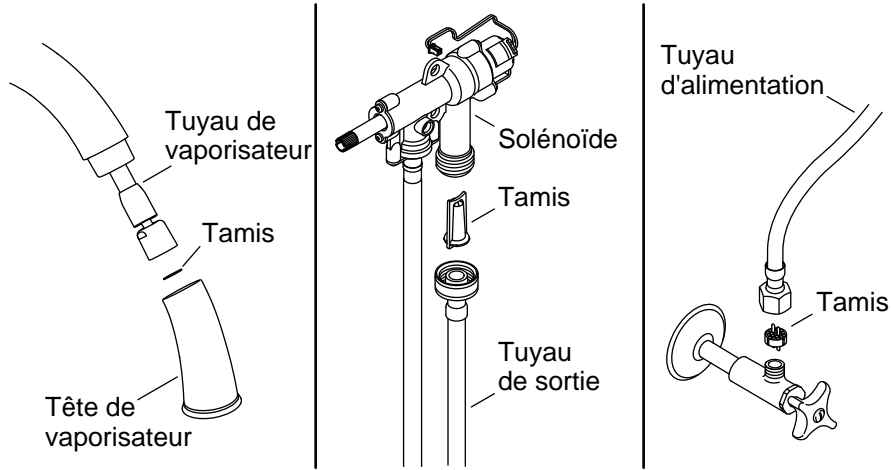


### Réglage de la DEL de la poignée

**REMARQUE:** La DEL doit être allumée lorsque la poignée est tournée en position ouverte, et éteinte lorsque la poignée est en position verticale (fermée). Utiliser une clé hexagonale de 5/64" pour régler la vis d'arrêt de la vanne selon les besoins.

**IMPORTANT!** Ne pas appliquer de pression vers le haut sur la vis d'arrêt de la vanne pendant les ajustements.

- **La DEL est allumée lorsque la poignée est fermée:** Serrer la vis d'arrêt de la vanne jusqu'à ce que la DEL s'éteigne. Serrer ensuite la vis d'arrêt d'1/4 de tour supplémentaire.
- **La poignée ne retourne pas en position verticale:** Desserrer la vis d'arrêt de la vanne jusqu'à ce que la poignée tourne jusqu'à la position entièrement verticale (fermée) et que la DEL s'allume. Serrer ensuite la vis d'arrêt jusqu'à ce que la DEL s'éteigne, puis serrer d'1/4 de tour supplémentaire.
- **L'eau ne s'arrête pas entièrement de couler:** Desserrer la vis d'arrêt de la vanne jusqu'à ce que la poignée tourne jusqu'à la position entièrement verticale (fermée) et que la DEL s'allume. Serrer ensuite la vis d'arrêt jusqu'à ce que la DEL s'éteigne, puis serrer d'1/4 de tour supplémentaire.



## Nettoyer les tamis

### Tamis de tête de vaporisateur

- Tourner la poignée en position fermée.
- Déconnecter l'écrou à l'extrémité du tuyau du vaporisateur.
- Retirer et nettoyer l'écran à l'intérieur du tuyau du vaporisateur.
- Réinsérer le tamis et reconnecter la tête du vaporisateur.

### Tamis d'entrée de solénoïde

- Tourner la poignée en position fermée.
- Déconnecter le tuyau de sortie du solénoïde.
- Retirer et nettoyer le tamis d'entrée à l'intérieur du solénoïde.
- Réinstaller le tamis d'entrée et reconnecter le tuyau de sortie.

### Tamis de tuyau d'alimentation

- Couper les arrivées d'eau.
- Déconnecter le tuyau d'alimentation de l'arrêt d'alimentation.
- Nettoyer le tamis à l'intérieur de l'orifice d'entrée du tuyau.
- Reconnecter le tuyau d'arrivée d'eau à l'arrêt.
- Ouvrir les arrivées d'eau.

## Entretien et nettoyage

Pour obtenir les meilleurs résultats possibles, prendre ce qui suit en considération lors de l'entretien de votre produit KOHLER:

- Utiliser un détergent doux comme du liquide pour vaisselle et de l'eau chaude pour nettoyer. Ne pas utiliser de nettoyeurs abrasifs qui pourraient rayer ou ternir la surface.
- Lire l'étiquette du produit de nettoyage avec le plus grand soin pour assurer que celui-ci peut être utilisé sans danger sur le matériau.
- Toujours tester la solution de nettoyage sur une surface non visible avant de l'appliquer sur l'ensemble de la surface.
- Ne pas laisser les nettoyeurs reposer ou tremper sur la surface.
- Essuyer les surfaces et rincer complètement avec de l'eau immédiatement après l'application du nettoyeur. Rincer et sécher tout éclaboussement sur les surfaces avoisinantes.
- Utiliser une éponge ou un chiffon doux et humide. Ne jamais utiliser de matériau abrasif tel qu'une brosse ou une éponge à récurer pour nettoyer les surfaces.

Pour obtenir des informations détaillées sur le nettoyage et les produits à considérer, consulter le site [www.kohler.com/clean](http://www.kohler.com/clean). Pour commander des informations sur l'entretien & le nettoyage, appeler le 1-800-456-4537.

## Garantie

### **Garantie limitée de cinq ans pour les robinets, valves et contrôles électroniques KOHLER®**

Kohler Co. garantit les robinets, valves et contrôles électroniques contre tout vice de matériau et de fabrication lors d'une utilisation domestique normale, pendant cinq ans à partir de la date d'installation du produit. La présente garantie s'applique uniquement aux robinets, valves et contrôles électroniques installés aux États-Unis, au Canada et au Mexique ("Amérique du Nord").

En cas de défectuosité lors d'une utilisation domestique normale, Kohler Co. choisira, à son gré, la réparation, le remplacement de la pièce ou du produit, ou la rectification appropriée, dans les cas où l'inspection de Kohler révélerait une telle défectuosité. Tout dommage causé par un accident, une mauvaise utilisation ou un mauvais traitement n'est pas couvert par la présente garantie. Un entretien et un nettoyage inadéquats annulent la garantie\*. Une preuve d'achat

## **Garantie (cont.)**

(ticket de caisse d'origine) doit être présentée à Kohler Co. avec toutes les réclamations au titre de la garantie. Kohler Co. n'est pas responsable des frais de main-d'œuvre, d'installation ou de tout autre frais particulier accessoire ou indirect que ceux susmentionnés. La responsabilité de Kohler Co. ne dépassera en aucun cas le prix d'achat du robinet, de la valve ou du contrôle.

Si les robinets, les valves ou les contrôles électroniques sont utilisés dans un commerce ou si ces articles sont installés en dehors d'Amérique du Nord, Kohler Co. garantit les robinets, les valves ou les contrôles contre tout vice de matériau et de fabrication pendant un (1) an à partir de la date d'installation dudit produit, et toutes les autres modalités de la présente garantie s'appliquent à l'exception de sa durée.

Pour toute réclamation au titre de la présente garantie, contacter le vendeur, plombier, centre de rénovation ou revendeur par internet. Fournir tous les renseignements pertinents à la réclamation, dont notamment une description complète du problème et du produit, le numéro de modèle, la date et le lieu d'achat du produit, ainsi que la date de son installation. Joindre également l'original de la facture. Pour de plus amples renseignements ou pour obtenir les coordonnées du service de réparation le plus proche, écrire à Kohler Co., Attn: Customer Care Center, Kohler, Wisconsin 53044, USA, ou appeler le 1-800-4-KOHLER (1-800-456-4537) à partir des É.-U. et du Canada, et le 001-800-456-4537 à partir du Mexique, ou consulter le site [www.kohler.com](http://www.kohler.com) aux É.-U., [www.ca.kohler.com](http://www.ca.kohler.com) à partir du Canada, ou [www.mx.kohler.com](http://www.mx.kohler.com) au Mexique.

**LES GARANTIES SUSMENTIONNÉES SONT FOURNIES AU LIEU ET PLACE DE TOUTES AUTRES GARANTIES, EXPRESSES OU TACITES, Y COMPRIS LES GARANTIES TACITES DE COMMERCIALITÉ ET D'ADAPTATION À UN USAGE PARTICULIER.**

**KOHLER CO. ET/OU LE REVENDEUR DÉCLINENT TOUTE RESPONSABILITÉ CONTRE LES DOMMAGES PARTICULIERS, ACCESSOIRES OU INDIRECTS.** Certains états et provinces ne permettent pas de limite sur la durée de la garantie tacite, ni l'exclusion ou la limite des dommages, et, par conséquent, lesdites limites et exclusions peuvent ne pas s'appliquer à votre cas. La présente garantie accorde au consommateur des droits juridiques particuliers. Vous pouvez également avoir d'autres droits qui varient d'un état ou d'une province à l'autre. La présente garantie est accordée uniquement à l'acquéreur d'origine et exclut tous dommages dus à une mauvaise installation, un usage abusif ou une mauvaise utilisation du produit, qu'ils soient effectués par un

## Garantie (cont.)

entrepreneur, une société de services ou le consommateur.

Ceci constitue la garantie écrite exclusive de Kohler Co.

**\*Ne jamais utiliser de nettoyants contenant des agents abrasifs, de l'ammoniaque, de l'eau de Javel, des acides, des cires, de l'alcool, des dissolvants ou autres produits non recommandés pour le chrome. Ceci annulera la garantie.**

## Dépannage

**ATTENTION: Risque d'endommagement du produit.** Ce produit contient des composants électroniques sensibles. Procéder avec soin afin d'éviter d'endommager les goupilles et les connecteurs pendant le dépannage.

**ATTENTION: Risque d'endommagement du produit.** Ne pas insérer quoi que ce soit d'autre que le fil du capteur dans le connecteur du fil du capteur (sortie casque) sur la carte de circuits imprimés.

**REMARQUE:** Pour tout renseignement sur les pièces de rechange, visiter la page du produit sur le site [www.kohler.com](http://www.kohler.com).

### Tableau de dépannage du robinet

Symptômes	Causes probables	Action recommandée
1. Pas d'écoulement d'eau.	A. Les arrêts d'alimentation sont fermés.	A. Confirmer que les arrêts d'alimentation sont ouverts.
	B. La poignée est en position fermée.	B. Tourner la poignée en position ouverte. Se référer à la section "Fonctionnement du robinet".
	C. Le tuyau d'alimentation chaud et/ou froid est déformé.	C. Confirmer que les tuyaux d'alimentation ne sont pas déformés. S'ils sont enroulés, maintenir un diamètre intérieur de 3" (76 mm).



## Dépannage (cont.)

### Tableau de dépannage du robinet

Symptômes	Causes probables	Action recommandée
	D. Le tuyau de sortie est déformé.	D. Confirmer que l'électrovanne est placée dans un rayon de 7" (178 mm) à 8" (203 mm) de la base du robinet.
	E. La DEL de la poignée n'est pas allumée.	E. Se reporter au "Tableau de dépannage de l'interrupteur de la poignée".
	F. La DEL du capteur n'est pas allumée.	F. Se reporter au "Tableau de dépannage du capteur".
	G. Un ou plusieurs tamis sont bouchés.	G. Se référer à la section "Nettoyer les tamis".
2. Débit d'eau bas.	A. Les arrêts d'alimentation sont fermés partiellement.	A. Confirmer que les arrêts d'alimentation sont entièrement ouverts.
	B. La poignée est fermée partiellement.	B. Tourner la poignée en position entièrement ouverte.
	C. Le tuyau d'alimentation en eau chaude et/ou froide est déformé ou tordu.	C. Confirmer que les tuyaux d'alimentation ne sont pas déformés ou tordus. S'ils sont enroulés, maintenir un diamètre intérieur de 3" (76 mm).
	D. Le tuyau de sortie est déformé.	D. Confirmer que l'électrovanne est placée dans un rayon de 7" (178 mm) à 8" (203 mm) de la base du robinet.
	E. Un ou plusieurs tamis sont bouchés.	E. Se référer à la section "Nettoyer les tamis".

## Dépannage (cont.)

### Tableau de dépannage du robinet

Symptômes	Causes probables	Action recommandée
	F. Diaphragme craquelé.	F. Remplacer l'ensemble de l'électrovanne.
3. Mauvais schéma de vaporisation.	A. Les buses du vaporisateur sont bouchées.	A. Frotter le doigt par-dessus les buses en faisant couler de l'eau pour déloger les débris.
4. La DEL de la carte de circuits imprimés n'est pas allumée.	A. Pas d'alimentation vers la carte de circuits imprimés.	A. Vérifier les connexions de l'alimentation électrique vers la carte de circuits imprimés.
	B. Le cordon d'alimentation est branché dans une prise commutée.	B. Brancher le cordon d'alimentation dans une prise de 120 V c.a. non commutée (tester la prise avec une radio ou un autre appareil). Confirmer que la DEL de la carte de circuits imprimés s'allume.
5. Égouttement ou mince filet d'eau lorsque le robinet n'est pas utilisé.	A. La commande de neutralisation manuelle est engagée partiellement.	A. Tourner la commande de neutralisation manuelle blanche dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre jusqu'à ce que l'égouttement d'eau s'arrête.

### Tableau de dépannage de solénoïde

Symptômes	Causes probables	Action recommandée
1. Fuite d'eau en provenance de l'électrovanne.	A. Les raccords de tuyaux ne sont pas sécurisés.	A. <b>ATTENTION: Risque de blessures ou d'endommagement du produit.</b> Couper le courant principal et l'alimentation en eau. Inspecter toutes les connexions. Effectuer les ajustements selon les besoins.

## Dépannage (cont.)

### Tableau de dépannage de solénoïde

Symptômes	Causes probables	Action recommandée
	B. Fuite interne.	B. Remplacer l'ensemble de l'électrovanne.
2. Aucun "clic" audible lors de l'activation du solénoïde.	A. Connexion de fil de solénoïde desserrée.	A. Vérifier la connexion du fil du solénoïde vers la carte de circuits imprimés.
	B. L'électrovanne ne fonctionne pas.	B. Remplacer l'ensemble de l'électrovanne.

### Tableau de dépannage de l'interrupteur de la poignée

Symptômes	Causes probables	Action recommandée
1. La DEL de la poignée est allumée lorsque la poignée est fermée.	A. La vis d'arrêt de la vanne doit être réglée.	A. Se référer à la section "Réglage de la DEL de la poignée".
2. La poignée ne retourne pas en position verticale.	A. La vis d'arrêt de la vanne doit être réglée.	A. Se référer à la section "Réglage de la DEL de la poignée".
3. L'eau ne s'arrête pas entièrement de couler.	A. La vis d'arrêt de la vanne doit être réglée.	A. Se référer à la section "Réglage de la DEL de la poignée".
4. La DEL de la poignée ne s'allume pas lorsque la poignée est tournée en position ouverte.	A. Connexion de fil d'interrupteur de poignée desserrée.	A. Inspecter la connexion du fil de l'interrupteur de poignée vers la carte de circuits imprimés.
	B. La carte de circuits imprimés ne fonctionne pas correctement.	B. Remplacer l'ensemble du couvercle.

## Dépannage (cont.)

### Tableau de dépannage de capteur

Symptômes	Causes probables	Action recommandée
1. Fonctionnement intermittent du capteur.	A. Débris sur la lentille du capteur.	A. Utiliser du savon doux et de l'eau pour doucement retirer les débris de la lentille du capteur.
	B. Le capteur détecte de la vapeur.	B. Tourner le bec pour l'éloigner de la vapeur.
2. La DEL de la poignée est allumée, mais la DEL verte du capteur ne l'est pas.	A. Connexion de fil de capteur desserrée.	A. Vérifier la connexion du fil du capteur vers la carte de circuits imprimés.
	B. Débris sur le connecteur du fil du capteur.	B. Sur la carte de circuits imprimés, déconnecter, nettoyer et reconnecter avec précaution le connecteur du fil du capteur.
	C. La carte de circuits imprimés ne fonctionne pas.	C. Remplacer l'ensemble du couvercle.
3. La DEL jaune du capteur ne s'allume pas avec un objet placé devant celui-ci.	A. L'objet est transparent ou la couleur ne peut être détectée par le capteur.	A. Tester le capteur en utilisant la main.
	B. Débris sur le connecteur du fil du capteur.	B. Sur la carte de circuits imprimés, déconnecter, nettoyer et reconnecter avec précaution le connecteur du fil du capteur.

# Guía de instalación y cuidado

## Grifería electrónica de cocina

### INSTRUCCIONES IMPORTANTES



**ADVERTENCIA:** Al usar aparatos eléctricos siempre cumpla las precauciones básicas, incluidas las siguientes:



**PELIGRO:** Riesgo de sacudidas eléctricas. Solo conecte a un circuito protegido por un interruptor de circuito con pérdida a tierra (GFCI)\*.



**ADVERTENCIA:** Riesgo de sacudidas eléctricas. Se requiere conexión a tierra. Un electricista profesional debe hacer todas las conexiones eléctricas.



**ADVERTENCIA:** Riesgo de sacudidas eléctricas. Desconecte el suministro eléctrico antes de dar servicio.



**ADVERTENCIA:** Riesgo de lesiones personales o de daños a la propiedad. Lea atentamente todas las instrucciones antes de comenzar la instalación.



**PRECAUCIÓN:** Riesgo de daños a la propiedad. El surtidor de la grifería tiene un imán. No acerque al surtidor objetos susceptibles a sufrir daños electromagnéticos.

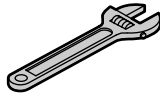
Cumpla todos los códigos de plomería, eléctricos y de construcción.

\*Fuera de los Estados Unidos, este dispositivo se conoce como dispositivo de corriente residual (RCD, por sus siglas en inglés).

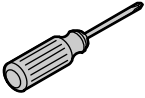
## Herramientas



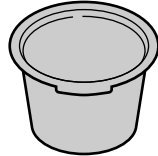
3/8"



Trapos



Destornillador Phillips



Cubeta

Más:

- Tomacorriente eléctrico no conmutado

## Información importante

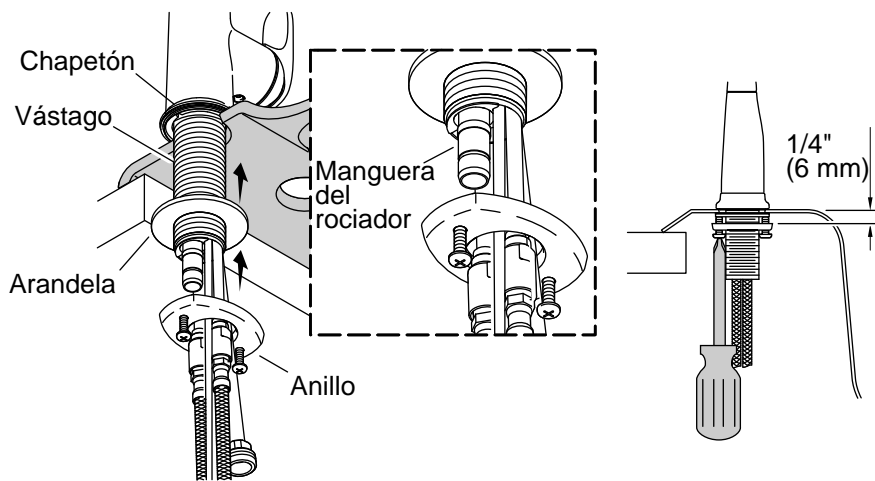


**ADVERTENCIA: Riesgo de contaminación del agua.** Esta grifería tiene protección contra contrasifonaje. No retire ninguno de los componentes internos.

**PRECAUCIÓN: Riesgo de daños al producto.** Este producto tiene componentes electrónicos sensibles. No guarde recipientes abiertos de productos químicos o de productos de limpieza cerca de este producto. Las esponjas y los trapos de limpieza se deben enjuagar con agua limpia antes de guardarlos.

**¡IMPORTANTE!** No utilice un tomacorriente controlado por interruptor (típicamente para trituradores de desperdicios de alimentos) para el suministro eléctrico de la grifería.

- Cumpla todos los códigos locales de plomería y construcción.
- Asegúrese de que haya un tomacorriente eléctrico **no conmutado** constante de 120 VCA bajo el fregadero, a menos de 5 pies (1,5 m) de la caja de control.
- Cierre el suministro de agua.
- En instalaciones nuevas, ensamble la grifería al fregadero antes de instalar el fregadero.
- En superficies de montaje disperejas (con líneas de lechada de cemento en azulejo) aplique un sellador adecuado bajo la grifería. **No use selladores derivados del petróleo.**



## 1. Instale la grifería

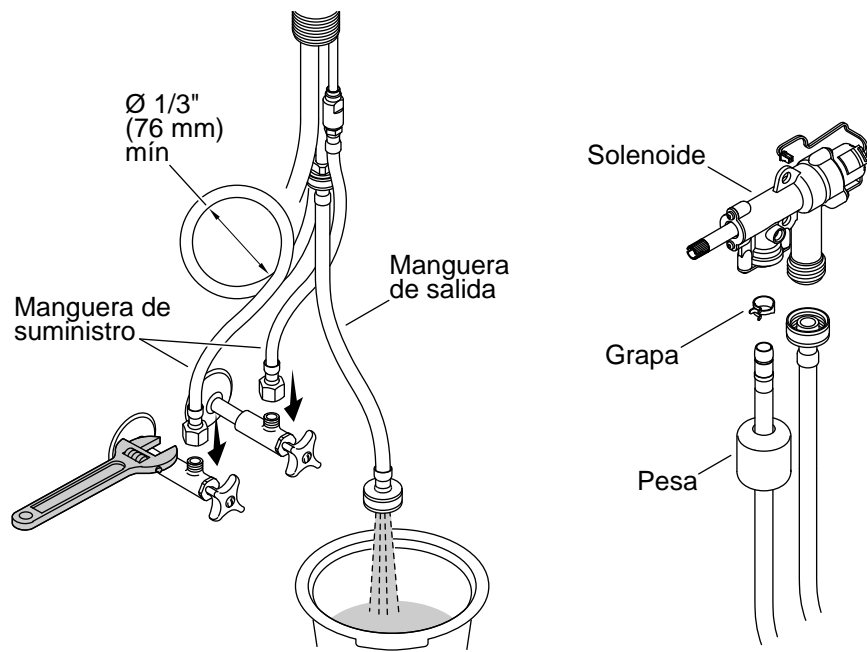
**NOTA:** La manija está diseñada para quedar orientada al lado derecho.

- Enrosque los tornillos en el anillo hasta que sobresalgan 1/4" (6 mm) de la superficie.
- Introduzca la grifería a través de la superficie de montaje con la manija a la derecha.
- Jale la cabeza del rociador hacia fuera y apóyela en el fondo del fregadero. No jale el extremo de la manguera del rociador dentro del vástago.
- Desde abajo del fregadero, empuje la manguera del rociador hacia arriba al vástago.
- Deslice la arandela sobre las mangueras y los cables, y luego hacia arriba al vástago.
- Deslice el anillo sobre las mangueras y los cables, y luego hacia arriba al vástago.
- Enrosque el anillo en el vástago hasta que la arandela haga contacto con la cara inferior del fregadero.
- Ajuste el anillo de modo que los tornillos queden alineados con respecto a la parte delantera y posterior de la grifería.
- Utilice un destornillador Phillips para apretar bien los tornillos.
- Jale el extremo de la manguera del rociador hacia abajo, para alejarlo del vástago.



**Instale la grifería (cont.)**

- Deslice la cabeza del rociador de nuevo dentro del surtidor.



## 2. Conecte las mangueras

**PRECAUCIÓN: Riesgo de restricción del flujo de agua y de daños al producto.** Las mangueras de suministro no deben quedar tensas, pellizcadas ni torcidas al instalarlas. Si debe enrollar las mangueras de suministro, mantenga un diámetro interior de 3" (76 mm).

### Conecte los suministros

- Ensamble la manguera de salida a la grifería.
- Conecte y apriete las mangueras de suministro a las llaves de paso.
- Coloque una cubeta debajo de la manguera de salida.
- Abra los suministros de agua.
- Deje correr agua caliente y fría hacia una cubeta durante 1 minuto para eliminar los residuos.

### Conecte la manguera del rociador

- Retire la tapa protectora.

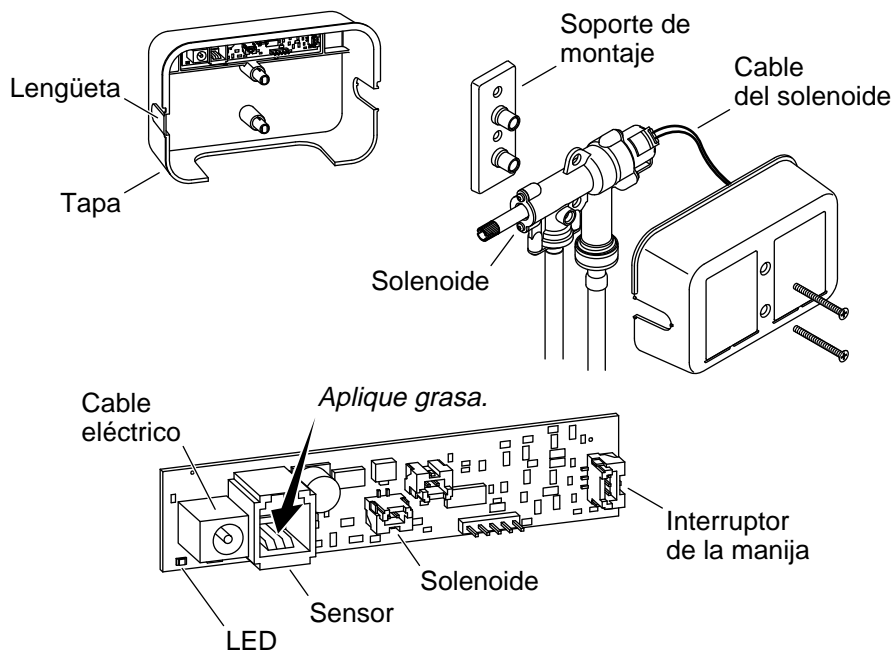
### **Conecte las mangueras (cont.)**

**NOTA:** La pesa debe quedar instalada en la manguera del rociador para que actúe como tope de jalar y para evitar daños por torceduras.

- Deslice la pesa, luego la abrazadera en la manguera del rociador.

**NOTA:** Utilice unas pinzas para abrir la abrazadera sobre el extremo de la manguera.

- Conecte la manguera del rociador a la conexión de salida en el solenoide. Asegúrese de que la manguera esté completamente engranada en la conexión.



### 3. Instale el solenoide



**PRECAUCIÓN: Riesgo de restricción del flujo de agua.** La manguera de salida no debe quedar tensa ni torcida al instalarla. Coloque la válvula de solenoide de 7" (178 mm) a 8" (203 mm) de la línea de centros de la grifería.

**NOTA:** Coloque la válvula de solenoide de 7" (178 mm) a 8" (203 mm) de la línea de centros de la grifería. Deje el espacio libre adecuado para dar servicio.

#### Monte el soporte

**NOTA:** El soporte de montaje se debe fijar con dos sujetadores adecuados (no se incluyen) de acuerdo al tipo y al grosor del gabinete o del material de la pared.

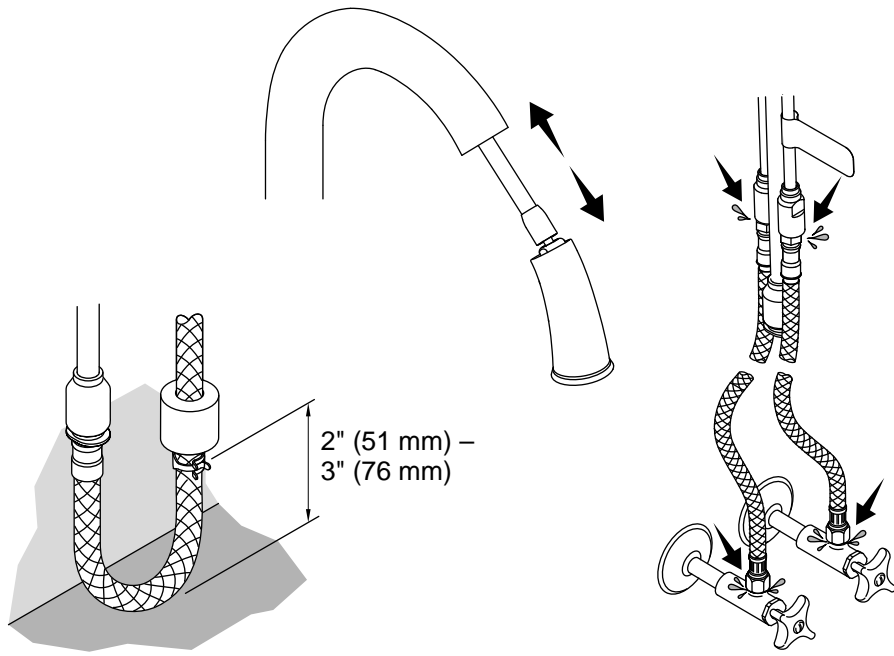
- Fije el soporte de montaje vertical con respecto al gabinete o a la pared.

#### Conecte los cables

**NOTA:** El solenoide se puede colocar a la derecha o a la izquierda. Retire la lengüeta correspondiente en la tapa.

### **Instale el solenoide (cont.)**

- Aplique grasa (se incluye) al casquillo del sensor ubicado en la placa de circuitos dentro de la tapa. Esto ofrece protección adicional contra la corrosión.
- Conecte el cable del interruptor de la manija y el cable del sensor de la grifería a la placa de circuitos.
- Conecte el cable eléctrico a la placa de circuitos.
- Conecte el cable del solenoide a la placa de circuitos.
- Enchufe el cable eléctrico a un tomacorriente no conmutado de 120 VCA. El diodo (LED) en la placa de circuitos se ilumina.
- Pruebe la activación del sensor. Consulte la sección "Funcionamiento de la grifería".
- Coloque la tapa sobre el solenoide.
- Fije el montaje al soporte de montaje con los dos tornillos que se incluyen.



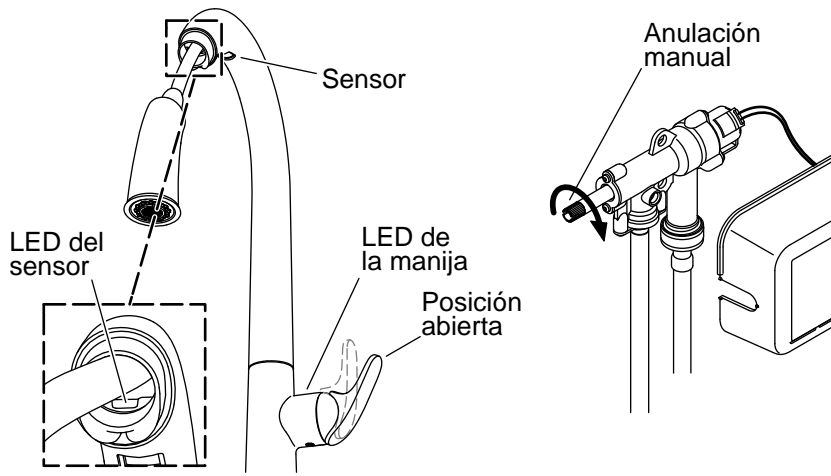
#### 4. Termine de hacer la instalación

##### Coloque la pesa

- Coloque la pesa de 2" (51 mm) a 3" (76 mm) del piso del gabinete.
- Fije la abrazadera a la manguera del rociador justo debajo de la pesa.
- Saque y retraiga la manguera del rociador para verificar que funcione sin dificultades.

##### Verifique que no haya fugas

- Asegúrese de que todas las conexiones estén apretadas.
- Abra los suministros de agua, y verifique que no haya fugas en ninguna conexión.
- Compruebe que la grifería funcione correctamente. Consulte la sección "Funcionamiento de la grifería".



## Funcionamiento de la grifería

- Gire la manija hacia fuera a la posición abierta para abrir el flujo de agua. El diodo (LED) de la manija se ilumina para indicar que el sensor está funcionando.
- Ajuste la manija a la temperatura de agua deseada.
- Pase la mano bajo el surtidor para cerrar el agua.
- Pase la mano de nuevo bajo el surtidor para volver a abrir el flujo de agua.

**NOTA:** Algunos objetos transparentes y ciertos colores no son detectables por el sensor. Siempre use la mano para probar el sensor.

- Si es necesario, consulte la sección "Ajuste del LED de la manija" para obtener más información.

**NOTA:** Durante periodos largos sin uso, la manija debe volver a ponerse en la posición cerrada (vertical). El LED de la manija se apaga para indicar que el flujo de agua no está disponible.

### Indicadores LED

- **LED de la manija:** Se ilumina cuando el sensor está activo.
- **LED de la placa de circuitos:** Indica que la placa de circuitos tiene suministro eléctrico.

**NOTA:** Los indicadores LED del sensor solo son visibles dentro del surtidor cuando se saca la manguera del rociador.

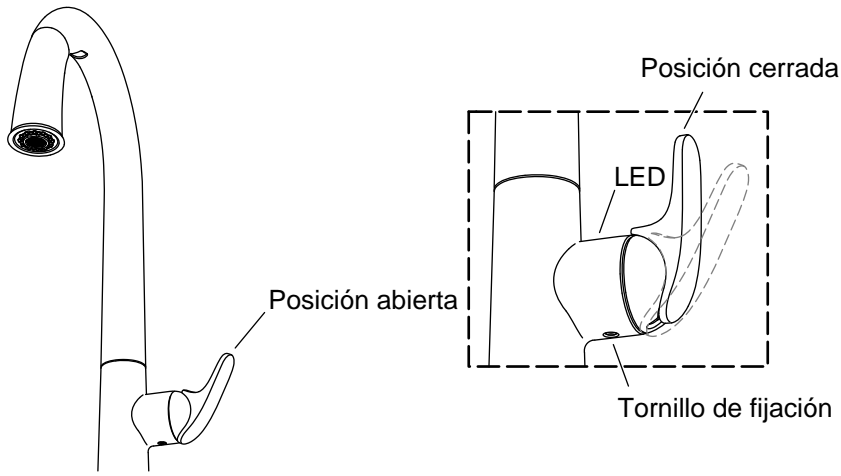


### **Funcionamiento de la grifería (cont.)**

- **LED del sensor verde:** Indica que el sensor tiene suministro eléctrico.
- **LED del sensor amarillo:** Se ilumina cuando el sensor detecta un objeto.

### **Características**

- **Cierre automático:** Después de 4 minutos de inactividad, el agua se apaga automáticamente.
- **Anulación del sensor:** En el caso de pérdida de suministro eléctrico, es posible anular la función del sensor al activar la función de anulación en la válvula de solenoide. La grifería puede entonces funcionar manualmente.

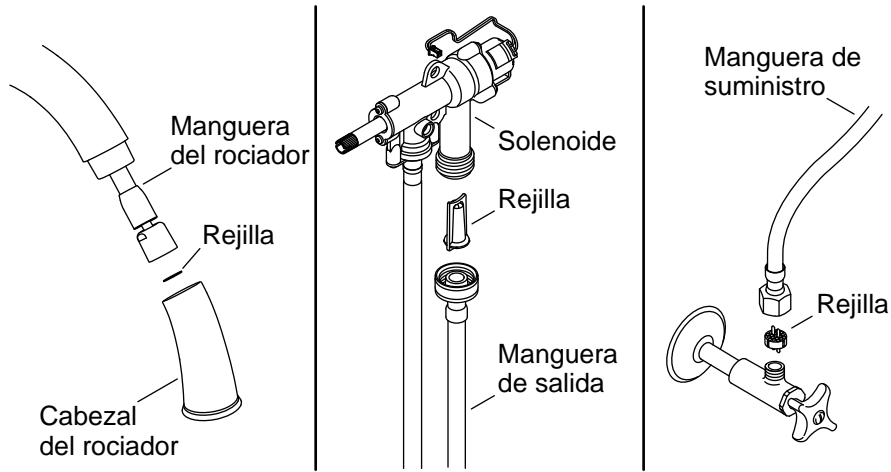


### Ajuste del diodo (LED) de la manija

**NOTA:** El diodo emisor de luz (LED) debe encenderse al girar la manija a su posición abierta, y debe apagarse cuando la manija está en su posición hacia arriba (cerrada). Con una llave hexagonal de 5/64" ajuste el tornillo de fijación de la válvula según sea necesario.

**¡IMPORTANTE!** Al ajustar, no aplique presión hacia arriba al tornillo de fijación de la válvula.

- **El LED está iluminado cuando la manija está cerrada:** Apriete el tornillo de fijación de la válvula hasta que el LED se apague. Luego apriete el tornillo de fijación 1/4 de vuelta adicional.
- **La manija no regresa a la posición hacia arriba:** Afloje el tornillo de fijación de la válvula hasta que la manija gire a la posición totalmente hacia arriba (cerrada) y el LED se encienda. Luego apriete el tornillo de fijación hasta que el LED se apague, más 1/4 de vuelta adicional.
- **El agua no se cierra completamente:** Afloje el tornillo de fijación de la válvula hasta que la manija gire a la posición totalmente hacia arriba (cerrada) y el LED se encienda. Luego apriete el tornillo de fijación hasta que el LED se apague, más 1/4 de vuelta adicional.



## Limpieza de las rejillas

### Rejilla de la cabeza del rociador

- Gire la manija a la posición cerrada.
- Desconecte la tuerca en el extremo de la manguera del rociador.
- Retire y limpie la rejilla que está dentro de la manguera del rociador.
- Vuelva a introducir la rejilla y a conectar el cabezal del rociador.

### Rejilla de entrada del solenoide

- Gire la manija a la posición cerrada.
- Desconecte la manguera de salida del solenoide.
- Retire y limpie la rejilla de entrada que está dentro del solenoide.
- Vuelva a introducir la rejilla de entrada y vuelva a conectar la manguera de salida.

### Rejilla de la manguera de suministro

- Cierre los suministros de agua.
- Desconecte la manguera de suministro de la llave de paso de suministro.
- Limpie la rejilla que está dentro de la entrada de la manguera.
- Vuelva a conectar la manguera de suministro a la llave de paso.
- Abra los suministros de agua.

## Cuidado y limpieza

Para obtener los mejores resultados, tenga presente lo siguiente al limpiar su producto KOHLER:

- Para limpiar utilice solamente un detergente suave, como líquido para lavar la vajilla y agua tibia. No utilice limpiadores abrasivos que puedan rayar u opacar la superficie.
- Lea atentamente la etiqueta del producto de limpieza para asegurarse de que no presente riesgos al usarse en el material.
- Siempre pruebe la solución de limpieza en un área oculta antes de aplicarla a toda la superficie.
- No deje los limpiadores durante tiempo prolongado en la superficie.
- Limpie con un trapo y enjuague completa e inmediatamente con agua después de aplicar limpiadores. Enjuague y seque las superficies cercanas que hayan sido rociadas.
- Utilice una esponja o un paño suave y húmedo. Para limpiar las superficies nunca utilice materiales abrasivos, como cepillos o estropajos de tallar.

Para obtener información detallada de limpieza y de productos a considerar, visite [www.kohler.com/clean](http://www.kohler.com/clean). Para solicitar información sobre el cuidado y la limpieza, llame al 1-800-456-4537.

## Garantía

### **GARANTÍA LIMITADA DE CINCO AÑOS de griferías, válvulas y controles electrónicos KOHLER®**

Kohler Co. garantiza las griferías, las válvulas y los controles electrónicos contra defectos de material y mano de obra durante el uso normal residencial, durante cinco años a partir de la fecha de instalación del producto. Esta garantía se aplica solamente a la grifería, las válvulas y los controles electrónicos instalados en Estados Unidos de América, Canadá y México ("Norteamérica").

Si se encuentra un defecto durante el uso residencial normal, Kohler Co., a su criterio, reparará, proveerá una pieza de repuesto o un producto, o realizará los ajustes pertinentes en los casos en que la inspección realizada por Kohler Co. determine dicho defecto. Esta garantía no cubre daños causados por accidente, abuso o uso indebido. El cuidado y la limpieza indebidos anulan la garantía\*. Al presentar las reclamaciones de garantía a Kohler Co., es necesario incluir el comprobante de compra (recibo de venta original). Kohler Co. no se

## **Garantía (cont.)**

hace responsable de costos de mano de obra, instalación u otros costos incidentales o indirectos, aparte de los mencionados arriba. En ningún caso la responsabilidad de Kohler Co. excederá el precio de compra de la grifería, la válvula o el control.

Si las griferías, las válvulas o los controles electrónicos se utilizan comercialmente o si se instalan fuera del territorio de Norteamérica, Kohler Co. garantiza que la grifería, la válvula o el control está libre de defectos de material y mano de obra durante un (1) año, a partir de la fecha de instalación, estando en efecto todas las demás condiciones de esta garantía, excepto la duración.

Si usted considera que tiene una reclamación en virtud de la garantía, comuníquese con su centro de remodelación, distribuidor, contratista de plomería o distribuidor por Internet. Asegúrese de proporcionar toda la información pertinente a su reclamación, incluida una descripción completa del problema, el producto, el número de modelo, la fecha de compra del producto, el lugar de compra del producto, y la fecha de instalación. También incluya el recibo original. Para información adicional, o para obtener el nombre y dirección del lugar de reparación y servicio más cercano a usted, escriba a Kohler Co., Attn: Customer Care Center, Kohler, Wisconsin 53044 USA, o llame al 1-800-4-KOHLER (1-800-456-4537) desde los EE.UU. y Canadá, y al 001-800-456-4537 desde México, o visite [www.kohler.com](http://www.kohler.com) desde los EE.UU., [www.ca.kohler.com](http://www.ca.kohler.com) desde Canadá, o [www.mx.kohler.com](http://www.mx.kohler.com) en México.

**LAS GARANTÍAS ANTERIORMENTE MENCIONADAS SUSTITUYEN A TODAS LAS DEMÁS GARANTÍAS, EXPRESAS O IMPLÍCITAS, INCLUIDAS, ENTRE OTRAS, LAS GARANTÍAS IMPLÍCITAS DE COMERCIALIZACIÓN E IDONEIDAD PARA UN USO DETERMINADO.**

**KOHLER CO. Y/O EL VENDEDOR DESCARGAN TODA RESPONSABILIDAD POR CONCEPTO DE DAÑOS PARTICULARES, INCIDENTALES O INDIRECTOS.** Algunos estados/provincias no permiten limitaciones en cuanto a la duración de una garantía implícita o a la exclusión o limitación de dichos daños, por lo que es posible que estas limitaciones y exclusiones no se apliquen a su caso. Esta garantía otorga al consumidor ciertos derechos legales específicos. Además, usted puede tener otros derechos que varían de estado a estado y de provincia a provincia. Esta garantía está destinada únicamente para el comprador consumidor original y excluye todo daño al producto como resultado de errores de instalación, abuso del producto o uso indebido del mismo, bien sea por parte de un contratista, de una compañía de servicios o del consumidor mismo.

## Garantía (cont.)

Esta es la garantía exclusiva por escrito de Kohler Co.

**\*Nunca utilice limpiadores que contengan abrasivos, amoníaco, blanqueador, ácidos, ceras, alcohol, disolventes u otros productos no recomendados para el cromo. Esto anula la garantía.**

## Resolución de problemas

**PRECAUCIÓN: Riesgo de daños al producto.** Este producto tiene componentes electrónicos sensibles. Tenga cuidado de no dañar las clavijas y conectores al resolver problemas.

**PRECAUCIÓN: Riesgo de daños al producto.** No inserte nada que no sea el cable del sensor en el conector del cable del sensor (conector de teléfono) en la placa de circuitos.

**NOTA:** Para consultar información sobre piezas de repuesto, visite la página de su producto en [www.kohler.com](http://www.kohler.com).

### Tabla para resolver problemas de la grifería

Síntomas	Causas probables	Acción recomendada
1. No hay flujo de agua.	A. Las llaves de paso están cerradas.	A. Verifique que las llaves de paso estén abiertas.
	B. La manija está en la posición cerrada.	B. Gire la manija a la posición abierta. Consulte la sección "Funcionamiento de la grifería".
	C. La manguera del suministro de agua caliente y/o fría está torcida.	C. Verifique que las mangueras de suministro no estén torcidas. Si las enrolla, mantenga un diámetro interior de 3" (76 mm).
	D. La manguera de salida está torcida.	D. Confirme que la válvula solenoide quede de 7" (178 mm) a 8" (203 mm) de la base de la grifería.
	E. El LED de la manija no se ilumina.	E. Consulte la "Tabla para resolver problemas del interruptor de la manija".

**Resolución de problemas (cont.)****Tabla para resolver problemas de la grifería**

<b>Síntomas</b>	<b>Causas probables</b>	<b>Acción recomendada</b>
	<b>F.</b> El LED del sensor no se ilumina.	<b>F.</b> Consulte la "Tabla para resolver problemas del sensor".
	<b>G.</b> Por lo menos una rejilla está tapada.	<b>G.</b> Consulte la sección "Limpieza de las rejillas".
<b>2.</b> Flujo de agua bajo.	<b>A.</b> Las llaves de paso están parcialmente cerradas.	<b>A.</b> Confirme que las llaves de paso estén completamente abiertas.
	<b>B.</b> La manija está parcialmente cerrada.	<b>B.</b> Gire la manija a la posición completamente abierta.
	<b>C.</b> La manguera del suministro de agua caliente y/o fría está pellizcada o torcida.	<b>C.</b> Verifique que las mangueras de suministro no estén pellizcadas o torcidas. Si las enrolla, mantenga un diámetro interior de 3" (76 mm).
	<b>D.</b> La manguera de salida está torcida.	<b>D.</b> Confirme que la válvula solenoide quede entre 7" (178 mm) y 8" (203 mm) de la base de la grifería.
	<b>E.</b> Por lo menos una rejilla está tapada.	<b>E.</b> Consulte la sección "Limpieza de las rejillas".
	<b>F.</b> Diafragma con fisuras.	<b>F.</b> Cambie el montaje de la válvula solenoide.
<b>3.</b> Mal patrón de rocío.	<b>A.</b> Las boquillas del rociador están tapadas.	<b>A.</b> Frote el dedo sobre las boquillas con agua corriendo para eliminar las partículas residuales.
<b>4.</b> El LED de la placa de circuitos no se ilumina.	<b>A.</b> La placa de circuitos no recibe suministro eléctrico.	<b>A.</b> Verifique las conexiones del suministro eléctrico a la placa de circuitos.



## Resolución de problemas (cont.)

### Tabla para resolver problemas de la grifería

Síntomas	Causas probables	Acción recomendada
	<b>B.</b> El cable eléctrico está enchufado a un tomacorriente con interruptor.	<b>B.</b> Enchufe el cable eléctrico a un tomacorriente no conmutado de 120 VCA (pruebe el tomacorriente con un radio o con otro aparato). Verifique que se ilumine el LED de la placa de circuitos.
5. Cae un chorrito o gotas de agua cuando la grifería no está siendo usada.	<b>A.</b> La anulación manual está parcialmente activada.	<b>A.</b> Haga girar el dispositivo blanco de anulación manual hacia la derecha hasta que se detenga; luego hágalo girar hacia la izquierda hasta que deje de salir agua.

### Tabla para resolver problemas del solenoide

Síntomas	Causas probables	Acción recomendada
1. Fuga de agua de la válvula de solenoide.	<b>A.</b> Las conexiones de la manguera no están fijadas.	<b>A. PRECAUCIÓN: Riesgo de lesiones personales o daños al producto.</b> Desconecte la energía eléctrica principal y cierre el suministro de agua. Revise todas las conexiones. Haga los ajustes necesarios.
	<b>B.</b> Fuga interna.	<b>B.</b> Cambie el montaje de la válvula de solenoide.
2. No se escucha un "clac" cuando se activa el solenoide.	<b>A.</b> Conexión suelta del cable del solenoide.	<b>A.</b> Revise las conexiones del cable del solenoide a la placa de circuitos.
	<b>B.</b> La válvula de solenoide no funciona.	<b>B.</b> Cambie el montaje de la válvula de solenoide.

## Resolución de problemas (cont.)

### Tabla para resolver problemas del interruptor de la manija

Síntomas	Causas probables	Acción recomendada
1. El LED de la manija se ilumina cuando la manija está cerrada.	A. Es necesario ajustar el tornillo de fijación de la válvula.	A. Consulte la sección "Ajuste del LED de la manija".
2. La manija no regresa a la posición vertical.	A. Es necesario ajustar el tornillo de fijación de la válvula.	A. Consulte la sección "Ajuste del LED de la manija".
3. El agua no cierra por completo.	A. Es necesario ajustar el tornillo de fijación de la válvula.	A. Consulte la sección "Ajuste del LED de la manija".
4. El LED de la manija no se ilumina cuando la manija se gira a la posición abierta.	A. La conexión del cable del interruptor de la manija está suelta.	A. Revise la conexión del cable del interruptor de la manija a la placa de circuitos.
	B. La placa de circuitos no funciona correctamente.	B. Cambie el montaje de la tapa.

### Tabla para resolver problemas del sensor

Síntomas	Causas probables	Acción recomendada
1. Funcionamiento intermitente del sensor.	A. Suciedad en la lente del sensor.	A. Use jabón suave y agua para eliminar con cuidado la suciedad de la lente del sensor.
	B. El sensor detecta vapor.	B. Gire el surtidor para alejarlo del vapor.
2. El LED de la manija está iluminado, pero el LED del sensor verde no lo está.	A. Conexión suelta del cable del sensor.	A. Revise la conexión del cable del sensor a la placa de circuitos.

## Resolución de problemas (cont.)

### Tabla para resolver problemas del sensor

Síntomas	Causas probables	Acción recomendada
	<b>B.</b> Suciedad en el conector del cable del sensor.	<b>B.</b> En la placa de circuitos, con cuidado desconecte, limpie y vuelva a conectar el conector del cable del sensor.
	<b>C.</b> La placa de circuitos no funciona.	<b>C.</b> Cambie el montaje de la tapa.
3. El LED del sensor amarillo no se ilumina cuando hay un objeto frente a él.	<b>A.</b> El objeto es transparente o de un color no detectable por el sensor.	<b>A.</b> Pruebe el sensor con la mano.
	<b>B.</b> Suciedad en el conector del cable del sensor.	<b>B.</b> En la placa de circuitos, con cuidado desconecte, limpie y vuelva a conectar el conector del cable del sensor.

USA/Canada: 1-800-4KOHLER

México: 001-800-456-4537

[kohler.com](http://kohler.com)

THE BOLD LOOK  
OF **KOHLER**®

©2015 Kohler Co.

1186051-2-F



# THH

HIGH PERFORMANCE HORIZONTAL  
FAN COIL UNITS

# THH HIGH PERFORMANCE HORIZONTAL FAN COIL UNITS

## Table of Contents

Introduction .....	2
Safety Symbols .....	3
Safety Precautions .....	3
<b>Section 1 – Receipt &amp; Initial Installation</b>	
Code Compliance .....	4
Receipt And Initial Installation .....	4
Unpacking & Inspection .....	4
Handling & Installation .....	5
Drain Pan .....	5
Auxiliary Drain Pans .....	6
Return Air Location .....	7
Fan Removal .....	7
Plenum Box Service Panel .....	7
Plenum Box Removal .....	7
Coil Handling .....	8
Coils .....	8
Piping Connections .....	8
Ductwork Connections .....	8
Electrical Connections .....	9
Control Enclosure .....	9
<b>Section 2 – Start-Up</b>	
Start-Up .....	11
Cooling/Heating System .....	11
Motor & Fan Data .....	12
Air Standard Ratings .....	12
Air System Balancing .....	13
Water System Balancing .....	13
Controls Operation .....	13
Physical Data .....	13
Motor/Blower Assembly .....	13
<b>Section 3 – Normal Operation &amp; Periodic Maintenance</b>	
Fan Assembly .....	14
Coil .....	14
Unit Weight Data .....	15
Electric Resistance Heater Assembly .....	16
Electrical Wiring & Controls .....	16
Electric Heat Selection Chart (Amps) .....	17
Valves & Piping .....	18
Drain .....	18
Filters .....	18
Filter Replacement .....	18
Face Area, Free Area And Filter Sizes .....	18
Replacement Parts .....	19
Model THHC Free Return Dimensions .....	20
Model THHC Free Return Unit Specific Dimensions .....	21
Model THHP Plenum Return Dimensions .....	22
Model THHP Plenum Return Unit Specific Dimensions .....	23
THHE Exposed Cabinet Units .....	24
THH Telescoping / Filter And Solid bottom Access Panels .....	25
THH Series Coil Connection Sizes .....	26
Inspection & Start-Up Checklist .....	27
Notes .....	28

## INTRODUCTION

Titus fan coils represent a prudent investment which can, with proper installation, operation, and regular maintenance, give trouble free operation and long service. Your equipment is initially protected under the manufacturer's standard warranty; however, this warranty is provided under the condition that the steps outlined in this manual for initial inspection, proper installation, regular periodic maintenance, and everyday operation of the equipment be followed in detail. This manual should be fully reviewed in advance of any actual work being done on the equipment. Should any questions arise, please contact your local Sales Representative or the factory BEFORE proceeding. The equipment covered by this manual is available with a vast variety of options and accessories. Consult the approved unit submittal, order acknowledgement, and other manuals for details on the options and accessories provided with the equipment on each project.



## Safety Symbols

The following symbols are used in this document to alert the reader to areas of potential hazard:

	<p><b>danger</b> indicates an imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.</p>		<p>Check that the unit assembly and component weights can be safely supported by rigging and lifting equipment.</p>
	<p><b>warning</b> indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.</p>		<p>All assemblies must be adequately secured during lifting and rigging by temporary supports and restraints until equipment is permanently fastened and set in its final location.</p>
	<p><b>caution</b> identifies a hazard which could lead to damage to the machine, damage to other equipment and or environmental pollution. Usually an instruction will be given, together with a brief explanation.</p>		<p>All unit temporary and permanent supports must be capable of safely supporting the equipment's weight and any additional live or dead loads that may be encountered. All supports must be designed to meet applicable local codes and ordinances.</p>
	<p><b>note</b> is used to highlight additional information which may be helpful to you.</p>		<p>All fastening devices must be designed to mechanically lock the assembly in place without the capability of loosening or breaking away due to system operation, vibration, impact or seismic event.</p>
<p>The equipment covered by this manual is designed for safe and reliable operation when installed and operated within its design specification limits. To avoid personal injury or damage to equipment or property while installing or operating this equipment, it is essential that qualified, experienced personnel perform these functions using good judgment and safe practices. See the following cautionary statements.</p>			<p>Secure all dampers when servicing damper, actuator or linkages. Dampers may activate automatically, disconnect control circuits or pneumatic control systems to avoid injury.</p>
<p> <b>ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARDS</b> All power must be disconnected prior to installation and servicing this equipment. More than one source of power may be present. Disconnect all power sources to avoid electrocution or shock injuries.</p>			<p>Protect adjacent flammable materials when brazing. Use flame and heat protection barriers where needed. Have fire extinguisher available and ready for immediate use.</p>
<p> <b>MOVING PARTS HAZARDS</b> Motor and Blower must be disconnected prior to opening access panels. Motors can start automatically, disconnect all power and control circuits prior to servicing to avoid serious crushing or dismemberment injuries.</p>			
<p> <b>HOT PARTS HAZARDS</b> Electric Resistance heating elements must be disconnected prior to servicing. Electric Heaters may start automatically, disconnect all power and control circuits prior to servicing to avoid burns.</p>			



# THH HIGH PERFORMANCE HORIZONTAL FAN COIL UNITS

## Section 1 - Receipt & Initial Installation

### CODE COMPLIANCE

This equipment has been manufactured and certified in accordance with UL 1995-Standard for Safety, Heating and Cooling Equipment (CAN/CSA C22.2 NO 236- M90) and bears the Electrical Testing Laboratories (ETL) Mark under ETL File No: 3036742-002.

### RECEIPT AND INITIAL INSTALLATION



No attempt should be made to handle, install, or service any unit without following safe practices regarding mechanical equipment.

- All power must be disconnected before any installation or service should be attempted. More than one power source may be supplied to a unit. Power to remote mounted control devices may not be supplied through the unit. Never wear bulky or loose fitting clothing when working on any mechanical equipment. Gloves should only be worn when required for proper protection from heat or other possible injury. Safety glasses or goggles should always be worn when drilling, cutting, or working with chemicals such as refrigerants or lubricants.
- Never pressurize any equipment beyond specified operating pressures. Always pressure test with an inert fluid or gas such as clear water or dry nitrogen to avoid possible damage or injury in the event of a leak or component failure during testing.
- Always protect adjacent flammable material when welding or soldering. Use suitable heat shield material to contain sparks or drops of solder. Have fire extinguisher available for use when welding or brazing.
- The manufacturer assumes no responsibility for personal injury or property damage resulting from improper or unsafe practices during the handling, installation, service, or operation of any equipment.

### UNPACKING & INSPECTION

All units are carefully inspected at the factory throughout the manufacturing process under a strict detailed quality assurance program, and where possible, all major components and subassemblies are carefully tested for proper operation and verified to be in full compliance with the factory manufacturing documents. Customer furnished components such as control valves, switches and DDC controls are not factory tested.

Each unit is carefully packaged for shipment to avoid damage during normal transport and handling. The equipment should always be stored in a dry place in the proper orientation as marked on the carton.

All shipments are made F.O.B. factory and it is the responsibility of the receiving party to inspect the equipment upon arrival. Any obvious damage to the carton and/or its contents should be recorded on the bill of lading and a claim should be filed with the freight carrier.

After determining the condition of the carton exterior, carefully remove each unit from the carton and inspect for hidden damage. At this time check to make sure that "furnished only" items such as switches, thermostats, etc. are accounted for. Any hidden damage should be recorded and immediately reported to the carrier and a claim filed as before. In the event a claim for shipping damage is filed, the unit, shipping carton, and all packing must be retained for physical inspection by the freight carrier. All equipment should be stored in the factory shipping carton with internal packing in place until installation.

At the time of receipt, the equipment type and arrangement should be verified against the order documents. Should any discrepancy be found, the local Sales Representative should be notified immediately so that the proper action may be instituted. Should any question arise concerning warranty repairs, the factory must be notified BEFORE any corrective action is taken. Where local repairs or alterations can be accomplished, the factory must be fully informed as to the extent and expected cost of those repairs before work is begun. Where factory operations are required, the factory must be contacted for authorization to return equipment and a Return Authorization Number will be issued. Unauthorized return shipments of equipment and shipments not marked with an authorization number will be refused. In addition, the manufacturer will not accept any claims for unauthorized expenses.

## Section 1 - Receipt & Initial Installation

### HANDLING & INSTALLATION

While all equipment is designed for durability and fabricated for sturdy construction and may present a rugged appearance, great care must be taken to assure that no force or pressure be applied to the coil, piping or drain stub-outs during handling. Also, depending on the options and accessories, some units could contain delicate components that may be damaged by improper handling. Wherever possible, all units should be maintained in an upright position and handled by the chassis as close as possible to the mounting point locations.

In the case of a full cabinet unit, the unit must obviously be handled by the exterior casing. This is acceptable providing the unit is again maintained in an upright position and no impact forces are applied that may damage internal components, access panels, or painted surfaces. The equipment covered in this manual IS NOT suitable for outdoor installations or hazardous/explosive environments. The equipment should never be stored or installed where it may be subjected to a hostile environment such as rain, snow, extreme temperatures or corrosive or chemical laden atmospheres.

During and after installation, special care must be taken to prevent foreign material such as paint, plaster, and drywall dust from being deposited in the drain pan or on the motor or blower wheels. Failure to do so may have serious adverse effects on unit operation and in the case of the motor and blower assembly, may result in immediate or premature failure. All manufacturers' warranties are void if foreign material is allowed to be deposited on the motor or blower wheels of any unit. Some units and/or job conditions may require some form of temporary covering during construction.

While the manufacturer does not become involved in the design and selection of support methods and components, it should be noted that unacceptable system operating characteristics and/or performance might result from improper or inadequate unit structural support. In addition, adequate clearance must be provided for service and removal of the equipment and its accessory components. Anchoring the equipment in place is accomplished by using the mounting points provided and positioning the unit to maintain the unit on a LEVEL plane. All units are supplied with hanging holes for use with all thread rods.

### DRAIN PAN

The optional sloped, insulated drain pan can be equipped with a secondary drain connection. Standard drain pans are externally insulated, single wall galvanized steel. The drain pan is easily removable for cleaning. The pan can be turned around 180 degrees for drainage on the opposite side of the valve package(s) while capturing condensate from both the coil and the valve package(s). The optional auxiliary drip pan to catch condensed moisture from valves and piping is easily attachable to the drain pan. The drain pan is equipped with external slots and is to be sloped toward the outlet connection prior to start-up. Care must be taken to insure that the unit drain pan does not slope away from the outlet connection.

The drain should always be connected and piped to an acceptable disposal point. For proper moisture carry-off, the drain piping should be sloped away from the unit at least 1/8" per foot. A drain trap may be required by local codes and it is strongly recommended for odor containment.



# THH HIGH PERFORMANCE HORIZONTAL FAN COIL UNITS

## Section 1 - Receipt & Initial Installation

### AUXILIARY DRAIN PANS

The auxiliary drain pan mounts directly to the unit drain pan using (2) #10 x 1/2" screws.

After the connections are completed, the system should then be tested for leaks. Since some components are not designed to hold pressure with a gas, hydronic systems should be tested with water.

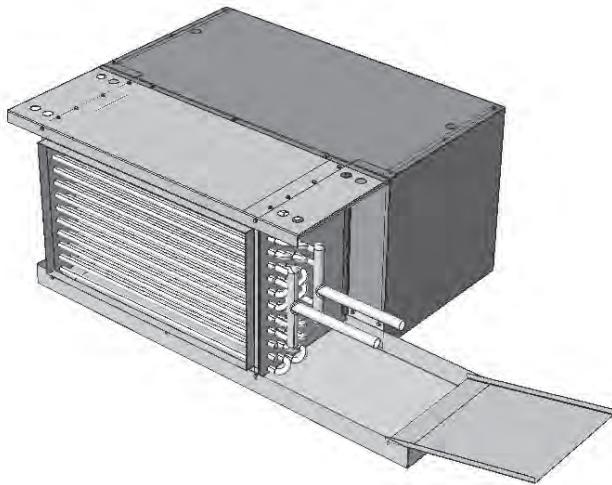


All water coils must be protected from freezing after initial filling with water. Even if the system is drained, unit coils may still hold enough water to cause damage when exposed to temperatures below freezing.

Refrigerant systems should be tested with dry nitrogen rather than air to prevent the introduction of moisture into the system. In the event that leaking or defective components are discovered, the Sales Representative must be notified BEFORE any repairs are attempted. All leaks should be repaired before proceeding with the installation.

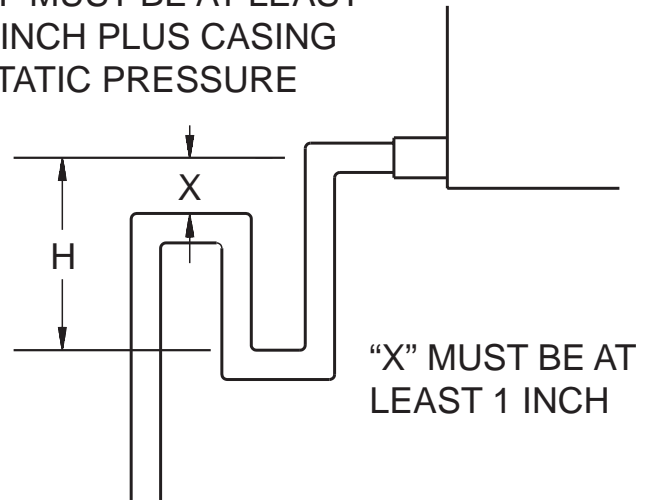
After system integrity has been established the piping should be insulated in accordance with the project specifications. All chilled water piping and valves or refrigerant suction piping not located over drain pans must be insulated to prevent damage from sweating. This includes factory and field piping inside the unit cabinet.

The drain should always be connected and piped to an acceptable disposal point. For proper moisture carry-off, the drain piping should be sloped away from the unit at least 1/8" per foot. A drain trap may be required by local codes and it is strongly recommended for odor containment.



### Condensate Trap

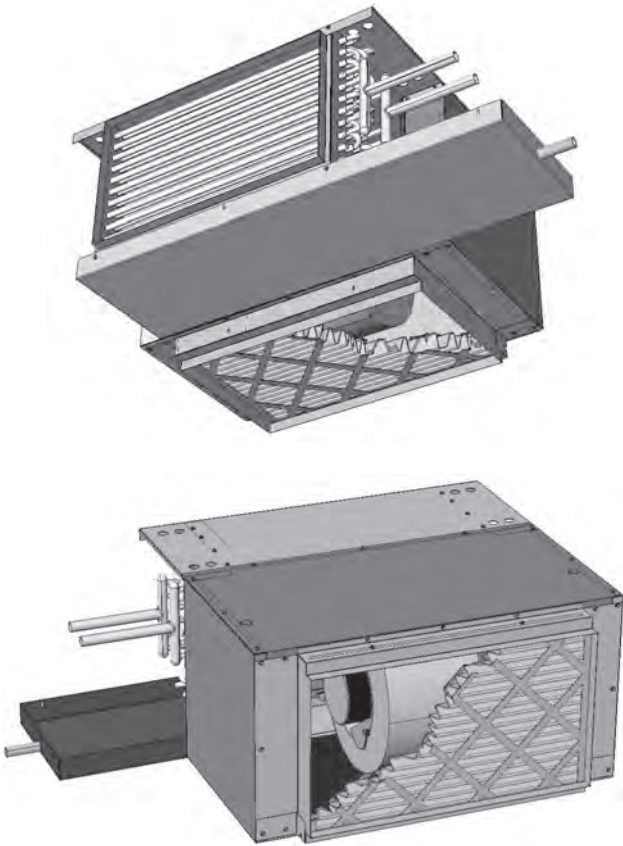
**"H" MUST BE AT LEAST 1 INCH PLUS CASING STATIC PRESSURE**



## Section 1 - Receipt & Initial Installation

### RETURN AIR LOCATION

This unit is equipped with a field reversible rear or bottom ducted air return for plenum style units. To change the return air location, remove the reversible plenum box panel and the filter rack. Rotate both the reversible panel and filter rack 180 degrees. Replace the reversible panel in the old filter rack position and fasten using the supplied screws. Fasten the filter rack to the location where the reversible panel was and replace the filter(s) as described above.



### FAN REMOVAL

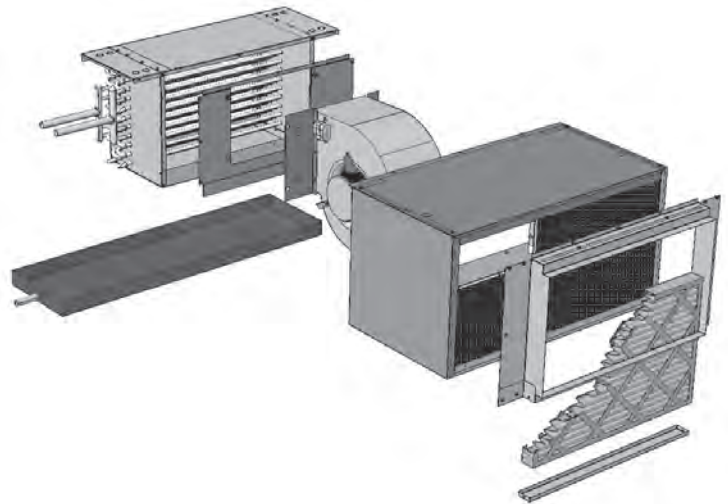
This fan assembly is easily removable by unscrewing the (4) E-20 nuts from the fan deck and sliding the fan assembly off of the weld studs. Disconnect motor wiring. Reassemble fans and torque nuts to 30 in/lbs.

### PLENUM BOX SERVICE PANEL

The service panel on the plenum box is easily removable by removing the screws located on the sides and bottom of the service panel.

### PLENUM BOX REMOVAL

In most cases this unit is fully serviceable without the need for removal of the plenum box. However should the need arise, the plenum box is easily removable by removing the screws attaching the plenum box to the sides, top and rear of the coil casing.





# THH HIGH PERFORMANCE HORIZONTAL FAN COIL UNITS

## Section 1 - Receipt & Initial Installation

### COIL HANDING

This unit features a field reversible coil assembly should the need arise upon installation to change the handing of the coil. To change the coil handing, remove the plenum box (if applicable) from the coil by removing all screws to the coil casing. Next, remove the fan(s), fan deck, and top and bottom casings from the coil. Replace the bottom coil casing in the top coil casing position and the top coil casing in the bottom coil casing position and reattach the fan deck, fan(s) and plenum box (if applicable) in the original locations.



The leaving air side of the fin pack will remain the same after changing the coil handing.

### COILS

All fan coils are available in 2 or 4 pipe configurations. Heating and cooling coils are field reversible for right or left side connections. On units with water coils, the maximum water pressure applied to the unit should never exceed 300 PSIG at 200°F. On units with steam heating coils, the maximum steam pressure applied to the unit should never exceed 15 PSIG. The drain piping and steam trap should be sized and routed to allow for proper condensate flow. (Minimum ambient temperature 35°F. Coils may freeze.)

### PIPING CONNECTIONS



Toxic residues and loose particles resulting from manufacturing and field piping techniques such as joint compounds, soldering flux, and metal shavings may be present in the unit and the piping system. Special consideration must be given to system cleanliness when connecting to solar, domestic or potable water systems.

Submittals and Product Catalogs detailing unit operation, controls, and connections should be thoroughly reviewed BEFORE beginning the connection of the various cooling and/or heating mediums to the unit.

All accessory valve packages should be installed as required, and all valves should be checked for proper operation.

If coil and valve package connections are to be made with “sweat” or solder joint, care should be taken to assure that no components in the valve package are subjected to a high temperature which may damage seals or other materials. Many two-position electric control valves, depending on valve operation, are provided with a manual-opening lever. This lever should be placed in the “open” position during all soldering or brazing operations. Valve bodies should be wrapped with a wet rag to help dissipate heat encountered during brazing. Use a brazing alloy to make connections such as BCup- 2. Soft solder is not recommended.

If the valve package connection at the coil is made with a union, the coil side of the union must be prevented from twisting (“backed up”) during tightening to prevent damage to the coil tubing. Over-tightening must be avoided to prevent distorting the union seal surface and destroying the union. In the case of field installed valves and piping, the chilled water valve cluster (or expansion valve on DX units) should be installed in such a way that any dripping or sweating is contained in the auxiliary drain pan or other device. Valves and TXV’s should be secured or supported to avoid damage to coil headers or distributor tubes.

### DUCT WORK CONNECTIONS

All duct work and/or supply and return grilles should be installed in accordance with the project plans and specifications. If not included on the unit or furnished from the factory, Johnson Controls supply and return grilles are available in a variety of types.

All units must be installed in non-combustible areas. Some models are designed to be connected to duct work with a MINIMUM amount of external static pressure. Consult the approved submittals and the product catalog for unit external static pressure limitations.

Units provided with outside air for ventilation should have some form of low temperature protection to prevent coil freeze-up. Outside air should be pretreated for best results.

It should be noted that none of these methods would adequately protect a coil in the event of power failure. The safest method of freeze protection is to use glycol in the proper percent solution for the coldest expected air temperature. Consult glycol supplier literature for correct solution ratios.

The manufacturer assumes no responsibility for undesirable system operation due to improper design, equipment or component selection, and/or installation of duct work, grilles, and other field supplied components.

## Section 1 - Receipt & Initial Installation

### ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

The electrical service to the unit should be compared to the unit nameplate to verify compatibility. The routing and sizing of all conduit, and the type and sizing of all wiring and other electrical components such as circuit breakers, disconnect switches, etc. should be determined by the individual job requirements and should not be based on the size and/or type of connection provided on the equipment. All installations should be made in compliance with all governing codes and ordinances. Compliance with all codes is the responsibility of the installing contractor. The unit nameplate lists the unit electrical characteristics such as the required supply voltage, fan and heater amperage and required circuit capacities. The unit-wiring diagram shows all unit and field wiring. Since each project is different and each unit on a project may be different, the installer must be familiar with the wiring diagram and nameplate on the unit BEFORE beginning any wiring. This unit is not acceptable for installation in hazardous/explosive areas.

### CONTROL ENCLOSURE

The optional electrical control enclosure provides access to the electrical compartment. This compartment houses all electric heat and control components. Terminal strips are furnished for simple power and control wiring connections. Multiple knockouts allow wiring entries from either side of the compartment.

All components furnished for field installation, by either the factory or the controls contractor should be located and checked for proper function and compatibility. All internal components should be checked for shipping damage and all electrical connections should be tightened to minimize problems during start-up.

Any devices such as fan switches or thermostats that have been furnished from the factory for field installation must be wired in strict accordance with the applicable wiring diagrams. Failure to do so could result in personal injury or damage to components and will void all manufacturers' warranties.

The fan motor(s) should never be controlled by any wiring or device other than the factory furnished switch or thermostat/switch combination, without factory authorization.

All field wiring should be done in accordance with governing codes and ordinances. Any modification of the unit wiring without factory authorization will result in voiding of all factory warranties and will nullify any agency listings.

The manufacturer assumes no responsibility for any damages and/or injuries resulting from improperly field installed or wired components.

### TELESCOPING BOTTOM PANEL

The telescoping bottom panel allows for fully recessing the unit while permitting service access into the ceiling plenum. The architectural ceiling panel is finished with a durable powder coat paint and comes with different face options.



Portions of the inlet louver not directly below unit inlet may require covering in the field on applications where infiltration of ceiling plenum air into space is undesired. Telescoping skirt and collar assembly must be field adjusted to assure a proper fit between filter frame and louvered inlet panel assembly. Refer to assembly submittal drawings for specific dimensions.



# THH HIGH PERFORMANCE HORIZONTAL FAN COIL UNITS

## Section 2 – Start-Up

---

### START-UP

Before beginning any start-up operation, the startup personnel should familiarize themselves with the unit, options and accessories, and control sequence to understand the proper system operation. All personnel should have a good working knowledge of general start-up procedures and have the appropriate start-up and balancing guides available for consultation. The initial step in any startup operation should be a final visual inspection.

All equipment, plenums, duct-work, and piping should be inspected to verify that all systems are complete and properly installed and mounted, and that no debris or foreign articles such as paper or drink cans are left in the units or other areas. Each unit should be checked for loose wires, free blower wheel operation, and loose or missing access panels or doors. Except as required during start-up and balancing operations, no fan coil units should be operated without all the proper duct work attached, supply and return grilles in place, and all access doors and panels in place and secure. A clean filter of the proper size and type must also be installed. Failure to do so could result in damage to the equipment or building and furnishings, and/or void all manufacturers' warranties.

### COOLING/HEATING SYSTEM

Prior to the water system start-up and balancing, the chilled/hot water systems should be flushed to clean out dirt and debris, which may have collected in the piping during construction. During this procedure, all unit service valves must be in the closed position. This prevents foreign matter from entering the unit and clogging the valves and metering devices. Strainers should be installed in the piping mains to prevent this material from entering the units during normal operation.

During system filling, air venting from the unit is accomplished by the use of the standard manual or optional automatic, air vent fitting installed on the coil. In the case of the manual air vent fitting, the screw should be turned counterclockwise no more than 1-½ turns to operate the air vent. Automatic air vents may be unscrewed one turn counterclockwise to speed initial venting but should be screwed in for automatic venting after start-up operations.



## Section 2 – Start-Up



The air vent provided on the unit is not intended to replace the main system air vents and may not release air trapped in other parts of the system. Inspect the entire system for potential air traps and vent those areas as required, independently. In addition, some systems may require repeated venting over a period of time to properly eliminate air from the system.

MOTOR AND FAN DATA

Unit Size	Fan Speed	Motor Fan (Qty)		# of Fans	Amps 120/1/60			Amps 208-230/1/60			Amps 277/1/60		
		PSC	ECM		PSC	ECM		PSC	ECM		PSC	ECM	
						FLA	3-Phase Neutral Current		FLA	3-Phase Neutral Current		FLA	3-Phase Neutral Current
06	High	(1) 1/6	(1) 1/3	1	2.6	5.0	13.2	1.1	2.8	5.9	0.9	2.6	5.4
	Medium	(1) 1/8			2.1			0.9			0.8		
	Low	(1) 1/10			1.8			0.6			0.7		
08	High	(1) 1/4	(1) 1/3	1	3.8	5.0	13.2	1.6	2.8	5.9	1.3	2.6	5.4
	Medium	(1) 1/6			3.3			1.0			0.8		
	Low	(1) 1/8			2.6			0.8			0.7		
10	High	(1) 1/4	(1) 1/3	1	4.9	5.0	13.2	2.2	2.8	5.9	1.9	2.6	5.4
	Medium	(1) 1/5			4.1			1.5			1.2		
	Low	(1) 1/6			3.2			1.1			0.8		
12	High	(2) 1/6	(2) 1/3	2	5.2	10.0	26.4	2.2	5.6	11.8	1.8	5.2	10.8
	Medium	(2) 1/8			4.2			1.8			1.6		
	Low	(2) 1/10			3.6			1.2			1.4		
14	High	(2) 1/4	(2) 1/3	2	7.6	10.0	26.4	3.2	5.6	11.8	2.6	5.2	10.8
	Medium	(2) 1/6			6.6			2.0			1.6		
	Low	(2) 1/8			5.2			1.6			1.4		
16	High	(1) 1/4	(2) 1/3	2	9.8	10.0	26.4	4.4	5.6	11.8	3.8	5.2	10.8
	Medium	(1) 1/5			8.2			3.0			2.4		
	Low	(1) 1/6			6.4			2.2			1.6		
18	High	(1) 1/4	(2) 1/3	2	9.8	10.0	26.4	4.4	5.6	11.8	3.8	5.2	10.8
	Medium	(1) 1/5			8.2			3.0			2.4		
	Low	(1) 1/6			6.4			2.2			1.6		
20	High	(1) 1/4	(2) 1/3	2	9.8	10.0	26.4	4.4	5.6	11.8	3.8	5.2	10.8
	Medium	(1) 1/5			8.2			3.0			2.4		
	Low	(1) 1/6			6.4			2.2			1.6		

Notes:

1. Motor electrical data is nameplate data. Actual data will vary with application.
2. 230 volt motor is name plated for 208/230/1/60. Use 230 volt motor data for 208 volt applications

# THH HIGH PERFORMANCE HORIZONTAL FAN COIL UNITS

## Section 2 – Start-Up

AHRI STANDARD RATINGS

Model/Size	AHRI 440 Certified	Coil		Airflow CFM (Dry Flow)	Cooling Capacity		Water		Power Input (Watts)
		Rows	FPI		QT (BTUH)	QS (BTUH)	Flow Rate GPM	WPD ft-wg	
THHC/THHP 06	*	4	10	700	17800	14000	3.7	1.6	290
THHC/THHP 06	*	4	10	900	23500	18500	4.9	1.9	410
THHC/THHP 10	*	4	10	1100	29400	22900	6.0	2.2	470
THHC/THHP 12	*	4	10	1400	43000	31800	8.7	4.2	560
THHC/THHP 14		4	10	1750	47100	36250	9.6	3.0	715
THHC/THHP 16		4	10	2000	51000	41000	10.5	2.0	830
THHC/THHP 18		4	10	2200	53000	42000	11.0	2.2	850
THHC/THHP 20		4	10	2300	56000	44000	11.4	2.5	870

Notes:

1. Based on 80°F DB and 67°F WB EAT, 45°F EWT, 10°F temperature rise, high speed fan. Motor type is PSC and motor voltage is 115/1/60. Airflow under dry coil connections. All models tested at 0.05" external static pressure.
2. Airflow rate CFM on sizes 14 through 20 exceed maximum ratings in AHRI 440 and are therefore not certified

## Section 2 – Start-Up

### AIR SYSTEM BALANCING

All duct work must be complete and connected, and all grilles, filters, access doors and panels must be properly installed to establish actual system operating conditions BEFORE beginning air balancing operations.

Each individual unit and attached duct work is a unique system with its own operating characteristics. For this reason, air balancing is normally done by balance specialists who are familiar with all procedures required to properly establish air distribution and fan system operating conditions. These procedures should not be attempted by unqualified personnel.

After the proper system operation is established, the actual unit air delivery and the actual fan motor amperage draw for each unit should be recorded in a convenient place for future reference such as the inspection, installation, & start-up check sheet, a copy of which is provided on the back of this manual. Contact the Sales Representative or the factory for additional copies of this sheet.

### WATER SYSTEM BALANCING

A complete knowledge of the hydronic system, its components, and controls is essential to proper water system balancing and this procedure should not be attempted by unqualified personnel. The system must be complete and all components must be in operating condition BEFORE beginning water system balancing operations.

Each hydronic system has different operating characteristics depending on the devices and controls in the system. The actual balancing technique may vary from one system to another.

After the proper system operation is established, the appropriate system operating conditions such as various water temperatures and flow rates should be recorded in a convenient place for future reference.

Before and during water system balancing, conditions may exist which can result in noticeable water noise or undesired valve operation due to incorrect system pressures. After the entire system is balanced, these conditions will not exist on properly designed systems.

### CONTROLS OPERATION

Before proper control operation can be verified all other systems must be in proper operation. The correct water and air temperatures must be present for the control function being tested. Some controls and features are designed to not operate under certain conditions or beyond designed range.

A wide range of controls and electrical options and accessories may be used with the equipment covered in this manual. Consult the approved unit submittals, order acknowledgment, and other manuals for detailed information regarding each individual unit and its controls. Since controls and features may vary from one unit to another, care should be taken to identify the controls to be used on each unit and their proper control sequence. Information provided by component manufacturers regarding installation, operation, and maintenance of their individual controls is available upon request.

### PHYSICAL DATA

Each unit on a job will have its own unique operating environment and conditions that may dictate a maintenance schedule for that unit that is different from other equipment on the job. A formal schedule of regular maintenance and an individual unit log should be established and maintained. This will help to achieve the maximum performance and service life of each unit on the job.



Information regarding safety precautions contained in the preface at the beginning of this manual should be followed during any service and maintenance operations.

For more detailed information concerning service operations, consult your Sales Representative or the Factory.

### MOTOR/BLOWER ASSEMBLY

The type of fan operation is determined by the control components and their method of wiring, and may vary from unit to unit. Refer to the wiring diagram for each unit for that unit's individual operating characteristics. Motors are permanently lubricated, PSC or ECM type and do not require field lubrication.

# THH HIGH PERFORMANCE HORIZONTAL FAN COIL UNITS

## Section 3 – Normal Operation & Periodic Maintenance

### FAN ASSEMBLY

Each fan assembly is easily removed from the unit at four ¼" weld studs in the fan deck. In most applications the fan assembly can be removed without disconnecting the duct work for service access to motors and blowers at, or away from the unit.

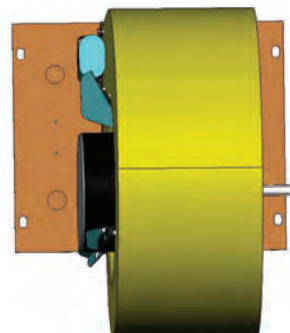
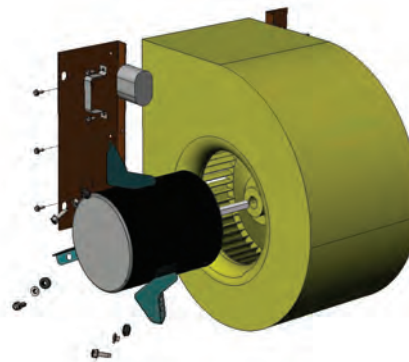
Should the assembly require more extensive service, the motor/blower assembly may be removed from the unit to facilitate such operations as motor or blower wheel/housing replacement, etc. Dirt and dust should not be allowed to accumulate on the blower wheel or housing. This can result in an unbalanced blower wheel condition that can damage a blower wheel or motor. The wheel and housing may be cleaned periodically using a vacuum cleaner and a brush taking care not to dislodge the factory balancing weights on the blower wheel blades.

To remove the motor from the fan, disconnect the motor wire leads, loosen the set screw on the motor shaft and remove the (3) cap screws that attached the motor to the blower housing. To reassemble, insert the motor into the blower wheel, (motor slots to be facing up) center the blower wheel within the blower housing and tighten the set screw. Reinstall the (3) cap screws and tighten to 40 in/lbs. Place the entire fan assembly back up over the weld studs, install the washers and tighten the 1/4-20 nylok nuts to 65 in/lbs.

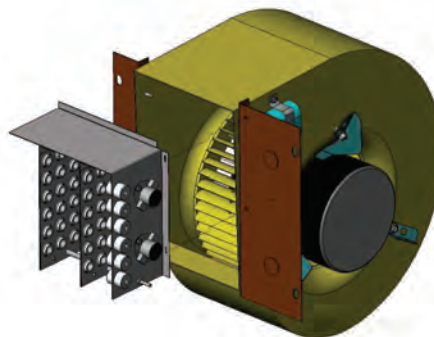
### COIL

Coils may be cleaned in place by removing the motor/blower assemblies and brushing the entering air face between fins with a soft brush parallel to fins.

Do not brush perpendicular to fin orientation as damage may occur. Brushing should be followed by cleaning with a vacuum cleaner. If a compressed air source is available, the coil may also be cleaned by blowing air through the coil fins from the leaving air face. Vacuuming should again follow this. Units provided with the proper type of air filters, replaced regularly, may require periodic coil cleaning.



Fan Assembly Removal



Electric Heater Removal

## Section 3 - Normal Operation & Periodic Maintenance

### UNIT WEIGHT DATA

Component		Unit Size							
		08	08	10	12	14	16	18	20
THHC Base Unit		68 [31]	73 [33]	77 [35]	114 [52]	119 [54]	124 [56]	128 [58]	132 [60]
THHP Base Unit		87 [40]	95 [43]	101 [46]	141 [64]	150 [68]	157 [71]	164 [75]	170 [77]
THHP with Mixing Box		119 [54]	132 [60]	144 [65]	189 [86]	204 [93]	217 [99]	229 [104]	246 [112]
THHE Base Unit		137 [62]	146 [66]	158 [72]	202 [92]	219 [99]	228 [103]	240 [109]	250 [113]
Total Coil Rows	1 Row - Dry	5 [2]	6 [3]	7 [3]	8 [4]	10 [5]	10 [5]	11 [5]	12 [5]
	1 Row - Wet	7 [3]	9 [4]	10 [5]	11 [5]	14 [6]	14 [6]	16 [7]	17 [8]
	2 Row - Dry	11 [5]	13 [6]	14 [6]	16 [7]	20 [9]	20 [9]	22 [10]	24 [11]
	2 Row - Wet	14 [6]	18 [8]	20 [9]	23 [10]	27 [12]	28 [13]	32 [15]	35 [16]
	3 Row - Dry	16 [7]	19 [9]	21 [10]	24 [11]	30 [13]	30 [14]	33 [15]	36 [16]
	3 Row - Wet	21 [10]	27 [12]	30 [14]	34 [15]	41 [19]	42 [19]	48 [22]	52 [24]
	4 Row - Dry	21 [10]	25 [12]	29 [13]	33 [15]	40 [18]	40 [18]	44 [20]	48 [22]
	4 Row - Wet	27 [12]	35 [16]	41 [19]	46 [21]	54 [25]	56 [25]	64 [29]	69 [31]
	5 Row - Dry	26 [12]	30 [14]	34 [16]	38 [17]	42 [19]	46 [21]	50 [23]	54 [25]
	5 Row - Wet	33 [15]	39 [18]	45 [21]	51 [23]	57 [26]	63 [29]	70 [32]	77 [35]
	6 Row - Dry	32 [15]	38 [17]	43 [19]	49 [22]	59 [27]	61 [28]	67 [30]	71 [32]
	6 Row - Wet	42 [19]	53 [24]	61 [28]	69 [31]	80 [36]	85 [39]	97 [44]	103 [47]
	7 Row - Dry	38 [17]	42 [19]	48 [22]	54 [25]	60 [28]	66 [30]	72 [33]	78 [35]
	7 Row - Wet	49 [23]	56 [26]	63 [29]	70 [32]	77 [35]	84 [38]	91 [42]	98 [45]
	8 Row - Dry	43 [20]	49 [22]	55 [25]	61 [28]	67 [30]	73 [33]	79 [36]	85 [39]
	8 Row - Wet	55 [26]	63 [29]	71 [32]	79 [36]	87 [40]	95 [43]	103 [47]	111 [50]

Notes: Unit weight data is in pounds [kilograms]

# THH HIGH PERFORMANCE HORIZONTAL FAN COIL UNITS

## Section 3 - Normal Operation & Periodic Maintenance

### ELECTRIC RESISTANCE HEATER ASSEMBLY

Electric resistance heaters typically require no normal periodic maintenance when unit air filters are changed properly. Other conditions and equipment may affect the operation and service life in the system. The two most important operating conditions for an electric heater are proper airflow and proper supply voltage. High supply voltage and/or poorly distributed or insufficient airflow over the element will result in element overheating. This condition may result in the heater cycling on the high limit thermal cutout. The open wire type heaters provided have an automatic reset switch with a back-up high limit thermal switch. Automatic reset switches are as the name implies; they reset automatically after the heater has cooled down. High limit thermal switches must be replaced once the circuit has been broken. The high limit thermal cutout device is a safety device only and is not intended for continuous operation. With proper unit application and during normal operation, the high limit thermal cutout will not operate. This device only operates when some problem exists and ANY condition that causes high limit cutout MUST be corrected immediately. High supply voltage also causes excessive amperage draw and may result in tripping of the circuit breaker or blowing of the fuses on the incoming power supply.

### ELECTRICAL WIRING & CONTROLS

The electrical operation of each unit is determined by the components and wiring of the unit and may vary from unit to unit. Consult the wiring diagram for the actual type and number of controls provided on each unit. The integrity of all electrical connections should be verified at least twice during the first year of operation. Afterwards, all controls should be inspected regularly for proper operation. Some components may experience erratic operation or failure due to age. Wall thermostats may also become clogged with dust and lint and should be periodically inspected and cleaned to provide reliable operation.

When replacing any components such as fuses, contactors, or relays, use only the exact type, size, and voltage component as furnished from the factory. Any deviation without factory authorization could result in personnel injury or damage to the unit and will void all factory warranties. All repair work should be done in such a manner as to maintain the equipment in compliance with governing codes and ordinances or testing agency listings.

### ELECTRICAL CALCULATIONS INFORMATION

1. Calculate FLA = [(Motor Amps)\*(Motor Qty) + (Heater Amps)]
2. Calculate MCA = [(1.25)\*(FLA)]  
3. Calculate MOP = [(2.25)\*(1st Motor Amps) + (2nd Motor Amps) + (Heater Amps)]
  - a) If the calculated MOP is within 10% of the next smaller available fuse size, that fuse size shall be used. If the calculated MOP is not within 10% of the next smaller available fuse size, the next larger fuse size above the calculated MOP must be used.
  - b) If the selected MOP is smaller than the MCA, the selected MOP must be increased to the next larger available fuse size above the MCA.
3. Fused Door Interlock Disconnect Switch and Main Fusing shall be sized according to MOP. Available fuse sizes: 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 60, 70, 80 and 90. MCA and MOP calculations are based on requirements from ANSI UL 1995 2nd Edition – CAN/CSA C22.2 No. 236-M90 Standard for Safety; Heating and Cooling Equipment, which incorporates rules from NFPA 70 National Electric Code 2002 edition.

## Section 3 - Normal Operation & Periodic Maintenance

ELECTRIC HEAT SELECTION CHART (AMPS)

Unit Size	MBH	6.8	8.5	10.2	11.9	13.7	17.1	20.5	23.9	27.3	30.7	34.1	41.0	47.8
	KW	2.0	2.5	3.0	3.5	4.0	5.0	6.0	7.0	8.0	9.0	10.0	12.0	14.0
	Volts	AMPs												
06	115	17.4	21.8	26.1	30.5	34.8								
	208	9.6	12.0	14.4	16.8	19.2								
	230	8.7	10.9	13.1	15.2	17.4								
	277	7.2	9.0	10.8	12.6	14.4								
08	115	17.4	21.8	26.1	30.5	34.8	43.5							
	208	9.6	12.0	14.4	16.8	19.2	24.1	28.9						
	230	8.7	10.9	13.1	15.2	17.4	21.8	26.1						
	277	7.2	9.0	10.8	12.6	14.4	18.1	21.7						
10	115	17.4	21.8	26.1	30.5	34.8	43.5							
	208	9.6	12.0	14.4	16.8	19.2	24.1	28.9	33.7					
	230	8.7	10.9	13.1	15.2	17.4	21.8	26.1	30.5					
	277	7.2	9.0	10.8	12.6	14.4	18.1	21.7	25.3					
12	115					34.8	43.5							
	208					19.2	24.1	28.9	33.7	38.5	43.3			
	230					17.4	21.8	26.1	30.5	34.8	39.2			
	277					14.4	18.1	21.7	25.3	28.9	32.5			
14	115					34.8	43.5							
	208					19.2	24.1	28.9	33.7	38.5	43.3	48.1		
	230					17.4	21.8	26.1	30.5	34.8	39.2	43.5		
	277					14.4	18.1	21.7	25.3	28.9	32.5	36.1		
16	115					34.8	43.5							
	208					19.2	24.1	28.9	33.7	38.5	43.3	48.1	57.7	
	230					17.4	21.8	26.1	30.5	34.8	39.2	43.5	52.2	
	277					14.4	18.1	21.7	25.3	28.9	32.5	36.1	43.3	
18	115					34.8	43.5							
	208					19.2	24.1	28.9	33.7	38.5	43.3	48.1	57.7	
	230					17.4	21.8	26.1	30.5	34.8	39.2	43.5	52.2	
	277					14.4	18.1	21.7	25.3	28.9	32.5	36.1	43.3	
20	115					34.8	43.5							
	208					19.2	24.1	28.9	33.7	38.5	43.3	48.1	57.7	67.3
	230					17.4	21.8	26.1	30.5	34.8	39.2	43.5	52.2	60.9
	277					14.4	18.1	21.7	25.3	28.9	32.5	36.1	43.3	50.5

Notes:

1. Shaded areas indicate kW and voltage options not available
2. Available voltages are single phase, 60 hertz.
3. Heaters over 48 AMPS are subdivided and fused per NEC



# THH HIGH PERFORMANCE HORIZONTAL FAN COIL UNITS

## Section 3 - Normal Operation & Periodic Maintenance

### VALVES & PIPING

No formal maintenance is required on the valve package components most commonly used with fan coil units other than a visual inspection for possible leaks in the course of other normal periodic maintenance. In the event that a valve should need replacement, the same precautions taken during the initial installation to protect the valve package from excessive heat should also be used during replacement. In some cases, the valve actuator may fail and usually can be replaced without removing valve body from piping.

### DRAIN

The drain should be checked before initial start-up and at the beginning of each cooling season to assure that the lines are clear. If it is clogged, steps should be taken to clear the debris so that condensate will flow easily.

Periodic checks of the drain should be made during the cooling season to maintain a free flowing condensate. Should the growth of algae and/or bacteria be a concern, consult an air conditioning and refrigeration supply organization familiar with local conditions for chemicals available to control these agents.

### FILTERS

This unit is equipped with a standard 1" throwaway filter most commonly used on fan coil units should be replaced on a regular basis. The time interval between each replacement should be established based on regular inspection of the filter and should be recorded in the log for each unit. At a minimum, filters should be inspected monthly and replaced if needed. Refer to the Filters chart for recommended filter size for each product type and size. If the replacement filters are not purchased from the factory, the filters used should be the same type, size and MERV rating as that

furnished from or recommended by the factory. Optional 1" and 2" pleated filters are available and can be used in this unit. Contact the local Sales Representative for the correct filter upgrade specification and availability. Consult the factory for applications using filter types other than the factory standard or optional product.

### FILTER REPLACEMENT

To replace the filter(s), unscrew the thumb screws located at the bottom of the filter bracket a few turns until the filter tray freely slides out. Slide out the used filter(s) and replace with the new one(s). Reattach the filter tray to the filter bracket with the supplied thumb screws.



The filter tray is fully adjustable and can be rotated 180 degrees if necessary to ensure a snug fit between the filter and the filter bracket.



### FACE AREA, FREE AREA AND FILTER SIZES

Unit Size	Coil Face Area	Nominal filter sizes	1" Throwaway Face Area	1" Pleated Gross Media Area	2" Pleated Gross Media Area
06	1.56 [0.15]	(1) 16 x16 [406 x 406]	1.62 [0.15]	4.0 [0.37]	5.4 [0.50]
08	2.08 [0.19]	(1) 16 x 20 [406 x 508]	2.04 [0.19]	4.8 [0.45]	6.8 [0.63]
10	2.50 [0.23]	(1) 16 x 25 [406 x3 81]	2.57 [0.24]	6.0 [0.56]	8.5 [0.79]
12	3.02 [0.28]	(2) 16 x16 [406 x 406]	3.23 [0.30]	8.0 [0.74]	10.4 [0.97]
14	3.54 [0.33]	(1) 16 x16 & (1) 16 x 20 (1) 406 x 406 (1) 406 x 508	3.65 [0.34]	8.8 [0.82]	12.2 [1.13]
16	4.06 [0.38]	(2) 16 x20 [406 x508]	4.08 [0.38]	9.6 [0.89]	13.4 [1.24]
18	4.58 [0.43]	(1) 16 x 20 & (1) 16 x 25 (1) [406 x 508] & (1) [406 x 635]	4.61 [0.43]	10.8 [1.00]	14.3 [1.33]
20	5.00 [0.46]	(2) 16 x25 [406 x635]	5.14 [0.48]	12.0 [1.11]	17.0 [1.58]

#### Notes:

1. Face and free areas are in square feet [square meters]
2. Filter sizes are in inches [millimeters]

## Section 3 - Normal Operation & Periodic Maintenance

---

### REPLACEMENT PARTS

Factory replacement parts should be used wherever possible to maintain the unit performance and operating characteristics and the testing agency listings. Replacement parts may be purchased through the local Sales Representative.

Contact the local Sales Representative before attempting any unit modifications. Any modifications not authorized by the factory could result in personal injury and damage to the unit and could void all factory warranties.

When ordering parts, the following information must be supplied to ensure proper part identification:

1. Complete unit model number
2. Unit hand connection (right or left hand) while facing the direction of airflow at the inlet
3. Complete part description including any numbers

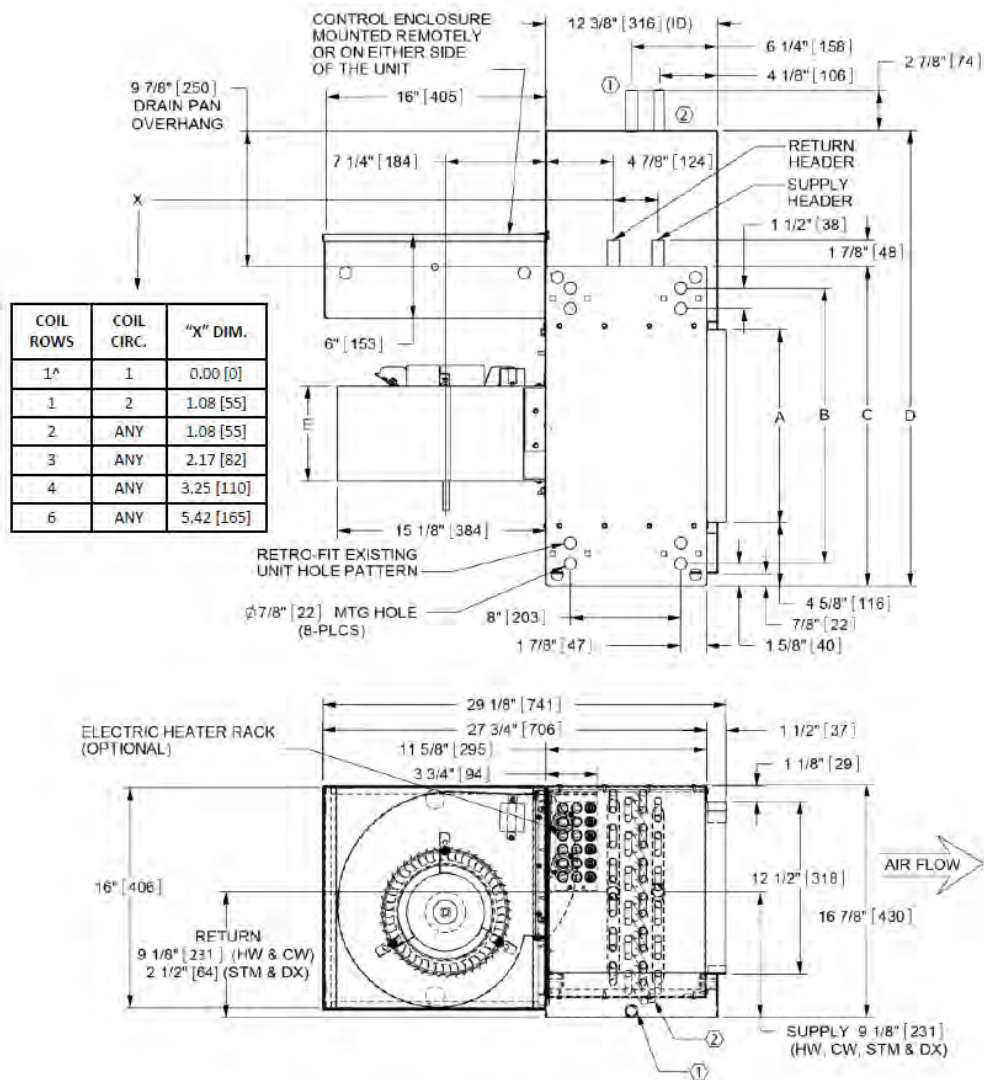
On warranty replacements, in addition to the information previously listed, the project CO # that appears on the unit nameplate, is required. Contact the factory for authorization to return any parts such as defective parts replaced in warranty. All shipments returned to the factory MUST be marked with a Return Authorization Number, which is provided by the factory.

All equipment and components sold through Johnson Controls are warranted under the same conditions as the standard manufacturer's warranty with the exception that the warranty period is 12 months unless the component is furnished as warranty replacement. Parts furnished as warranty replacements are warranted for the remaining term of the original unit warranties.

# THH HIGH PERFORMANCE HORIZONTAL FAN COIL UNITS

## Section 3 - Normal Operation & Periodic Maintenance

### Model THHC – Free Return Dimensions



#### Notes:

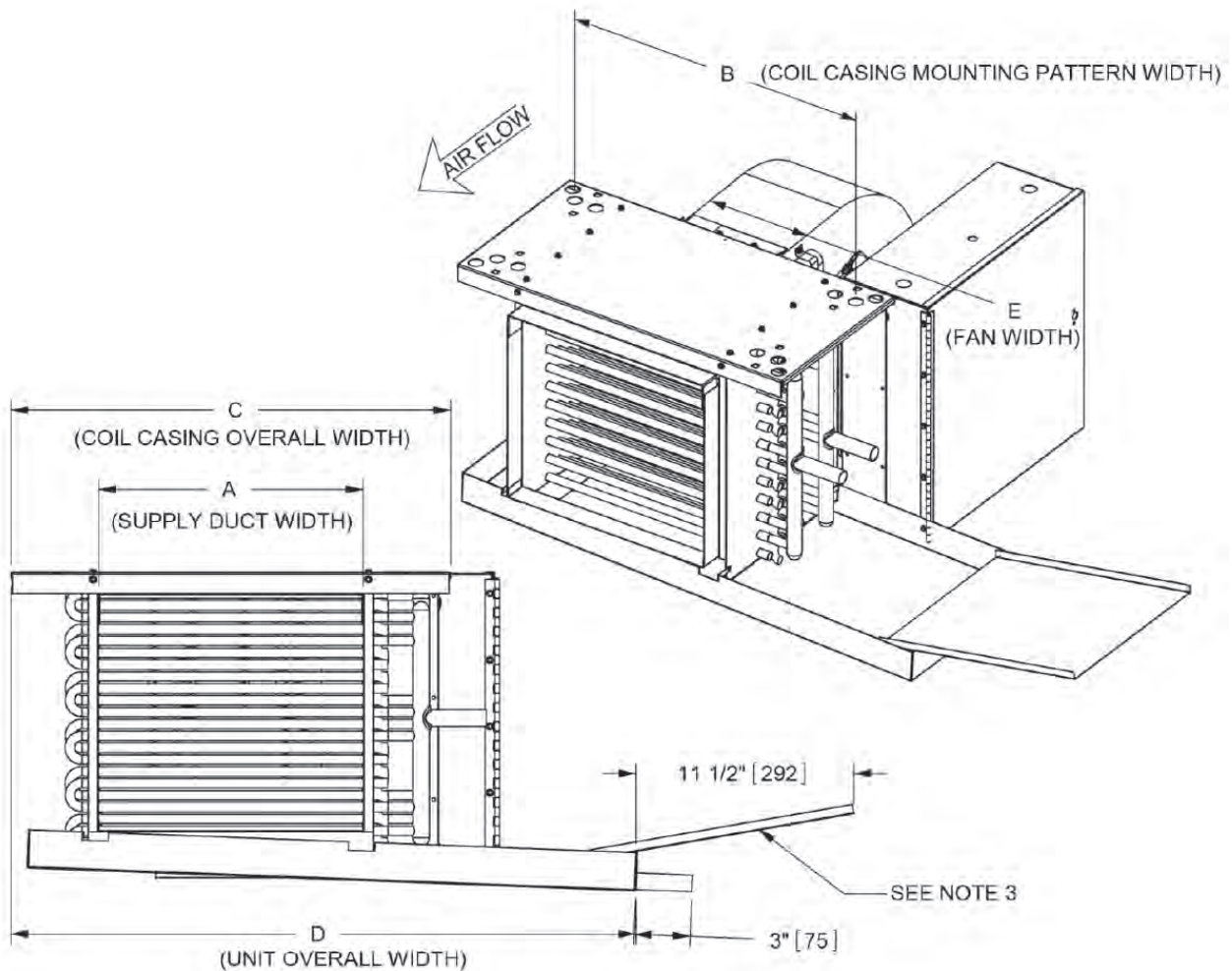
- Standard control enclosure is mounted on unit side opposite cooling coil connections. Unit casing includes (2) knock outs on each side. Provide sufficient clearance to access electrical controls and comply with applicable codes and ordinances.
- Optional bottom control enclosure with hinged cover replaces standard side mounted enclosure and includes (2) additional knockouts on bottom of unit on left side
- Standard externally foam coated galvanized steel drain pan has 7/8" ODM copper outlet. Stainless steel drain pan has 3/4" MPT galvanized steel outlet.
- Auxiliary drain outlet is 5/8" ODM copper or 3/8" MPT galvanized steel respectively

Drain Pan Material	Single Connection (STD)	Secondary Connection (OPT)
Galvanized (STD)	7/8" od copper	5/8" od copper
Stainless (opt)	3/4" mpt galv.	1/2" mpt galv.

Control Enclosure Sizes	
10 x 16 x 6	250 x 406 x 152
16 x 16 x 6	406 x 406 x 152

## Section 3 - Normal Operation & Periodic Maintenance

### Model THHC - Free Return Unit Specific Dimensions



Unit Size	Fan Qty	A	B	C	D	E
06	1	14 [356]	20 [508]	23 1/8 [587]	34 [864]	6 7/8 [175]
08	1	19 [483]	25 [635]	28 1/8 [714]	39 [991]	8 1/4 [210]
10	1	23 [584]	29 [737]	32 1/8 [816]	43 [1092]	8 1/2 [210]
12	2	28 [711]	34 [864]	37 1/8 [943]	48 [1219]	6 7/8 [175]
14	2	33 [838]	39 [991]	42 1/8 [1070]	53 [1346]	8 1/2 [210]
16	2	38 [965]	44 [1118]	47 1/8 [1197]	58 [1473]	8 1/2 [210]
18	2	43 [1092]	49 [1245]	52 1/8 [1324]	63 [1600]	8 1/2 [210]
20	2	47 [1194]	53 [1346]	56 1/8 [1426]	67 [1702]	8 1/2 [210]

Notes:

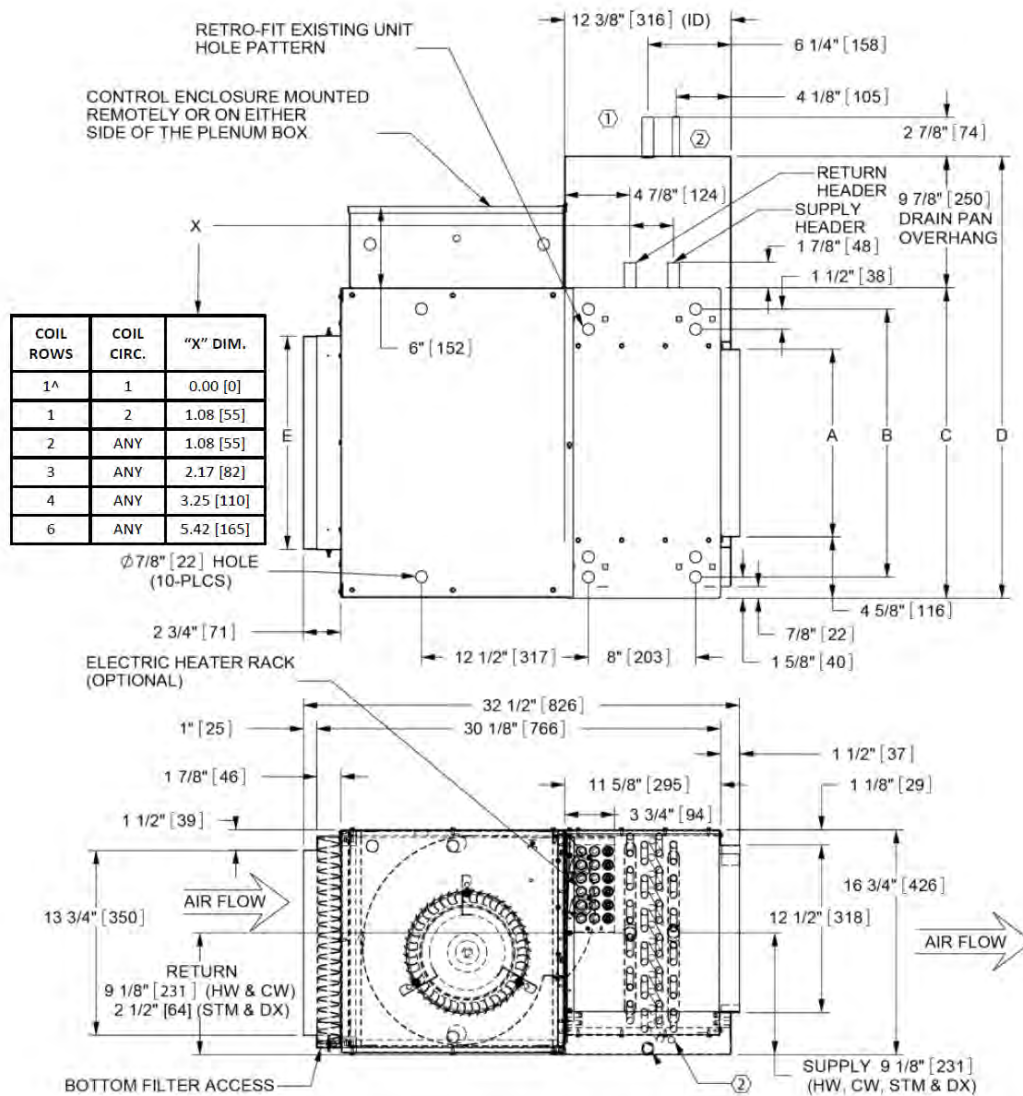
1. All dimensions are Inches [millimeters].  
All dimensions  $\pm 1/8"$ .
2. Drain pan is field reversible 180 and externally insulated
3. Optional auxiliary drip pan available for piping package condensate
4. Coil hand is field reversible (left hand unit shown)



# THH HIGH PERFORMANCE HORIZONTAL FAN COIL UNITS

## Section 3 - Normal Operation & Periodic Maintenance

### Model THHP Plenum Free Return Dimensions



#### Notes:

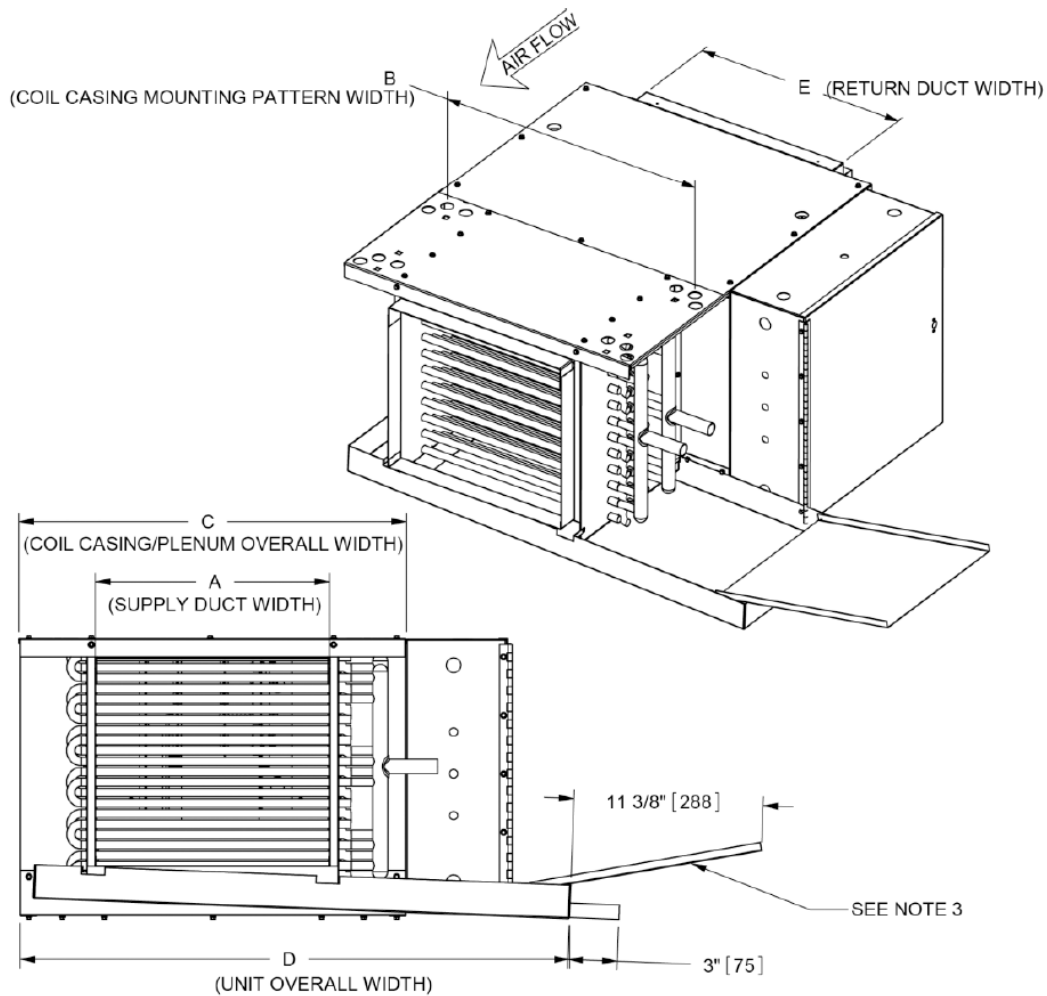
- Standard control enclosure is mounted on unit side opposite cooling coil connections. Unit casing includes (2) knock outs on each side. Provide sufficient clearance to access electrical controls and comply with applicable codes and ordinances.
- Optional bottom control enclosure with hinged cover replaces standard side mounted enclosure and includes (2) additional knockouts on bottom of unit on left side
- Standard externally foam coated galvanized steel drain pan has 7/8" ODM copper outlet. Stainless steel drain pan has 3/4" MPT galvanized steel outlet.
- Auxiliary drain outlet is 5/8" ODM copper or 3/8" MPT galvanized steel respectively

Drain Pan Material	Single Connection (STD)	Secondary Connection (OPT)
Galvanized (STD)	7/8" od copper	5/8" od copper
Stainless (opt)	3/4" mpt galv.	1/2" mpt galv.

Control Enclosure Sizes	
10 x 16 x 6	250 x 406 x 152
16 x 16 x 6	406 x 406 x 152

## Section 3 - Normal Operation & Periodic Maintenance

### Model THHP Plenum Free Return Unit Specific Dimensions



Unit Size	Fan Qty	A	B	C	D	E
06	1	14 [356]	20 [508]	23 1/8 [587]	34 [864]	16 [406]
08	1	19 [483]	25 [635]	28 1/8 [714]	39 [991]	19 7/8 [505]
10	1	23 [584]	29 [737]	32 1/8 [816]	43 [1092]	25 7/8 [657]
12	2	28 [711]	34 [864]	37 1/8 [943]	48 [1219]	32 [813]
14	2	33 [838]	39 [991]	42 1/8 [1070]	53 [1346]	35 7/8 [911]
16	2	38 [965]	44 [1118]	47 1/8 [1197]	58 [1473]	39 7/8 [1013]
18	2	43 [1092]	49 [1245]	52 1/8 [1324]	63 [1600]	44 7/8 [1140]
20	2	47 [1194]	53 [1346]	56 1/8 [1426]	67 [1702]	49 7/8 [1267]

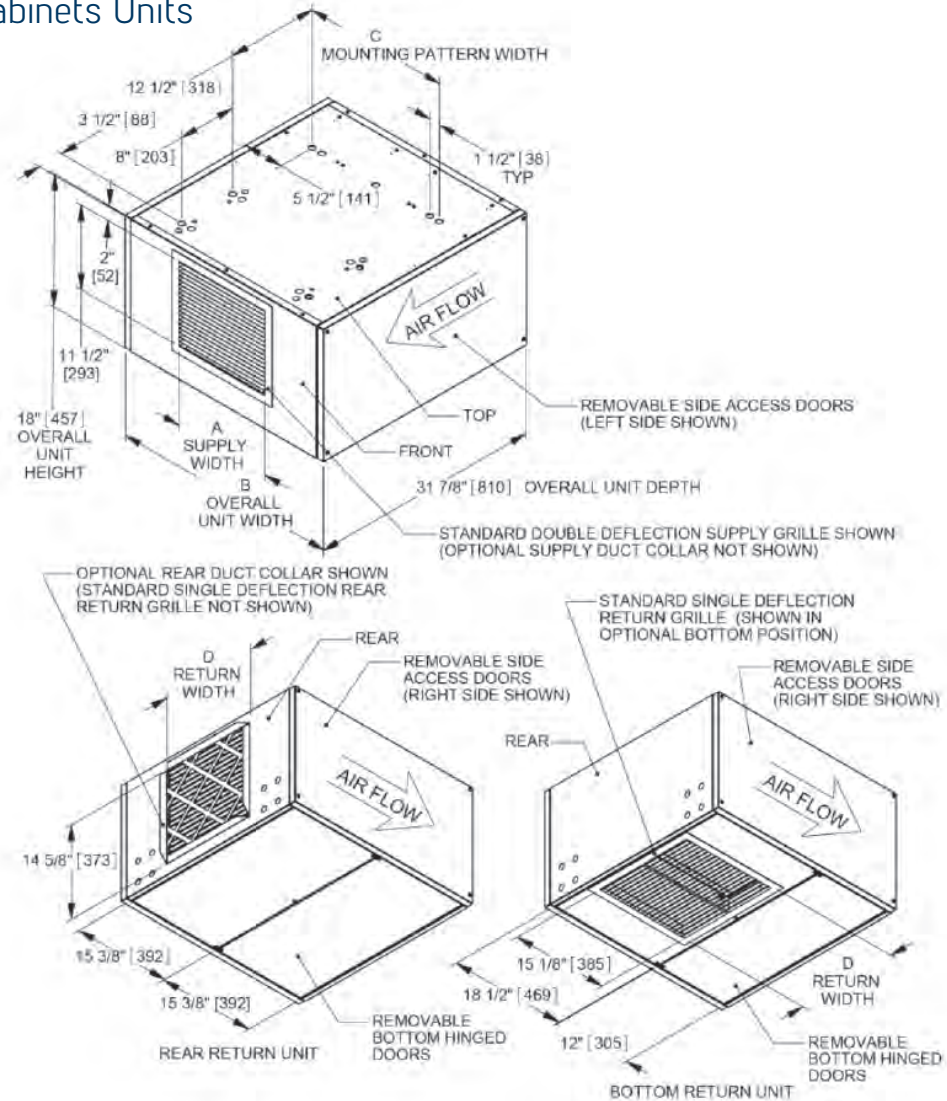
#### Notes:

1. All dimensions are Inches [millimeters]. All dimensions  $\pm 1/8"$ .
2. Drain pan is field reversible 180 and externally insulated
3. Optional auxiliary drip pan available for piping package condensate
4. Coil hand is field reversible (left hand unit shown)

# THH HIGH PERFORMANCE HORIZONTAL FAN COIL UNITS

## Section 3 - Normal Operation & Periodic Maintenance

### Model THHE Exposed Cabinets Units



Unit Size	A	B	C	D
06	13 1/2 [343]	31 1/4 [794]	20 [508]	15 1/2 [864]
08	18 1/2 [470]	36 1/4 [921]	25 [635]	19 1/2 [495]
10	22 1/2 [572]	40 1/4 [1022]	29 [737]	24 1/2 [622]
12	27 1/2 [699]	45 1/4 [1149]	34 [864]	31 1/2 [800]
14	32 1/2 [826]	50 1/4 [1276]	39 [991]	35 1/2 [902]
16	37 1/2 [953]	55 1/4 [1403]	44 [1118]	39 1/2 [1008]
18	42 1/2 [1080]	60 1/4 [1530]	46 [1225]	44 1/2 [1130]
20	46 1/2 [1181]	64 1/4 [1632]	53 [1346]	49 1/2 [1257]

#### Notes:

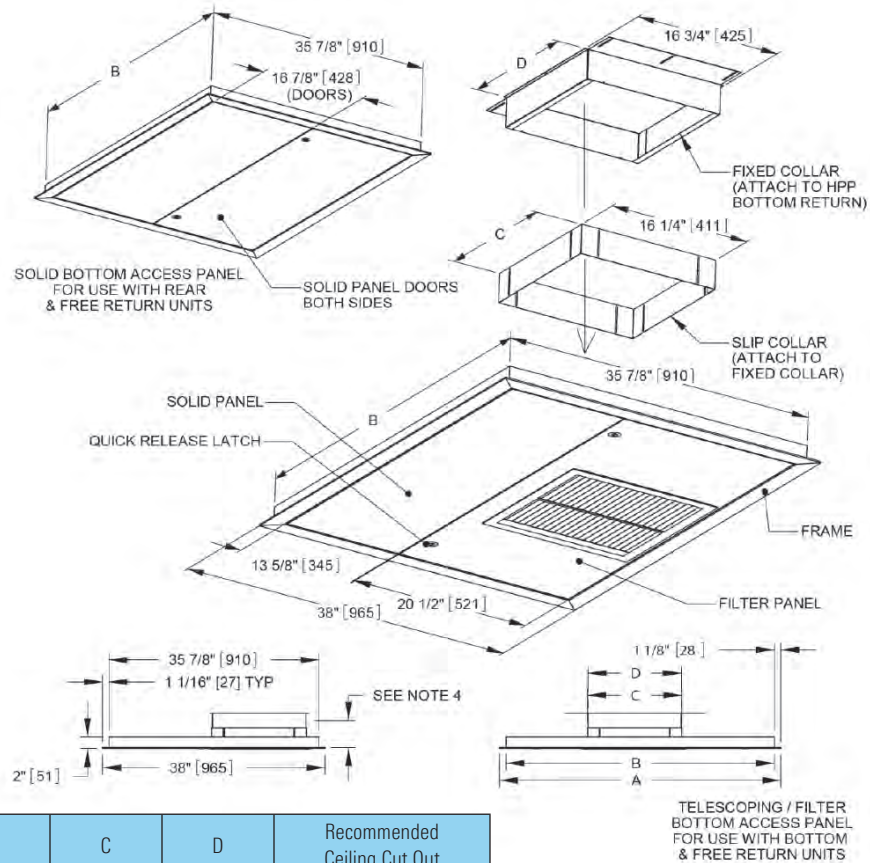
1. All dimensions are Inches [millimeters]. All dimensions  $\pm 1/8"$ .
2. See THHC submittal for additional TH Series product dimensions not shown
3. Internal hinged electrical enclosure not shown
4. Optional 1" or 2" pleated filters available (shown) standard 1" throwaway filter not shown
5. 1-1/4" duct collar standard on all ducted units

Control Enclosure Sizes	
10 x 16 x 6	250 x 406 x 152
16 x 16 x 6	406 x 406 x 152



## Section 3 - Normal Operation & Periodic Maintenance

### THH Telescoping/Filter and Solid Bottom Access Panels



Unit Size	A	B	C	D	Recommended Ceiling Cut Out
06	48 [1219]	45 7/8 [1164]	16 [408]	15 7/8 [404]	46 1/8 x 36 1/8 [1171x918]
08	53 [1346]	50 7/8 [1291]	20 [509]	19 7/8 [506]	51 1/8 x 36 1/8 [1298 x918]
10	57 [1448]	54 7/8 [1392]	25 [636]	24 7/8 [633]	55 1/8 x 36 1/8 [1400 x 918]
12	62 [1575]	59 7/8 [1599]	32 [814]	31 7/8 [811]	60 1/8 x 36 1/8 [1527 x918]
14	67 [1702]	64 7/8 [1646]	36 [916]	35 7/8 [912]	65 1/8 x 36 1/8 [1654 x 918]
16	72 [1829]	69 7/8 [1773]	40 [1017]	39 7/8 [1014]	70 1/8 x 36 1/8 [1781 x 918]
18	77 [1956]	74 7/8 [1900]	45 [1144]	44 7/8 [1141]	75 1/8 x 36 1/8 [1908 x 918]
20	81 [2057]	78 7/8 [2002]	50 [1271]	49 7/8 [1268]	79 1/8 x 36 1/8 [2009 x 918]

#### NOTES:

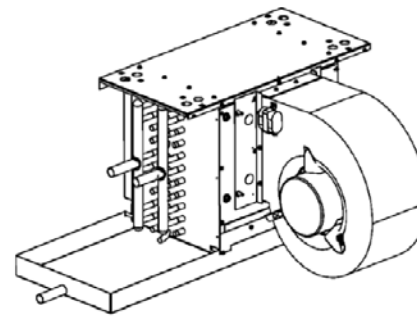
1. All dimensions are inches [millimeters] and are  $\pm 1/8"$
2. 1" TAW filter standard, 1" or 2" pleated filters are optional
3. Bottom panels are removable
4. Total telescoping adjustment is 3 1/2" to 6 1/2"
5. Filter and grill sizes are the same for each unit size in the THH product line.

# THH HIGH PERFORMANCE HORIZONTAL FAN COIL UNITS

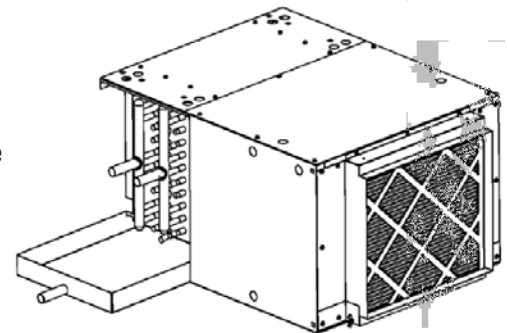
## Section 3 - Normal Operation & Periodic Maintenance

### THH Series Coil Connection Units

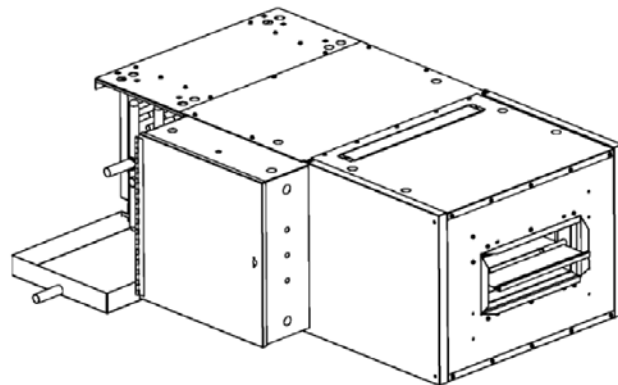
Unit Size	Type	Number of Rows	Conn. Size O.D.	Unit Size	Type	Number of Rows	Conn. Size O.D.
06	hw	1	5/8	14	hw	1	5/8
06	hw	2	5/8	14	hw	2	7/8
06	hw	3	7/8	14	hw	3	7/8
06	cw	3	7/8	14	cw	3	7/8
06	hw	4	7/8	14	hw	4	1 1/8
06	cw	4	7/8	14	cw	4	1 1/8
06	cw	6	7/8	14	cw	6	1 1/8
08	hw	1	5/8	16	hw	1	5/8
08	hw	2	5/8	16	hw	2	7/8
08	hw	3	7/8	16	hw	3	7/8
08	cw	3	7/8	16	cw	3	7/8
08	hw	4	7/8	16	hw	4	1 1/8
08	cw	4	7/8	16	cw	4	1 1/8
08	cw	6	7/8	16	cw	6	1 1/8
10	hw	1	5/8	18	hw	1	5/8
10	hw	2	5/8	18	hw	2	7/8
10	hw	3	7/8	18	hw	3	7/8
10	cw	3	7/8	18	cw	3	1 1/8
10	hw	4	7/8	18	hw	4	1 1/8
10	cw	4	7/8	18	cw	4	1 1/8
10	cw	6	7/8	18	cw	6	1 1/8
12	hw	1	5/8	20	hw	1	5/8
12	hw	2	5/8	20	hw	2	7/8
12	hw	3	7/8	20	hw	3	1 1/8
12	cw	3	7/8	20	cw	3	1 1/8
12	hw	4	7/8	20	hw	4	1 1/8
12	cw	4	7/8	20	cw	4	1 1/8
12	cw	6	1 1/8	20	cw	6	1 1/8



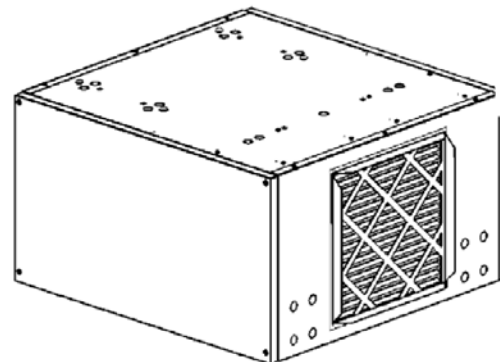
Model THHC  
High Performance  
Free Return  
Fan Coil Unit



Model THHP  
High Performance  
Plenum Return  
Fan Coil Unit



Model THHP  
High Performance  
Mixing Box  
Fan Coil Unit



Model THHE  
High Performance  
Enclosed Cabinet  
Fan Coil Unit

Notes:

1. All dimensions are Inches [mm] AND are  $\pm 1/8"$
2. Coil handing is field reversible (left hand units shown)

## Section 4 - Inspection, Installation & Start-up Checklist

### RECEIVING & INSPECTION

- Unit Received Undamaged
- Unit Arrangement/Hand Correct
- Unit Arrangement Correct
- Unit Structural Support Complete & Correct

### HANDLING & INSTALLATION

- Unit Mounted Level & Square
- Proper Access Provided for Unit and Accessories
- Proper Electrical Service Provided
- Proper Overcurrent Protection Provided
- Proper Service/Switch Disconnect Provided
- Proper Chilled Water Line Size to Unit
- Proper Hot Water Line to Unit
- All services to Unit in Code Compliance
- All Shipping Screws & Braces Removed

### COOLING/HEATING CONNECTIONS

- Protect Protect Valve Package Components from Heat
- Mount Valve Packages
- Connect Field Piping to Unit
- Pressure Test All Piping for Leaks
- Install Drain Line & Traps as Required
- Insulate all Piping as Required

### DUCT WORK CONNECTIONS

- Install Duct work, Fittings & Grilles as Required
- Proper Supply & Return Grille Type & Size Used
- Control Outside Air for Freeze Protection
- Insulate All Duct work as Required

### ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- Refer to Unit Wing Diagram
- Connect Incoming Power Service or Services
- Electrical Service of Correct Voltage or Ampacity to Support Unit Operating Loads
- All Field Wiring Installed with Code Compliance
- Check All Wiring for Secure Connections

### UNIT STARTUP

- General Visual Unit & System Inspection
- Record Electrical Supply Voltage
- Record Ambient Temperature
- Close All Unit Isolation Valves
- Flush Water Systems
- Fill Systems with Water/Refrigerant
- Vent Water Systems as Required
- All Duct work & Grilles in Place
- All Unit Panels & Filters in Place
- Start Fans, Etc.
- Check for Overload Condition of All Units
- Check All Duct work & Units for Air Leaks
- Balance Air Systems as Required
- Record All Final Settings for Future Use
- Check Piping & Duct work for Vibration
- Check All Dampers for Proper Operation
- Verify Proper Cooling Operation
- Verify Proper Heating Operation
- Reinstall All Covers & Access Panels

# THH HIGH PERFORMANCE HORIZONTAL FAN COIL UNITS

## Notes

---

## Notes

---





605 Shiloh Rd  
Plano TX 75074  
ofc: 972.212.4800  
fax: 972.212.4884

Redefine your comfort zone.™ | [www.titus-hvac.com](http://www.titus-hvac.com)



## Single Duct VAV Terminals

### Receiving Inspection

After unpacking the terminal, check it for shipping damage. If any shipping damage is found, report it immediately to the delivering carrier. Store units in a clean, dry location prior to installation.

**Caution: Do not use the flow sensor, connecting tubing, or damper shaft linkage as a handle to lift or move assembly. Damage to the flow sensor or controls may result.**

### Supporting the Assembly

Many basic single duct terminals are light enough to be supported by the duct work itself. Where heavier accessory modules, such as DDC controls, coils, attenuators, or multiple outlets are included, the terminal should be supported directly. Straps screwed directly into the side of the terminal, threaded rod through the optional hanger brackets (see Figure 1), or the method prescribed for the rectangular duct on the job specifications may be used.

**Important:** If equipped with pneumatic controls, the terminal must be mounted right side up. It must be level within + or - 10 degrees of horizontal, both parallel to the air flow and at the right angle of air flow. The control side of the terminal is labeled with an arrow indicating UP. The first letter of the model number (P) indicates pneumatic controls. Most electronic units (A-analog controls and D-digital controls) can be installed in any orientation. Check with the local TITUS representative for verification.

### Duct Connections

Slip each inlet duct over the inlet collar of the terminal. Fasten and seal the connection by the method prescribed by the job specification.

The diameter of the inlet duct "D" in inches must be equal to the listed size of the terminal; e.g. a duct that actually measures 8 inches must be fitted to a size 8 terminal. The inlet collar of the terminal is made 1/8 inch smaller than listed size in order to fit inside the duct (see Figure 1).

Note: **Do not insert duct work inside the inlet collar of the assembly.** Inlet duct should be installed in accordance with SMACNA guidelines.

The outlet end of the terminal is designed for use with slip and drive duct connections. A rectangular duct the size of the terminal outlet should be attached.

If single-point electronic velocity sensor is used, 3 to 5 inlet duct diameters of straight duct should be provided at the terminal inlet; for specific guidelines, consult the manufacturer's installation material. Sensor(s) may be attached to the inside of control enclosure for protection during shipping. Sensor must be inserted in inlet duct of terminal before operation. Remove any protective plastic devices from tip of sensor before installation.

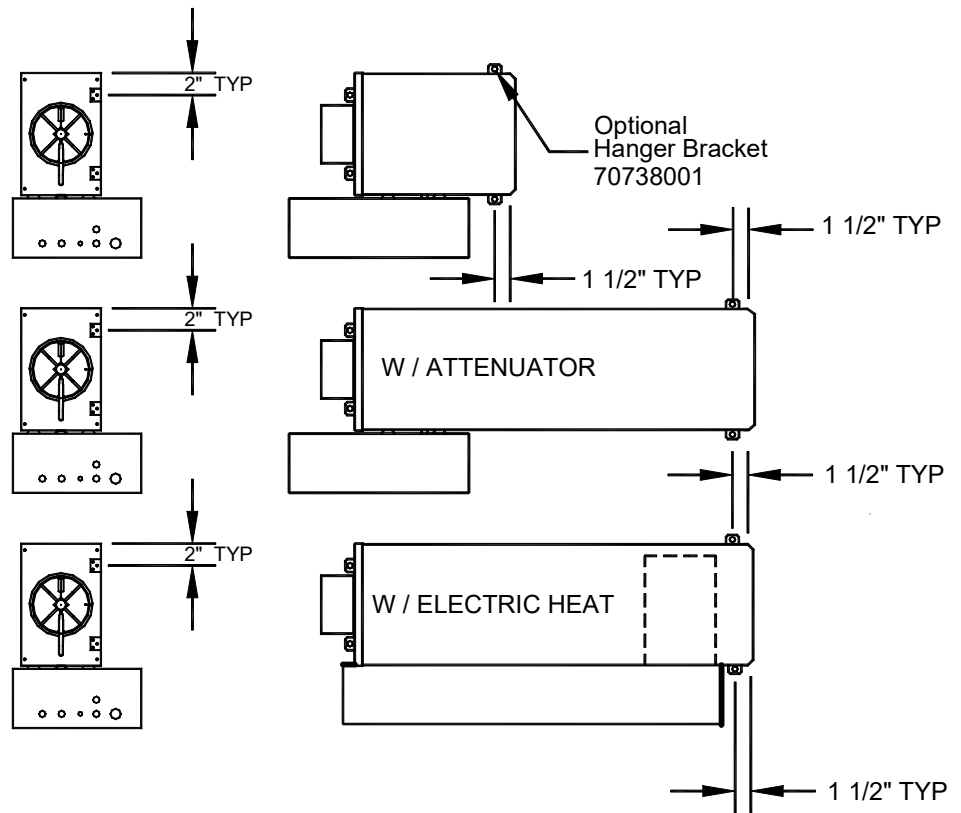


Figure 1. Single Duct Recommended Hanger Bracket Locations



## Field Wiring

All field wiring must comply with the local codes and with the National Electrical Code (ANSI/NFPA 70-1981). Electrical, control and piping diagrams are shown on the exterior labeling or on the diagram on the inside of control enclosure cover. All electric heaters if provided by TITUS are balanced by kW per stage. The installing electrician should rotate these heater stages by phase in order to help balance the building electric load.

## Control Start-up, Operation

Detailed information regarding power, accessory and communications connections, start-up and operating procedures for the controls provided by TITUS are available from your local TITUS representative. For specific information on controls by other manufacturers, contact that manufacturer's local branch or dealer.

Important: Units with digital controllers may incorporate specific communication addresses based on Building Management Systems Architecture, and original engineering drawings. Installing the terminal in a different location than noted on unit label may result in excessive start-up labor.

## Calibration Instructions

For Pneumatic Controls, see PNEU-IOM: Operations Manual for Pneumatic Controls.

For Analog Controls: Titus TA1, see ANA-IOM: Analog Controller Calibration.

For Digital Controls: see control manufacturer's manual

## Replacement Parts

Description	Part Number
Primary Damper Assembly	
Size 4-5-6"	31171301
Size 7"	31171302
Size 8"	31171303
Size 9"	31171304
Size 10"	31171305
Size 12"	31171306
Size 14"	31171307
Size 16"	31171308
Damper Shaft Extension	
Short Stub all sizes	70300301
Long Ext. Sz. 4-6, 14, 16	70300302
Long Ext. Sz. 7-12	70300303
Shaft Bearing - All	70324901
Control Tube	
Red Stripe 1/4" O.D.	61510035
Green Stripe 1/4" O.D.	61510234
Red Stripe 3/8" O.D.	61510279
Green Stripe 3/8" O.D.	61510280
Yellow Stripe 1/4" O.D.	61510260
White Stripe 1/4" O.D.	61510261
Blue Stripe 1/4" O.D.	61510262
Tees for sensor taps	
Plastic 1/4"	42150011
Plastic 3/8"	42150020
Plugs for tees	
1/4"	42160081
3/8"	10015601
AeroCross™ Multipoint Velocity Sensors	
Size 4"	3151520001
Size 5"	3151520001
Size 6"	3151520002
Size 7"	3151520003
Size 8"	3151520004
Size 9"	3151520005
Size 10"	3151520006
Size 12"	3151520007
Size 14"	3151520008
Size 16"	3151520009
Size 24" x 16"	3151520009

# FIRE ALARM SYSTEM

## Operation & Maintenance Manual

---

FOR

### Harvard Kennedy School

Taubman Office Reno

15 Eliot Street  
Cambridge, MA 02138

---

**PROJECT:**

Harvard University  
Cambridge, MA 02138

**ELECTRICAL CONTRACTOR:**

Kerry Electric, Inc.  
453 Clapboard Tree Street  
Westwood, MA 02090

**PROJECT NUMBER:**

Cambridge, MA 02138

**DATE AND REVISION**

1/13/2021          Rev0

**SALES REPRESENTATIVE:**

Mark Beggan

**PROJECT SYSTEM SPECIALIST:**

Ariana Vieira Naughton

**PROJECT MANAGER:**

Robert Petro

---

For questions regarding scheduling and shipping, please contact the Project Manager. For all other issues please contact the Operations Manager.

**Johnson Controls**

95 Shawmut Road  
Canton, Ma 02021  
Phone: 617-965-5900  
Service: 617-965-5900  
Fax: 617-244-8197

[www.johnsoncontrols.com](http://www.johnsoncontrols.com)



THIS SHEET INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.

# Operating & Maintenance Manual

## Table of Contents

- Section 1**      Service Directory
- Section 2**      Testing & Inspection Procedures
- Section 3**      Instruction, Operating & Maintenance Manuals
- Section 4**      Data Sheets
- Section 5**      Alarms, Service & Inspection Logs

THIS SHEET INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



THIS SHEET INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



# Service Directory

## Local District Office

---

95 Shawmut Road  
Canton, Ma 02021

<b>Phone</b> .....	617-965-5900
<b>Service</b> .....	617-965-5900
<b>Fax</b> .....	617-244-8197
<b>24-HR</b> .....	1-800-746-7539



THIS SHEET INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



THIS SHEET INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.

**CONSULT YOUR  
REGIONAL  
HEADQUARTERS  
SAFETY OFFICE FOR  
EVACUATION  
PROCEDURES AND  
GUIDELINES.**

THIS SHEET INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.





THIS SHEET INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.

# TrueAlert Non-Addressable, Multi-Candela Notification Appliances Installation Instructions

## Cautions, Warnings, and Regulatory Information

**READ AND SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS** Follow the instructions in this installation manual. These instructions must be followed to avoid damage to this product and associated equipment. Product operation and reliability depend upon proper installation.

**DO NOT INSTALL ANY SIMPLEX™ PRODUCT THAT APPEARS DAMAGED** Upon unpacking your Simplex product, inspect the contents of the carton for shipping damage. If damage is apparent, immediately file a claim with the carrier and notify an authorized Simplex product supplier.

**ELECTRICAL HAZARD** Disconnect electrical field power when making any internal adjustments or repairs. All repairs should be performed by a representative or an authorized agent of your local Simplex product supplier.






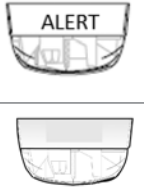


**STATIC HAZARD** Static electricity can damage components. Handle as follows:

- Ground yourself before opening or installing components.
- Prior to installation, keep components wrapped in anti-static material at all times.

## Product Identification Reference







See [Product specifications](#) for detailed product specifications.

**Table 1: Product Identification Reference**

Type	Mount	Model	Color
<b>Strobe (V/O)</b>			
	Wall	4906-6101	Red
	Ceiling	4906-6102	Red
	Wall	4906-9101	Red
		4906-9103	White
	Ceiling	4906-9102	Red
		4906-9104	White
	Wall	4906-6101	Red
	Ceiling	4906-9114	Red
		4906-9115	White
		4906-9116	Red
		4906-9117	White
<b>Horn/Strobe (A/V)</b>			
	Wall	4906-6127	Red
	Ceiling	4906-6128	Red



**Table 1: Product Identification Reference**

Type	Mount	Model	Color
	Wall	4906-9127	Red
		4906-9129	White
	Ceiling	4906-9128	Red
		4906-9130	White
	Wall	4906-6127	Red
		4906-6128	Red
<b>Speaker/Visible (S/V)</b>			
	Wall	4906-9151	Red
		4906-9153	White
	Ceiling	4906-9154*	White
		4906-9157**	
	Ceiling	4906-9158	White
		4906-9159	

**Note:** \*4906-9154 is not ULC listed.

\*\*4906-9157 is ULC only.

**Operation**

**Strobes:** Reverse polarity notification appliance with output selectable for 15, 30, 75, or 110 candela, and synchronized 1 Hz flash. Strobes provide the polar light dispersion requirements of UL1971 and ULC-S526.

**A/V Horns:** Built-in electronic horn operating under SmartSync control.

**Speakers:** Wired separately from strobes; selectable for 25 VRMS or 70.7 VRMS; selectable for 1/4 W, 1/2 W, 1 W, or 2 W.

**Compatibility**

- A/Vs: IDNet NAC Extender models 4009-9201(CA) and 4009-9301.
- SmartSync Control Module (SCM) 4905-9938.
- Simplex Fire Alarm Control Panels (FACPs) providing SmartSync control NACs.

**V/Os, per above and:**

- Strobe Synch Modules 4905-9914 and 4905-9922.
- Simplex FACPs providing strobe sync NACs.

**Speakers:**

- Listed fire alarm audio NACs.

## Ceiling Mounting Reference Notes

**Note:**

- V/O surface mounted boxes require either Adapter Plate 4905-9910, or optional Wire Guard 4905-9926.
- Before attaching the strobe assembly to housing, select the desired S/V and V/O candela and attach V/O NAC wiring.
- For S/Vs, run strobe assembly wire leads through the housing opening and attach to the terminal block assembly; Red to POS, Black to NEG. See Figure 5 for more detail.
- For strobe assembly mounting, attach the housing to the box using two supplied screws, align the mounting tabs of the strobe assembly to the housing slots, and snap them into place.
- On model 4906-9157, temporarily push the gasket for acoustic performance to the side to feed the wires through.

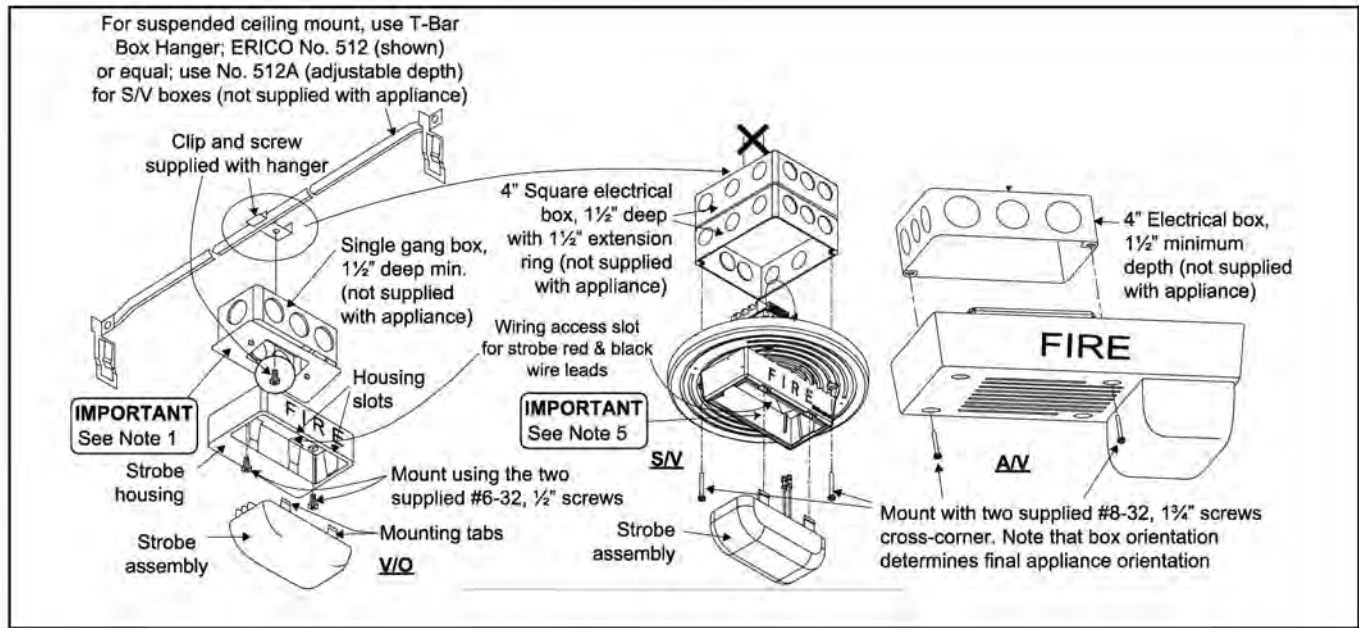


Figure 1: Ceiling Mounting Reference

## Location Reference

Location and quantity of appliances required must conform to the applicable local standards and guidelines, the National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code (NFPA 72), ULC Standard CAN/ULC-S524, Installation of Fire Alarm Systems, the appropriate model building codes, etc., and specific requirements of the Local Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ).

**CAUTION:** These notification appliances are not intended for installation within hazardous locations as defined by the National Electrical Code (NEC) or NFPA.

## Safety

Always install, maintain, and test notification appliances within their specifications. Failure to follow all safety precautions and instructions may result in loss of life and property due to non-functioning appliances. Some appliances use high voltage. To avoid electrical hazards and damage to appliances, disconnect electrical power for the notification appliance circuit at the control panel before installing, repairing, or internally adjusting any appliances. Even with electrical power removed, some appliances, such as strobes, store a high voltage charge that can cause injury resulting in death from electrical shock. Do not touch exposed circuitry.

## Wall Mount Reference

**Note:**

1. For each type, recess flush mount boxes 1/4 in. (6.35 mm) maximum from wall surface. Do not over-tighten the screws.
2. For S/V mounting, do not bring conduit through the rear of the electrical boxes.

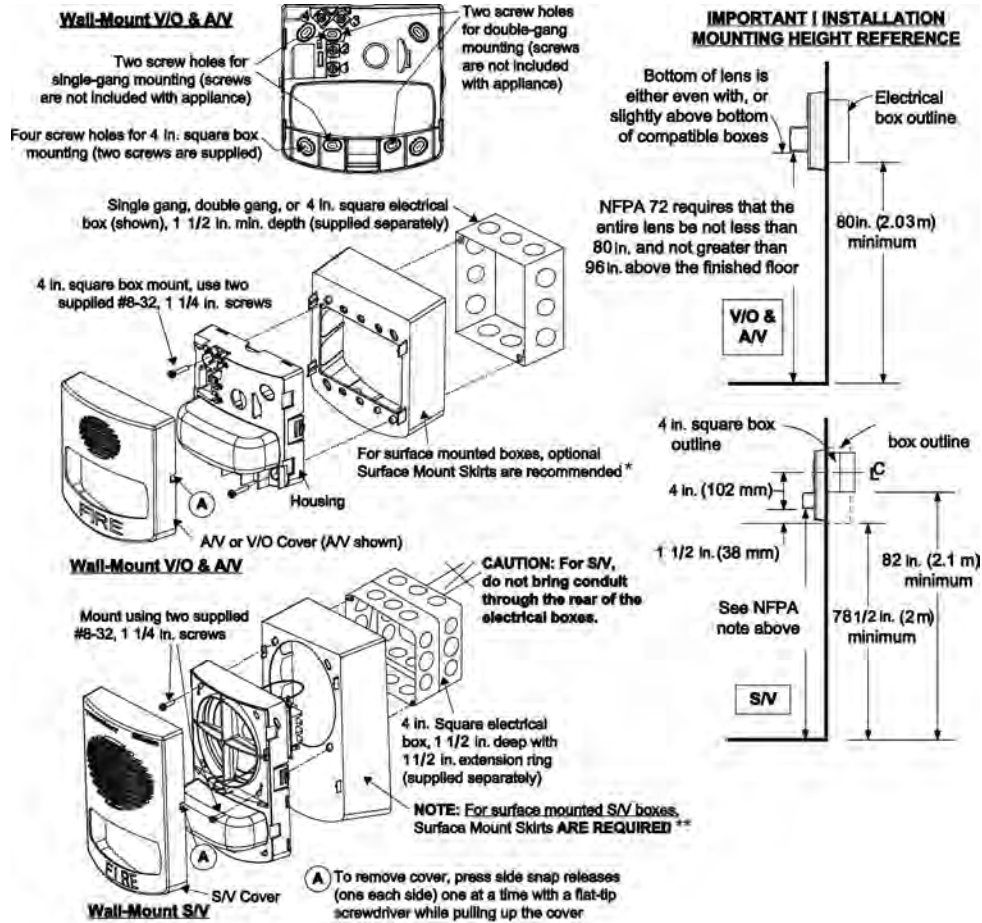


Figure 2: Wall Mount Reference

**Note:**

- For surface mounted AV or V/O boxes, optional skirts are recommended: 4905-9937 (red) or 4905-9940 (white).
- For surface mounted S/V boxes, skirts are required: 4905-9946 (red) or 4905-9947 (white).

**Wiring Termination Reference**

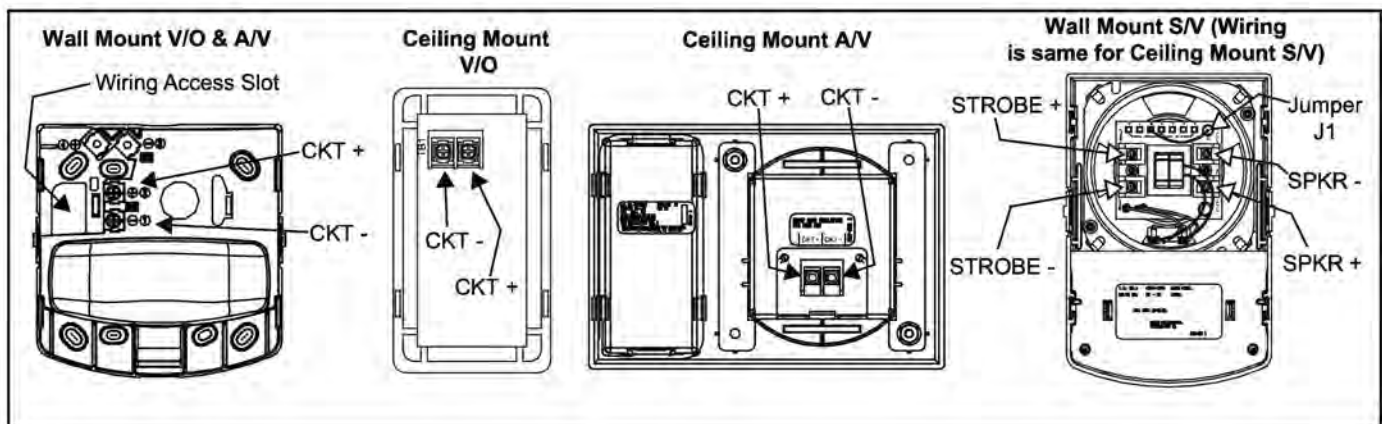


Figure 3: Wiring Termination Reference

**NAC Wiring Information**

- Refer to the fire alarm control unit (FACU) documentation for additional information.

- NAC wiring connections are supervised and power-limited by the FACU.
- Maximum of 35 appliances for each circuit.
- Maximum resistance between appliances is 30 ohm.
- For audio/voice systems, speaker circuits are wired separately from strobe circuits.
- Strip lead insulation to 3/8 in. (9.5 mm) maximum.
- Wire size is 18 AWG to 12 AWG (0.82 mm<sup>2</sup> to 3.31 mm<sup>2</sup>).
- Class B NAC, End-of-Line Resistors: When connecting the last appliance on a NAC, connect an end-of-line resistor harness to the terminals. Refer to FACU documentation for correct value.
- Speaker factory setting is 25 VRMS, 0.5 W (J1 to Tap E). Select speaker wattage setting per Figure 5.

**Note:** An incorrect tap setting may damage the speaker.

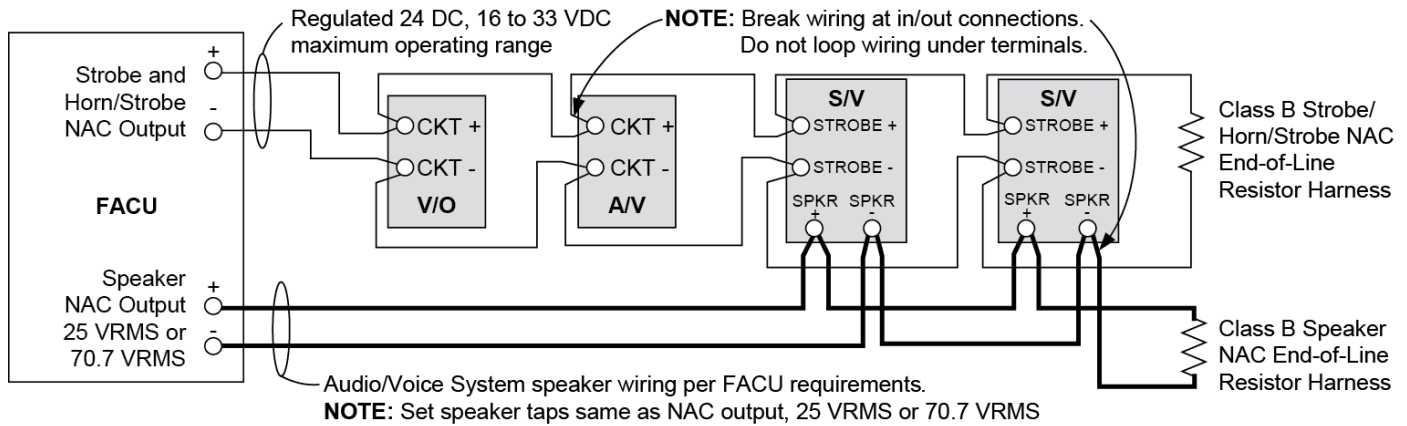


Figure 4: NAC Wiring Reference

## Setting Strobe Candela & Speaker Tap

**Note:** The factory setting for strobe intensity is 15 cd. You can select higher intensity by jumper position (30 cd, 75 cd, or 110 cd).

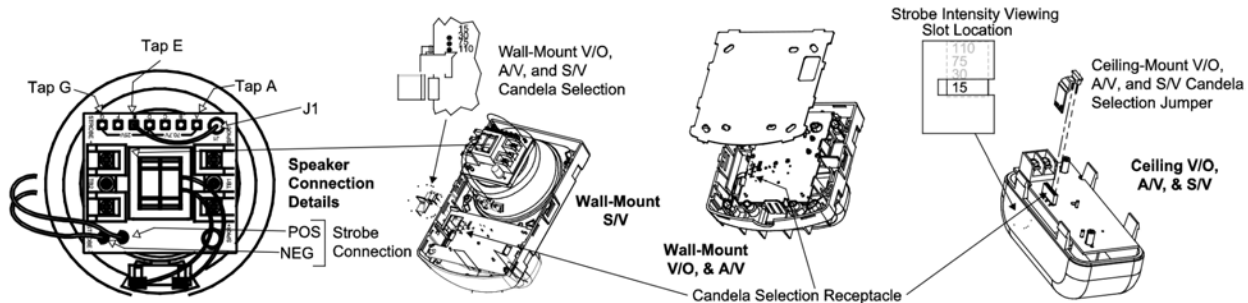


Figure 5: Strobe Candela and Speaker Tap Reference

Table 2: VRMS Input

25 VRMS Input		70.7 VRMS Input	
Jumper J1 to Tap	Tap Setting	Jumper J1 to Tap	Tap Setting
D	0.25 W	A	0.25 W
E*	0.5 W*	B	0.5 W
F	1 W	C	1 W
G	2 W	D	2 W

\* Factory setting.

## STI Guards, UL Listed Compatability Reference



**Table 3: STI Guards, UL Listed Compatibility Reference**

Model	STI Guard (Mounting Type)	Light Loss	Sound Loss, A/V or S/V	Required Surface Mount Skirt (See Instructions 574-790)
<b>Wall V/O:</b> 4906-9101 & 4906-9103 <b>Wall A/V:</b> 4906-9127 & 4906-9129	STI-1210D (Surface)	41.7%	-3.7 dBA	4905-9937 (red) or 4905-9940 (white)
	STI-1210E (Flush)	31%	-4.9 dBA	
	STI-1215 (Flush)	33.3%	-5.7 dBA	
	STI-1217 (Surface) See Note 3	30.7%	-6.3 dBA	
<b>Ceiling V/O:</b> 4906-9102 & 4906-9104	STI-1217 (Surface)	21.5%	N/A	None
	STI-1217 (Flush)	39.4%	N/A	
<b>Wall S/V:</b> 4906-9151 & 4906-9153	STI-1210D (Surface)	34.3%	-1.5 dBA	4905-9946 (red) or 4905-9947 (white)
	STI-1210E (Flush)	31%	-3.3 dBA	
<b>Ceiling S/V:</b> 4906-9154	STI-1217 (Flush)	23.6%	-1.4 dBA	None

**Note:**

- Guards are not listed for ULC applications.
- Refer to STI Installation Manuals packed with each guard for mounting and maintenance instructions.
- STI adhesive backed spacer to mounting surface gasket required; cover to spacer gasket is not used.

## Product specifications

**Table 4: Product specifications**

Rated Strobe and A/V Current; Maximum Operating Current @ 16 VDC					General Specifications	
Candela Rating	Wall Mount V/O & S/V	Wall Mount A/V*	Ceiling Mount A/V*	Ceiling Mount V/O & S/V	Rated Voltage Range	Regulated 24 DC, 16 to 33 VDC
15 cd	60 mA	75 mA	86 mA	75 mA	Strobe Flash Rate	1 Hz
30 cd	94 mA	116 mA	132 mA	125 mA	NAC Loading	35 synchronized strobes maximum per NAC
75 cd	186 mA	221 mA	250 mA	233 mA		
110 cd	252 mA	285 mA	320 mA	316 mA		
<b>A/V Horn Sound Pressure Level Measurements (UL464 Reverberant Room Testing; ULC-S525 Anechoic Room Testing)</b>					Temperature Range	32°F to 120°F (0°C to 49°C)
<b>Horn Mode</b>	<b>ULC-S525 at 3 m</b>		<b>UL464 at 10 ft</b>		Humidity Range	10% to 93%, non-condensing at 100°F (38°C)
	<b>Wall A/V</b>	<b>Ceiling A/V</b>	<b>Wall A/V</b>	<b>Ceiling A/V</b>		
Steady	88 dBA	90 dBA	86 dBA	87 dBA	Connections; two wires per terminal for in/out wiring	Terminal blocks for 18 AWG to 12 AWG (0.82 mm <sup>2</sup> to 3.3 mm <sup>2</sup> )
Coded	94 dBA	98 dBA	82 dBA	83 dBA		

Horn Dispersion: SPL decreases by 3 dB at an angular displacement of 40° and by 6 dB at an angular displacement of 50° both horizontally and vertically. With the 4905-9838 Sound Damper installed, measurements decrease 5 dB to 6 dB.

\*A/V current is with horn steady on

**Table 5: Speaker specifications**

Speaker Output Ratings (UL1480 Reverberant Room Testing; ULC-S541 Anechoic Room Testing)							Speaker Specifications	
Voltage	Jumper J1 to Tap	Tap Setting In Watts	UL1480 at 10 ft		ULC-S541 at 3 m		Input Voltage	25 VRMS or 70.7 VRMS; for connection to conventional fire alarm audio circuits
			Wall-S/V all models	4906-9254, 4906-9255, 4906-9256 Ceiling S/V	Wall S/V All models	4906-9157 Ceiling S/V for ULC		
70.7 VRMS	A	1/4 W	76 dBA	76 dBA	77 dBA	80.9 dBA	Power Taps	1/4 W, 1/2 W, 1 W, and 2 W
	B	1/2 W	79 dBA	79 dBA	80 dBA	84.1 dBA		
	C	1 W	82 dBA	82 dBA	83 dBA	87.3 dBA		
	D	2 W	85 dBA	85 dBA	86 dBA	90.2 dBA		
25 VRMS	D	1/4 W	76 dBA	76 dBA	77 dBA	81.6 dBA	<b>Speaker Frequency Response</b>	Fire Alarm 400 Hz to 4000 Hz General Signaling 125 Hz to 12 kHz
	E	1/2 W	79 dBA	79 dBA	80 dBA	84.3 dBA		
	F	1 W	82 dBA	82 dBA	83 dBA	87.1 dBA		
	G	2 W	85 dBA	85 dBA	86 dBA	89.7 dBA		

**Speaker Dispersion:** SPL decreases by 3 dB at an angular displacement of 30° and by 6 dB at an angular displacement of 55°.

## Strobe Polar Output

Ref. UL 1971 and ULC-S526 room temperature test results.



**Table 6: Strobe Polar Output**

Wall Mount Light Output at any Candela Setting						Ceiling Mount Light Output at any Candela Setting					
Vertical Dispersion			Horizontal Dispersion			Vertical Dispersion			Horizontal Dispersion		
X-Angle	UL Min.	Typical	Y-Plane	UL Min.	Typical	X-Angle	UL Min.	Typical	Y-Plane	UL Min.	Typical
0	100%	322%	0	100%	320%	0	100%	327%	0	100%	343%
5	90%	217%	±5	90%	214%	±5	90%	293%	±5	90%	160%
10	90%	168%	±10	90%	177%	±10	90%	281%	±10	90%	175%
15	90%	179%	±15	90%	175%	±15	90%	197%	±15	90%	129%
20	90%	210%	±20	90%	174%	±20	90%	168%	±20	90%	145%
25	90%	184%	±25	90%	170%	±25	90%	142%	±25	90%	165%
30	90%	149%	±30	75%	169%	±30	75%	143%	±30	75%	152%
35	65%	172%	±35	75%	157%	±35	75%	155%	±35	75%	144%
40	46%	189%	±40	75%	151%	±40	75%	156%	±40	75%	139%
45	34%	203%	±45	75%	138%	±45	75%	134%	±45	75%	129%
50	27%	152%	±50	55%	130%	±50	55%	115%	±50	55%	129%
55	22%	166%	±55	45%	121%	±55	45%	104%	±55	45%	123%
60	18%	166%	±60	40%	117%	±60	40%	103%	±60	40%	111%
65	16%	164%	±65	35%	109%	±65	35%	98%	±65	35%	120%
70	15%	163%	±70	35%	105%	±70	35%	87%	±70	35%	103%
75	13%	159%	±75	30%	98%	±75	30%	90%	±75	30%	75%
80	12%	138%	±80	30%	90%	±80	30%	96%	±80	30%	83%
85	12%	113%	±85	25%	78%	±85	25%	96%	±85	25%	70%
90	12%	88%	±90	25%	67%	±90	25%	83%	±90	25%	47%

## Limitations

**Notification Appliances do not provide their own power.** They receive power from the Fire Alarm System. If power is not supplied to the notification appliances (for whatever reason), the notification appliances will not provide a visible and/or audible warning. Therefore, back-up power supplies, or other back-up power sources, are required for the fire alarm system. Visible notification appliances provide a specific rated output light level and must meet the requirements of the intended protected area(s). Although these strobe equipped appliances meet the current UL and ULC-S526 standards for light intensity, the protected area(s) may have walls, doors, carpeting, furniture, insulation, or other obstacles that reduce or even block the light. For all applications, the light output must provide enough intensity to alert occupants of the protected area(s) including those occupants that are sleeping. If these occupants cannot see the effect of the notification appliances within the protected area(s), you must increase the intensity of the light output or add additional notification appliances so that the occupants can see the effect of the notification appliances when activated.





THIS SHEET INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.

## Features

### Speaker/visible (S/V) notification appliances with multi-tapped speaker and multi-tapped high intensity xenon strobe with synchronized flash:

- Rugged, high impact, flame retardant thermoplastic housings are available for wall or ceiling mount
- Operation is compatible with ADA requirements (refer to important wall mount installation information on page 4)

#### Wall mount S/V features:

- Housings are available in red or white with clear lens with contrasting white or red “FIRE” lettering
- Covers are available separately to convert housing color

#### Ceiling mount S/V features:

- Housing is white with clear lens
- Red “FIRE” lettering is printed on two sides

#### Audible notification appliance (speaker):

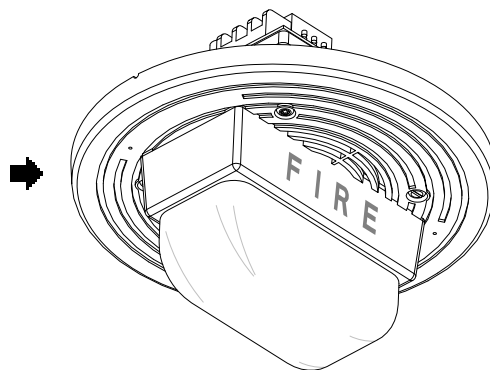
- High quality voice and tone reproduction with taps for ¼, ½, 1, or 2 W, at 25 or 70.7 VRMS
- Capacitor input for connection to supervised notification appliance circuits
- Speakers are wired separately from strobe wiring
- UL listed to Standard 1480 and ULC-S541\*
- Compliant with NFPA 72, 520 Hz Low Frequency Signal Requirements for Sleeping Areas

#### Visible notification appliance (strobe):

- 24 VDC xenon strobe; intensity is selectable as 15, 30, 75, or 110 candela with visible selection jumper secured behind strobe housing
- Strobes are activated from NACs selected to provide Simplex® strobe synchronization signals or from separate strobe Synchronization Modules that are available for Class B or Class A operation
- Regulated circuit design ensures consistent flash output and provides controlled inrush current
- UL listed to Standard 1971 and ULC-S526\*

#### Options for wall mounted S/Vs:

- Red or white adapters to cover surface mounted electrical boxes
- Red adapter for mounting to Simplex 2975-9145 boxes
- Red wire guard



Wall and Ceiling Mount S/Vs

## Description

**Multi-Candela TrueAlert S/Vs with speaker and synchronized strobe** provide convenient installation to standard electrical boxes with extensions. The enclosure designs are both impact and vandal resistant and provide a convenient strobe intensity selection. Since each model can be selected for strobe intensity output, on-site model inventory is minimized and changes encountered during construction can be easily accommodated.

**Wall mount S/V** housings are a one-piece assembly (including lens) that mounts to a 4” square electrical box with extension (see details on page 4). The cover can be quickly removed (a tool is required) and covers are available separately for color conversion.

**Ceiling mount S/Vs** also install using 4” electrical boxes with an extension (see details on page 4).

## Strobe Intensity Selection

During installation, a selection plug at the back of the housing determines the desired strobe intensity. An attached flag with black letters on a highly visible yellow background allows the selected intensity to be seen at the side of the strobe lens.

\* See page 2 for additional listing details and wire guard listings. This product has been approved by the California State Fire Marshal (CSFM) pursuant to Section 13144.1 of the California Health and Safety Code. See CSFM Listing 7320-0026:247 for allowable values and/or conditions concerning material presented in this document. Accepted for use – City of New York Department of Buildings – MEA35-93E. Additional listings may be applicable; contact your local Simplex product supplier for the latest status. Listings and approvals under Simplex Time Recorder Co. are the property of Tyco Fire Protection Products.

## Synchronized Strobes

**Multiple Strobes.** When multiple strobes and their reflections can be seen from one location, synchronized flashes reduce the probability of photo-sensitive reactions as well as the annoyance and possible distraction of random flashing. The multi-candela strobes of these S/Vs are activated by NACs that provide the Simplex synchronization format. For additional information, refer to data sheet S4905-0003.

## Strobe Application Selection

Proper selection of visible notification is dependent on occupancy, location, local codes, and proper applications of: the *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code* (NFPA 72), ANSI A117.1; the appropriate model building code: BOCA, ICBO, or SBCCI; and the application guidelines of the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).

## Product Selection

### Wall Mount Multi-Candela S/Vs

Model	Housing Color	"FIRE" Lettering	Listings	Description	Housing Dimensions with Lens
4906-9151	Red	White	UL & ULC	Multi-tapped Speaker with Multi-Candela Synchronized Strobe; strobe intensity selectable as: 15, 30, 75, or 110 candela	7 ¼" H x 5" W x 2 ⅝" D (184 mm x 127 mm x 67 mm)
4906-9153	White	Red			

### Ceiling Mount Multi-Candela S/V

Model	Housing Color	"FIRE" Lettering	Listings	Description	Dimensions
4906-9154	White	Red	UL	Multi-tapped Speaker with Multi-Candela Synchronized Strobe; strobe intensity selectable as: 15, 30, 75, or 110 candela	Housing = 7 ½" (191 mm) diameter, ½" (13 mm) deep Strobe lens protrusion = 2 ⅝" (67 mm) above speaker housing Depth into box = 2 ¾" (70 mm)
4906-9157	White	Red	ULC		

### Wall Mount S/V Adapters

Model	Description	Dimensions
4905-9946	Surface mount red adapter skirt	7 ¾" H x 5 ⅝" W x 3 ⅜" D (197 mm x 137 mm x 81 mm) depth with S/V = 5 ⅞" (149 mm)
4905-9947	Surface mount white adapter skirt	
4905-9903	Adapter Plate, red, required to mount S/V on 2975-9145	8 ⅝" H x 5 ¾" W x 0.060" Thick (211 mm x 146 mm x 1.5 mm)
2975-9145	Mounting box, red, for surface or flush mount, requires adapter plate 4905-9903 (this box may be available for retrofit applications)	7 ⅞" H x 5 ⅞" W x 2 ¾" D (200 mm x 130 mm x 70 mm)

### Wall Mount S/V Replacement Covers

Model	Description	Dimensions
4905-9996	Red S/V cover with white "FIRE" lettering	7 ¼" H x 5" W x 1 ⅝" D (184 mm x 127 mm x 35 mm)
4905-9997	White S/V cover with red "FIRE" lettering	

### Synchronized Flash Control Modules

Model	Description	Dimensions
4905-9914*	Synchronized Flash Module, Class B operation	1 ⅝" W x 2 ⅞" L x 1 ⅜" H (35 mm x 62 mm x 20 mm)
4905-9922*	Synchronized Flash Module, Class A operation	

### Wall Mount S/V Wire Guard

Model	Description	Dimensions
4905-9998	Wire guard with mounting plate, red, compatible with surface and semi-flush boxes (UL listed by Space Age Electronics Inc.)	8 ⅝" H x 6 ⅝" W x 3 ¼" D (213 mm x 154 mm x 79 mm)

### Ceiling Mount Tile Bridge

Model	Description	Dimensions
2905-9946	Tile Bridge	See diagram on page 4

\* Refer to data sheet S4905-0003 for additional flash control module information

## S/V Specifications

Common Specifications	Environmental	32° to 122° F (0° to 50° C); 10% to 93%, non-condensing at 100° F (38° C)
	Connections	Terminal blocks for 18 AWG to 12 AWG (0.82 mm <sup>2</sup> to 3.31 mm <sup>2</sup> ); two wires per terminal for in/out wiring

## Speaker Specifications

Input Voltage	25 or 70.7 VRMS, see Note 1 below	
Power Taps	¼, ½, 1, and 2 W	
Frequency Response	Fire Alarm	400 to 4000 Hz
	General Signaling	125 to 12 kHz

		Wattage Tap	¼ W	½ W	1 W	2 W
Speaker Output Ratings @ 10 ft (3 m) (see Note 1 below)	UL Listed Models, Reverberant Chamber Test, per UL 1480		76 dBA	79 dBA	82 dBA	85 dBA
	Wall Mount Models <b>4906-9151</b> and <b>4906-9153</b> , Anechoic Chamber Test, per ULC-S541		77 dBA	80 dBA	83 dBA	86 dBA*
	Ceiling Mount Model <b>4906-9157</b> , per ULC-S541	25 VRMS Input	81.6 dBA	84.3 dBA	87.1 dBA*	89.7 dBA*
70.7 VRMS Input		80.9 dBA	84.1 dBA	87.3 dBA*	90.2 dBA*	

\* NOTE: Select taps as indicated to satisfy the ULC fire alarm applications requirement of 85 dBA minimum

Polar Dispersion Reference (per ULC-S541 Anechoic Chamber Testing)	Attenuation	Angle	Attenuation	Angle
		-3 dB	+/- 30° off-axis	-6 dB

## Strobe Specifications

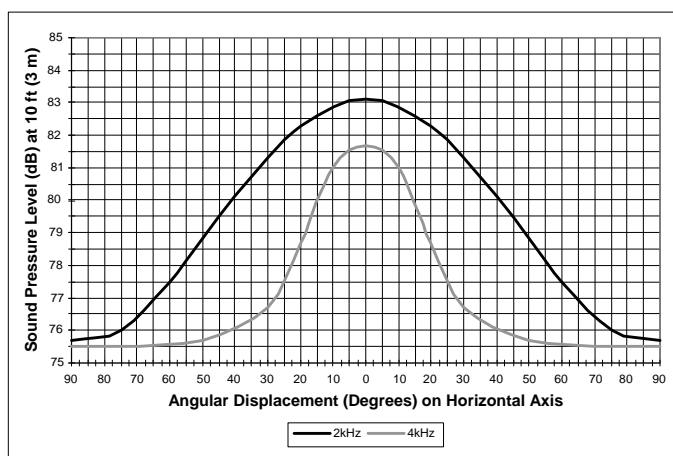
Rated Voltage Range	Regulated 24 VDC; 16 VDC to 33 VDC, see Note 2 below
Flash Rate and Synchronized NAC Loading	1 Hz; with up to 35 synchronized strobes maximum per NAC

Wall Mount	Housing Dimensions (with lens)	7 ¼" H x 5" W x 2 ⅝" D (184 mm x 127 mm x 67 mm)				
	Maximum RMS Current Rating per Strobe Setting		15 cd	30 cd	75 cd	110 cd
			60 mA	94 mA	186 mA	252 mA
Reference RMS Currents at other voltages	18 VDC	53 mA	84 mA	165 mA	224 mA	
	24 VDC	40 mA	63 mA	124 mA	168 mA	
Ceiling Mount	Housing Dimensions	Speaker housing = 7 ½" (191 mm) diameter, ½" deep (13 mm); lens protrusion above speaker housing = 2 ⅝" (67 mm); depth into box = 2 ¾" (70 mm)				
	Maximum RMS Current Rating per Strobe Setting		15 cd	30 cd	75 cd	110 cd
			75 mA	125 mA	233 mA	316 mA
Reference RMS Currents at other voltages	18 VDC	67 mA	111 mA	207 mA	281 mA	
	24 VDC	50 mA	83 mA	155 mA	211 mA	

### NOTES:

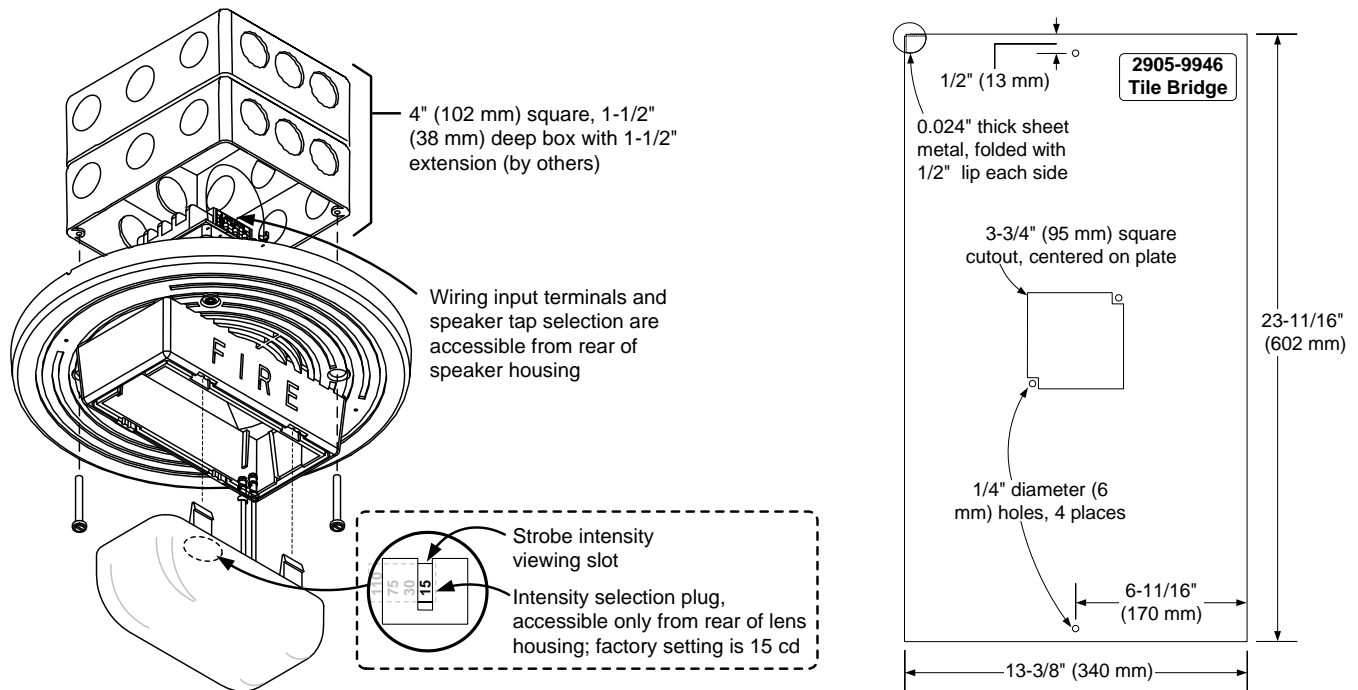
- Speakers are for connection to conventional fire alarm audio circuits. Anechoic speaker output ratings are typically more representative of actual installed sound output.
- The maximum RMS strobe current listed is the device nameplate rating. Strobe designs are constant wattage and the maximum RMS current rating occurs at the lowest allowable operating voltage. (RMS is root mean square and refers to the effective value of a varying current waveform.)

## Speaker Directional Characteristics Reference

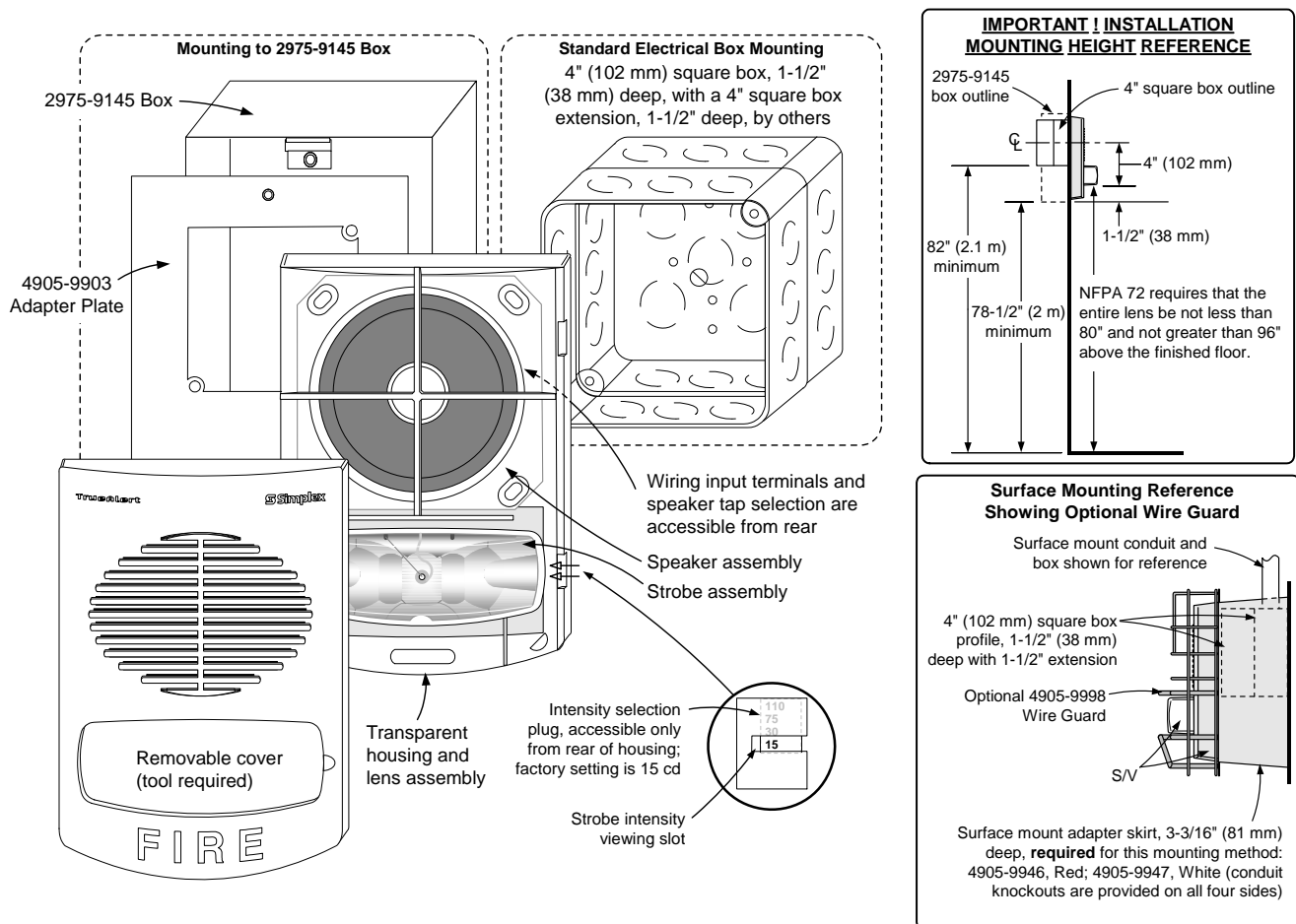




## Ceiling Mount S/V Installation Reference and Tile Bridge Dimensions



## Wall Mount Installation Reference



TYCO, SIMPLEX, and the product names listed in this material are marks and/or registered marks. Unauthorized use is strictly prohibited. NFPA 72 and National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code are registered trademarks of the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA).



Tyco Fire Protection Products • Westminster, MA • 01441-0001 • USA

S4906-0003-8 5/2014

www.simplex-fire.com

© 2014 Tyco Fire Protection Products. All rights reserved. All specifications and other information shown were current as of document revision date and are subject to change without notice.



## The Johnson Controls Warranty Hardware

### JOHNSON CONTROLS WARRANTY STATEMENT:

Johnson Controls warrants to the purchaser of new Johnson Controls product [s] that during the effective period of the warranty such product [s] shall be free of defects in workmanship and material.

### WARRANTY PERIOD:

The warranty period will terminate immediately following the earliest occurrence of either of the following:

#### Building Systems

1. 18 months have elapsed following shipment of any system or subsystem from Johnson Controls to the customer site, or
2. 12 months have elapsed following the final connection operation and beneficial use of all or any part of the system.
- 3. JOHNSON CONTROLS OBLIGATION UNDER THE TERMS OF THE WARRANTY:**

*Johnson Controls sole responsibility shall be to repair, adjust or replace at its option any Johnson Controls product which fails during this period provided purchaser has promptly reported such failure to Johnson Controls in writing. Replacement parts provided under warranty of products may contain used parts which are equivalent new parts when used. Replacement parts will warranted only for the balance of the equipment warranty. Johnson Controls agrees to continue to honor all of the unexpressed express warranties specified above defective equipment after transfer of the equipment to purchaser's customer, provided purchaser's customer assumes the purchaser's obligations specified below.*

EXCEPT FOR THE EXPRESS WARRANTIES STATED HEREIN, JOHNSON CONTROLS DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES ON PRODUCTS FURNISHED THEREUNDER, INCLUDING WITH OUT LIMITATION. ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND THE STATED WARRANTIES ARE IN LIEU OF ALL OBLIGATIONS OR LIABILITIES ON THE PART OF SIMPLEXGRINNELL ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE PERFORMANCE OF THE PRODUCTS. THE SELLER SHALL NOT BE LIABLE

FOR ANY DIRECT, INCIDENTAL OF CONSEQUENTIAL LOSS OR DAMAGE TO THE PURCHASER OR USER OF THIS EQUIPMENT ARISING OUT OF THE FAILURE OF THE EQUIPMENT TO OPERATE IN EXCESS OF THE PURCHASE PRICE OF SAID EQUIPMENT

Johnson Controls makes no warranty and no warranty shall be deemed to exist, that purchaser holds the goods free of the claim of any third person by way of patent infringement or the like.

**4. PURCHASER'S OBLIGATION UNDER THE TERMS OF THE WARRANTY:**

This warranty is contingent upon the proper installation and use of the product [s]. Such warranty shall not apply if the product failure is the result of accident, unusual physical electrical or electromechanical stress, neglect, misuse, user programming errors, failure of electrical power, air conditioning or humidity control, construction dust, damaging foreign substances, transportation or causes other than manufacturing defect. Purchaser agrees to provide full and free access to authorized Johnson Controls employees.

**5. WARRANTY SERVICE HOURS:**

Service provided under this warranty will be performed during 8:00 A.M. to 5:00 P.M. Monday through Friday, excluding locally observes Johnson Controls holidays. Off hours response is available as an extra coast service option.

**6. WARRANTY EXCLUSIONS:**

Labor, Travel, and Mileage for:

1. Service outside of Johnson Controls normal business hours.
2. Program and/or label changes.
3. Failure due to external cause (lighting surges, construction dust, etc.) other than manufacturing defect.

Electrical work external to the equipment supplied by Johnson Controls or maintenance of accessories, alterations, attachments or other devices not furnished by Johnson Controls.

Batteries.

Coverage of equipment classed as a water flow monitoring/control devices installed in or on water piping.



### **RETURNED GOOD POLICY**

- Please inquire with Operations Manager in regards to returning equipment.



## INSTALLATION NOTES

### **Be sure to review all notes prior to System Installation**

- FIVE (5) WORKING DAYS NOTICE IS REQUIRED FOR SCHEDULING A TECHNICIAN. Call Johnson Controls Installation Dispatch at 617-965-5900 xt.555 to schedule a technician for installation support as soon as wiring is started and for other services included in TIS. See technical installation support in your submittal for the list of included services.
- Schedule a final checkout after all equipment and circuits have been installed and tested as described in the Johnson Controls installation instructions.
- Notify Johnson Controls of all system related job meetings and installation questions.
- DO NOT CONNECT ANY POWER TO CONTROL PANEL UNTIL ALL FIELD WIRING IS TESTED. POWER MUST BE APPLIED AC FIRST FOLLOWED BY THE BATTERIES.
- PROPER GROUND REQUIRED: Cabinets must be grounded in accordance with NEC Article 250
- Review all wiring and ask the Johnson Controls technician to explain any wiring you are unfamiliar with.
- Contract document floor plans must show actual location of devices and proper device counts.
- Quotation includes one site visit to test all supplied equipment. Additional testing will be billed at Johnson Controls prevailing.
- Review details on cut sheets and confirm any changes with the Johnson Controls project Manager or Project Engineer.
- THE ELECTRICAL CONTRACTOR IS RESPONSIBLE FOR VERIFYING PROPER DEVICE COUNTS PRIOR TO EQUIPMENT RELEASE. ADDITIONAL DEVICES IF NEEDED WILL REQUIRE A WRITTEN CHANGE ORDER AND WILL BE BILLED TO THE ELECTRICAL CONTRACTOR.
- **ELECTRICAL CONTRACTOR IS RESPONSIBLE FOR ALL TERMINATIONS BOTH IN THE FIELD AND IN THE PANEL. ALL WIRING MUST BE FREE OF OPENS, SHORTS AND GROUNDS PRIOR TO CONNECTION. TERMINATING OF IMPROPER WIRING WHICH RESULTS IN DAMAGE TO THE SYSTEM MODULES WILL VOID THE WARRANTY ON THE SYSTEM AND/OR MODULES.**



THIS SHEET INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



# Fire Alarm Activity Log

Complete one form per incident.

1. Date of Incident: \_\_\_\_\_ Time of Incident: \_\_\_\_\_  
month/day/year  a.m.  p.m.
2. Type of Incident:  alarm condition  trouble condition
3. For alarm conditions: zone in alarm \_\_\_\_\_  
zone description \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. For trouble conditions: (check boxes as required)  
 common trouble lamp  zone trouble lamp  
 earth ground lamp  notification appliance circuit trouble lamp  
 other trouble lamps; describe \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Describe cause of the alarm or trouble condition: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Describe what action was taken to clear the alarm or trouble condition:  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Indicate the date and time when fire alarm system was returned to normal.  
Date: \_\_\_\_\_ Time: \_\_\_\_\_  
month/day/year  a.m.  p.m.

Signed: \_\_\_\_\_ Title: \_\_\_\_\_

THIS SHEET INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.

# Fire Alarm Service Log

Complete each time fire alarm system is serviced.

Date of Service	Service Company	Technician's Signature	Type of Service
/ /			
/ /			
/ /			
/ /			
/ /			
/ /			
/ /			
/ /			
/ /			
/ /			
/ /			
/ /			

THIS SHEET INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.

# Fire Alarm Testing Log

Complete each time fire alarm system is serviced.

Date of Test	Testing Company	Technician's Signature	Type of Test
/ /			
/ /			
/ /			
/ /			
/ /			
/ /			
/ /			
/ /			
/ /			
/ /			
/ /			
/ /			

THIS SHEET INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.

**BIG SKY AIR BALANCE, INC.**

P.O. Box 453

Billerica, MA 01821

Phone: 978-808-1353

Fax: 978-362-3917

email: [bigskyair1@gmail.com](mailto:bigskyair1@gmail.com)

Test & Balance Results

for

---

**HARVARD KENNEDY SCHOOL**

---

**TAUBMAN BUILDING**

---

**FCU'S & SV'S**

---

**MANCINI SHEET METAL**

---



*Mark Montana*

---

Mark Montana













**BIG SKY AIR BALANCE, INC.**

P.O. Box 453

Billerica, MA 01821

Phone: 978-808-1353

Fax: 978-362-3917

email: [bigskyair1@gmail.com](mailto:bigskyair1@gmail.com)**DIFFUSER & GRILLE TEST SHEET**Job Name: HARVARD KENNEDY SCHOOL TAUBMAN BLDDate: 1/9/2021 Sheet No.: 5

System Name &amp; No.:

FCU'S

LOCATION	CODE NO.	TYPE	SIZE	FLOW FACTOR	DESIGN		ACTUAL		REMARK CODE
					C.F.M.	VEL.	VEL.	C.F.M.	
FCU-2									
258	23	CD	9X9	FH	270			267	
260	24	CD	9X9	FH	270			272	
					540		TOTAL	539	
FCU-4									
252	25	CD	9X9	FH	220			219	
252	26	CD	9X9	FH	220			212	
252	27	CD	9X9	FH	220			216	
252	28	CD	9X9	FH	250			239	
252	29	CD	9X9	FH	220			209	
					1130		TOTAL	1095	
FCU-1									
252	30	CD	9X9	FH	250			264	
252	31	CD	9X9	FH	250			259	
					500		TOTAL	523	
FCU-1									
262	32	CD	6X6	FH	125			117	
262	33	CD	9X9	FH	250			259	
					375		TOTAL	376	



**BIG SKY AIR BALANCE, INC.**

P.O. Box 453  
 Billerica, MA 01821  
 Phone: 978-808-1353  
 Fax: 978-362-3917  
 email: [bigskyair1@gmail.com](mailto:bigskyair1@gmail.com)

**DIFFUSER & GRILLE TEST SHEET**

Job Name: HARVARD KENNEDY SCHOOL TAUBMAN BLD Date: 1/9/2021 Sheet No.: 6

System Name & No.: FCU'S

LOCATION	CODE NO.	TYPE	SIZE	FLOW FACTOR	DESIGN		ACTUAL		REMARK CODE
					C.F.M.	VEL.	VEL.	C.F.M.	
FCU-1									
264	34	CD	6X6	FH	125			124	
264	35	CD	9X9	FH	250			259	
					375		TOTAL	383	
FCU-1									
266	36	CD	6X6	FH	125			118	
266	37	CD	9X9	FH	250			237	
					375		TOTAL	355	
FCU-1									
268	38	CD	6X6	FH	125			118	
268	39	CD	9X9	FH	250			241	
					375		TOTAL	359	
FCU-1									
270	40	CD	6X6	FH	125			122	
270	41	CD	9X9	FH	250			244	
					375		TOTAL	366	
FCU-4									
252	42	CD	9X9	FH	250			269	
252	43	CD	9X9	FH	300			319	
252	44	CD	9X9	FH	250			265	
					800		TOTAL	853	



**BIG SKY AIR BALANCE, INC.**

P.O. Box 453

Billerica, MA 01821

Phone: 978-808-1353

Fax: 978-362-3917

email: [bigskyair1@gmail.com](mailto:bigskyair1@gmail.com)**CIRCUIT SETTER TEST SHEET**JOB NAME: HARVARD KENNEDY SCHOOLSHEET NO.: 8PUMP NO. HOT WATERDATE: 1/10/2021

LOCATION	CODE NO.	UNIT	SIZE	SETTING	METER READING	DESIGN GPM	ACTUAL GPM
256	1	SV-1	B&G 3/4"	40	4'	0.2	0.55
258	2	SV-2	B&G 3/4"	40	4'	0.4	0.55
261	3	SV-1	B&G 3/4"	40	4'	0.3	0.55
255	4	SV-1	B&G 3/4"	40	4'	0.2	0.55
257	5	SV-1	B&G 3/4"	40	5'	0.2	0.6
252	6	SV-3	B&G 3/4"	25	5'	1.2	1.45
252	7	SV-2	B&G 3/4"	40	4'	0.2	0.55
252	8	SV-2	B&G 3/4"	40	5'	0.2	0.6
DELETED	9						DELETED
250	10	SV-2	B&G 3/4"	30	3'	0.5	0.8
246	11	SV-2	B&G 3/4"	30	3'	0.8	0.8
244	12	SV-2	B&G 3/4"	40	4'	0.2	0.55
CORR	13	SV-2	B&G 3/4"	40	5'	0.2	0.6
ETR LOBBY	14	SV-3	B&G 3/4"	30	3'	0.4	0.8
232	15	SV-2	B&G 3/4"	40	4'	0.2	0.55
236	16	SV-2	B&G 3/4"	40	5'	0.2	0.6
LOBBY	17	SV-2	B&G 3/4"	40	5'	0.3	0.6







HYDRAULIC CALCULATIONS AT SPECIFIED DENSITY

THE FOLLOWING SPRINKLERS ARE OPERATING IN:

TEST AREA 1       TEST AREA 2       TEST AREA 3       REMOTE AREA

Elevation of sprinklers = Elevation above water test.

REF. PT.	K	ELEV. ft	FLOW gpm	PRESSURE psi
60	5.60	30.00	27.14	23.48
61	5.60	30.00	26.17	21.84
62	5.60	30.00	25.36	20.51
63	5.60	30.00	23.74	17.97
64	5.60	30.00	20.80	13.80
65	5.60	30.00	19.74	12.42
66	5.60	30.00	21.10	14.20
67	5.60	30.00	20.30	13.13
68	5.60	30.00	21.59	14.86
69	5.60	30.00	21.07	14.15
70	5.60	30.00	17.88	10.20
71	5.60	30.00	17.19	9.43
72	5.60	30.00	20.92	13.96
73	5.60	30.00	19.56	12.20
74	5.60	30.00	17.10	9.32
75	5.60	30.00	16.06	8.22
76	5.60	30.00	20.48	13.38
77	5.60	30.00	18.28	10.65
78	5.60	30.00	15.73	7.89
79	5.60	30.00	15.00	7.17
80	5.60	30.00	16.66	8.84
81	5.60	30.00	17.33	9.58

THE SPRINKLER SYSTEM FLOW IS 439.21 gpm  
 THE OUTSIDE HOSE FLOW AT REFERENCE POINT NO. 1 IS 100.00 gpm  
 THE INSIDE HOSE       RACK SPKLR'S.  
 YARD HYDT. FLOW IS 0.00 gpm  
 THE MINIMUM DENSITY PROVIDED BY THIS SYSTEM IS 0.100 gpm/sq. ft.

THE FOLLOWING PRESSURES & FLOWS OCCUR  
 ---> AT REF. PT. 1 <---

STATIC PRESSURE 165.00 psi  
 RESIDUAL PRESSURE 105.00 psi AT 1125.00 gpm  
 TOTAL SYSTEM FLOW 539.21 gpm

Balldon Fire Protection, Inc.  
Fire Protection Contractors

Harvard Kennedy School CPLR (2nd Flr Renovations) 11/20/2020

PAGE 2

AVAILABLE PRESSURE	149.63 psi	AT	539.21 gpm
OPERATING PRESSURE	133.57 psi	AT	539.21 gpm
PRESSURE REMAINING	16.06 psi		

Balldon Fire Protection, Inc.  
Fire Protection Contractors

Harvard Kennedy School CPLR (2nd Flr Renovations) 11/20/2020

PAGE 3

FITTING Equivalent Length per NFPA 13 1994, 6-4.3

'-' Indicates Equivalent Length. 'T' Indicates Threaded Fitting

1=45 Elbow, 2=90 Elbow, 3='T'/Cross, 4=Butterfly Valve, 5=Gate Valve, 6=Swing Check Valve

FROM	TO	FLOW (gpm)	PIPE (ft)	FITS	EQV. (ft)	H-W C	PIPE TYPE	DIA. (in)	FRIC. (psi)	ELEV. (psi)	FROM (psi)	TO (psi)	DIFF (psi)
1	2	439.21	50.00	235	48.44	140	101	5.890	0.007	0.433	133.57	132.48	0.66
2	3	439.21	2.00	0	0.00	120	2	6.357	0.006	0.000	132.48	132.47	0.01
3	4	439.21	4.00	0	0.00	120	2	6.357	0.006	0.000	132.47	132.44	0.02
4	5	439.21	6.00	2356	87.98	120	2	6.357	0.006	1.300	132.44	130.57	0.58
5	6	439.21	2.00	0	0.00	120	2	6.357	0.006	0.867	130.57	129.69	0.01
6	7	439.21	100.00	222	37.65	120	2	6.357	0.006	0.000	129.69	128.85	0.84
7	8	439.21	50.00	2222	50.20	120	2	6.357	0.006	0.000	128.85	128.19	0.65
8	9	439.21	24.00	235	47.82	120	2	6.357	0.006	10.400	128.19	117.35	0.44
9	10	439.21	12.00	2356	41.24	120	2	2.635	0.447	0.000	117.35	93.57	23.78
10	11	439.21	28.00	2222	23.56	120	2	2.635	0.447	0.000	93.57	70.54	23.03
11	12	439.21	72.00	2222	23.56	120	2	2.635	0.447	0.000	70.54	27.86	42.68
12	13	360.53	12.00	0	0.00	120	2	2.635	0.310	0.000	27.86	24.11	3.75
13	14	296.25	12.00	0	0.00	120	2	2.635	0.215	0.000	24.11	21.53	2.58
14	15	254.85	12.00	0	0.00	120	2	2.635	0.163	0.000	21.53	19.66	1.87
15	16	177.12	12.00	0	0.00	120	2	2.635	0.083	0.000	19.66	18.75	0.91
16	17	103.48	12.00	0	0.00	120	2	2.635	0.031	0.000	18.75	18.38	0.37
17	18	103.48	12.00	23	20.69	120	2	2.635	0.031	0.000	18.38	17.42	0.96
18	19	83.00	5.00	0	0.00	120	2	2.635	0.020	0.000	17.42	17.28	0.14
12	30	78.68	5.00	3	8.50	120	1	2.067	0.060	0.000	27.86	27.05	0.81
30	22	51.54	10.00	0	0.00	120	1	1.610	0.093	0.000	27.05	26.12	0.93
22	31	51.54	5.00	0	0.00	120	1	1.380	0.197	0.000	26.12	25.17	0.94
31	32	25.36	8.00	0	0.00	120	1	1.049	0.202	0.000	25.17	23.65	1.52
13	33	64.28	6.00	3	5.30	120	1	1.380	0.297	0.000	24.11	20.76	3.35
33	34	40.54	10.00	0	0.00	120	1	1.049	0.480	0.000	20.76	15.98	4.78
34	35	19.74	10.00	22	3.40	120	1	1.049	0.127	0.000	15.98	14.40	1.58
14	36	41.40	6.00	3	4.20	120	1	1.049	0.499	0.000	21.53	16.43	5.09
36	37	20.30	10.00	0	0.00	120	1	1.049	0.133	0.000	16.43	15.22	1.22
15	38	77.73	6.00	3	6.40	120	1	1.610	0.199	0.000	19.66	17.19	2.47
38	39	56.15	4.00	0	0.00	120	1	1.380	0.231	0.000	17.19	16.38	0.81
39	21	35.08	9.00	0	0.00	120	1	1.380	0.097	0.000	16.38	15.51	0.87
21	40	35.08	10.00	0	0.00	120	1	1.049	0.367	0.000	15.51	11.84	3.67
40	41	17.19	8.00	0	0.00	120	1	1.049	0.098	0.000	11.84	10.96	0.89
16	42	73.64	8.00	3	6.40	120	1	1.610	0.180	0.000	18.75	16.16	2.59
42	43	52.71	10.00	0	0.00	120	1	1.380	0.205	0.000	16.16	14.14	2.02
43	44	33.15	10.00	0	0.00	120	1	1.049	0.331	0.000	14.14	10.84	3.31
44	45	16.06	12.00	2	1.70	120	1	1.049	0.086	0.000	10.84	9.57	1.27
18	46	20.48	10.00	3	4.20	120	1	1.049	0.136	0.000	17.42	15.49	1.93
19	47	49.01	3.00	3	4.20	120	1	1.049	0.683	0.000	17.28	12.37	4.92
47	48	30.73	9.00	2	1.70	120	1	1.049	0.288	0.000	12.37	9.19	3.18
48	49	15.00	9.00	2	1.70	120	1	1.049	0.076	0.000	9.19	8.36	0.83
19	20	33.99	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.347	0.000	17.28	11.76	5.52

Balldon Fire Protection, Inc.  
 Fire Protection Contractors

Harvard Kennedy School CPLR (2nd Flr Renovations) 11/20/2020

PAGE 4

FITTING Equivalent Length per NFPA 13 1994, 6-4.3

'-' Indicates Equivalent Length. 'T' Indicates Threaded Fitting

1=45 Elbow, 2=90 Elbow, 3='T'/Cross, 4=Butterfly Valve, 5=Gate Valve, 6=Swing Check Valve

FROM	TO	FLOW (gpm)	PIPE (ft)	FITS	EQV. (ft)	H-W C	PIPE TYPE	DIA. (in)	FRIC. (psi)	ELEV. (psi)	FROM (psi)	TO (psi)	DIFF (psi)
20	50	16.66	10.00	23	5.90	120	1	1.049	0.092	0.000	11.76	10.29	1.47
20	51	17.33	6.00	0	0.00	120	1	1.049	0.100	0.000	11.76	11.13	0.63
30	60	27.14	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.228	0.000	27.05	23.48	3.56
31	61	26.17	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.214	0.000	25.17	21.84	3.33
32	62	25.36	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.202	0.000	23.65	20.51	3.14
33	63	23.74	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.178	0.000	20.76	17.97	2.78
34	64	20.80	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.140	0.000	15.98	13.80	2.18
35	65	19.74	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.127	0.000	14.40	12.42	1.98
36	66	21.10	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.143	0.000	16.43	14.20	2.24
37	67	20.30	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.133	0.000	15.22	13.13	2.08
38	68	21.59	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.150	0.000	17.19	14.86	2.33
39	69	21.07	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.143	0.000	16.38	14.15	2.23
40	70	17.88	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.106	0.000	11.84	10.20	1.65
41	71	17.19	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.098	0.000	10.96	9.43	1.53
42	72	20.92	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.141	0.000	16.16	13.96	2.20
43	73	19.56	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.125	0.000	14.14	12.20	1.94
44	74	17.10	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.097	0.000	10.84	9.32	1.51
45	75	16.06	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.086	0.000	9.57	8.22	1.35
46	76	20.48	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.136	0.000	15.49	13.38	2.12
47	77	18.28	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.110	0.000	12.37	10.65	1.71
48	78	15.73	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.083	0.000	9.19	7.89	1.30
49	79	15.00	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.076	0.000	8.36	7.17	1.19
50	80	16.66	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.092	0.000	10.29	8.84	1.44
51	81	17.33	8.00	223	7.60	120	1	1.049	0.100	0.000	11.13	9.58	1.55

A MAX. VELOCITY OF 25.83 ft./sec. OCCURS BETWEEN REF. PT. 11 AND 12

Sprinkler-CALC Release 7.2 Win  
 By Walsh Engineering Inc.  
 North Kingstown R.I. U.S.A.

Balldon Fire Protection, Inc.  
Fire Protection Contractors  
4 Pearl Street, Dedham, MA 02026

H Y D R A U L I C C A L C U L A T I O N S  
C O V E R S H E E T



Harvard Kennedy School CPLR (2nd Flr Renovations) 11/20/2020

W A T E R S U P P L Y

STATIC PRESSURE (psi) 165  
RESIDUAL PRESSURE (psi) 105  
RESIDUAL FLOW (gpm) 1125

B O O S T E R P U M P S

NUMBER OF BOOSTER PUMPS 1

PUMP #	RATED PRESSURE (psi)	RATED CAPACITY (gpm)	LOCATION
1	80.00	750.00	BETWEEN REF PT 0 AND REF PT 0

S P R I N K L E R S

MAXIMUM SPACING OF SPRINKLERS (ft) 10  
MAXIMUM SPACING OF SPRINKLER LINES (ft) 15  
SPECIFIED DISCHARGE DENSITY (gpm/sq. ft.) .1

THIS SPRINKLER SYSTEM WILL DELIVER A DENSITY OF .1 gpm/sq. ft.  
FOR A DESIGN AREA OF 1500 SQ. FT. OF FLOOR AREA

THIS SYSTEM OPERATES AT A FLOW OF 439.21 gpm AT A PRESSURE OF 130.57 psi  
AT THE BASE OF THE RISER (REF. PT. 5)

PIPES USED FOR THIS SYSTEM

=====

- 101 CAST IRON CEMENT LINED (150)
- 002 SCHEDULE 10
- 001 SCHEDULE 40

**NR**  
**Phillips**

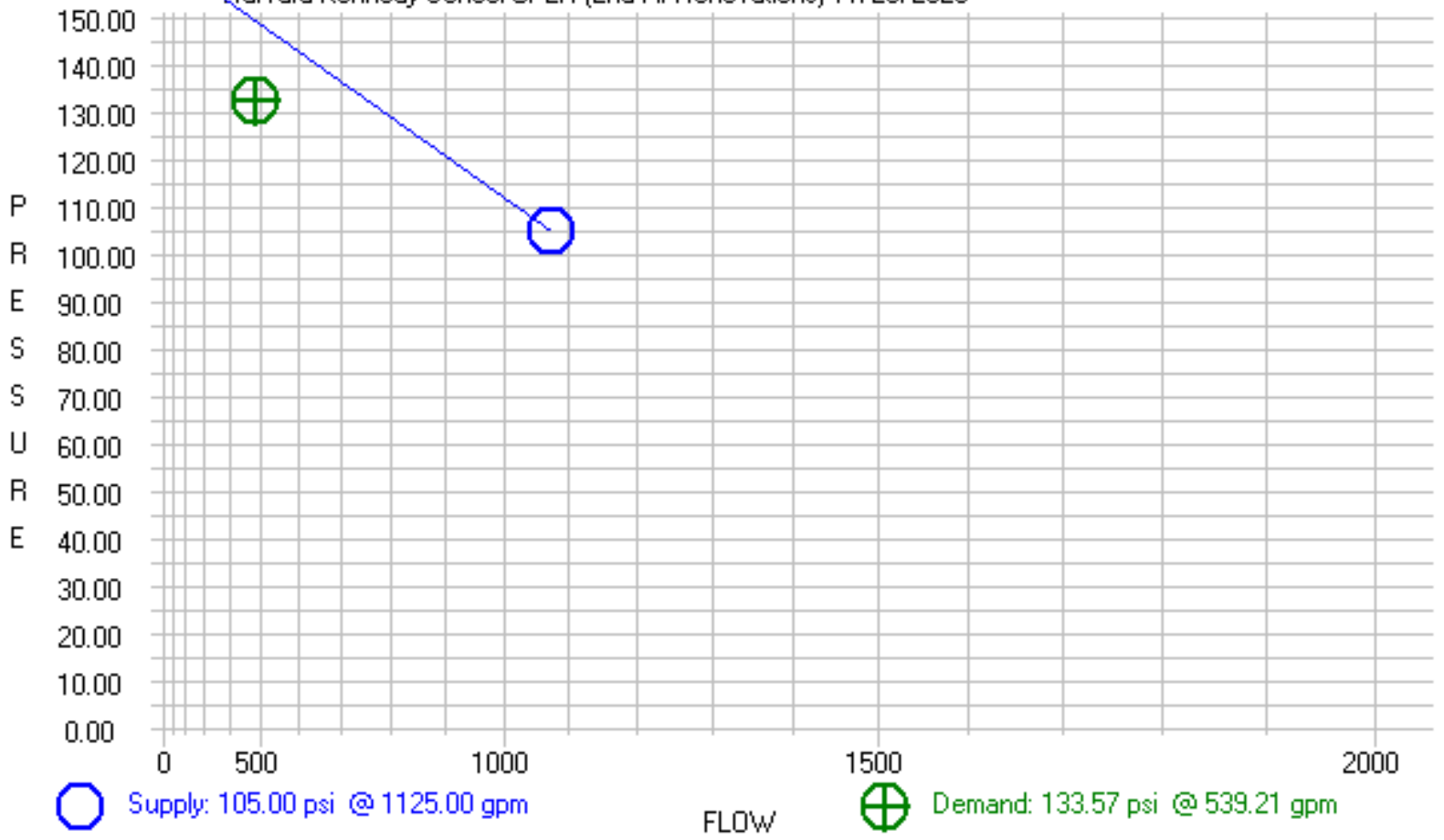
Digitally signed  
by NR Phillips  
Date:  
2021.01.07  
17:24:28 -05'00'





# WATER SUPPLY/DEMAND GRAPH

Harvard Kennedy School CPLR (2nd Flr Renovations) 11/20/2020



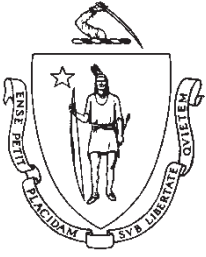
Sprinkler-CALC 7.2 Win



DELUGE & PREACTION VALVES	OPERATION		PNEUMATIC		ELECTRIC		HYDRAULIC			
			YES	NO			YES	NO		
	DOES THE VALVE OPERATE FROM THE MANUAL TRIP AND/OR REMOTE CONTROL							YES	NO	
	IS THERE AN ACCESSIBLE FACILITY IN EACH CIRCUIT FOR TESTING							YES	NO	
	MAKE	MODEL	DOES EACH CIRCUIT OPERATE SUPERVISION		DOES EACH CIRCUIT OPERATE VALVE RELEASE		MAXIMUM TIME TO OPERATE RELEASE			
		YES	NO	YES	NO	MIN.	SEC.			
TEST DESCRIPTION	HYDROSTATIC: HYDROSTATIC TESTS SHALL BE MADE AT NOT LESS THAN 200 PSI FOR TWO HOURS OR 50 PSI ABOVE STATIC PRESSURE IN EXCESS OF 150 PSI FOR TWO HOURS. DIFFERENTIAL DRY PIPE VALVE CLAPPERS SHALL BE LEFT OPEN DURING									
	FLUSHING: FLOW THE REQUIRED RATE UNTIL WATER IS CLEAR AS INDICATED BY NO COLLECTION OF FOREIGN MATERIAL IN BURLAP BAGS AS OUTLET S SUCH AS HYDRANTS AND BLOW-OFFS. FLUSH AT FLOWS NOT LESS THAN 400 GPM FOR 4" PIPE, 600 GPM FOR 5" PIPE, 750 GPM FOR 6" PIPE, 1000 GPM FOR 8" PIPE, 1500 GPM FOR 10" PIPE, 2000 GPM FOR 12" PIPE. WHEN SUPPLY CANNOT PRODUCE STIPULATED FLOW RATES, OBTAIN MAXIMUM AVAILABLE.									
	PNEUMATIC: ESTABLISH 40 PSI AIR PRESSURE AND MEASURE DROP WHICH SHALL NOT EXCEED 1½ PSI IN 24 HOURS. TEST									
TESTS	ALL PIPING HYDROSTATICALLY TESTED AT (SEE NOTE BELOW)						normal static	PSI 165 FOR	2	HR
	DRY PIPING PNEUMATICALLY TESTED						X	YES		NO
	EQUIPMENT OPERATES PROPERLY						X	YES		NO
	DRAIN TEST (See Note Below)	READING OF GAGE LOCATED NEAR WATER SUPPLY TEST PIPE: STATIC PRESSURE:				PSI	RESIDUAL PRESSURE WITH VALVE IN TEST PIPE WIDE OPEN			PSI
	UNDERGROUND MAINS AND LEAD IN CONNECTIONS TO SYSTEM RISERS FLUSHED BEFORE CONNECTION MADE TO SPRINKLER PIPING									
	VERIFIED BY COPY OF THE U FORM NO. 85B						YES			NO
	FLUSHED BY INSTALLER OF UNDERGROUND						YES			NO
BLANK	NUMBER	0	LOCATIONS					NUMBER		
WELDING	WELDED	X	YES		NO	IF YES...				
	DO YOU CERTIFY AS THE SPRINKLER CONTRACTOR THAT WELDING PROCEDURES COMPLY WITH THE REQUIREMENTS OF AT LEAST AWS D10.9, LEVEL AR-3						X	YES		NO
	DO YOU CERTIFY THAT THE WELDING WAS PERFORMED BY WELDERS QUALIFIED IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE REQUIREMENTS OF AT LEAST AWS D10.9, LEVEL AR-3						X	YES		NO
	DO YOU CERTIFY THAT WELDING WAS CARRIED OUT IN COMPLIANCE WITH A DOCUMENTED QUALITY CONTROL PROCEDURE TO INSURE THAT ALL DISCS ARE RETRIEVED, THAT OPENINGS IN PIPING ARE SMOOTH,						X	YES		NO
HYDRAULIC DATA	NAME PLATE PROVIDED		YES		NO	DATE LEFT IN SERVICE WITH ALL CONTROL VALVES OPEN 12/18/2020				
SIGNATURES	NAME OF SPRINKLER CONTRACTOR		BALLDON FIRE PROTECTION INC.							
	TEST WITNESSED BY									
	FOR PROPERTY OWNER (SIGNED)					TITLE			DATE	
	FOR SPRINKLER CONTRACTOR (SIGNED) <i>Kevin Twokig</i>					TITLE <b>Fitter/Foreman</b>			DATE <b>1/5/2021</b>	

**ADDITIONAL EXPLANATION AND NOTES:**

Hydrostatic test was conducted in accordance with NFPA 13 - Alterations to the existing system cannot be isolated, permits hydrostatic test to be conducted at the system's normal static pressure (165 psi at 2 hours)  
 2" drain test not conducted fire pump verified at normal operating condition with all control valves in open position.



# Final Construction Control Document

To be submitted at completion of construction by a  
**Registered Design Professional**  
*for work per the ninth edition of the*  
**Massachusetts State Building Code, 780 CMR, Section 107**

**Project Title:** Harvard Kennedy School CPLR 2nd Floor Buildout    **Date:** 1/5/2021    **Permit No.**

**Property Address:** 15 Eliot Street, Cambridge, MA

**Project:** Check (x) one or both as applicable: **New construction** x **Existing Construction**

**Project description:** Center for Public Leadership Renovation 2<sup>nd</sup> Floor Buildout – Modifications to the existing automatic fire protection sprinkler system as required per the International Existing Building Code (IEBC 2015), International Building Code (IBC 2015), IFC (2015) and amendments in Massachusetts State Building Code 780 CMR 9<sup>th</sup> edition. Design and installation in accordance with NFPA 13 (2013).

I Nathaniel Phillips MA Registration Number: 39850    Expiration date: 6/30/2022    , am a **registered design professional**, and I have prepared or directly supervised the preparation of all design plans, computations and specifications concerning:

**Architectural**  
x **Fire Protection**

**Structural**  
**Electrical**

**Mechanical**  
**Other: Describe**

for the above named project. I, or my designee, have performed the necessary professional services and was present at the construction site on a regular and periodic basis. To the best of my knowledge, information, and belief the work proceeded in accordance with the requirements of 780 CMR and the design documents approved as part of the building permit and that I or my designee:

1. **Have reviewed**, for conformance to this code and the design concept, shop drawings, samples and other submittals by the contractor in accordance with the requirements of the construction documents.
2. **Have performed** the duties for registered design professionals in 780 CMR Chapter 17, as applicable.
3. **Have been present** at intervals appropriate to the stage of construction to become generally familiar with the progress and quality of the work and to determine if the work was performed in a manner consistent with the construction documents and this code.

Nothing in this document relieves the contractor of its responsibility regarding the provisions of 780 CMR 107.

Enter in the space to the right a “wet” or electronic signature and seal:

NR  
Phillips  
Digitally signed  
by NR Phillips  
Date:  
2021.01.05  
15:51:38 -05'00'



**Phone number:** 339-987-0375

**Email:** phillipsfire.np@gmail.com

*Building Official Use Only*

**Building Official Name:**      **Permit No.:**      **Date:**



## SYSTEM RECORD OF COMPLETION

*This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval.  
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.  
Insert N/A in all unused lines.*

*Attach additional sheets, data, or calculations as necessary to provide a complete record.*

Form Completion Date: 01/06/2021 Supplemental Pages Attached: 2

### 1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: KENNEDY SCHOOL TAUBMAN FLOOR 2

Address: 16 ELLIOT STREET CAMBRIDGE MA

Description of property: OFFICE SPACE

Name of property representative: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Phone: \_\_\_\_\_ Fax: \_\_\_\_\_ E-mail: \_\_\_\_\_

### 2. INSTALLATION, SERVICE, TESTING, AND MONITORING INFORMATION

Installation contractor: KERRY ELECTRIC

Address: 453 CLAPBOARD TREE STREET, WESTWOOD MA

Phone: 617-719-9603 Fax: \_\_\_\_\_ E-mail: \_\_\_\_\_

Service organization: JCI

Address: 95 SHAWMUT AVE, CANTON, MA

Phone: 617-965-5900 Fax: \_\_\_\_\_ E-mail: \_\_\_\_\_

Testing organization: JCI

Address: 95 SHAWMUT AVE, CANTON, MA

Phone: 617-965-5900 Fax: \_\_\_\_\_ E-mail: \_\_\_\_\_

Effective date for test and inspection contract: EXISTING

Monitoring organization: HARVARD OPERATIONS

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Phone: \_\_\_\_\_ Fax: \_\_\_\_\_ E-mail: \_\_\_\_\_

Account number: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone line 1: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone line 2: \_\_\_\_\_

Means of transmission: \_\_\_\_\_

Entity to which alarms are retransmitted: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone: \_\_\_\_\_

### 3. DOCUMENTATION

On-site location of the required record documents and site-specific software: FLR 1 FIRE COMMAND

### 4. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE

This is a:  New system  Modification to existing system Permit number: \_\_\_\_\_

NFPA 72 edition: \_\_\_\_\_

#### 4.1 Control Unit

Manufacturer: SIMPLEX Model number: 4100ES

#### 4.2 Software and Firmware

Firmware revision number: 2.03.02

#### 4.3 Alarm Verification

This system does not incorporate alarm verification.

Number of devices subject to alarm verification: \_\_\_\_\_ Alarm verification set for \_\_\_\_\_ seconds



**SYSTEM RECORD OF COMPLETION (continued)**

**5. SYSTEM POWER**

**5.1 Control Unit**

**5.1.1 Primary Power**

Input voltage of control panel: 120 Control panel amps: 20  
 Overcurrent protection: Type: BREAKER Amps: 20  
 Branch circuit disconnecting means location: PENTHOUSE PANEL-E2P Number: #17

**5.1.2 Secondary Power**

Type of secondary power: BATTERY  
 Location, if remote from the plant: FL1 FIRE CAMMAND  
 Calculated capacity of secondary power to drive the system:  
 In standby mode (hours): 24 In alarm mode (minutes): 15

**5.2 Control Unit**

- This system does not have power extender panels
- Power extender panels are listed on supplementary sheet A

**6. CIRCUITS AND PATHWAYS**

Pathway Type	Dual Media Pathway	Separate Pathway	Class	Survivability Level
Signaling Line		0	0	0
Device Power		0	0	0
Initiating Device		0	0	0
Notification Appliance		2	A	1
Other (specify):				

**7. REMOTE ANNUNCIATORS**

Type	Location
NA	

**8. INITIATING DEVICES**

Type	Quantity	Addressable or Conventional	Alarm or Supervisory	Sensing Technology
Manual Pull Stations	0	0	0	0
Smoke Detectors	0	0	0	0
Duct Smoke Detectors	0	0	0	0
Heat Detectors	0	0	0	0
Gas Detectors	0	0	0	0
Waterflow Switches	0	0	0	0
Tamper Switches	0	0	0	0

**SYSTEM RECORD OF COMPLETION (continued)**

**9. NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES**

Type	Quantity	Description
Audible	4	SPEAKER ONLY
Visible	0	
Combination Audible and Visible	15	SPEAKER STROBE

**10. SYSTEM CONTROL FUNCTIONS**

Type	Quantity
Hold-Open Door Releasing Devices	0
HVAC Shutdown	0
Fire/Smoke Dampers	0
Door Unlocking	0
Elevator Recall	0
Elevator Shunt Trip	0

**11. INTERCONNECTED SYSTEMS**

- This system does not have interconnected systems.
- Interconnected systems are listed on supplementary sheet \_\_\_\_\_ .

**12. CERTIFICATION AND APPROVALS**

**12.1 System Installation Contractor**

This system as specified herein has been installed according to all NFPA standards cited herein.

Signed: \_\_\_\_\_ Printed name: SEAMUS O'DOHERTY Date: 01/06/2021  
 Organization: KERRY ELECRIC Title: FOREMAN Phone: \_\_\_\_\_

**12.2 System Operational Test**

This system as specified herein has tested according to all NFPA standards cited herein.

Signed: KEVIN FOUNTAIN Printed name: KEVIN FOUNTAIN Date: 01/06/2021  
 Organization: JCI Title: PROGRAMMER IV Phone: 617-965 5900

**12.3 Acceptance Test**

Date and time of acceptance test: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Installing contractor representative: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Testing contractor representative: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Property representative: \_\_\_\_\_  
 AHJ representative: \_\_\_\_\_

# SYSTEM RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING

This form is to be completed by the system inspection and testing contractor at the time of a system test.  
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.  
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Attach additional sheets, data, or calculations as necessary to provide a complete record.

Inspection/Test Start Date/Time: 09/03/2020 Inspection/Test Completion Date/Time: 09/03/2020

Supplemental Form(s) Attached: 1 (yes/no)

## 1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: KENNEDY SCHOOL TAUBMAN FLOOR 2

Address: 16 ELLIOT STREET CAMBRIDGE MA

Description of property: OFFICE SPACE

Name of property representative: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Phone: \_\_\_\_\_ Fax: \_\_\_\_\_ E-mail: \_\_\_\_\_

## 2. TESTING AND MONITORING INFORMATION

Testing organization: JOHNSON CONTROLS INC.

Address: 95 SHAWMUT AVE, CANTON, MA

Phone: 617-965-5900 Fax: \_\_\_\_\_ E-mail: \_\_\_\_\_

Monitoring organization: HARVARD OPERATION

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Phone: 617-495-5560 Fax: \_\_\_\_\_ E-mail: \_\_\_\_\_

Account number: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone line 1: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone line 2: \_\_\_\_\_

Means of transmission: \_\_\_\_\_

Entity to which alarms are retransmitted: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone: \_\_\_\_\_

## 3. DOCUMENTATION

On-site location of the required record documents and site-specific software: FLR 1 FIRE COMMAND

## 4. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE

### 4.1 Control Unit

Manufacturer: SIMPLEX Model number: 4100ES

### 4.2 Software Firmware

Firmware revision number: 2.03.02

### 4.3 System Power

#### 4.3.1 Primary (Main) Power

Nominal voltage: 120V Amps: 20 Location: PENTHOUSE E2P #17

Overcurrent protection type: Breaker Amps: 20 Disconnecting means location: SAME AS ABOVE

## SYSTEM RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

### 4. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE *(continued)*

#### 4.3.2 Secondary Power

Type: BATTERY Location: FLR 1 FIRE COMMAND

Battery type (if applicable): Sealed Lead Acid Batteries

Calculated capacity of batteries to drive the system:

In standby mode (hours): 24 In alarm mode (minutes): 15

### 5. NOTIFICATIONS MADE PRIOR TO TESTING

Monitoring organization	Contact: <u>HARVARD OPS</u>	Time: <u>07:00 AM</u>
Building management	Contact: _____	Time: _____
Building occupants	Contact: _____	Time: _____
Authority having jurisdiction	Contact: _____	Time: _____
Other, if required	Contact: _____	Time: _____

### 6. TESTING RESULTS

#### 6.1 Control Unit and Related Equipment

Description	Visual Inspection	Functional Test	Comments
Control unit	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Lamps/LEDs/LCDs	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Fuses	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Trouble signals	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Disconnect switches	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Ground-fault monitoring	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Supervision	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Local annunciator	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	NA
Remote annunciators	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	NA
Remote power panels	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	NA
	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	

#### 6.2 Secondary Power

Description	Visual Inspection	Functional Test	Comments
Battery condition	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Load voltage	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Discharge test	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Charger test	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Remote panel batteries	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	

**SYSTEM RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING (continued)**

**6. TESTING RESULTS (continued)**

**6.3 Alarm and Supervisory Alarm Initiating Device**

Attach supplementary device test sheets for all initiating devices.

**6.4 Notification Appliances**

Attach supplementary appliance test sheets for all notification appliances.

**6.5 Interface Equipment**

Attach supplementary interface component test sheets for all interface components.

*Circuit Interface / Signaling Line Circuit Interface / Fire Alarm Control Interface*

**6.6 Supervising Station Monitoring**

Description	Yes	No	Time	Comments
Alarm signal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Alarm restoration	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Trouble signal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Trouble restoration	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Supervisory signal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Supervisory restoration	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		

**6.7 Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System**

Description	Yes	No	Time	Comments
Alarm signal	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		NA
Alarm restoration	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		NA
Trouble signal	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		NA
Trouble restoration	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		NA
Supervisory signal	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		NA
Supervisory restoration	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		NA

**SYSTEM RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING (continued)**

**7. NOTIFICATIONS THAT TESTING IS COMPLETE**

Monitoring organization	Contact: <u>HARVARD OPERATIONS</u>	Time: <u>09:30 AM</u>
Building management	Contact: _____	Time: _____
Building occupants	Contact: _____	Time: _____
Authority having jurisdiction	Contact: _____	Time: _____
Other, if required	Contact: _____	Time: _____

**8. SYSTEM RESTORED TO NORMAL OPERATION**

Date: 09/01/2020 Time: 9:30 AM

**9. CERTIFICATION**

This system as specified herein has been inspected and tested according to NFPA 72, 2013 edition, Chapter 14.

Signed: KEVIN FOUNTAIN Printed name: KEVIN FOUNTAIN Date: 01/06/2021  
Organization: JOHNSON CONTROLS INC Title: PROGRAMMER IV Phone: 617-965-5900  
Qualifications (refer to 10.5.3): \_\_\_\_\_

**10. DEFECTS OR MALFUNCTIONS NOT CORRECTED AT CONCLUSION OF SYSTEM INSPECTION, TESTING, OR MAINTENANCE**

DECIBEL READING IN SOME ROOMS ARE NOT ABOVE THE MINIMUM 15Db REQUIREMENT. ALL DEVICES IN COMON AREA HAVE BEEN SET TO 2 WATTS AND TESTED WITH NO GAIN OF SOUND VOLUME BEHOND COSED DOORS.

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**10.1 Acceptance by Owner or Owner's Representative:**

The undersigned accepted the test report for the system as specified herein:

Signed: \_\_\_\_\_ Printed name: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_  
Organization: \_\_\_\_\_ Title: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone: \_\_\_\_\_































Gonzalez  
ANYTIME ANYWHERE  
857-24-7035

SKILSAW

















Control panel with technical specifications and labels.

Window on the left wall.

Black trash can on a pallet jack.

White panels leaning against the wall.

Large glass-paned door leading to a server rack area.

Grey metal panels leaning against the door frame.

White paper or document on the floor.

Yellow and red cables on the floor.

















Please Stay  
6ft  
APART  
DPM  
DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION

3M  
ELASTIC TAPE